



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>



3 2044 009 696 600

25247.4.5

*From the folklore collection formed
by Lucy Orne Bowditch and Charles
Pickering Bowditch presented to the*
HARVARD COLLEGE LIBRARY

•

Bishop Percy's Folio MS.

Ballads and Romances.

Vol. II.

**LONDON : PRINTED BY
SPOTTISWOODE AND CO., NEW-STREET SQUARE
AND PARLIAMENT STREET**

Bishop Percy's -
Folio Manuscript.

Ballads and Romances.

EDITED BY

JOHN W. HALES, M.A.

FELLOW AND LATE ASSISTANT-TUTOR OF CHRIST'S COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE

AND

FREDERICK J. FURNIVALL, M.A.

OF TRINITY HALL, CAMBRIDGE.

REVISED BY FREDERICK CHILD, OF HARVARD UNIV., U.S.A., W. CHAPPELL, Esq., &c. &c.

Vol. II.

LONDON:

N. TRUBNER & CO., 60 PATERNOSTER ROW.

1868.

25247.4.5

✓



25247.4.5

5431
50.762
251

•

PREFACE

TO

THE SECOND VOLUME.

As the first volume was specially that of Arthur and Gawaine, of Robin Hood and his great compeer, now almost forgotten, ‘Randolph, Erl of Chestre,’ so this second volume is specially that of Sir Grey, who did such mighty deeds for England, and the pathos of whose death in his hermit’s cell near Warwick has never yet been worthily sung.

But the Arthur and Gawaine stories are here continued in *The Grene Knight*, the *Boy and Mantle*, and *Libius Disconius*; and we have besides, in the present volume, versions of some of the best of our English ballads, *Chevy Chase*, *Childe Waters*, *Bell my Wiffe*, *Bessie off Bednall*, &c. Of one of the best of them, *King Estmere*, Percy’s ruthless hands (p. 200, note) have prevented us giving the MS. version of the folio. We have been unable to find any other MS. or printed copy of this ballad, and have therefore been obliged to put side by side in an appendix Percy’s two printed versions of it, with all their differences from each other marked in italics, so that readers may judge for themselves as to his probable amount of alteration in the other parts.

The folio version of *Bell my Wiffe*—a ballad to which Shakspeare’s quotation of it in *Othello* has secured immortality—is believed to be the earliest known; and as it just filled a page

PREFACE TO THE SECOND VOLUME.

in the MS. it was chosen for photolithographing, and an impression of it will be given with Vol. III. for Vol. I.

John de Reeue is (among other pieces) here printed for the first time, and if it can be taken in any degree as a picture of the bondman's condition at the time it represents, or even the time it was written, it is of considerable historical value. At any rate, it shows us a merry scene of early English life. *Conscience's* tale is of a darker tint, but is valuable for its sketch of the corruptions of its times. The other historical ballads treat of fights and plots abroad and at home—of Agincourt, Buckingham's Fall, the Siege of Cadiz, Durham Field, Northumberland besieged by Douglas, &c. &c.,—but none of them are of more than average merit.

Mr. Hales has written all the Introductions, except those to *Coles Voyage* (for which the Editors are indebted to Mr. John Bruce, the Director of the Camden Society), to *Earle Bodwell* (which is reprinted from the first edition of Bishop Percy's *Reliques*), to *Boy and Mantle* (which is reprinted from Professor Child's *Ballads*), and the following by Mr. Furnivall: *Come, Come*; *Conscience*; *Agincourte Battell*; and *Libius Disconius*. Mr. Hales has also written the Introductory Essay on The Revival of Ballad Poetry in the Eighteenth Century.

For the text Mr. Furnivall is, as before, mainly responsible, and has to thank Mr. W. A. Dalziel for his help in reading the copy and proof with the MS. The contractions of the MS. are printed in italics in the text.

To the Revs. Alexander Dyce, W. W. Skeat, J. Roberts, and Archdeacon Hale; to Messrs. Chappell, Bruce, T. Wright, Planché, and Jones, the Editors tender their thanks for help in divers ways.

February 4, 1868.

Bishop Percy's Folio MS.

Ballads and Romances.

Vol. II.

	PAGE
CONSCIENCE	174
DURHAM FEILDE	190
GUY AND PHILLIS (<i>for the beginning, see Appendix, p. 608</i>) . .	201
JOHN A SIDE	203
RISINGE IN THE NORTHE	210
NORTHUMBERLAND BETRAYD BY DOWGLAS	217
GUYE OF GISBORNE	227
HEREFFORD AND NORFOLKE	238
LADYES FALL	246
BUCKINGAM BETRAYD BY BANISTER	253
EABLE BODWELL	260
BISHOPPE AND BROWNE	265
CHILDE WATERS	269
BESSIE OFF BEDNALL	279
HUGH SPENCER	290
KINGE ADLER	296
BOY AND MANTLE	301
WHITE ROSE AND RED	312
BELL MY WIFFE	320
I LIVE WHERE I LOVE	325
YOUNGE ANDREW	327
A JIGGE	334
EGLAMORE	338
THE EMPEROUR AND THE CHILDE	390
SITTINGE LATE	400
LIBIUS DISCONIUS	404
CHILDE MAURICE	500
PHILLIS HOE	507
GUY AND COLEBRANDE	509
JOHN DE REEVE	559
APPENDIX	595
TWO AGINCOURT BALLADS	595
KING ESTMERE (<i>two versions, from the 1st and 4th editions of</i> <i>The Reliques</i>)	600
GUY AND PHILLIS (<i>the first eleven stanzas of</i>)	608

CORRIGENDA.

p. 9, l. 68, *for* armour *read* armor.

p. 16, l. 253, *for* and *read* &.

p. 23, l. 9, *for* [and] *read* &.

p. 28, l. 6, *for* with *read* with.

l. 22, *for* between *read* betweene.

p. 29, l. 77, *for* thein *read* them.

p. 41, l. 9, *for* up *read* vp.

p. 46, l. 7, *for* bells *read* bell.

p. 60, note 8, *for* theye *read* they.

p. 63, l. 134; p. 66, l. 203, 215; *for* and *read* &.

p. 72, note 1: *the r has fallen out of the A.-Sax. Gram.*

p. 77, note, col. 1, l. 2; *for* missed. *As read* missed, as.

p. 140, l. 109, *add* witt *at the end of the line.*

note 1, *for* Strowt yn *read* Strowtyn.

p. 159, l. 7, *for* 1569 *read* 1659.

p. 164, note 2, *for* terme *read* tenne.

p. 254, l. 12, *for* Robert *read* Richard.

p. 379, notes, col. 2, *for* "1867" *read* "*Babees Book, &c.* 1868."

N.B. The reading of the vol. with the MS. was stopt at p. 74 by the return of the MS. to its owners.

THE REVIVAL OF BALLAD POETRY IN THE EIGHTEENTH CENTURY.

THE last century in England was in more respects than one a valley of dry bones. About the middle of it, "they were very many," and "they were very dry." Shortly afterwards, "behold, a noise," and the bones began to come together. These signs of life were followed by a growing animation. From the four quarters came the wind, and breathed on the quickening mass. From the north it came in its strength; from the east and the west it blew vigorously; from the south it rushed with a wild furious sweeping blast that changed the face of the valley. So at last the century revived—its dull lack-lustre eyes brightened—its stagnant pulse leapt—it lived.

I do not now propose to attempt a full description of this mighty revival. But I propose confining myself to one particular feature of it—the appreciation of our older literature, and especially of our ballad poetry. The century that had long been fully satisfied with its own productions, at last recognised that the English literature of ages that had preceded it was not wholly barbarous. The century that had given up itself to rules, and reduced the art of poetry to a mechanical trick, at last acknowledged graces beyond the reach of its art. At last it was brought to see that there were more things in heaven and earth than were dreamt of in its philosophy.

It discovered that there were innumerable beauties around it to which it had long been blind. It left its gardens and its

elaborate manipulations of nature to see Nature herself. It gave over refining the lily and gilding the rose to look at the flowers in their simple beauty. It became conscious of the exquisite beauties and glories of Switzerland, of the English lakes, of Wales. New worlds of splendour, and of noble enjoyment, dawned upon it. Not greater discoveries were made by Columbus and his followers four centuries before than were then made. The age, with all its self-complaisance, had been living in a prison. The doors were thrown open, and it came forth to feel and enjoy the fresh breezes and the gracious sunshine. A huger, more dismal, more cramping Bastile than that of Paris fell along with it. The age saw at the same time that, besides the beauties of nature, there were beauties that the art of former days had bequeathed it. It began to discern the subtle loveliness of old cathedral churches that studded the country. It had long eyed them with much disfavour. It had sadly disfigured them with adornments of its own devising, and according with its own notions. It had deplored them as monstrous relics of a profound barbarism. But at last the scales fell from its eyes, and it saw that these "tabernacles of the Lord of Hosts" were "amiable." It awoke to their supreme, lavish, refined beautifulness. So with respect to other branches of Gothic art, other fruits of the old Romantic times, they came to a better appreciation of them. Poets and poems that had for many a day been relegated to neglect and oblivion, were more frankly and fairly valued. Voices that had long been silenced or ignored began to find a hearing and a heeding audience. As Greek literature was revived in the fifteenth, so was Romantic in the eighteenth.

A fair criterion of the progress of the century in the recognition of the Romantic age is its appreciation of Chaucer. The most important event of the century regarding him is the appearance of Tyrwhitt's edition of him in 1775. Then at last

an attempt was made to vindicate his fame from the imputation of rudeness; to show that he, no less than the eighteenth-century poets, had some sense of melody, some talent for character-drawing, some power of language. Spenser was more justly and continuously accepted. The age sympathised with the idealising part of his genius, and found pleasure in imitating him. But, as I have said, I propose now considering the history of our ballad poetry; and to it I turn.

The most signal event regarding it is the publication of *Curry's Reliques of Ancient English Poetry* in 1765. Let us see how the century was prepared, or had been preparing, for this famous publication.

Our English ballads, though highly popular in the Elizabethan age, as innumerable allusions to them in Shakespeare and the other dramatists, and in the general literature of the time, show, were not never collected into any volume, save in *Garlands*, in the year 1723. They wandered up and down the country without even sheepskins or goatskins to protect them. They were about like the birds of the air, and sung songs dear to the heart of the common people—songs whose power was sometimes confessed by the higher classes, but not so thoroughly appreciated as to induce them to exert themselves for their preservation. They were looked down upon as things that were very good in their proper place, but which must not be admitted into higher society. They were admired in a condescending manner. They were much better than could be expected. But no one thought of them as popular lyrics of great intrinsic value. No one put forth a hand to save them from perishing. The custom of covering the walls of houses with them that happily prevailed in the seventeenth century did something for their preservation. As a result, they had a better chance of keeping a place in the memories, and meeting some day appreciative eyes. Towards the end of the said century were made one or two

collections of the broad sheets containing them. The black-letter literature of the people was collected rather for its curiousness than its power or beauty, by antiquaries rather than by poets or enjoyers of poetry. Whatever their motives, let us praise Wood and Harley, Selden¹ and Pepys, Rawlinson, Douce, and Bagford, for their services in gathering together and protecting the frail outcasts from destruction. They were as great benefactors of the old ballads as Captain Coram was of foundlings. Be their names glorified!

There can be no doubt that the powerful mind of Dryden justly appreciated the strength of our old literature, although he so far bows before the spirit of his age as to deface it for the reception of that age. Even when he revised and spoiled Chaucer's works, he felt the power of them. But he resigned his own judgment to that of his contemporaries. This Samson in his captivity consented to make merry and carouse with his captors—to translate the songs he loved into the Philistine dialect. He had a fine appreciation of the old ballads. "I have heard," says a *Spectator*, "that the late Lord Dorset, who had the greatest wit tempered with the greatest candour, and was one of the finest critics as well as the best poets of his age, had a numerous collection of old English ballads, and took a particular pleasure in the reading of them. I can affirm the same of Mr. Dryden, and know several of the most refined writers of our present age who are of the same humour." He is, I think, the first collector of poems who conceded to popular ballads their due place,—who admitted them into the society of other poems—poems by the most Eminent Hands,—who perceived their excellence, and welcomed them accordingly. To other collectors of that date it was as disgraceful to a poem as to a man to have no father,

¹ Tradition says that Pepys "borrowed" a part of his Collection from Selden, and forgot to return it.—W. C.

or to be suspected of a common origin. Dryden rose above this prejudice. He showed one or two ballads the same hospitality as he extended to the poetasters of Oxford and Cambridge, whose name was Legion at this time. In the *Miscellany Poems*, edited by him, of which the first volume appeared in 1684, the last in 1708, eight years after his death, are to be found "Little Musgrave and the Lady Bernard," certainly one of the most vigorous ballads in our language; "Chevy Chase," with a rhyming Latin translation; "Johnnie Armstrong," "Gilderoy," "The Miller and the King's Daughters." But the evil that men do lives after them. Dryden, in his "Knight's Tale" and other works, had set the fashion of imitating and modernising our old poems. That fashion survived him. For more than half a century after his death, with the exception of the insertion of two or three in Playford's ¹ *Wit and Mirth, or Pills to purge Melancholy*, and of the *Collection of Old Ballads* above referred to, we have produced in England imitations or adaptations of ballads—no faithful reprint of the genuine thing. The wine that the age had given it to drink was a miserable dilution, or only coloured water. Conspicuous amongst these imitators or adapters were Parnell, Prior, and Tickell. But there were two men in Queen Anne's time who had a genuine relish for old ballads, and who said a good word for them. These were Addison and Rowe. Addison's taste for them had been awakened during his travels on the Continent. "When I travelled," he writes, "I took a particular delight in hearing the songs and fables that are come from father to son, and are most in vogue among the common people of the countries through which I passed; for it is impossible that anything should be universally tasted and approved by a multitude, though they are only the rabble of a nation, which hath not in it some peculiar aptness

¹ This Collection, though generally called D'Urfey's, was Henry Playford's. D'Urfey edited only the last edition

(1719), in six volumes. Five were printed in 1714; the first volume in 1699.—W. C.

to please and gratify the mind of man." He gives, as is well known, two numbers of the *Spectator* to a consideration of "Chevy Chase," one to that of the "Children in the Wood." "The old song of 'Chevy Chase,'" he writes, "is the favourite ballad of the common people of England, and Ben Jonson used to say he had rather have been the author of it than of all his works." Then he quotes Sir Philip Sidney's famous words; and then adds, "For my own part I am so professed an admirer of this antiquated song that I shall give my reader a critick upon it, without any further apology for so doing." And he proceeds to investigate the poem according to the critical rules of his time. He compares it with other heroic poems, and illustrates it from Virgil and Horace. He read the old ballad in the light of his age—viewed and reviewed it in a somewhat narrow spirit. But he did read it—he did look at it. In spite of the confining criticism and hypercriticism of the day, he did feel and recognise its power. "Thus we see," his *examen* concludes, "how the thoughts of this poem, which naturally arise from the subject, are always simple, and sometimes exquisitely noble; that the language is often very sounding, and that the whole is written with a true poetical spirit." In another paper he calls attention to and expresses the "most exquisite pleasure" he had received from "The Two Children in the Wood," which he had encountered pasted upon the wall of some house in the country. He describes it as "one of the darling songs of the common people," and as having been "the delight of most Englishmen in some part of their age;" and then he discusses it after his manner. "The tale of it is a pretty tragical story, and pleases for no other reason but because it is a copy of nature. There is even a despicable simplicity in the verse; and yet because the sentiments appear genuine and unaffected, they are able to move the mind of the most polite reader with inward meltings of humanity and compassion." But he could not bring his

contemporaries to sympathise with him. They would not hear, alarmed he never so wisely. His "Chevy Chase" papers were ridiculed and parodied by Dennis and Wagstaff and kindred spirits. To them perhaps he alludes in the concluding words of his notice of the other ballad he reviews: "As for the little conceited wits of the age," he writes, "who can only show their judgment by finding fault, they cannot be supposed to admire these productions which have nothing to recommend them but the beauties of nature, when they do not know how to relish even those compositions that, with all the beauties of nature, have also the additional advantages of art." He fought a losing battle. What appreciation of the old things there was at the beginning of the century was rapidly decaying. An age of false taste, artificiality, and studied affectation, was dawning.

I have mentioned Rowe as sharing Addison's appreciation of the old ballads. He takes for one of his plays a subject that was the theme of a widely popular ballad, and in introducing his tragedy, deprecates the adverse prejudices of his audience, and speaks boldly in favour of the elder literature, and against the stretched affectations of his time. The Prologue to his "*Jane Shore*," first acted in 1713, opens thus:

To-night, if you have brought your good old taste,
We'll treat you with a downright English feast,
A tale which told long since in homely wise,
Hath never tasted of melting gentle verse
Let us not sit deep as the hyacinth dams
Because repeating ballads chaunt her name;
Those raptures of ancient song and story
Would melt more a poet than our modern writers.
They were as old as the Roman's litty,
Fighting for Plutarch or the Achaean;
Just as they knew the Fair and spoke her plain,
And sang her by her Christian name — I was Jane.
Our numbers may be more refined than those,
But what was gained in verse we've lost in prose.
Their words nouffling double-meaning knew,
Their speech was homely, but their hearts were true.

In such an age immortal Shakespear wrote.
By no quaint rules nor hampering critics taught,
With rough majestic force they moved the heart,
And strength and nature made amends for art.
Our humble author does his steps pursue ;
He owns he had the mighty bard in view ;
And in these scenes has made it more his care
To rouse the passions than to charm the ear.

But this advocacy, too, of a better taste was doomed to fail. Rowe, as Addison, spoke in vain. The literary dominion of France was growing more and more supreme. Protests in behalf of our old masters were urged fruitlessly. The charms of our ballad poetry were disregarded, were despised.

There were, however, others besides Addison and Rowe who had some slight sense of those charms, as for instance those whom we have named—Parnell, Tickell, Prior. Parnell's acquaintance with our older literature is shown in his "Fairy Tale in the Ancient English Style." It is but a feeble piece, written in a favourite Romance metre—the metre of Chaucer's "Tale of Sir Topas"—and decorated with occasional bits of bad grammar to give it an antique look. Tickell's friendship with Addison could not but have conduced to some familiarity on his part with the old ballads. He seems to have been inspired by them in no ordinary degree. Apropos of his "Lucy and Colin," Goldsmith remarks: "Through all Tickell's works there is a strain of ballad-thinking, if I may so express it; and in this professed ballad he seems to have surpassed himself. It is perhaps the best in our language in this way." The writer of it has evidently drunk from the old wells. The story is simple. It is told in a queer style—a sort of strange compromise between the simplicity of the old ballad language and the superfine verbiage that was rising into esteem in Tickell's own day. Lucy, the reader may remember, is deserted by her lover for a richer bride. She cannot survive this cruelty. She says, to quote well-known lines,

I hear a voice you cannot hear,
Which says I must not stay.
I see a hand you cannot see,
Which beckons me away.

She is buried on the day of her false lover's marriage. The funeral cortège encounters the hymeneal. The bridegroom's old passion, too late, revives.

Confusion, shame, remorse, despair
At once his bosom swell;
The damps of death bedew his brow;
He shook, he groaned, he fell.

There is not the true note here, but there is a distant echo of it. In the handsome folio volume of poems published by Matthew Prior in 1718 was printed the "Not-Browne Maide," not for its own sake, but for the sake of a piece called "Henry and Emma," an extremely loose paraphrase of it, that the reader might see how magic was Mr. Prior's touch, who could transmute so rude an effort into a work so finely polished. However, Prior deserves some credit for having brought the old poem forward at all. His "Henry and Emma" won great applause. What a strange, instructive, significant fact, that when it and its original were placed before them, men should deliberately choose it! A morbid taste was prevailing with a vengeance. No plea that the language was obscure can be advanced in this case, as for Dryden's and Pope's versions of the *Canterbury Tales*. There is no obscurity in these words:

O Lorde, what is
This worldis blisse,
That chaungeth as the mone!
The somers day
In lusty may
Is derked before the none.
I hear you say
Farewel! Nay, nay,
We departe not soo sone;
Why say ye so?
Wheder wyle ye goo?

.

,

.

.

.

.

THE REVIVAL OF BALLAD POETRY IN THE EIGHTEENTH CENTURY.

THE last century in England was in more respects than one a valley of dry bones. About the middle of it, "they were very many," and "they were very dry." Shortly afterwards, "behold, a river," and the bones began to come together. These signs of life were followed by a growing animation. From the four quarters came the wind, and breathed on the quickening mass. From the north it came in its strength; from the east and the west it blew vigorously; from the south it rushed with a wild furious sweeping blast that changed the face of the valley. So at last the century revived—its dull lack-lustre eyes brightened—its stagnant pulse leapt—it lived.

I do not now propose to attempt a full description of this mighty revival. But I propose confining myself to one particular feature of it—the appreciation of our older literature, and especially of our ballad poetry. The century that had long been fully satisfied with its own productions, at last recognised that the English literature of ages that had preceded it was awfully barbarous. The century that had given up itself to reason, and reduced the art of poetry to a mechanical trick, at last acknowledged graces beyond the reach of its art. At last it was brought to see that there were more things in heaven and earth than were dreamt of in its philosophy.

It discovered that there were innumerable beauties around it which it had long been blind. It left its gardens and its

having "observed that Readers of the best and most exquisite Discernment frequently complain of our modern Writings as filled with affected Delicacies and studied Refinements, which they would gladly exchange for that natural strength of thought and simplicity of stile our Forefathers practised," published his "Ever-Green, being a collection of Scots Poems wrote by the Ingenious before 1600," and in the same year "The Tea-Table Miscellany, or a Collection of Scots Sangs, in three volumes." All three collections seem to have enjoyed a fair success. Who was the author of the English one is not known.¹ It is called "A collection of Old Ballads corrected from the best and most ancient copies extant, with Introductions, Historical, Critical, or Humorous, illustrated with copper plates." The editor adopts an apologetic motto for his book—some of the above-quoted words of Rowe. He writes, too, in an apologetic vein. "There are many," he says, "who perhaps will think it ridiculous enough to enter seriously into a Dissertation upon Ballads." He is evidently rather afraid of being thought a frivolous creature by his lofty-minded contemporaries. He is a little uneasy in introducing his protégées to the polished public. But he does his duty by them bravely, only indulging himself now and then in a little superior laugh at their expense. He gives what account he can of the theme of each one, and shows always a thorough interest in his work. But the time was not yet ripe for his labours. The popularity that attended the first appearance of his collection soon ceased. The predominant character of the age was not changed. The old voices could not yet secure a hearing. The age clung to its idols. Its Pharisaic spirit was too strong to be restrained. It could not yet believe that out of the mouth of the common people there was ordained strength.

After the middle of the century some promise was shown of

¹ Dr. Farmer ascribes it to Ambrose Phillips. See Lowndes, under "Ballads." —W. C.

a better era. In Capell's "Prolusions, or Select Pieces of Antient Poetry, compil'd with great care from their several Originals, and offer'd to the Publick as Specimens of the Integrity that should be found in the Editions of Worthy Authors," published in 1760, appeared the "Not-browne Mayde," no longer accompanied by a modernised version. This book gives hints of the reaction that was coming against the old manipulating method. "Fidelity to the best Texts," is its watchword. In the same year (1760) appeared Macpherson's *Ossian*, and produced an immense sensation. Bishop Percy, with the good wishes and assistance of many then distinguished men—of Shenstone, Garrick, Joseph Warton, Farmer—was supplementing the treasures of his wonderful Folio MS. from other quarters, and preparing the materials of his *Reliques of Ancient English Poetry*. About the same time (1764) appeared Evans's "Specimens of the Poetry of the Antient Welsh Bards." Mallet's work on "the remains of the Mythology and Poetry of the Celtes, particularly of Scandinavia," had already been published some years.¹ About the same time Gray was writing his Welsh and Scandinavian pieces.² At the same time Chatterton was striving to satisfy the new taste that was spreading with forgeries of old poems.³ The first decade, then, of George III.'s reign is most memorable in the history of the

¹ Mallet (P.-H.) Introduction à l'histoire de Dannemark, où l'on traite de la religion, des mœurs et usages des anciens danois etc. *Copenhague*, 1755-56. *Les Monumens de la Mythologie et de la Poésie des Celtes* (trad. des *Edda*) ouvrage qui fait partie de cette introduction, ont aussi paru séparément avec un titre particulier, en 1756. *Brunet*. Percy's translation was published in 1770.—F.

² In 1767 he [Gray] had intended a second tour to Scotland. At Dr. Beattie's desire, a new edition of his poems was published by Foulis at

Glasgow; and at the same time Dodsley was also printing them in London. In both these editions, the "Long Story" was omitted. Some pieces of Welch and Norwegian poetry, written in a bold and original manner, were inserted in its place. *Mitford's Life of Gray*, Works, i. xlix.-l.—F.

³ Published in 1777. He died Aug. 25th, 1770. His first article, purporting to be the transcript of an ancient MS. entitled "A Description of the Fryers' first passage over the Old Bridge," appeared in Farley's Journal, Bristol, Oct. 1768. *Penny Cycl.*—F.

revival of our ballad poetry. Then commenced an appreciation of it which has grown stronger and stronger with the lapse of years. Then it found itself so well supported that it was able to hold up its head in spite of peremptory contemptuous criticism. It feared no more the frowns of the great. Its beauty was no longer to be hid—its light no longer veiled away from men's eyes. "Even from the tomb the voice of nature cried." In the midst of conventionalisms and artificialities, Simplicity and Truth asserted themselves. The age was growing sick and weary of its old darlings; growing sensible that there was no salvation in them, no infallibility, no supreme delight in their worship:

Naturam expellas furcâ, tamen usque recurret.

Cinderella had sat by the kitchen fire for many a day. For many a day the elder sisters, tricked out in all the modish finery of the time, every attitude studied, every look elaborated every movement affected, had possessed the drawing-room in all their fashionable state. Cinderella down in the kitchen had heard the rustle of their fine silks and satins, and the sound of their polite conversation. She had been perplexed by their polished verbiage, and felt her own awkwardness and rusticity. She had never dared to think herself beautiful. No admiring eyes ever came near her in which she might mirror herself. She had never dared to think her voice sweet. No rapt ears ever drank in fondly its accents. She felt herself a plain-faced, dull-souled, uninteresting person, not worthy to receive any attention from any one of the fine gentlemen who adored her sisters, or to enter their well-mannered society. But her lowliness was to be regarded. The songs she had sung in the kitchen to the servants—her humble, unpretentious songs—they were to find greater favour than ever did those of her much-complimented sisters. She too was to be the *belle* of balls. It was about the year 1760 when the possibility of so

great a change in her condition became first conceivable. She met with many enemies, who clamoured that the kitchen was her proper place, and vehemently opposed her admission into any higher room. The Prince was long in finding her out. The sisters put many an obstacle between him and her. They could not understand the failure of their own attractions. They could not appreciate the excellence of hers. But at last the Prince found her, and took her in all her simple sweetness to himself. At last, to lay metaphors aside, England acknowledged the power and beauty of the ballads that had suffered for so long a time such grievous neglect.

At the accession of George III., William Whitehead was in the third year of his adornment of the Poet Laureateship. "The Pleasures of Imagination," "The Schoolmistress," "The Complaint, or Night Thoughts on Life, Death, and Immortality"—works which had been given to the world some sixteen or eighteen years before—were at the zenith of their fame. The general character of our literature at this time was wholly didactic. We cannot wonder, then, if the appearance of a poetry that was weighted with no overbearing moral, or other purpose, produced a tremendous effect. We may be prepared to understand the prodigious excitement caused by the publication in 1760 of "The Works of Ossian the Son of Fingal, translated from the Gaelic language by James Macpherson." With all their magniloquence, they did not sermonise; they expressed some genuine feeling. Amidst all their affected cries there was a true voice audible. Three years subsequently, Bishop Percy, moved by Ossian's popularity, published a translation from the Icelandic language of five pieces of Runic poetry.

In the following year, 1764, appeared "Some Specimens of the Poetry of the Ancient Welsh Bards translated into English, with Explanatory Notes on the Historical Passages, and a short Account of Men and Places mentioned by the Bards, in order

to give the Curious some Idea of the Taste and Sentiments of our Ancesters and their Manner of Writing, by the Rev. Mr. Evan Evans, curate of Glanvair Talyhaern in Denbighshire"—a work with which Gray was familiar. Shortly afterwards appeared Gray's own translations, made from translations, of Norse and Welsh pieces: "The Fatal Sisters," "The Descent of Odin," "The Triumphs of Owen," and "The Death of Hoel." About the time, then, of the appearance of the *Reliques* in 1765, there was dispersed over the country some slight knowledge of the old Celtic and of Scandinavian poetry.

And now the age was ripe for the reception of such a collection of old ballads as had been published some forty years, but had then, after a short-lived circulation, fallen into neglect. Thomas Percy, the son of a grocer at Bridgenorth, Shropshire, a graduate of Oxford, vicar of Easton Maudit, Northamptonshire, was by nature something of an antiquarian. When "very young," he became possessed of a folio MS. of old ballads and romances. "This very curious old MS." he says in a memorandum made in the old folio itself, "in its present mutilated state, but unbound and sadly torn, I rescued from destruction, and begged at the hands of my worthy friend Humphrey Pitt, Esq. then living at Shiffnal in Shropshire, afterwards of Prior Lee near that town; who died very lately at Bath; viz. in Summer 1769. I saw it lying dirty on the floor under a Bureau in y^e Parlour: being used by the maids to light the fire." "When I first got possession of this MS." he says in another entry in the same place, "I was very young, and being in no degree an Antiquary, I had not then learnt to reverence it; which must be my excuse for the scribble which I then spread over some parts of its margin; and in one or two instances, for even taking out the leaves, to save the trouble of transcribing. I have since been more careful." Besides this famous folio, he possessed also a quarto MS. volume of similar pieces, supposed

to be the same as one still in the hands of his family, and containing only copies of printed poems. The folio has remained in the hands of the Bishop's family in the greatest privacy hitherto; Jamieson and Sir F. Madden being (I believe) the only editors who have printed from it, though Dibdin was allowed to catalogue part of it. It is now at last, as our readers know, being printed just as it is. These volumes had in Percy a (for that time) highly appreciative possessor. He determined to introduce to the public some specimens of their contents. This proposal was promoted by the sympathy of many then distinguished men: of Shenstone, Bird, Grainger, Steevens, Farmer, and by others of still greater and more enduring note—Garrick and Goldsmith. At last, in 1765 appeared *Reliques of Ancient English Poetry, consisting of Old Heroic Ballads, Songs, and other pieces of our earlier poets (chiefly of the Lyric kind) together with some few of later date*. The editor, even as the editor of the collection of 1723, of whom we have spoken, has, manifestly, some misgivings about the character of his protégées. He is not quite sure how they will be received by his polite contemporaries. He speaks of them, in his Dedication of his volumes to the Countess of Northumberland (he was extremely ambitious to connect himself with the great Percies of the North), as “the rude songs of ancient minstrels,” “the barbarous productions of unpolished ages,” and is troubled for fear lest he should be guilty of some impropriety in hoping that they “can obtain the approbation or the notice of her, who adorns courts by her presence, and diffuses elegance by her example. But this impropriety, it is presumed, will disappear when it is declared that these poems are presented to your Ladyship, not as labours of art but as effusions of nature, shewing the first efforts of ancient genius, and exhibiting the customs and opinions of remote ages.” In his Preface he says that “as most of” the contents of his folio MS. “are of great simplicity, and seem to have

been merely written for the people, the possessor was long in doubt, whether in the present state of improved literature they could be deemed worthy the attention of the public. At length the importunity of his friends prevailed." "In a polished age, like the present, he adds, "I am sensible that many of these reliques of antiquity will require great allowances to be made for them. Yet have they, for the most part, a pleasing simplicity, and many artless graces, which in the opinion of no mean critics [a foot-note cites Addison, Dryden, Lord Dorset &c., and Selden] have been thought to compensate for the want of higher beauties, and if they do not dazzle the imagination [Did "The School-mistress," "The Sugar-cane," dazzle the imagination?] are frequently found to interest the heart." Still more striking are the following words: "To atone for the rudeness of the more obsolete poems, each volume concludes with a few modern attempts in the same kind of writing." And then he buttresses his volumes with eminent names—Shenstone, Thomas Warton, Garrick, Johnson (we shall see presently how far Johnson was likely to smile on his undertaking), which "names of so many men of learning and character, the editor hopes will serve as an amulet, to guard him from every unfavourable censure for having bestowed any attention on a parcel of Old Ballads. It was at the request of many of these gentlemen, and of others eminent for their genius and taste, that this little work was undertaken. To prepare it for the press has been the amusement of now and then a vacant hour amid the leisure and retirement of rural life, and hath only served as a relaxation from graver studies. It hath been taken up and thrown aside for many months during an interval of four or five years." With such apologies and antidotes did the Reliques make their *débüt*! How strange—what a wonderful tale of altered taste it tells—that in order to make "Chevy Chase," "Edom o' Gordon," "Little Musgrave and Lady Barnard," endurable, to reconcile

the reader to their rudeness, such charming *chaperones* should be assigned them as “Bryan and Pereene, a West Indian ballad by Dr. Grainger,” “Jemmy Dawson, by Mr. Shenstone” ! “Bryan and Pereene,” “founded on a real fact,” narrates how Pereene, “the pride of Indian dames,” went down to the sea-shore to meet her lover, who, after an absence in England of one long long year one month and day, was returning to St. Christopher’s and his mistress.

Soon as his well-known ship she spied
She cast her weeds away,
And to the palmy shore she hied
All in her best array.

In sea-green silk, so neatly clad
She there impatient stood ;

Bryan, seeing her in the said sea-green silk, impatient also, leapt overboard in the hope of reaching her sooner.

The crew with wonder saw the lad
Repell the foaming flood.

Her hands a handkerchief display’d,
Which he at parting gave ;
Well-pleas’d the token he survey’d,
And manlier beat the wave.

Her fair companions one and all
Rejoicing crowd the strand ;
For now her lover swam in call,
And almost touch’d the land.

Then through the white surf did she haste,
To clasp her lovely swain ;
When ah ! a shark bit through his waist,
His heart’s blood dy’d the main.

He shriek’d ! his half sprang from the wave,
Streaming with purple gore,
And soon it found a living grave,
And ah ! was seen no more.

Now haste, now haste, ye maids, I pray,
Fetch water from the spring;
She falls, she swoons, she dies away,
And soon her knell they ring.

And so the doleful ditty ends with an injunction to the "fair," to strew her tomb with fresh flowerets every May morning, to the end that they and their lovers may not come to similar distress." Jemmy Dawson was one of the Manchester rebels who took part in the '45, and was hanged, drawn, and quartered on Kennington Common in 1746.

Their colours and their sash he wore,
And in the fatal dress was found;
And now he must that death endure,
Which gives the brave the keenest wound.

How pale was then his true love's cheek,
When Jemmy's sentence reach'd her ear;
For never yet did Alpine snows,
So pale, nor yet so chill appear.

With faltering voice she weeping said,
Oh! Dawson, monarch of my heart,
Think not thy death shall end our loves,
For thou and I will never part.

Poor Kitty inflexibly witnesses his execution.

The dismal scene was o'er and past,
The lover's mournful hearse retir'd;
The maid drew back her languid head,
And sighing forth his name expir'd.

Such were the pieces whose elegance was to make atonement to the readers of a century ago, for the barbarousness of the other components of the *Reliques*.

This barbarousness was further mitigated by an application of a polishing process to the ballads themselves. Percy performed the offices of a sort of tireman for them. He dressed and adorned them to go into polite society. To how great an extent he laboured in their service, is now at last manifested by the publication of the Folio. The old MS. contained many

pieces which, it would seem, were considered hopeless. No amount of manipulation could ever make them presentable. It contained many pieces and many fragments—thanks to the anxiety of Mr. Humphrey Pitt's servants to light his fires!—which the art of the editorial refiner of the eighteenth century deemed capable of adaptation; and Percy adapted them. The old ballads could reckon on no genuine sympathy. They were, so to speak, the songs of Zion in a strange land.

Percy, as the extracts we have quoted from his Dedication and Preface have shown, was not free from the prejudices of his time. He was but slightly in advance of them; but he *was* in advance of them. He *did* recognise the power and beauty of the old poetry, more deeply, perhaps, than he ever dared confess. And, though unconscious of the greatness of the work he was doing, did for us—for Europe—an unutterable service. He was, to the end, curiously unconscious of it. He had given a deadly blow to a terrible giant, and freed many captives from his thralldom, without knowing. Men are often reminded to be delicately careful in their actions, because they know not what harm they may do. They might sometimes be encouraged by the thought that they know not what good they do. Certainly Percy performed for English literature a far higher service than he ever dreamt of. He always regarded the *Reliques* as something rather frivolous. "I read 'Edwin and Angelina' to Mr. Percy some years ago," writes Goldsmith, in 1767, to the printer of the *St. James' Chronicle*, who had assigned Goldsmith's ballad to Percy, "and he (as we both considered these things as trifles at best) told me, with his usual goodhumour, the next time I saw him, that he had taken my plan to form the fragments of Shakespeare into a ballad of his own. He then read me his little cento, if I may so call it, and I highly approved of it." "I am so little interested about *the amusements of my youth*," writes Percy to his

publisher in 1794, "that, had it not been for the benefit of my nephew, I could contentedly have let the *Reliques of Ancient Poetry* remain unpublished." The great effect the memorable work produced came "not with observation."

With all the consideration Percy showed for the prevailing taste, he did not succeed in winning over to his support certain great leaders of it. He was extremely solicitous to secure the approval of the leader of the leaders of it—of that supreme potentate, Dr. Johnson. In his Preface he twice mentions him: first, as having urged him to publish a selection from the Folio ("He could refuse nothing," he says, "to such judges as the author of the *Rambler*, and the late Mr. Shenstone,"); and secondly, as having lightened his editorial task with his assistance ("To the friendship of Mr. Johnson," he writes, "he owes many valuable hints for the conduct of his work"). But, for all these complimentary mentions, Johnson seems to have liked neither the work nor its author, as may be seen in *Boswell* again and again; thus: "The conversation having turned on modern imitations of ancient ballads, and some one having praised their simplicity, he treated them with that ridicule which he always displayed when that subject was mentioned." The 177th number of the *Rambler* gives a satirical account of a Club of Antiquaries. Hirsute, we are told, had a passion for black-letter books; Ferratus for coins; Chartophylax for gazettes; "Cantilenus turned all his thoughts upon old ballads, for he considered them as the genuine records of the natural taste. He offered to show me a copy of *The Children of the Wood*, which he firmly believed to be of the first edition, and by the help of which the text might be freed from several corruptions, if this age of barbarity had any claim to such favours from him." In his *Life of Addison*, after a sarcastic reference to his *Spectators* on "Chevy Chase," and Wagstaff's ridicule of them, he adds, in modification of Dennis's *reductio*

absurdum of Addison's canon—that “Chevy Chase” pleases, ought to please, because it is natural—“In Chevy Chase is not much of either bombast or affectation, but there is and lifeless imbecility. The story cannot possibly be told in a manner that shall make less impression on the mind.”

What horror the ghost of Sir Philip Sidney must have struck if ever it was aware of this crushing dictum! Still

suggestive are his observations on another old ballad. In the greatest of all his amorous essays,” he remarks in his Essay on Criticism, “is Henry and Emma—a dull and tedious tale, which excites neither esteem for the man nor tender-ness for the woman. The example of Emma, who resolves to marry an outlawed murderer wherever fear and guilt shall drive her, deserves no imitation [would Johnson have said that the *Laocoön*,” or the “*Venus de Medici*,” deserved an imitation? could his critical rules have been applied to them?], and the experiment by which Henry tries the lady's constancy is as it must end either in infamy to her or in disappointment to himself.” With these terrible sentences in our ear, let us read these stanzas:

Though it be songe
Of old & yonge,
That I shold be to blame,
Theyrs be the charge
That speke so large
In hastyng of my name;
For I wyll prove
That faythfulle love,
It is devoyd of shame;
In your dystresse,
And hevynesse,
To part with you the same;
And sure all tho
That do not so
True lovers are they none.
For in my mynde
Of all mankynde
I love but you alone.

And,

I thinke nat nay
 But as ye say,
 It is no mayden's lore ;
 But love may make
 Me for your sake,
 As I have sayd before,
 To come on foote
 To hunt, to shote
 To gete us mete in store ;
 For so that I
 Your companey
 May have, I ask no more.
 From which to part,
 It makyth my hart
 As colde as ony stone ;
 For in my mynde
 Of all mankynde
 I love but you alone.

Read these high passionate words, and think of Johnson's criticism.¹ He misses, evidently, the point of the poem—does not see how one noble idea permeates and vivifies every line, and glorifies the self-abandonment confessed.

Here may ye see
 That women be
 In love, meke, kynde, and stable ;
 Late never man
 Reprove them than,
 Or call them variable ;
 But rather pray
 God that we may
 To them be comfortable.

His criticism of the "Nut-brown Maid" makes his dislike of the old ballads intelligible enough. We can understand now how he came to despise and abuse them, and parody their form in this wise :

¹ Cf. Mr. Gilpin's (Saurey-Gilpin, an artist, 1733–1807,) remark, *apud* Nichols and Steevens' *Hogarth*, on the seventh plate of the Rake's Progress: "The episode of the fainting woman might have given way to many circumstances more proper to the occasion. This is

the same woman whom the Rake discards in the first print, by whom he is rescued in the fourth, who is present at his marriage, who follows him into jail, and lastly to Bedlam. The thought is rather unnatural, and the moral certainly culpable."

The tender infant, meek and mild,
Fell down upon a stone;
The nurse took up the squealing child,
But still the child squeal'd on.

Warburton, Hurd, and others heartily concurred in his opinion. Warburton thought that the old ballads were utterly despicable by the side of the exalted literature of his own and recent times. He called them "specious funguses compared to the oak."

But in the face of this contumely, looked down on and sneered at by the learning and refinement of the age, the old ballads grew dear to the heart of the nation. They stirred emotions that had long lain dormant. They revived fires that had long slumbered. The nation lay in prison like its old Troubadour king; in its durance it heard its minstrel singing beneath the window its old songs, and its heart leapt in its bosom. It recognised the well-known, though long-neglected, strains that it had heard and loved in the days of its youth. The old love revived. The captive could not at once cast off its fetters, and go forth. But a yearning for liberty awoke in it; a wild, growing, passionate longing for liberty, for real, not artificial flowers; for true feeling, not sentimentalism; for the fresh life-giving breezes of the open country, not the languid airs of enclosed courts.

As one who long in populous city pent,
Where houses thick and sewers annoy the air,
Forth issuing on a summer's morn, to breathe
Among the pleasant villages and farms
Adjoin'd, from each thing met conceives delight,
The smell of grain, or tedded grass, or kine,
Or dairy, each rural sight, each rural sound,

so did the nation issue forth from its confinement, and conceive truer, more comprehensive joys.

The publication of the *Reliques*, then, constitutes an epoch in the history of the great revival of taste, in whose blessings we

now participate. After 1765, before the end of the century, numerous collections of old ballads, in Scotland and in England, by Evans, Pinkerton, Hurd, Ritson, were made. The noble reformation, that received so great an impulse in 1765, advanced thenceforward steadily. The taste that was awakened never slumbered again. The recognition of our old life and poetry that the *Reliques* gave, was at last gloriously confirmed and established by Walter Scott. That great minstrel was profoundly influenced by the *Reliques*, both directly and indirectly, through Burger and others who had drunk deep of its waters.

“Among the valuable acquisitions,” says Scott in his Autobiography, writing of his studies after his leaving Edinburgh High School, “I made about this time, was an acquaintance with Tasso’s ‘Jerusalem Delivered’ through the flat medium of Mr. Hoole’s translation. But above all I then first became acquainted with Bishop Percy’s *Reliques of Ancient Poetry*. As I had been from infancy devoted to legendary lore of this nature, and only reluctantly withdrew my attention from the scarcity of materials and the rudeness of those which I possessed, it may be imagined, but cannot be described, with what delight I saw pieces of the same kind which had amused my childhood, and still continued in secret the Delilahs of my imagination, considered as the subject of sober research, grave commentary, and apt illustration by an editor who showed his practical genius was capable of emulating the best qualities of what his pious labour preserved. I remember well the spot where I read these volumes for the first time. It was beneath a huge plantaine tree, in the ruins of what had been intended for an old-fashioned arbour in the garden I have mentioned. The summer day sped onwards so fast that, notwithstanding the sharp appetite of thirteen, I forgot the hour of dinner, was sought for with anxiety, and was still found entranced in my intellectual banquet. To read and

to remember was in this instance the same thing, and henceforth I overwhelmed my schoolfellows and all who would hearken to me with tragical recitations from the ballads of Bishop Percy. The first time too I could scrape a few shillings together, which were not common occurrences with me, I bought unto myself a copy of these beloved volumes; nor do I believe I ever read a book half so frequently or with half the enthusiasm."

ON "BONDMAN,"

THE NAME AND THE CLASS,

WITH REFERENCE TO THE BALLAD OF "JOHN DE REEUE."

By F. J. FURNIVALL.



JOHNSON's definition of *bondman* is "a man slave." To it his latest editor, Dr. Latham, puts neither addition nor qualification; and the popular notion undoubtedly is, that whenever the word is used, of Early English times or modern, a *slave* is understood, one whose person, wife, children, and property, are wholly in his owner's power. We have to ask how far this popular notion is true with regard to our Bondmen, John de Reeue, Hobkin or Hodgkin long, and Hob o' the Lathe, and their class.

I do not find the word *bondman* in English till about 1250 A.D., taking that as the date of the *Owl and Nightingale*:

Moni chapmon and moni cniht
 Luveþ and halt ¹ his wif ariht;
 And swa deþ moni *bondeman*.

7 (*Owl and Nightingale*, l. 1575, p. 49, ed. Stratmann, 1868.)

The earlier word was *bonde*, and the earliest the Anglo-Saxon *bonda*, which Thorpe rightly derives and defines as follows in his glossary to the *Ancient Laws*:

Bonda, boor, paterfamilias. This word was probably introduced by the Danes, and seems occasionally to have been used for *ceorl*; its immediate derivation is from O. N. *búandi*, contr[acted to] *bóndi*, villicus, colonus qui foco utitur proprio; part. pres. used substantively of *at buá*. Goth. *gabaúan* habitare; modern Danish *bonde*, peasant, husbandman.

Bosworth on the other hand defines *Bonda* as

1. One bound, a husband, householder. 2. A proprietor, husbandman, boor: *Bonde-land* land held under restrictions, copyhold.

¹ MS. Cot. *hlad*.

Whether 'one bound' (as if from *bond*, and-*a* one who has; like *wæd* a garment, *wæda* one who has a garment,) is the original sense of the word, is more than doubtful; and till the proof is produced, I reject the meaning as original,¹ though no doubt at a later period this sense prevailed over the Scandinavian one. Mr. Wedgwood says under Husband:

From Old Norse *bua* (the equivalent of G. *bauen*, Du. *bowen*, to till, cultivate, prepare) are *bu* a household, farm, cattle; *buandi*, *bondi*,² N. *bonde* the possessor of a farm, husbandman; *husbond* or

¹ *bóndi* (*d. i.* *bóandi* = *búandi*, *der Bonde, freier Grundbesitzer, Hausvater, pl. bændr mariti.*—Möbius.

² Mr. Cockayne says "The word *Bond* bound has no existence but in Somner, whence others have copied it. Bosworth has built on *Bond* a guess, *Bonda* one bound, which is a delusion. For Bound, the true word is *bunden*, and for a Bond, *bend*." Mr. Earle also rejects the derivation from *bond*, and the meaning "one bound." Mr. Thorpe says that Ettmüller (p. 293) questions the *búandi*, *bóndi* derivation, but without sufficient grounds, in Mr. Thorpe's opinion. Haldorson accepts it "*Bondi* m. paterfamilias (quasi *bóandi*, *búandi*) en Husfader, Husbande, L. Colonus, ruricola, en Bonde, *Stórbændr* prædicatores (Bonds with a large house and extensive ground), *Smabændr* villici (Bonds with a small house and little yard)." Mr. Skeat notes "Bosworth also gives *Buend*, *bugend*, *bugigend*, as meaning an inhabitant, a farmer, from *búan*, to dwell, cultivate. This comes nearer to the Dan. and Sw. *bonde* as regards etymology, though it is not so near in form. Cf. A.-Sax. *búan*, Mæso-Goth. *bauan*, *gabauan*, to dwell, *bauains*, a dwelling-place. The G. *bauer*, peasant, is the Du. *boer*, and our *boor*. It is curious that the Du. *boer*, as well as the Sw. and Dan. *bonde*, signifies 'a pawn at chess.' I do not see how you distinguish between A.-Sax. *bonda* and A.-Sax. *buend*, unless you call the former a Danish word. In modern Danish the *d* is not sounded, and the *o* has an *oo* sound, so that *bonde* is called *boon-ne* (Lund's Danish Grammar)."

Professor Bosworth has kindly sent me the following note in support of the

first meaning he assigns to *bonda*. It unfortunately came too late—in consequence of the illness of his amanuensis—to be worked up or noticed in the text. "Bunda, *bonda*, an; m. I. *A wedded or married man, a husband; maritus, sponsus.* II. *The father or head of a family, a householder; paterfamilias, œconomus.* Then follow numerous examples, in proof of these meanings. I've gone over again all the examples, and I have enlarged what I had previously written, as to the origin of 'Bunda, *bonda*,' and given the detail in the following pages.—J. B." "Every word has its history by which its introduction and use are best ascertained. Bede tells us [Bk. I, 26, 2,] that Ethelbert king of Kent married a Christian, Bertha, a Frankish princess. The Queen prepared the way for the friendly reception of Augustine and his missionary followers, by Ethelbert in A.D. 597, who was the first to found a school in Kent, and wrote laws which are said to be "*ásætte on Augustinus dæge*," established in the time of Augustine, between A.D. 597 and 604. The cultivation and writing of Anglo-Saxon [Englisc] began with the conversion of Ethelbert. Marriage, and the household arrangements depending upon it, were regulated by the law of the Church, and indigenous compound words were formed to express that law:—thus *æ law*, *divine law*; Cristes *æ Christi lex*, Rihte *æ legitimum matrimonium* Bd. 4, 5—*æw wedlock*, marriage, *æw-boren lawfully born, born in wedlock*—*æw-brica m. wedlock breaker, m. an adulterer*, *æw-brice f. an adulteress*, *æw-fæst-mann marriage-fast-man a wedded man, a husband*; *æw-nian to wed, take*

the master of the house. Dan. *bonde* peasant, countryman, clown.

When the word occurs in the Anglo-Saxon Laws, Thorpe uses it "proprietor," and then "husband," meaning "husband who is a proprietor."

*7 mbe frithes-bóte, swa þam bondan si selost, 7 þam þeófan si -Æthelredes Domas, vi. xxxii.*¹

Concerning "frithes-bot," as may be best to the *proprietor* and *style* to the thief.—*Ancient Laws*, i. 322–3.

7w-nung wedding, marriage—wedded woman.—Hús-bunda, *house binder, husband, house-* This expressive compound is the oldest in the language. It is in the interpolated passage of between v. 28 and 29. The same in all the Anglo-Saxon MSS. Gospels, except the interlineary The A.-Sax. is a literal version of an Augustinian MS. in the Bodleian, Oxford [*Codex, August.* 2, 14], from the Old Italic from which the Latin Vulgate Gospels was formed by St. Jerome in 384. Though we do not know exact dates when the Gospels were translated from Latin into A.-Sax., it assures us that Bede finished his Gospel, St. John, on May 27, 735. [Pref. to Goth. and A.-Sax. p. ix–xii]. As the three Gospels were most likely translated from St. John, then the following was written before 735, See [hús-bunda in MS. Camb. li. 1. te ðe árisan and rýman fram þe householder bid thee rise and for the other. Notes to Bosworth and A.-Sax. Gos. Mt. xx. 16. Hús-bonda is also used in his version of the Script. at 970 [Ex. 3, 22.] Bunda, *wedded or bound, a husband, lan; p. band, bundon; pp. to bind*, must have been of origin than the compound hús- it is a well-known rule that in *person or agent* is denoted by

adding a,* as bytl *a hammer*, bytla *a hammerer*, ánweald *rule, government*, ánwealda *a ruler, governor*,—bunden, bund *bound*, bunda, bonda *one bound, a husband*. Bunda might be banda, as well as bonda, for *a* is often used for *o*, as monn for mann *a man*. The early use of hús-bunda, -bonda would at once indicate, that it was not likely to be of Norse or Icelandic origin. It could not be derived from the Norse búa *to dwell*, part. búandi bóandi *dwelling*, nor even from the cognate A.-Sax. búan *to dwell*, because the ú and ó are long in the Norse búa *to dwell*, búandi, bóandi *dwelling*, and the A.-Sax. búan *to dwell*, búende *dwelling*, búend, búenda *a dweller*, while the ú and o are always short in bunda and bonda. So in other compounds from bindan *to bind*, as bunde-land *bond or leased land, land let on binding conditions*. Bunda then is a pure Anglo-Saxon word, derived from bindan *to bind*. Búan *to dwell*, with the part. búende *dwelling*, and the noun búend, es; *m. a dweller*, is quite a distinct word. Búend has its own numerous compounds; as,—Land-búend *a land dweller, a farmer*; agricola. Án-búend *one dwelling alone, a hermit*; ceaster-, eg-, eorp-, feor-, fold-, grund-, her-, ig-, land-, neah-, sund-, woruld- and þeód-búend."

¹ Ethelred, son of Edgar, succeeded to the throne, on the murder of his brother Edward, in the year 978, and died in 1016.—Thorpe's note in *Laws and Inst. of England*, vol. i. p. 280.

* To a substantive, not a verb or participle.—F.

Again, in the same section nearly repeated in *Cnutes Domas*, the *Canons* dated 12 Nov. 1055 — *þan þundān*, for the *pro-
prietor*, p. 399-1. At p. 414-15. *Cnutes Domas*, lxxiii.

Conjux in hoc casu non Solus quam Maritus.

LXXIII. And þær se þundān set unwyrd ȝ unbefrafod, sitte þ̅ wif ȝ þa cild on þan ȝican unbesacen. And gif se þundān set he dead wære, beforðed wære þa lare and wyrtian þa ȝreccuman, swa he sylf sceolde þeah he lif hæfde.

And where the husband dwelt without claim or contest, let the wife and the children dwell in the same, unassailed by litigation. And if the husband, before he was dead, had been cited, then let the heirs answer, as himself should have done if he had lived.

So the Laws of King Henry the First (who reigned 1100-35 A.D.), repeating the last provision, say :

§ 5 Et ubi *bunda* manserit sine calumpnia, sint uxor et pueri in eodem, sine querela &c.—*Ancient Laws*, i. 526.

In 1048 A.D. the Saxon Chronicle uses *bunda* for a householding cultivator or farmer :

Da he [Eustatius] wæs sume mila oððe mare beheonan Dofran . þa dyde he on his byrnan . and his ge-feran ealle . and foran to Dofran . þa hi þider comon . þa woldon hi innian hi þær heom sylfan gelicode . þa com an his manna . and wolde wician set anes *bundan*¹. huse, his unðances . and gewundode þone *husbundon* . and se *husbunda*² ofsloh þone oðerne. Da weard Eustatius uppon his horse . and his ge-feoran uppon heora . and ferdon to þan *husbundon* . and ofslogon hine binnan his agenān heorðæ . and wendon him þa up to þære burge-weard . and ofslogon ægðer ge wiðinnan ge wiðutan . ma þanne xx manna.—*Saxon Chronicle*, ed. Earle, p. 177 (A.D. 1048.)

When he [Eustathius] was some miles or more beyond Dover, then put he on his armour, and all his companions (did likewise), and went to Dover. When they came thither, then would they lodge where they pleased. Then came one of his men, and would dwell at the house of a *cultivator* (or householder) against his will, and wounded the *cultivator*; and the *cultivator* slew the other. Then Eustathius got upon his horse, and his companions on theirs, and went to the *cultivator*, and slew him within his own hearth; and

¹ bundan, *gen. sing. goodman*, 1048. *Glossarial Index*.

² The equivalence of the *husbunda* with the *bunda* here is enough to ex-

plode the "moral-etymology" of a *husband* being so called because he is the band or binder-together of the house, even if Dr. Bosworth be right.

went then up to the guard of the city, and slew both within and without more than 20 men.

In a passage in *Hickes* the (no doubt) free *bunda*, paying a fine, is contrasted with the *thræll* who gets a flogging:

And gif hwa ðis ne zelæste . þonne gebete he ƿ swa swa hit zelagod is . *bunda* mid xxx peñ. ðræl mid his hyde . þegn mid xxx scill.—From Hickes's *Dissertatio Epistolaris*, p. 108.

And if any one does not perform this, then let him make amends for that as is laid-down-by-law: the *bonde* with xxx pence, the thrall with his hide, the thane with xxx shillings.

Thus far then the evidence—for I do not admit Bosworth's "one bound" as right—points to the *bonde* being a freeman, and if not a landed proprietor, still a free tenant. The evidence of the freedom is strengthened if we may regard the Danish-named *bonde* as a Saxon-named *churl*—the name of one seeming to be used for the other, as Mr. Thorpe observes, for the *ceorl* was a free man, the "ordinary freeman" of Anglo-Saxon society, though obliged by "the feudal system" which "may be traced throughout all Anglo-Saxon history, to provide himself with a lord, that he might be amenable to justice when called upon."¹ Still, this vassalage was no *bondage* in the later or the modern sense of the term; the vassal churl was a freeman still, if we may trust Heywood.

In Alfred's time, and later, the *ceorl* had slaves. Sec. 25 of Alfred's Laws (translated) is:

If a man commit a rape upon a *ceorl's* female slave (*mennen*), let him make bôt (amends) to the *ceorl* with 5 shillings, and let the *wite* (fine) be 60 shillings. *Anc. Laws*, i. 79.

The A.-S. laws of Ranks enact that,

if a *ceorl* thrived, so that he had fully five hides of his own land, church and kitchen, bell-house, and "burh"-gate-seat, and special duty in the king's hall, then was he thenceforth of thane-right worthy.—*Anc. Laws*, i. 191.

Thorpe defines *ceorl* thus:

Ceorl. O.H.G. *charal*. A freeman of ignoble rank, a churl, *twy-hinde* man, villanus, illiberalis.

Twyhynde (Man), a man whose 'wér-gild' was 200 shillings. This was the lowest class of Anglo-Saxon aristocracy. *Twelf-hynde*

¹ Heywood's *Distinctions in Society*. 1818, p. 325.

(*Mun*), a man whose *wer-gild* was 1200 shillings. This was the highest class of Anglo-Saxon aristocracy.

The slave was a *præl* or *peow*. Mr. Thorpe considers *præl* to be a Scandinavian word.

Next comes the question, did these bondes or ceorls continue free till the time of the Conquest? Kemble says not:

'Finally, the nobles-by-birth themselves became absorbed in the ever-widening whirlpool; day by day the freemen, deprived of their old national defences, wringing with difficulty a precarious subsistence from incessant labour, sullenly yielded to a yoke which they could not shake off, and commended themselves (such was the phrase) to the protection of a lord; till a complete change having thus been operated in the opinions of men, and consequently in every relation of society, a new order of things was consummated, in which the honours and security of service became more anxiously desired than a needy and unsafe freedom; and the alods being finally surrendered, to be taken back as *beneficia*, under mediate lords, the foundations of the royal, feudal system were securely laid on every side.—Kemble, *The Saxons in England*, vol. i. p. 184.

The very curious and instructive dialogue of Ælfric numbers among the serfs the *yrðling* or ploughman,¹ whose occupation the author nevertheless places at the head of all the crafts, with perhaps a partial exception in favour of the smith's.—Ibid. p. 216.

Mr. C. H. Pearson also says not:

Not only were slaves increasing, but freemen were disappearing. The ceorl is never mentioned in our laws after Edward the elder's time. If he became the villan of a later period, he was already semi-servile before the Norman conquest. If he passed into the freeman,² sometimes holding in his own right, and sometimes under a lord's protection, the class did not number 5 per cent. of the population at the time when Domesday was compiled, was virtually confined to Norfolk and Suffolk, and had not even a representative in the counties south of the Thames. It is evident that the bulk of the Saxon people was in no proper sense, and at no time free. Even the free in name were virtually bound down to the soil with the possession of which their rights were connected, and from which their subsistence was derived; . . . the idea that any man might go where he would, live as he liked, think or express his thoughts freely, would have been repugnant to the whole tenour of a constitution which started from the Old Testament as a model, preserved or incorporated the traditions of Roman law, and regarded the regulation of life as the duty of the legislator.

¹ This should be compared with the second extract from *Havelok* below.

² Had he not always been free?

The mention of *villan* brings us to the Conquest¹ and to Domesday-book. On every page of the latter *villani* are mentioned, and the articles of enquiry for the composition of it show that the enquiry into the population and property of each district "was conducted by the king's barons, upon the oaths of the sheriff of each county, and all the barons, and their French-born vassals, and of the hundredary (reeve of the hundred), priest, steward, and *six villeins of every vill*," &c. (Heywood, p. 290, note). The question for us is, are we to take as free men or not these *villani*, who were to help in settling what "served for centuries as the basis of all taxation, and the authority by which all disputes about landed tenures and customs were decided," who were to state "on oath what amount of land there was in the district, whether it was wood, meadow, or pasture, what was its value, what services were due from its owners; and generally the numbers of free and bond on the estate" (Pearson, i. 374).

The arguments of Serjeant Heywood for the identity² of the *villein* with the *ceorl* or *twi-hynde man* seem to me very strong indeed; and Mr. Pearson tells me that in the earlier use of the word *villanus*, the first which he knows,—namely, that in the preamble to the Decree of the Bishops and Witan of Kent about keeping the peace under Athelstan, which speaks of *Thiuni, Comites, et Villani*,—he thinks that "villan" means "ceorl" very literally.

Serjeant Heywood first shows that the *Textus Roffensis*, in explaining a passage from the *Judicia Civitatis Lundonie* like that quoted above from the Anglo-Saxon Laws³ "makes it

¹ See name *villanus* Serjt. Heywood does not meet with it in any of the documents till about the time of Edward the Confessor, William the Conqueror, and Henry the first. Among the Saxons were many words for persons engaged in husbandry as *ceorl*, *carl*, *se-men*, *geneats*, *theng*, *thengmen*, &c., but the proper designation for a villan has not been ascertained.—Pp. 290-1. But see next paragraph above.

² The learned says we must understand with the reservation that while the majority of the *ceorl* class had been in the position of *villani*, they were distributed in the different

ranks of society as freemen, soemen, and perhaps in some cases bondmen and cottars. It must be remembered that the *Rectitudines Singularum Personarum* use the word *villanus* to translate the Saxon *geneat*, and that the word *ceorla* does not occur in the whole document.

³ De gentis et legis honoribus. Fuit quondam in legibus Anglorum ea gens et lex pro honoribus, et ibi erant sapientes populi honore digni, quilibet pro sua ratione, comes et *colonus*, thanus et rusticus (*ceorl* and *ceorl*, *theng* and *thengmen*).

Et si *colonus* tamen sit, qui habeat integras quinque hydas terre, ecclesiam et culinam, turrin sacrain (*bell hus*) et

relate to villan and not to ceorls (L. *coloni*), whence we may infer that the author considered them as the same persons" (*Dissertation*, p. 185). He next shows that the eighth law of William the Conqueror, which makes the were of a villan only 100 shillings, was probably wrongly transcribed; and that the seventieth law of Henry I. expressly defines the free twihind as a villan:—"the were of a twihind, that is, a villan, is five pounds: *twyhindi, i. villani, wera est IV lib'*;"—and the 76th law classes the twihinds among the free men. Also that

in other parts of the laws, villans are ranked with ceorls and twihinds. Moreover the weres of a cyrlisc man & [that is, or] a villan are expressly mentioned, and required to be regulated in the same manner as that of a twelfhind.¹—*Heywood*, p. 295.

Another proof may be adduced from their being liable to the payment of reliefs which never were called for from the servile class. When, therefore, provision was made in the laws of William the Conqueror for the exaction of a relief from every villan, of his best beast, whether a horse, an ox, or a cow, we must conclude that, at the time of compiling those laws, namely, about four years after the Conquest, a villan was a freeman,

and this notwithstanding the concluding words of the law, *et postea sint omnes villani in franco plegio*, which must be taken as confirming an old truth, for the payment of one relief—which villans before the Conquest had paid—could not have turned an unfree man into a free one. Serjeant Heywood adds:

Another powerful argument in favor of the supposition that villans ranked among freemen, arises from the consideration that, unless this had been the case, the bulk of the population of England must have been found in the servile class. We cannot imagine that the farmers, who held at the payment of rent, either in money or kind, could be so very numerous as to furnish victuals for the armies which were collected, provide members for all the tythings, and crowd the public assemblies which were held for judicial purposes. But upon the demesne lands of almost every lord, villans might be found, and if they were admitted to bear the name, and partake of the privileges of freemen, and rank with ceorls or twihinds, the difficulty vanishes (p. 300).

atrii sedem (*burhgeat setl*) ac officium distinctum (*sunder note*) in aula regis, ille tunc in posterum sit jure thani (*th/gen rihtas*) dignus.—*Heywood*, p. 184. *Text. Hoff.* 46 has for *colonus* of the above, *villanus*. "Et si *villanus* ita crevisset sua probitate, quod pleniter

habere quinque hidas de suo proprio allodii &c. *ib.* p. 185.

¹ Eodem modo per omnia *de cyrlisci vel villani* wera fieri debet secundum modum suum, sicut de duodecies centeno diximus.—*Ll. Hen.* i. 76; *Wilkins*, 270, in *Heywood*, p. 295 n.

Professor Pearson looks on the villans as 'bond upon bond land,' and as to the numbers of them and the freemen and the population generally at Domesday, gives Sir Henry Ellis's and Sir James Macintosh's calculations as follows :

We may probably place at 'the population' at rather over than under 1,500,000, a number which may seem small but which was not doubled till the reign of Charles II., six hundred years later. Respecting the actual survey, we find about two thousand persons who held immediately of the king (E 1490, M 1599) or who were attached to the king's person (M 326), or who had no holding, but were free to serve as they would (M 213). The second class, the free upon bond-land, comprised more than 50,000, under-tenants or *mesne lords* (E 7171, M 2369), burghees (E 7968, M 17,105), soc-men (E 20,972, M 25,444), freemen, holding by military service, or having been degraded into tenants to obtain protection, (E 14,284); and ecclesiastics (E 964, M 1564). The largest class of all was the *villeins*. Of these villans (E 108,407, M 102,704), and bordars,¹ or cottars (E 80,922, M 80,320), make up the mass, about 200,000 in all. They were bond upon bond-land, that is to say, their land owed a certain tribute to its owner, and they owed certain services to the land; they could not quit it without permission from their lord. But they were not mere property, they could not be sold off *à la volée*, into service of a different kind, like the few slaves who still remained in England, and who numbered roughly about 25,000.

The large number of the middle classes, and the small number of *villeins* are points in this estimate that deserve consideration. It is clear that the conquest did not introduce any new refinement in servitude. In a matter where we have no certain data, all statements must be made guardedly; but the language of chroniclers and laws, and the probabilities of what would result from the anarchy and war that had so long devastated England under its native kings induce a belief that the conquest was a gain to all classes, except the highest, in matters of freedom. In Essex the number of freemen positively increased, and the change may probably be ascribed to the growing connection with Flanders, as we find sheep multiplying on the great estates, and with the change from arable to pasture-land fewer labourers would be required. The fact that the large and privileged class of *mesne lords* was especially numerous in two counties, Norfolk and Suffolk, in which a desperate revolt had been pitilessly put down, seems to show that existing rights were not lightly tampered with. In Bedfordshire, however, the soc-men were degraded to serfs, probably through the lawless dealing of its Angevine sheriff, Raoul Taillebois, and the county accordingly fell off in rental beyond any other in

¹ Hoveden draws a distinction between the villans and bordars, saying

that, who are generally mentioned after them in Domesday.

England south of Humber, though it had enjoyed a singular exemption from all the ravages of war.

The concluding paragraph of the foregoing extract is printed because in it is, for me, pointed out the true cause of the villan's hardships, of the exactions of which his class so bitterly complained, the character of the Norman baron, and his power over his dependants. The thirtieth law of Henry I. speaks in moderated phrase the spirit of the earlier time. It calls the villans with the *cocseti* and *pardingi* (probably bondmen inferior to the villans) *hujusmodi viles vel inopes personæ*, declares them disqualified to be reckoned among judges, excludes them from bringing any civil suits in the county or hundred courts, and refers them, for the redress of injuries, to the courts of their own barons (Heywood, p. 291).¹

And it is (I believe) precisely because Edward I. made a resolute attempt to break down this power of the barons over their villans,² which must have often been awfully abused,—and not only tried to, but did to some extent substitute his own judges' court for the barons' one³—thereby rescuing many a villan from a bondman's fate; it is for this reason that he is the hero of our ballad of *John de Reeve*. Not only for the long shanks with which he strode against Wales, or the hammer he wielded against Scotland, was the first king who conceived and fought for the unity of Great Britain dear to the villans of

¹ Villani vero, vel cocseti vel pardingi vel qui sunt hujusmodi viles vel inopes personæ, non sunt inter legum judices numerandi, unde nec in hundredo vel ccmitatu pecuniam suam, vel dominorum suorum forisfaciunt, si justitiam sine judicio dimittant, sed summonitis terrarum dominis inforcietur placitum termino competenti, si fuerint vel non fuerint antea summoniti cum secuti jus æstimatis.—*Il. Hen. i. c. 30*; *Wilkins*, 248, in *Heywood*, p. 292.

² One of the first Acts of his (Edward I.'s) Administration, after his Arrival from the Holy Land, was to inquire into the State of the Demesnes, and of the Rights and Revenues of the Crown, and concerning the Conduct of the Sheriffs and other Officers and Ministers, who had defrauded the King and grievously oppressed the People (*Annals of Waverley*, 235) *Hundred Rolls*, i. 10. On the

inquiries of this Commission the first chapter of the Statute of Gloucester, relating to Liberties, Franchises and Quo Warranto (by what warrant the Parties hold or claimed) was founded (*ib.*).

³ See below, and also the Statute of 4 Edw. I. A Statute concerning Justices being assigned, called Rageman. "It is accorded by our Lord the King, and by his Council, that Justices shall go throughout the Land to inquire, hear, and determine all the Complaints and Suits for Trespasses committed within these twenty-five years past, before the Feast of Saint Michael, in the fourth year of King Edward; as well by the King's Bailiffs & Officers as by other Bailiffs, & by all other Persons whomsoever. And this is to be understood as well of outrageous Takings, and all Manner of Trespasses, Quarrels, and Offences done unto the King and others,

his own¹ and after times. His steps and his blows came nearer their homes, and did something to clear oppressors out of their path. When in easier days they could sing of olden time, they gave the long king a merry night with three of their kin, and remembered with gratitude England's "first thoroughly constitutional" sovereign. This I gather from one of a series of interesting articles on the "Rights, Disabilities, and Wages of the English Peasantry" in the new Series of the *Law Magazine and Review*. But I am anticipating.

In the time of Edward I. bondage was looked upon as no part of the common law; it existed by sufferance and by local usage, and was recognised, but only barely tolerated by the law. The law was on the side of freedom. A leaper or land-loper, as a fugitive was called, could rarely be recovered in a summary manner; if he chose to deny his bondage, the writ of *niefty* did not give the Sheriff authority to seize him; the question of his condition had to stand over until the *Assize*, or had to be argued in the Court of Common Pleas.—*Law Mag.* 1862, vol. xiii, p. 38-9.

We need not attribute a long range of foresight, or very enlightened views of freedom, to the counsellors of Edward I. Their resistance to villenage was instinctive rather than deliberate. Villenage in their eyes appeared to be a consequence of those powers of local jurisdiction which had been indispensable in former times on account of the weakness of the central power, but were no longer wanted since the central power had become truly imperial. The same landlords who claimed a right to keep their dependents in bondage, usually claimed some degree of judicial power; they claimed to have a more or less extensive cognizance over crimes committed, and criminals arrested within their precincts. Such a claim could only rest upon prescription; any such pretension not

mentioned in the Inquests heretofore found by the King's command, as of Trespasses committed there. And the King willeth, that the Barons of the People (*pour le service d'el peuple*) and speedy execution of Justice. That the Complaints of every man be heard before the aforesaid Justices & determined, as well by those as without, according to the Articles annexed unto the same Justices; And also to be understood as well within the same as without. Also the King willeth that the same Justices do hear and determine the Complaints of those who complain of Matters done by others contrary to the King's Statutes, or of what concerneth the King as the people. See also the Statutes of

Gloucester or *Quo Warranto* of 6 Edw. I.

"And the Sheriffs shall cause it to be commonly proclaimed throughout their Balliwicks, that is to say, in Cities, Boroughs, Market towns, and elsewhere, that all those who claim to have any Franchises, by the Charters of the King's Predecessors, Kings of England, or in other manner, shall come before the King, or before the Justices in Eyre, at a certain day and place, to show what sort of Franchise they claim to have, and by what Warrant."

¹ I do not forget the groans of "The Song of the Husbandman" (temp. Edw. I.) printed in Wright's *Political Songs* for the Camden Society.

supported by immemorial usage would soon be upset by the King's attorney. The general Government struggled hard to extend its jurisdiction, to extinguish the private courts, to bring as many cases as possible before the Courts at Westminster, and before the Justices in Eyre. The private courts were not abolished, but gradually superseded. After all that the lords could do to keep their villeins from Assizes, villeins constantly became jurors, and bond-lands were constantly drawn into the King's Courts, and were thus in the way to be drawn into freeholds. Perhaps every circuit of the judges emancipated a number of bondmen.—*Ib.* p. 40.

In seeking for the light in which the Norman baron would regard his Saxon villans, I think that Mr. Thomas Wright¹ is justified in his adduction of the following instances,

The chronicler Benoit (as well as his rival Wace) extols Duke Richard II. for the hatred which he bore towards the agricultural or servile class: "he would suffer none but knights to have employment in his house; never was a villan or one of rustic blood admitted into his intimacy; for the villan, forsooth, is always hankering after the filth in which he was bred."—p. 237,

þe þridde cumeð efter, & is
wurst fikelare, ase ich er seide:
vor he preiseð þene vuele, &
his vuele deden, ase þe þe seið to
þe knihte þet robbeð his poure
men, "A, sire! hwat tu dest
wel. Uor euere me schal þene
cheorl pilken & peolien: nor
he is ase þe wiði, þet sprutteð
ut þe betere þæt me hine ofte
cropped."

The third flatterer cometh
after, and is the worse, as I said
before, for he praiseth the wicked
and his evil deeds; as he who
said to *the knight that robbed his
poor rassals*, "Ah, sire! truly
thou doest well. For *men ought
alwais to pluck and pillage the
churl*; for he is like the willow,
which sprouteth out the better
that it is often cropped.

—*Ancren Riwele* (? ab. 1230 A.D.) p. 87, Camden Soc. 1853 (quoted in part by Wright).

and in referring to those most interesting Norman-French satires on the villans that M. Francisque Michel published, and which contain such passages as the following:

Que Diex lor envoit grant meschief,
Et mal au cuer, et mal au chief,
Mal ès bouche, et pis ès dens,
Et mal dehors, et mal dedens . . .
Et le mal c'on dist ne-me-touche,
Mal en oreille, et mal en bouche!

(*Des XXIII Manières de Vilains*, Paris, 1833, p. 12.)

¹ Paper on the political condition of
the English Peasantry during the

Middle Ages, in *Archæologia*, vol. xxx.
p. 205-44.

"Why should villans eat beef, or any dainty food?" inquires the writer of *Le Despit au Vilain*; "they ought to eat, for their Sunday diet, nettles, reeds, briars, and straw, while pea shells are good enough for their every-day food. . . . They ought to go forth naked, on bare feet in the meadows to eat grass with the horned oxen. . . . The share of the villan is folly, and sottishness and filth; if all the goods and all the gold of this world were his, the villan would be but a villan still."—*Wright*, p. 238.¹

Though Mr. Wright's conclusion as to "the condition of the English peasant or villan during the 12th, 13th, and 14th centuries" may be exaggerated, yet much truth in it there must be:

Tied to the ground on which he was born in a state of galling bondage, exposed to daily insult and oppression, he served a master who was a stranger to him both by blood and language. The object of his lord's extortions, frequently plundered with impunity, and heavily taxed by the king, he received in return only an imperfect and precarious security for his person or his property. The villan was virtually an outlaw; he could not legally inherit or hold "lordship," and he could bring no action, and, as it appears, give no testimony in a court of law. He was not even capable of giving education to his children, or of putting them to a trade, unless he had previously been able to obtain or purchase their freedom, which depended on his own pecuniary means, and on the will and caprice of the lord of the soil.

All Norman barons were not brutes of the Ivo Taillebois² type, but I look on it as certain that the bitter cry of the villans which reaches us from the pages of the old chroniclers and writers is not a mere bit of rhetoric, but speaks what the villans and poor really suffered and felt.

I also look to the generations immediately succeeding the conquest for the growth of the legal view of villanage and its consequences which is stated by Littleton (ab. 1480 A.D.) and

¹ "The property needed for a Norman villan to marry on, see the tract *Le Despit au Vilain* (xiiith secle) Paris 1463.

² He was one of the most cruel and cruel-minded who ever defaced the earth. He used to make the poor kneel to serve him on bended knee, and he would burn their houses, and sell their cattle, and eat his bull-tongues from their mouths. With diabolical cruelty he made them incapable of work by breaking their limbs and backs;—

and as the Chronicle declares, "he twisted, crushed, tortured, tore, imprisoned and excruciated them." See also Henry of Huntingdon's account of Robert de Belesme, Earl of Shropshire. "He preferred the slaughter of his captives to their ransom. He tore out the eyes of his own children, when in sport they hid their faces under his cloak. He impaled persons of both sexes on stakes. To butcher men in the most horrible manner was to him an agreeable feast." (*Farrar*.)

Coke, among others, from Bracton, Fleta, &c. and which justified any amount of rapacity and exaction on the part of the feudal superior. There were two classes of villans, 1. *regardant*, attached to the soil of a manor, and sold with it like a cowshed or an ox, but seemingly not liable to be removed from it, though Littleton's words allow the removal; 2. *in gross*, landless, and attached to the person of a lord, and saleable or grantable to another lord, like a chattel.

Littleton translated (ed. 1813). § 181. Also there is a villein regardant, and a villein in gross. A villein regardant is, as if a man be seised of a manor to which a villein is regardant, and he which is seised of the said manor, or they whose estate be both in the same manor, have been seised of the villein and of his ancestors as villeins and neifs¹ regardant to the same manor, time out of memory of man. And villein in gross is where a man is seised of a manor, whereunto a villein is regardant, and granteth the same villein by his deed to another; then he is a villein in gross, and not regardant.

§ 172. Tenure in villenage, is most properly when a villein holdeth of his lord, to whom he is a villein, certain lands or tenements according to the custom of the manor, or otherwise at the will of his lord, and to do his lord villein service, as to carry and recarry the dung of his lord out of the city, or out of his lord's manor, unto the land of his lord, and to spread the same upon the land, and such like.

Or as Coke puts it, fol. 120 *b*.

He is called regardant to the mannour, because he had the charge to do all base or villenous services within the same, and to gard and keepe the same from all filthie or loathsome things that might annoy it: and his service is not certaine, but he must have regard to that which is commanded unto him. And therefore he is called regardant, *a quo præstandum servitium incertum et indeterminatum, ubi scire non potuit vespere quale servitium fieri debet mane, viz. ubi quis facere tenetur quicquid ei præceptum fuerit* (Bract. li. 2, fo. 26, Mir. ca. 2, sect. 12) as before hath beene observed (vid. sect. 84).

He says also at fol. 121 *b*.

Things incorporeall which lye in grant, as advowsons, villeins, commons, and the like, many be appendant to things corporeall, as a mannour, house, or lands.

As illustrations of the truth and the working of these legal

¹ A woman which is villein is called a *neif*, § 186.

doctrines, take the following instances out of many. About 1250 A.D., says Mr. Wright in *Archæol.* vol. xxx, quoting Madox's *Formulare Anglicanum* 318-418,

The abbot and convent of Bruerne sold "Hugh the shepherd, their naif or villan of Certelle, with all his chattels and all his progeny, for 4*s.* sterling;" and the abbot bought of Matilda, relict of John the physician, for 20*s.*, "Richard, son of William de Estende of Linham, her villan, with all his chattels and all his progeny;" and for half a mark of silver, a villan of Philip de Mandeville "with all his chattels and all his progeny."

Early in Henry III. (1216-72 A.D. his reign) Walter de Beauchamp granted by charter "all the land which Richard de Grafton held of him, and Richard himself, with all his offspring." . . . In 1317 Roger de Felton gave to Geoffry Fonne certain lands, tenements &c. in the town and territory of Glanton, "with all his villans in the same town, and with their chattels and offspring."

We may also note the dictum of Cowel's *Institutes*: "Villaines are not to marry without consent of their patrons."—*W. G.'s translation*, 1651, p. 24.

But the sharpest pinch of the matter lay in the theory—and practice often, I do not doubt—that all the villan's goods were his lord's,¹ that whatever the lord took from him, he had no remedy against the lord for.

Sect. 189, fol. 123 b. Also, every villein is able and free to sue all manner of actions against everie person, except against his lord, to whom he is villeine.

On which Coke says:

For a villeine shall not have an appeale of robberie against his lord, for that he may lawfully take the goods of the villeine as his own. 1 Edw. 3, 32; 11 Hen. 4, 93; 1 Hen. 4, 6; 29 Hen. 6, tit. 17. And there is no diversitie herein, whether he be a villein regardant or in grosse, although some have said the contrary.

And look at what early book you will,—Homilies, Political Songs, Robert of Brunne², Chaucer, Gower, &c.—if it touches the subject at all, you are sure to find the lords' and their servants' arbitrary extortions complained of and reproved.

Before quitting this branch of the subject it may be well to quote on it the words of the editor of Domesday, Sir Henry

¹ See the extract from Chaucer, p. 100.

² See the quotation from his *Handlyng Synne* below.

Ellis. After a longish quotation from Blackstone's Commentaries upon the villani, he says (*General Introduction to Domesday Book*, vol. i. p. 80):

There are, however, numerous entries in the Domesday Survey which indicate the Villani of that period to have been very different from Bondmen. They appear to have answered to the Saxon Ceorls, while the Servi answered to the Deowas or Esnen. By a degradation of the Ceorls and an improvement in the state of the Esnen, the two classes were brought gradually nearer together, till at last the military oppression of the Normans thrusting down all degrees of tenants and servants into one common slavery, or at least into strict dependance, one name was adopted for both of them as a generic term, that of *Villeins regardant*.

The next questions are, how long were the words *bonde* and *bondman* used for the villan class; and when did their bondage cease; or at least, did it continue, and if so, with what amelioration did it continue, up to the time when our ballad may be supposed to have been written?

As the names require extracts, the two questions may be treated together.

Archdeacon Hale, writing of the land and villans of the Priory of St. Mary's, Worcester, in or about 1240 A.D. says:

The quantity of land in villenage in each manor being fixed, and the quantity of labour due from it fixed also, it follows that the lords of manors were not arbitrary masters who had unlimited power over the person and property of these tenants. There is, however, too much reason to believe that, taking into account the labour of various kinds to which the holder of a small quantity of villan land was liable, he paid what was equivalent to a high rent. His position as a holder of land, which would descend to his family, was superior to that of the modern labourer; and yet he might not be better off in a pecuniary point of view. His place in society was marked also by the obligation to give "*Thac et Thol, auxilium et merchet, et in obitu melius catallum.*" (*Thac* was "Pig-money, a payment made by the villans to the lord in the autumn for every pig (the sows excepted), of a year old one penny, and under the year a halfpenny. *T'hol*, the Penny paid by the villans for licence to sell a horse or ox." *Hale*, p. xx, xli. On *Thol*, see also p. lii.)

This fixity of rent, and Professor Rogers's pleasant view of things, make one side of the question; the legal power of the lord over all his villan's property, and the exactions out of him complained of by preachers, poets, and writers, the other.

In *Layamon* the word *bonde* is used once, in the de-

scription of the treacherous slaughter of Vortiger and his companions by Hengest and his:

Earlier text, 1200-20.

þer was of Salesburi
an oht *bond* icumen;
and mochele mæin clubbe
he bar on his rugge.

Later text, bef. 1300.

þar was a *bond* of Salusburi,
þat bar on his honde
ane mochele club,
for to breke stones.

The earlier text Sir F. Madden translates:

There was a bold *churl*¹ of Salisbury come; he bore on his back a great strong club.

In one of a series of interesting articles on the "Rights, Disabilities, and Wages of the Ancient English Peasantry," in the *Law Magazine and Review*, New Series, xi. 259, &c., I find at p. 263, under the date of 1279 A.D.

At the same place [Mollond at Castle Camps, in the south-eastern corner of Cambridgeshire] there were several [27] tenants, [four of whom are women,] described as *Bondi*, bondmen.² One of them [i.e. each, except 12 who held in couples] held 16 acres of land in villenage. It does not appear that he paid any mail or gable. He reared a goose and a hen, worth 3d., 20 eggs worth $\frac{1}{2}$ d., and a quarter of oats worth 12d. He worked for the lord twice a week from Michaelmas to Pentecost, and thrice a week from Pentecost to Michaelmas, and ploughed nine acres in the year. It is plain that this man was an operative tenant.³

Havelok the Dane comes next, and in it the bondman is the peasant or ploughman:

Thider komen bothe stronge and wayke;
Thider komen lesse and more,
That in the borw thanne weren thore;
Champouns, and starke laddes,
Bondemen with here gaddes,
Als he comen fro the plow;
There was sembling inow:

(ed. Madden, p. 39, l. 1012-1018.)

Another drem dremede me ek,
That ich fley over the salte se
Til Engeland, and al with me
That euere was in Denemark lyues,

¹ *Churl* is used in the book in the sense of *man*.

² *Bondi*, who might be freemen. The language between the Customary and the *Rolls*.

³ *Havelok* tenet xvi. acres
of land, & dat j. sucum et j.

gallinam, & valent iij d.; xx. ova que valent obolum [$\frac{1}{2}$ d.], & j. quarterum avenæ quod valet xij d., & facit a festo Sancti Michaelis usque Pentecostam, etc. — *2 Hundred Rolls* (ed. 1818), 425, col. 1.

For bondemen and here wipen
 And that we k on in England
 A wipen a wipen my hand
 And bondemen y and the —

(The same, p. 50, l. 1304-1311.)

In the *Song of the Hæstingian*, of the reign of Edward I. (1272-1307 A.D. in Wright's *Political Songs*, Camden Soc. p. 150, *bond* represents the "peasant" class.

Thus we pluck the pure, and pyketh ful clene,
 The ryche rayneth wipeneth eyn ryht;
 As helle and as helle lough fol lene,
 Thus biddynge of baylys such harm beth hight.
 Men of religioun we haþ hem ful bene.
 Barren and leche, the clere and the knyght.

(MS. Harl. 2253, leaf 64.)

In 1297, taking that as Robert of Gloucester's date, he says of William the Conqueror and his 'high men':

Hii to-draweth þe sely *bond* men, as wolde hem hulde ywys.—
 ii. 370.

which the latter reading gives as

Hii tormenteth hure *tenaunter*, as hulde hem they wolde.

Again in one of the *Lives of Saints*, said to have been written by Robert of Gloucester, is this passage:

If a *bondeman* hadde a sone: to clergie idrawe,
 He ne scholde, without his loverdes leve: not icrowned beo.
 (ab. 1306-10 A.D. *Life of Becket*, l. 552.)

Robert of Brunne, in the lifelike sketch which he gives us of the England—or, at least, the Lincolnshire—of 1303, as he tells the men of his day of their sins, of course does not forget the bondman and his lord, of course remembers the poor:

Blessyd be alle poorē men,
 For God almyȝty loueþ þem.
 (*Handlyng Synne*, p. 180, l. 5741-2.)

One tale that he tells shows a certain independence on the part of a bondman, and I therefore take that first, from the *Handlyng Synne*, p. 269-70. In a Norfolk village a knight's house and homestead (manor) were near the churchyard, into which his herdsmen let his cattle, and they defiled the graves. A *bonde man* saw that, was woe that the beasts should there go, went to the lord, and said, "Lord, your herds-
 men do wrong to let your beasts defile these graves. Where

men's bones lie, beasts should do no nastiness." The Lord's answer was "somewhat vile," "A pretty thing indeed to honour such churls' bones! What honour need men pay to such churls' livid bodies?" And then the bonde-man said him words full well together laid:

The lord that made of earth-e, earls,
Of the same earth made he churls:
Earls might, and lordes stat, (strut)
As churles shall in earth be put,
Earls, churles, all at ones; (once)
Shall none know your, from our, bones.

Which reproof the lord took in good part (few would have done so, says Robert of Brunne ¹), and promised that his beasts should no more break into the churchyard.

But still there is evidence enough in the *Handlyng Synne* that if a lord wanted a bondman's wife or daughter, he would not only carry her off, but brag of it afterwards (p. 231, l. 7420-7); and as to the treatment of the poor by their superiors, Robert of Brunne asks—he is not here translating Wadington—

Lord, how shul þese robbers fare,
Þat þe pore pepyl pelyn ful bare,—
Erls, knyghts, and barouns
And oþer lordynges of tounes,
Justyces, shryves and baylyuys,
Þat þe lawes alle to-ryues,
And þe pore men alle to-pyle?
To ryche men do þey but as þey wylle.—

(p. 212, l. 6790-7.)

He goes on denouncing them who "pyle and bette many pore men," and contrasts their conduct with that of Dives to Lazarus, whom Dives did not rob of gold or fee,

He dyde but lete an bounde hym to:
Ye ryche men, weyl wers ȝe do!
Ye wyl noun bounden to hem lete,
But, ȝe self, hem *ste* and *bete*.
He ne dyde but wernede hym of hys mete;
And ȝe robbe al þat ȝe mow gete.
Ye are as lyues þat wyl naghte ȝgue;
And wers: for ȝe robbe þat þey [the poor] shulde by lyue.
(*Handlyng Synne*, p. 213, l. 6812-19.)

In a previous passage the lords' arbitrary exactions from

þey are þat fewe lordes now
þat turne a wile so wel to prow;
But wher ȝe þe hem any skylle,
Myȝte ȝe apen þey wylle.

Lordynges,—þyr are ynow of þo;
Of gentyl men, þyr are but so
[few].

men in bondage—or *vileynage* as Wadington has it—are expressly mentioned:

And ȝyf a lorde of a tounne
 Robbe his men oute of resounne,
 þoghe hyt be yn *bondage*,
 Aȝens ryȝt he doþe outrage.
 He shal so take þat he [the bondman] may lyue,
 And as lawe of londe wyl forȝyue;
 For ȝyf he take ouer mesure,
 Lytyl tymþe shal hyt dure.
 þoghe God haue ȝeue þe seynorye,
 He ȝaf hym no leue to do robborye;
 For god haþ ordeyned al mennys state,
 How to lyue, and yn what gate;
 And þoȝt he ȝyue one ouer oþer myȝt,
 He wyl þat he do hym but ryȝt.
 þys ys þe ryȝt of Goddys lokyng:
 ȝelde euery man hys owne þyng.
 But God takeþ euermore veniaunce
 Of lordys, for swych myschaunce,
 For swych robbery þat þey make,
 þat ofte of þe poure men take.

He then tells a tale of what a Knight suffered in Purgatory (or hell) fire, for robbing a poor man of a cloth, and winds up with the moral:

Certys þeste ryȝt wykkede ys . . .
 Namly¹ pore men for to pele
 Or robbe or bete wyþ-oute skyle.²

The next reference to the word in Stratmann's *Dictionary* is to *William and the Werwolf*, (better, *William of Palerne*: E. E. Text Soc. 1868, *Extra Series*,) of ab. 1340 A.D. l. 216.

do quickliche crie þurth eche cuntre of þi king-riche
 þat barouns burgeys & bonde³ & alle oþer burnes
 þat mowe wistly in any wise walken a-boute
 þat þei wende wistly as wide as þi reaume.

(*William and Werwolf*, p. 77, ed. Madden.)

In William of Malvern's⁴ *Vision of Piers Ploughman*, about 1362 A.D. we have:

¹ especially.

² reason.

³ Bonde, n. S. Bondsmen, villains; as opposed to the orders of barons and burgesses, 77.—*Glossary to the above*. But the *bonde* are still one of the three principal orders of men, as shown by the "other burnes" who are not worth specifying.—Skeat.

⁴ Mr. Hales's name for the author of the *Vision*, who is sometimes called Langland. As there is no real evidence for the name Langland, I prefer the vaguer title William of Malvern, though Malvern is only mentioned in the first of the poems of which the *Vision* is composed.

Barouns and Burgeis · and *Bonde-men* also
I see; in þat Semble.—(p. 6, l. 96, ed. Skeat.)

In Wright's edition of the *Vision*, l. 88, l. 2859 is—

And as a *bonde-man* of his bacon his berde was bidtraveled.

And part of the knight's duty is—

And misbeode þou not þi *bondemen* · þe beter þou schalt spede.
(Paa. vii. l. 45, Vernon Text, ed. Skeat, p. 76.)

In the third text of the *Vision* we read—

Bredmen and bastardes · and beggers children,
Ther bylongeth to labour · and lordes children sholde serven,
Eke God and good men · as here degree asketh

And eith, *bondemen* barnes · han be made bisshopes,
And barnes bastardes · han ben archidekoness;
And sopers and here sones · for selver han be knyghtes,
And lordene sones here laboreres.—(ab. 1380. *Vision of Piers Plowman*.
Whitaker's text. Passus Sextus.)

Mr. Skeat says that the various readings in the MSS. of the *Vision* show that *bondage* or *bondages* was used for *bondemen*, and that *bonde* is thus connected with the verb to *bind*. (Chaucer uses *bondemen* and *bondfolk*¹ as the equivalents of *churls* and *thralles* in his *Persones Tale*, *de Avaritia* (p. 282 ed. Wright, quoted below, p. 554–5), while in *The Frere's Tale* the use is of one bound :

Dispreith youre hertes to withstonde
The fend, that wolde make yow thral and *bonde*.²

The year 1394, or thereabouts, gives us that wonderful picture of a bondeman or ploughman whom its painter saw,

And furthermore, ther as the lawe
saith that temporal gowles of *bondfolk*
are the gowles of her lordes; ye, that
are to understonde the gowles of the
soul to defende hem in here righte,
and so to sette hem as to free hem.

¹ In the *Legend* on the Death of King
Edward III the phrase "bide her
word" is glossed "remain as their
captives."

² The *gawle* schip. I may remene

To the Chivalrye of this londe,
For the thei counten nout a lene.
For a France Ich understonde

Thei tok & slouȝ hem with heere
bonde

The power of France both smal
and grete,

And brouȝt ther Kyng hider to bide
her *bonde*.

And nou riȝt sone hit [the ship]
is forȝete.

Myrc's use of *bonde* is this:

Fyrst þow mooste þys mynne,
What he ys þat doth þe synne,
Wher hyt be heo or he,
Yonge or olde, *bonde*, or fre,
Pore or ryche, or in offys.

(Ab. 1430, Myrc, *Instructions for
Parish Priests*, p. 47.)

and which will not be out of the mind of anyone who has studied it:

And as y wente be þe waie · wepyng for sorowe,
 [I] seiz a sely man me by · op on þe plow hongen.
 His cote was of a cloute · þat cary was y-called,
 His hod was full of holes · & his heer oute,
 Wiþ his knopped schon · clouted full þykke;
 His ton toteden out · as he þe londe treddede,
 His hosen ouerhongen his hokschynes · on eueriche a side,
 Al beslombred in fen · as he þe plow folwede;
 Twey myteynes, as mete · maad all of cloutes;
 Þe fyngers weren for-ward · & ful of fen honged.
 Þis whit waselode in þe [fen] · almost to þe ancle,
 Foure roberen hym by-forn · þat feble were [worþen];
 Men myȝte reken ich a ryb · so reufull þey weren.
 His wiȝf walked him wiþ · wiþ a longe gode,
 In a cutted cote · cutted full heyȝe,
 Wrapped in a wynwe schete · to weren hire fro weders,¹
 Barfote on þe bare ijs · þat þe blod folwede.
 And at þe londes ende laye · a litell crom-bolle,
 And þeron lay a litell childe · lapped in cloutes,
 And tweyne of tweie ȝeres olde · op on a-no þer syde,
 And alle þey songen o songe · þat sorwe was to heren;
 Þey crieden alle o cry · a carefull note.

(*Pierce the Ploughman's Crede*, l. 420–441, ed. Skeat, 1867.)

Those last two lines sum up for me the English history of the English poor (as has been said elsewhere), it was "full of care."

Frater Galfridus, about 1440, has in the Promptorium

Bonde, as a man or woman, *Servus, serua*.
 Bondman . *Servus, nativus* [neif].
 Bondschepe . *Nativitas*: but Bondage . *Servitus*.

That the lord's power over his bondmen was a reality, and that he "frequently took advantage of his power to tyrannize, is proved by the example of Sir Simon Burley, the tutor of Richard II., who seized forcibly an industrious artizan at Gravesend, on the plea of his being his escaped bondsman, and, when his exorbitant demand was refused, threw him into the prison of Rochester Castle."—(Wright in *Archæol.* xxx. 235.) And that the Lord's power over his bondman existed into the 16th century is shown by the following extracts.²

¹ It is a wyues occupation, to *wynowe* all manner of cornes, to make malte, to washe and wrynge, to make hove, shere corne, and in time of neele to helpe her husbunde to fyll the mucke-wayne or dounge-carte, *dryue the plough*, to loode

hay, corne, and suche other. ? 1523. —Fitzherbert's *Husbandry*, ed. 1767, p. 92.

² Mr. Wright says, "We can trace these charters of manumission [of villains] down to a very late period. In 2

In 1519 among the Duke of Buckingham's payments in Prof. Brewer's *Calendar*, iii., Pt. i. p. 498, is—

25 March, to Walter Parker, 40*£*, "restored to him for a fine by him made to me, for that he was my *bondman*, and made free during his life, for that I gave him a patent."

In 1521 on

"The Duke's Lands . . at Caurs (in Wales) are "Many *bondmen* both rich and poor.—*ib.* p. 509.

In 1523 (?), Fitzherbert says :

Customary tenauntes/ are those that holde their landes of their lord by cople of courte role/ after the custome of the manere. And there may be many tenauntes with-in the same manere y^t have no coplees and yet holde be lyke custome and seruyce at the wyll of the lord. and in myne opinyon/ it began soone after the conquest/ whan Wylliam Conquerour had conquered this realme/ he rewarded all those that came with hym in his voyage royall accordyng to their degre. And to honourable men he gaue/ lordshippes/ maners/ landes/ and tenementes/ with all the inhabytauntes/ men and women dwelling in the same/ to do with them at their pleasure. And those honourable men thought y^t they must nedes haue seruauntes and tenauntes/ and their landes occupied with tyllage. Wherfore they pardoned the inhabytauntes of their lynes/ and caused them to do all maner of seruyce that was to be done/ were it neuer so vyle/ and caused them to occupye their landes and tenementes in tyllage and to ke of them suche rentes/ customes/ and seruyces/ as it pleased them to haue. And also toke all their goodes & catell at all tymes at their pleasure and called them their *boude men*. and sythe that tyme many noble men bothe spirytual and temporall, of their godly disposicion haue made to dyuers of the sayd *boude men* manumissions, and graunted them fredome and lybertie. and set to them their landes and tenementes to occupy/ after dyuers maners of rentes/ customes and seruyces, the whiche is vsed in dyuers places vnto this daye. how be it in some places the *boude men* contynue as yet/ the whiche me semeth is the grettest inconuenient that nowe is suffred by the lawe. That is, to haue any christen man bonden to another and to haue the rule of his body, landes and goodes/ that his wife, children and seruauntes haue laboured, for all their lyfe tyme/ to be so taken/ lyke as and it were extorcion or bribery. And many tymes

11. II. just before the peasants' insurrection John Wyard, or 'Alpsuch' married a female villan, and gives her, as a dowry, her goods and chattels, and the liberty of all her offspring: and

we have a charter of affranchisement by the priory of Beauvalle in 6 Hen. V. A.D. 1419, and another by George Neville, lord Bergueenny, as late as 2 Hen. VIII., A.D. 1511."

by colour therof/ there be many fre men taken as *bonde men*/and their landes and goodes taken fro them/ so that they shall not be able to sue for remedy: to prove them selfe fre of blode. And that is moost commenly: where the fre men have the same name as the *bonde men* haue/ or that his auncesters of whome he is comen/ was manumised before his byrthe. In suche cause there can nat be to great a punysshement. for as me semeth there shulde no man be bonde but to god/ and to his king and prince ouer hym. Quia deus non facit exceptionem personarum. For god maketh no excepcyon of any person.—Fitzherbert's *Boke of Surveyeng & Improumentes* Cap. xiii. fol. xxvi.

I do not carry these extracts further, because those that have been given—and they might be ten-folded with ease—sufficiently prove the reality of the hardships which the bondmen suffered, and that certain of these hardships were in being as late as Fitzherbert's time, about 1520. Vague talk that the doctrine of the law-books was never carried out in practice, that monkish writers exaggerated a molehill into a mountain &c., will not do in the face of the evidence that literature supplies. "Master Fitzherbarde" was not a sentimentalist, but a practical horsebreeder, farmer and surveyor,¹ and spoke of the bondmen's evils as he would speak of his broodmares' ailments. There is no need for us then to imagine—as Professor Rogers does, in his very valuable and interesting *History of Prices*, i. 81—a cause, of which no trace has come down to us, for Wat Tyler's rebellion. Cause enough, and to spare, there was in the condition of the men, if only that shown in their demand "that we, our wives and children, shall be free." Granted that the students of literature and charters alone get from them too dark a view of the state of the early poor,—as Mr. Wright may have done—yet we must declare that the student of prices on college lands alone gets a too rose-coloured view, and that the wrongs of the bondmen were real and deep; even Chaucer and Froissart witness it.

On this *bonde* and *bondeman* question I conclude then, though with much diffidence, and acknowledging the insufficiency of the evidence for some points: 1, that the *bonde* was originally free, that he was the Saxon ceorl or twihind, with a Danish name; 2, that if not partially before, yet wholly after, the Conquest, his class, or the greater part of it, became bondmen or villans, bond on bond-land; 3, that gradually they threw off their ser-

¹ It must be a mistake to identify him with Sir Anthony Fitzherbert.

vice and signs of bondage, taking the first decided step in advance in Edward I.'s time, the second and more decided one in Edward III. and Richard II.'s time; 4, that in 1520 the burden of bondage was still heavy. (It gradually disappeared,¹ except so far as our present copyhold fines and heriots represent it. Slavery was abolished by a statute of Charles II. The attempt to abolish it in 1526 proved a vain one. *Wright*.)

But our bondman was John *the Reeve*, though no special duties of his as Reeve are alluded to in the Ballad. On those duties in Anglo-Saxon times the reader may consult the references in Thorpe's *Index to the Ancient Laws*, vol. i., and section 12 of the *Institutes of Polity*, in vol. ii. p. 320-1. The office of Reeve was one that every villan was bound to serve, and although the *Law Magazine* says it was one which the villan rather declined and avoided,² it must have been one which, in later times at least, helped to fill its holder's pockets. The Reeve's duty was to manage his lord's demesne, to superintend the service-tenant's work on it, to collect the lord's dues and rent in money and kind, and submit his accounts yearly to the auditor. As the Sloane MS. *Boke of Curtesye* says of the greve or reve—

*Grewys, and baylys and parker,
Schone come to acountes euery yere
Byfore þo auditour of þo lorde onone,
Dat schulde be trew as any stone,
Yf he dose hom no ryȝt lele,
To a baron of chekker þay mun hit pele.*

(*Babees Book*, p. 318, l. 589-94.)

And as William of Malvern says—

The same seems to have lasted longer in Scotland than in England; see Jamieson's *Dictionary*, 4to, 1825, s. v. "bondman."

BONNAGE, *Bonnage*, *n.* The designation given to the services due by a tenant to the proprietor, or by a cottager to the farmer. (Used in Angus.)

The chief set of payments consisted of a sum, emphatically called *Bonage* or *bonage*. And these were exacted twice a week-time, in ploughing and sowing the proprietor's land, and in the carriage of his corn to the mill, and in harvest, in the carriage of the crop. *Agricultural History of Scotland*, p. 213.

The late abridgement of Jamieson gives "*Bondlay Warkis*, the time a tenant or vassal is bound to work for the proprietor."

¹ The chief incidents of base tenure which affected the villein's person are collected in one of Edward II.'s Year-books. (5 Ed. II.) They were, -1. The blood fine, or marriage ransom; 2. the talle or tallage, a variable charge, supplanted by regular taxation, unless it endured under the name of chevage; 3. the obligation of undertaking the office of reeve or bailiff, an invidious dignity which the villan rather declined and avoided.—*Law Mag. & Rev.* xiii. 41.

I make Piers the Plowman my procuratour and my reve,
And registrar to receyve.¹

Redde quod debes (v. ii. p. 411, ed. Wright).

And again—

Thanne lough ther a lord, and "by this light" seide,
"I holde it right and reson, of my reve to take
Al that myn auditour, or ellis my steward
Counseileth me bi hir acounte and my clerkes writyng.
With *spiritus intellectus* thei seke the reves rolles;
And with *spiritus fortitudinis* fecche it I wole after."

(*Vision*, ii. 423.)

Need one quote Chaucer's sketch of the Reeve—

Wel cowde he kepe a gerner and a bynne;
Ther was non auditour cowde on him wynne.
Wel wiste he by the drought, and by the reyn,
The yeeldyng of his seed, and of his greyn.
His lordes scheep, his neet, [and] his dayerie,
His swyn, his hors, his stoor, and his pultrie,
Was holly in this reeves governynge,
And by his covenant yaf the rekenynge,
Syn that his lord was twenti yeer of age;
Ther couthe noman bringe him in arrerage.
Ther nas baillif, ne herde, ne other hyne,
That they ne knewe his sleight and his covyne;
They were adrad of him, as of the deth.
His wonyng was ful fair upon an heth;
With grene trees i-schadewed was his place.
He cowde bettre than his lord purchace.
Ful riche he was i-stored prively,
His lord wel couthe he plese subtilly,
To geve and lene him of his owne good,
And have a thank, a cote, and eek an hood.
In youthe he lerned hadde a good mester;
He was a wel good wright, a carpenter.
This reeve sat upon a well good stot,
That was a pomely gray, and highte Scot.
A long surcote of pers uppon he hadde,
And by his side he bar a rusty bladde.

Our Reeve too has "a rusty bladde," rides a good horse, has a fair dwelling, and is "ful riche istored prively," but Hodgkin Long and Hob of the Lathe are "not adrad of him as of the deth." As he was the King's reeve and should have collected taxes² as well as dues and rents,³ he ought to have been a good scribe and summer-up, but the ballad does not read as if he was. His

¹ See the extract at the end of this paper, line 12 from foot.

² If Mr. Toulmin Smith be right in his view, p. 557 note below.

³ Toulmin Smith's *Parish*, p. 506, refers to a rentcharge paid to the King's reeve.

enemy is not the auditor, of whom we hear nothing, but the courtier or purveyor who could report his wealth to the King, and get leave, or take it, to put the screw on him. He sells his wheat (L. 144) to get it out of sight (?);—money could be more easily hidden;—and he has a thousand pounds and some deal more.

The supper of his pretended poverty—bean-bread, rusty bacon, broth, lean salt beef, and sour ale, may well have been bondman's food in Edward I.'s time, better than many got in Edward III.'s, as William of Malvern shows (*Vision*, Passus VII. l. 267–82, ed. Skeat, p. 88–9, text A); but could the supper of his actual wealth, boar's head and capons, woodcocks, venison, swans, conies, curlews, crane, heron, pigeons, partridges, and sweets of many kinds, have been ever Reeve's food then? I trow not. Chaucer's Frankeleyn couldn't have given a better spread in Richard II.'s time, and John Russell's Franklen in Henry VI.'s days (ab. 1450–60 A.D., say,) hardly exceeded it:

A Feste for a Franklin.

“**A** Frankleñ may make a feste Improbabilite,
brawne with mustard is concordable,
bakon serued with peson,

beef or moton stewed scrusable,
Boyled Chykon or capon agreable,
convenyent for þe secon;

Rosted goose & pygge fulle profitable,
Capon . Bakmete, or Custard Costable,
when eggis & crayme be geson.

þe firste stuffe of household is behoveable,
Mortowes or Russelle ar delectable
for þe second course by reson.

Than veal, lambe, kyde, or cony,
Chykon or pigeon roasted tendurly,
bakemetes or dowcettes with alle.

þen followynge frytours, & a leche lovely;
suche scruse in seoun is fulle semely
To serue with bothe chambur & halle.

Then appuls & peris with spices delicately
After þe terme of þe yere fulle deyntheithly,
with bred and chese to calle.

Spiced cakes and wafers worthily
with the bragot & methen, þus men may meryly
please welk bothe gret & smalle.”

(*Hubert Book*, p. 170-1.)

Edward I.'s order for his own coronation feast was 380 head of cattle, 430 sheep, 450 pigs, 18 wild boars, 278 fitches of bacon, and 19,660 capons and fowls (Macfarlane, *Cab. Hist.* iv. 11, referring to Rymer). Only in bacon, boar, and capons could the king have come up to his reeve. To what date then are we to bring the ballad down? I don't know, and, if the reason I have assigned for its being tacked on to Edward I. be the right one, I don't care; for the main point to me is its connection with him. But taking the ballad as it stands, the mention of the *Galliard* in it, l. 530, p. 579, shows that it was recast, if not composed, after 1541, when that dance was introduced. Also the Northern forms *baine*, l. 504, *gange*, l. 209, 343, 864, *strang*, l. 332, *seile*, l. 502, *ryke*, l. 263, *farrand*, l. 353, 358, &c., the present no-rhymes of *both* and *lath*, l. 623-4, 641-2, *arse* and *worse*, l. 668-9, *kneele* and *soule*, l. 806-7, &c., show that our version is an altered copy of a Northern original, or Northern copy. I say copy, because if *luthe* is the Anglo-Saxon *læð*, a division of the county peculiar to Kent, the scene of the ballad must have been Kent; but Chaucer's use of the word in its sense of barn, in his *Reeve's Tale*—

Why nad thou put the capil in the *lathe*?¹

and Brockett's in his *Glossary of North Country Words*,

Lathe or *Leathe*, a place for storing hay and corn in winter—a barn.

saves us from the necessity of supposing a double transformation of the ballad, though this would be authorised by the ascription of it to "the south-west country" in l. 909. The Northern saint sworn by in l. 744, St. William, Archbp. of York in the 12th century, tends to confirm the Northern origin, as does the "clerke out of Lancashire" who read the roll that contained the tale, l. 8-12.

¹ The *Promptorium* gives "Berne of lathe (or lathe l.), *Horreum*," p. 33, and Mr. Way says, "Lathe, which does not occur in its proper place in the *Promptorium*, is possibly a word of Danish introduction into the eastern counties," *Lade, horreum*, Dan. Skinner observes that "it was very commonly used in Lancashire." At p. 288 he also says that Bp. Kennett notices it also as a Lincolnshire word, and that Harrison,

speaking of the partition of England into shires and lathes, says "Some, as it were roming, or rouing at the name Lath, do saie that it is derived of a barn, which is called in Old English a *lath*, as they coniecture." "*Horreum est locus ubi reponitur annona*, a barne, a lathe. *Grangia*, lathe or grange.—*Ortus*. *Orreum, granarium, lathe*."—*Vocab. Roy. MS.*, 17, C. xvii. Way.

If asked to guess a date for the composition of the ballad, I should guess the earlier half of the 15th century, while for the recast of it I should guess the latter half of the 16th, or the former half of the 17th. The tradition embodied in it is, I doubt not, of the 13th century.

Let me add, before ending this long rigmarole,¹ that John the Reeve was a well-known typical personage, like Piers Plowman, &c., as is shown by the following extract from a discussion on the Real Presence in the Harleian MS. 207 :

[leaf 1],

Bonum est sperare in domino quem et sperare

[1532.]

The Banckett of Iohan the Reve. Vnto peirs ploughman. Laurens laborer. Thomlyn Tailyor. And hobb of the hille. with other.

[leaf 2]

[A] relacion maide. by hobb of the hille vnto Sir Iohan the pariche preste vpon A communicacion. Betwene. Iacke Iolie Servyngman of thone partie. And. Iohan the reve. Peirs plowghman. Lawrence Laborer. Thomlyn tailyor. And hobb of the hille of thother partie. Wherin the said Sir Iohan wold maike none Awnswer vnto he knewe the olde vecar mynde. the wiche saide vecar wrote lyenge in his bedd veray seeke. and delyuerde hys mynde in wrytynge. vnto his pariche preste. And the said prest delyuerd the same booke to hobb of the hille. counsellynge hym to learne it. wherebye he myght be more able to maike better Answers to suche light fellows if he chanced to here any suche Communicacion in tyme to come. Hobb of the hille said vnto sir Iohan .;. Good morow Sir Iohan .;. And he Answered .;. Good morrowe hobb .;. Hobb said .;. Sir Iohan I am veray glade of our metyng .;. For I am desirouse of your counsell in a weightie matter Sir Iohan said. Marie ye shalle haue the beste counsell that is in me .;. What is your matter Bie my faith Sir .; yesterdaie My master [leaf 2 b.] and Iohan the reve maid a feste And piers plewghman. Laurence laboror. And Thomlyn tailyor was at dyner at our house, And I serued them at dyner. And or the dyner was done. come in a Servynge man called Iacke Iolie. Went getherar vnto my ladie. For my master Iohan the reve was here this yeare : And when Iack[e] Iolie was sett downe. He demaunded whether we had any messe or no .;. And my master saide

¹ I ought to apologise for its shortness. It has been put together in great haste. Mr. Hales having been unfortunately unable to treat its subject, to which Part II has been kept back for months. Feeling obliged to say something on the question to excuse

the delay named, I have set down opinions, many of which, though hastily expressed, have not been hastily formed, as my long connection with working men and with Early English may guarantee.

we hadde, and trustede to haue .;. Than saide Iacke Iolie that we war blynded for wantt of teachynge. for it is plane ydolatrie to beleue *that* the bodie and bloude of criste ar in firme of breade and wyne ministrede in the alter, And for his purpose he Aleged Many Sayenges, As of Martyn luther. Eocolampadius. Caralstadij. Iohan Firtz Malangton, with many dyuerse other .;. Than peirs ploughman waxed woundrus Angrie. and called Iacke Iolie. fals heritike. Than my master desired them bothe to be content in his house. and to reason the matte^r gentlie. And thei warre bothe contente So to doo.;.

NOTES.



- p. xxx. "Evans, Pinkerton, Hurd, Ritson." Here *Hurd* is a mistake for *Herd*, who published two vols. of *Scottish Ballads*.—D. (= Alexander Dyce.)
- p. 1. *Cherry Chase*. See Mr. Maidment's comments on this "modern version" in his *Scottish Ballads*, 1868, i. 81.—F.
- that "explerth," quoth Richard Sheale, does not mean that Sheale was the author, but the scribe. So one of the *Piers Plowman* MS., (Harl. 3954) ends—good Herun, &c.—Skene.
- p. 2. - *That day* &c. In the "Complaynt of Scotland," which was not written before 1547, mention is made of the "Hunties of Chevet," and of "The perre and mongumrye met," as if these were the titles of two separate ballads. That these were two distinct ballads founded on the battle of Otterbourne, and known in Scotland by the above titles, is extremely probable; for though, in the Scottish ballad of the "Battle of Otterbourne" the line "The Percy and Montgomery met" occurs, the name of Chevet is never mentioned. Dr. Percy, in quoting the above line from the "Complaynt of Scotland," gives "That day, that day, that gentil day" as the following one, but that is, in fact, the title of another ballad or song. See *Rambaut. Musical Illustrations*, p. 1.
- ; 5 *Battle of Otterbourne*. See Mr. Robert White's full account of it, with an appendix and illustrations. London, 1857.—F.
- ; 6 l. 7 from *Text* for *Wold* read *Henry Bold*. Another edition says Mr. H. Parnock is a f.p. 8vo. of 39 pages. "Cherry Chase, a ballad, in Latin Verse by Henry Bold, accompanied by the original English Text London, Printed by Henry Bryer, Bridge St. Blackfriars, 1515."
- ; 8 l. 20 read *for* *backes*.—Ch. (= F. J. Child.)
- ; 11. l. 123 *lyons words*, beyond doubt.—Ch. *layd on lode* (= a load), as Skene explains, is, I think, certain.—Ch.
- ; 12. 143. "which struck," (as in *Old Ballads*, 1723) is certainly the reading.—Ch.
- ; 14. 180 *wary you left too full*: no doubt of *doleful*.—Ch.
- 17 *How Low with encompasid wings*. This version is very corrupt, and differs from the printed copy of 1649. See my edition of *Lovelace*, 1864.—Hazlitt.
- ; 20. 8 16 24, *enyes*. This is exactly the reverse of what the poet meant and wrote.—Hazlitt. The right burden is, "Know no such Liberty," but the 12th & last stanza has "Enjoy such Liberty."—F.

- p. 21. *Chorus*. See my *Contributions to Notes and Queries*. 3rd Series viii. 435, and Bell's edition of Waller.—Hazlitt.
- p. 24, l. 3. The Percy Society reprinted the edition of 1656, but imperfectly.—Hazlitt.
- p. 28, l. 13. *read* *reel'd*.—Ch.
- p. 30, In *Scots poems* &c. as Percy says, we find "Hollow, my Fancie:" but there are 17 stanzas and many differences. The last 9—including only the last of those in the MS. which is also the last in the *Scots Poems* copy—are said to have been "writ by Colonel Cleveland of my Lord Angus's regiment, when he was a student in the College of Edinburgh, and 18 years of age."—Ch.
- p. 35, l. 2. 1639 as the date of Carew's death is only conjectural.—H. (= W. C. Hazlitt.)
- p. 37, l. 6. 1731. This *C-Action* was printed in 1662, 8vo. and again, with some changes, in 1731, 2 vols. 12mo.—H.
- p. 38, l. 22. for *some* read *sinne* (the idea is that the Lower House sinnes when it *does* sit).—Ch.
- p. 39, note. Percy's *Lunsford* is of course a penslip for *Lunsford*. Sir Walter Scott, in a note to chap. xx. of *Woodstock*, gives another version of the 2nd verse of this Ballad, and an account of Lunsford, but there are mistakes in it. Scott's verse is—

The post who came from Coventry
Riding in a red rocket,
Did tidings tell, how Lunsford fell,
A child's hand in his pocket.

The same child-eating scandal is noticed in *Rump Songs*, pt. i. p. 65:

From Fielding and from Varasour,
Both ill-affected men;
From Lunsford eke deliver us,
That eateth up children.

The best account of Lunsford that I know is in *The Gentleman's Magazine*, vol. 106, pt. i. 350, 602; pt. ii. 32, 148; vol. 107, pt. i. 265. Cf. *Rushworth Hist. Col.*, vol. iii. pt. i. p. 459; Add. MSS. 1519 f. 26, 6358 f. 50, 5702 p. 118.

There is an engraving among the King's Pamphlets in the British Museum—I cannot give the press mark—representing Sir Thomas Lunsford at full length. In the background is a church in flames, and a soldier with a drawn sword pursuing a woman; a companion is catching another woman by her hair. Under the engraving are these lines:

I'll helpe to kill, to pillage, and destroy
All the opposers of the Prelacy.
My fortunes are grown small, my friends are less,
I'll venture, therefore, life to have redress;
By picking, stealing, or by cutting throates,
Although my practise cross the kingdom's votes.

- p. 45, l. 32, for *witt* read *woe*.—Ch.

- p. 50, *How fayre shee be*. The earliest appearance of this song of Wither's was in *A Description of Love*, 1620; then again it appeared at the end of *Faire Virtue* &c., 1622, unless the undated sheet in the Pepysian Library be older, which is more than possible.—Hazlitt.

- ; 52 l. 2. read *halldom* (halidom); Note the rhyme.—Ch.
 l. 3. omit *I*.—Ch.
- ; 53 l. 12. Percy is right, and Mr. Chappell wrong: the rhyme is with *braines*, not *square*.—Ch.
 l. 19. *drush*, for rhyme, as Percy suggests.—Ch.
 l. 25. drop *of*, hurts metre and sense: 'will you be the taster?' is the meaning.—Ch.
 l. 28. *Exus* = *Naxos* of course: 29, *coyle*, *rare*.—Ch.
 l. 28. *coyle* should be *coyle*: compare l. 2.—D.
 l. 34. for *of* read *on*.—Ch.
- p 54 l. 42. read *toward*: 50, *sword's*.—Ch.
 l. 54. read *Cynthia's fellow*, *Muses' deere*, i.e. (Diana's mate, darling of the Muses).—Ch.
- ; 55 l. 72. *grace*: some word like *care* is wanted.—Ch.
- ; 56. *The Green Knight*. Gascoigne the poet, when he was on service in the Low Countries, tells us that he acquired the nickname of *The Green Knight* under circumstances of a peculiar character.—Hazlitt.
- ; 63 l. 123. note, Percy's '*gas*' is wrong.—Ch.
 l. 123. *thy* should be *thee*: you can do nothing with the Sax. *þy*.—Ch.
 l. 146. 147. read *praye*, *blis*; (transpose the ; and ,).—Ch.
- ; 64 l. 163. he had *said* nothing), *qy. hele?* (i.e. so have I *hele*).—Ch.
- ; 65 note 4. read *Egilsson*: *braid* is well enough explained by the A.-Sax. *brædan*, here *grape*.—Ch.
- ; 67 l. 255. *kell*, i.e. caul, net-work for a lady's head. The note on this word is quite from the purpose. [So it is]. Compare—
 Fair be thy wives, right lovesom, white, and small:
 Chere be thy virgyns, lusty under *kellys*.
 London! thowe art the flowre of cities all.
 Dunbar. *Reliq. Ant.* i. 206.—F.
 The line describes *Bredbeddle's wife*, not Sir Gawaine: see it referred to in *Maline's Treasury*, to *Syr Gawayne*, under "*kell*."—D.
- ; 67 l. 226. *waght* = were sorry for, Sax. *hreivrian*.—Ch.
- ; 71 l. 340. *fores*, apparently from French *froisser*, clash, dash, &c.—Ch.
 l. 356 and note. How could "*beleene*" be right? To say nothing of l. 478, the rhyme required proves it to be wrong.—D.
- ; 72 l. 384. *A* seems to me more likely to be right.—Ch.
- ; 74 l. 420. the meaning can hardly be *proved* about Gawaine: *proved by* is *done through by*, performed by, I should say.—Ch.
- ; 75 l. 461. *thow* rightly explained in note. Icel. *þedr* has the same meaning as '*thou*' in G. Dong.: and so Sax. *þred*, found only in composition.—Ch.
- ; 76 l. 466. *thor* = sword, as in Sax. So l. 523.—Ch.
- ; 82 l. 68. "A heard them speake" should be "& heard *him* speake."—D. and Ch.
- ; 83 l. 75. *th* = thy.—Ch.

- p. 86, l. 177, *noe more*, read *noe moe*.—D.
- p. 88, l. 211, *some spending money*. The author must have written something like *money for spending*.—D. Read *money for spending*.—Ch.
- l. 214, *you heyre*, read *your heyre*.—D.
- p. 90, l. 273, drop *ȝ* (caught from l. 271 or 268); *thereto* makes sense.—Ch.
- p. 92, l. 336, for *said* read *had*.—Ch.
- p. 94, l. 399, *fone* should be *foe* (unless in the concluding line of the stanza *goe* be an error for *gone*).—D.
- l. 402, read *go[n]e*.—Ch.
- p. 98, l. 523, *other* = second: cf. l. 496.—Ch.
- l. 534, *soe bee*, read *soe beene*.—D.
- p. 99, l. 556, “for to his graue he rann” ought manifestly to be “for to his *masters* graue he rann”: compare l. 543.—D.
- l. 557, read *followed*.—Ch.
- p. 104, l. 693, *thither wold he wend*, ? read *thither wold he right*.—D.
- p. 108, l. 800, read *rest*.—Ch.
- l. 807, why not read *shivver*? *shimmer* makes no sense.—Ch.
- p. 111, l. 895, *noe more*, read *noe moe*.—D. and Ch.
- p. 112, l. 919, *in the crye*, an undoubted error for *in the stowre*.—D.
- p. 113, l. 964, *was past*, read *was gane*, or *gaen* (i.e. gone).—D.
- p. 117, l. 1048, read *with thee*.—Ch.
- l. 1067, I should understand *yerning* as eager, &c. It is very expressive of the noise of a dog who wants a thing very much.—Ch.
- p. 119, l. 1125, for *his heire*, read *is neire*.—Ch. I took it for *is here*.—F.
- p. 120, l. 1165, read *come*.—Ch.
- p. 122, l. 1202, *busled*, ? *bustled*, made a stir, made a “towre.”—Ch.
- l. 1207, read *fyery wood*?—Ch.
- p. 125, l. 1300, read *moe*.—Ch.
- l. 1305, *feelds*, certainly *fells*.—D.
- p. 128, l. 1403, *blithe*, read *blius* (i.e. quickly).—D.
- p. 132, l. 1496, *affrayd* should be *aghaste*—Copland's ed. having the right reading in l. 1494, *wonder faste*, and *brast* being the final word of l. 1500.—D.
- p. 133, l. 1528, *Sir Marrockes the hight*. If this be right, it means “they called him Sir Marrock”: but qy. *he hight* (i.e. he was called)?—D. Why not, *he hight*?—Ch.
- p. 136, *Guye and Amarant*. This is a portion of *The Famous Historie of Guy Erle of Warwicke*, &c., by S. Rowlands; and I cannot but think that Mr. F. mistakes the nature and intention of it. Rowlands is evidently imitating the serio-comic romance poetry of Italy, a kind of writing which has been popular in that country, from Pulci down to Fortiguerra.—D.

26. I do not understand note 3, "torn out &c."—Ch. Page 253 of the MS. was torn out, Percy said, to send *King Estmere*, which was on it, to press.—F.

27. l. 46, *recovers* = *recovers his*, of course.—Ch.

28. l. 92, *this coward art*, read *this coward act*.—D.

29. l. 125, (probably) *den[a]yd*.—Ch.

45. l. 2. *Rhe*. "The Duke of Buckingham's Manifestation of Remonstrance, with a Journal of his Proceedings in the Isle of Ree, 1627, 4to." An unhappy View of the whole Behaviour of my Lord Duke of Buckingham at the French Island called the Isle of Rhee, discovered by Colonel William Fleetwood, an unfortunate commander in that untoward service, 1648. This most fierce and prejudiced impeachment of an expedition, ill planned and unhappily terminated, is reprinted in the fifth volume of the *Somers Collection of Tracts. Lowndes. The Expedition to the Isle of Rhe*, by Edward, Lord Herbert of Chertbury. Edited by Lord Powis for the Philobiblon Soc. 1860.—F.

47. *King and Miller*, the first known edition was imprinted at London, by Edward Alde [circa 1600].—Hazlitt.

48. l. 2, read *the Reeve*.—Ch.

55. l. 188, read *a bottle*.—Ch.

60. l. 1. *for is* read *It is*.

l. 2. *for differre* read *different*.

62. l. 13. } 60,000 is evidently the right reading, as the metre shows.—Ch.
63. l. 72 }

66. l. 57. *and last*, read *at last*.—D.

72. the last line of notes, *harms* should be *harms*.—D.

l. 125 In Rymer, ix. 317-18, is Robert Waterton's petition to be repaid the ransoms of the Duke of York, and the prisoners (1) Count de Ewe, (2) Arthur de Bretagne, (3) le Marechall Buchecaud, Perron de Lupe, and Count de Sesse. These 3, at s. 23, 4d. a day, and other travelling expenses. At p. 334, Rymer, ix, are "Beds, curtains, &c. for the Dukes of Clarence and Burion, at Eltham, the Tower of London, Westminster, Windsor, and diverse other places." p. 360 is, de Domino de Lyne, prisonaris.

74. *Conscience*. Compare *The Booke in Meter of Robin Conscience*, ? about 1550, and Alde's edition before 1600, printed in Halliwell's *Contributions to Early English Literature*, 1849, and with 4 additional stanzas in Hazlitt's *Early Popular Poetry*, iii. 221. Compare also *A piece of Friar Bacons Prophecies*, 1604, (Percy Society, 1844,) Lauder's poem on *The Nature of Scotland bricking the Intertainment of virtuous men that be com to the King, and Martin Parker's Robin Conscience, or Conscienceable Poem. His Progress thorow Court, City, and Countrey: with his bad entertainment at each severall place. Very pleasant and merry to bee read. Written in English by M. P.*

Charitie's cold, mens hearts are hard,
And most doores against Conscience bard.

London: 1635. 8vo. 11 leaves. *Bodleian*. (Burton's Books.) *Hazlitt's Hand-*

86. 49 read *accede*.—Ch.

p. 188, l. 104, *sore* should be dropped and the line not indented: *sore* is evidently caught from the line above.—Ch.

p. 190, Harl. MS. 4843 (paper). Article 11 is "Anno Domini millesimo cccxvi die Martis, in vigilia Lucæ Evangelistæ, hora Matutina ix. commissum fuit bellum inter Anglos et Scotos non longè a Dunelmia, in loco ubi nunc stat crux vulgariter dictus Nevillcrosse" Poema rhythmicum, [leaf] 241. *Harl. Catal.*

p. 191, l. 2, hearken to me a litle [while?].—Ch.

p. 199, l. 245, read *brother*, ("to the King of ffrance" is a marginal gloss).—Ch.

l. 245, &c., *brothers* should be *brother*; and the words *to the King of ffrance* is a gloss crept into the text.—D.

p. 200, last line but two of note, for 63-6 read 63-8. (Durham Feilde is likely enough by the author of Flodden Field).—Ch.

p. 201, See the "Discendants from Guy, Earl of Warwick; i.e. of the family of Arden of Parke-Hall in Com. Warwic. who were indeed descended from the Great Turchil, who lived at the time of the Conquest." Harl. MS. 853, leaf 113. Mr. Halliwell in his *Descriptive Notices of Early English Histories*, p. 47-8, says of the story of Guy: "This tale was dramatized early in the 17th century, and Taylor mentions having seen it acted at the Maidenhead of Islington." "After supper we had a play of the life and death of Guy in Warwicke, played by the Right Honourable the Earle of Darbie his men." *Pennilesse Pilgrimage*, ed. 1630, p. 140." Dr. Rimbault prints the tune of the ballad at p. 46-7 of his *Musical Illustrations*, from the Ballad Opera of "Robin Hood," performed at Lee and Harper's Booth in 1730. The ballad, he says, "was entered on the Stationers' books, 5th January, 1591-2."—F.

p. 202, l. 37, *the grave* is a ridiculous blunder for *the cave*.—D.

l. 47, *ingrauen in Mold* should be *ingrauen ins tone*. Here the scribe repeated by mistake the word *Mold* from the first line of the stanza.—D.

p. 203, last line but 4, read "Mangertoun."—Ch.

p. 203, l. 5 from foot. *Nephew to the Laird of Mangertoun* (misprinted *Margertoun*). This reference to the nephew of the Lord of Mangerton, the chief of the Armstrongs, leads to the inference that the circumstances on which the ballad is founded had occurred previous to the rescue of William Armstrong of Kinmont, as Sir Richard Maitland was born in 1496, and died at the advanced age of ninety, on the 20th of March, 1586. Jock, in 1569, gave protection to the Countess of Northumberland, after the unfortunate rising and defeat of her husband and the Earl of Westmoreland, when they were both compelled to fly from England. After an unsuccessful attempt to take refuge in Liddesdale, they were compelled to put themselves under the protection of the Armstrongs of the Debateable land. The Countess, who did not accompany them, her tire-woman and ten other persons who were with her, were unscrupulously despoiled by the Liddesdale reivers of their horses, so that the poor lady was left on foot at John of the Side's house, a cottage not to be compared to many a dog-kennel in England." Maidment's *Scottish Ballads*, i. 182-3. Maidment also gives the ballad of *Hobbie Noble* at p. 191, showing how he was betrayed into the hands of his enemies by the Armstrongs, whose Jock he had rescued.—F.

p. 204, l. 4, *he is gone*, read *he is gane* or *gaen* (i.e. gone).—D.

l. 6, (of Maitland) read *ane* for *and*.—Ch.

p. 217, l. 14, *has received*, read *had received*.—D.

p. 222, l. 126, *face* seems to be an error for *eye*.—D.

l. 126, . after "yea."—Ch.

p. 222, l. 214, for *land* read *man*? (Percy has *laird*, but that reading is not likely in this English ballad).—Ch.

p. 225, note 5, "and *delend*." Perhaps so; but in old ballads *and* is sometimes redundant.—D.

p. 237, l. 222, *soe fast runs*, read *soe fast rinn*.—D.

p. 242, l. 62, *with speares in brest*. This, of course, should be *with speares in rest*.—D. (?—F.)

l. 64, . after "flight."—Ch.

p. 279, *Bowie off Bednall*. There are several plays on this subject. The earliest is *The Blind Beggar of Bednal-Green, with the merry humor of Tom Strowd the Norfolk Yeoman*, as it was divers times publicly acted by the Princes Servants. Written by John Day, 1659, 4to. The latest was by my friend Sheridan Knowles.—D.

p. 282, l. 56, for *shinne*, read, as in the next stanza, *shoone*.—D.

p. 237, l. 25, *pin*. I prefer *pin* as a corruption of *point*, as in "He's but one pin above a natural." Cartwright. Cf. our use of *peg*.

The calendar, right glad to find
His friend in merry *pin*.

John Gilpin.—Skeat.

p. 286, l. 42, *wedded*. Surely the context, "gaule" and "greene" and "black," shows that "*wedded*" should be "*watchet*" (i. e. pale blue).—D. (? woaded.—F.)

; 312, l. 13, *sonne*. Here, to be consistent, we must read *sonne[s]*.—D.

; 315, l. 70, "*scarlett and redd*," a blunder for "*scarlett redd*."—D.

; 319, l. 200, *giusts*, of course, "*giusts*" should be "*giufts*" (gifts).—D.

; 222 l. 30 "it is now but a *sigh* clout, as you may see." The note on this line is strangely wrong. "*A sigh clout*" is a clout for *sighing* (or, more properly, *ewing*), i. e. straining milk.—D. I only know *siling* for straining.

; 223, l. 22, for *Lay*, ? read *he laines* (i. e. conceals).—D.

; 241, *Sir Eglamore*. "Sir Eglamore" must have been originally written in Northern rather than in Southern English, as appears from internal evidence. We find innumerable rimes which are no rimes, but which become so at once when translated into a Northumbrian dialect. Is it not clear that such rimes as *taket* and *goeth* should be *tais* and *gais*? That for *tane* and *bane* we should read *tane* and *bane*? So, too, *rore* (riming to *were*) ought to be *reir*. *Druck* and *cliffes* should be *driffis* and *cliffis*. *Drew* and *loughe* should be *druch* and *leuch*. *Abide* must be *abuid*, if it is to rime with *maide* (or *maids*). And finally, as a crucial instance, it is almost impossible to believe that the four words in stanza 75—*pace*, *rose*, *was*, and *cast*—were not intended to rime together in the forms *pas*, *ras*, *was*, and *cas* or *cas*. To take one more case, for *rest*, *trust*, *cast*, and *last* (st. 4), read

rest, trist, kest, lest. And when we further observe that the rimes may be thus emended throughout the *whole poem*, surely the inference that it was of Northern origin becomes almost a certainty.—Skeat.

p. 343, l. 65, for “& show your hart & love,” ? read “—hart and love *her to*”?—D.

p. 344, l. 93,
p. 345, l. 132,
p. 352, l. 320,
p. 355, l. 403, } In these lines, *more* should be *mair*.—D.

p. 359, l. 505, for *home* read *hame*.—D.

p. 367, l. 702, *head*. There the rhyme determines that for “head” we must substitute the A.-S. *heved*.—D.

p. 369, l. 766, for *yeelde* read *yode* (not, as Percy says, *yeede*).—D.

p. 369, *A Cauileere*. See Gervase Markham's chapter “Of Hawking with all sorts of Hawkes,” &c., in his *Countrie Contentments*, 1615, Bk. I, p. 87–97. “The pleasure of hawking . . is a most Princely and serious delight.”—F.

p. 373, l. 856, for *rose* read *rase*.—D.

p. 382, l. 1119, for *more* read *moe*.—D.

p. 384, l. 1117, for *went hee* read *hee gone*.

p. 387, note 1. As the true reading is undoubtedly “*man*,” why say anything about the meaning of “*May*”?—D.

p. 388, l. 1285, for *dwell* read *wend*.—D.

p. 390, *The Emperour and the Childe*, or Valentine & Orson. See Halliwell's *Descriptive Notices*, 1848, p. 29–30, as to the Romance, and the prose story.

p. 401, l. 12, “that *ginnye* his filly wold haue her owne will.” Here “*Ginnys*” is the name of “his filly.” If the MS. has “*grimye*,” it is an error.—D.

p. 419, l. 106, for *young* read *ying*.—D.

p. 432, l. 439, “& said, Cozen will!
who hath done to you this shame?”

Here “will” sounds very ridiculously, as if the 3 knights were using the familiar abbreviation of their cousin's name! Read undoubtedly (comparing Ritson's text of the passage),

“& said, Cozen *William*,
who hath done to you this shame?”—D.

p. 454, l. 1078, “both old & young.” } In both places “young” should be
p. 496, l. 2223, “both old and young.” } “*ying*.”—D.

p. 493, note 1. *Wivre*. See a drawing of one at p. 9 of the *Bestiaire d'Amour* of Richard de Fournival, Paris, 1860; and Mons. Hippeau's note at p. 103–4.—F.

p. 500, *Childe Maurice*. See R. Jamieson's notes to this ballad in his *Pop. Bal. and Songs*, i. 16–21.—F.

p. 206, l. 26, and *dryed it on the grasse*. Jamieson compares

Hom gan his sword gripe
Ant on his arm hit wye:
The Sarazyn he hit so,
That his hed fel to ys to.

Ritson's *Met. Rom.* vol. ii. p. 116.—F.

p. 206, l. 117, *wicked be my merry men all*. Jamieson compares with this the last 3 stanzas of Little Musgrave (i. 122, note): "Woe worth you, woe worth my merry men all," and says, "The same kind of remonstrance with those about him occurs in Lee's tragedy of 'Alexander the Great' after the murder of Clitus." Most men want to put their sins on other people's shoulders.—F.

p. 201, the extract from Lane's MS. Harl. 5243, is only his address to the reader, before his Poem on Guy.—F.

p. 206, l. 204, for *noone* read "*noone time*." (Compare, *ante*, p. 468, l. 1441,—

"*firo*: the hower of *prime*
till it was *euseneong time*.")—D.

p. 206, l. 200, for *there* read *there*.—D.

p. 241, l. 422. There is a church in Winchester called St. Swithin's, which is merely a large room over the archway of King's Gate, but it has no pretensions to the antiquity mentioned in your letter. The sword and axe of the giant were probably ordered to be hung up in the cathedral church, which was originally dedicated under the title of St. Peter and St. Paul; but the body of St. Swithin having been transferred from the churchyard into the sumptuous shrine built for its reception, the cathedral from thenceforth down to the time of Henry VIII. was distinguished by the name of *Saint Swithin*, and this is no doubt the church alluded to.—Walter Bailey.

p. 279, l. 530, *John de Reeve*. The mention of the *galliard* here, a dance not introduced into England till about 1541, confirms what the language shows, that our version of the poem is a late one.—F.

p. 202 l. 206, On *Chape*, see Wedgwood's Dict. i. 321.

Bishop Percy's Folio MS.

Ballads and Romances.



Chrup Chase :¹

THERE are two principal versions of this well-known ballad—an old, and a modern one. The copy preserved in the Folio is a slightly various form of the latter.

The oldest copy of the old version is preserved in a MS. in the Ashmolean Collection at Oxford. This was printed by Hearne, in 1719, in the Preface to his edition of *Gulielmus Neubrigiensis*. "To the MS. copy," says Percy, "is subjoined the name of the author, Rychard Sheale [expliceth quoth Rychard Sheale] : whom Hearne had so little judgement as to suppose to be the same with a R. Sheal, who was living in 1588." The general character of the language, if there were no other proof, proves that the ballad is of a much earlier date than 1588 ; but probably Hearne is right in identifying the subscribed "R. Sheale" with the well-known ballad-singer of that name, who flourished, and truly withered, in the reign of Queen Elizabeth. This Sheale was in some sort the last of the minstrels. There are

¹ In the printed Collection of Old Ballads, Vol. 1, p. 108, No. xiv. The headings in the Margin are transferred to the foot-notes) are taken from the second Edition printed at

Glasgow 8^{vo} 1747.—Which is remarkable for the wilful Corruptions made in all y^e Passages which concern the two Nations. P.

extant some lines of his, of very inferior merit, wherein he bewails his miserable condition. He narrates with many sighs and groans how he has been robbed, left destitute, and no man gave unto him. Certainly, if these lines are a fair specimen of his talents, one cannot wonder that he found the world somewhat cold. And certainly the author of those lines could never have written "The Hunting of the Cheviot." But he may have sung it many and many a time, and passed with many an audience for the author. And hence, perhaps, the subscription of his name to the Ashmolean copy. The ballad in his time was extensively popular. Sir Philip Sidney refers to it in a well-known passage (though, as Prof. Child suggests, it is not impossible that he may mean the "Battle of Otterbourne"), as commonly sung by "blind crowders." Many years before Sidney wrote his *Defence of Poetry*, the *Complaint of Scotland*, written in 1548, speaks of "The Huntis of Chevot," and quotes the line,

That day, that day, that gentill day,

which is apparently a memory-quotation, or perhaps a Scotch version of

That day, that day, that dredfull day.

This evidence of its popularity in the middle of the sixteenth century, coupled with the antiquity of the language (though much of that "antiquity" belongs to the dialect in which, rather than to the time at which, it was written), justify the assigning of the ballad to the fifteenth century.

This ballad is historically highly valuable for the picture it gives of Border warfare in its more chivalrous days, when ennobled by generosity and honour. The hewing and hacking lose their horrors in the atmosphere of romance thrown around them. And the main incidents of the piece are no doubt generally true.

Such fierce collisions as here represented must often have

occurred, and from the same cause here given. "It was one of the Laws of the Marches frequently renewed between the two nations, that neither party should hunt in the other's borders without leave from the proprietors or their deputies." This permission the high-spirited Borderer was not always disposed to ask. He did not care to beg for favours. He would make no secret of his purposed sport, so that if the warden of the March about to be trespassed upon chose to oppose him, he was not prevented from doing so by ignorance of his intention. In this way the proclamation of a hunting expedition across the Borders was in reality a challenge to a contest. An excellent illustration of the perpetual possibility of an encounter, which attended and recommended these defiant expeditions, is to be found in the *Memoirs of Carey, Earl of Monmouth*. Carey was Warden of the Marches in Queen Mary's time, and gives the following account :

"There had been an ancient custom of the borders, when they were at quiet, for the opposite border to send the warden of the Middle Marche, to desire leave that they might come into the borders of England, and hunt with their greyhounds for deer, towards the end of summer, which was denied them. Towards the end of Sir John Foster's government, they would, without asking leave, come into England and hunt at their pleasure, and stay their own time. I wrote to Farnehurst, the warden over against me, that I was no way willing to hinder them of their accustomed sports; and that if, according to the ancient custom, they would send to me for leave, they should have all the contentment I could give them; if otherwise, they would continue their wonted course, I would do my best to hinder them. Within a month after, they came and hunted as they used to do, without leave, and cut down wood, and carried it away. Towards the end of summer, they came again to their wonted sports. I sent my two deputies with all the speed they

could make, and they took along with them such gentlemen as were in their way, with my forty horse, and about one o'clock they came up to them, and set upon them. Some hurt was done, but I gave especial order they should do as little hurt, and shed as little blood as possible they could. They took a dozen of the principal gentlemen that were there, and brought them to me to Witherington, where I then lay; I made them welcome, and gave them the best entertainment I could; they lay in the castle two or three days, and so I sent them home, they assuring me that they would never hunt again without leave. The Scots king complained to Queen Elizabeth very grievously of this fact."

"Mr. Addison, in his celebrated criticism on that ancient ballad of Chevy Chase, *Spect.* No. 20, mistakes the ground of the quarrel. It was not any particular animosity or deadly feud between the two principal actors, but was a contest of privilege and jurisdiction between them, respecting their offices, as lords wardens of the marches assigned." Extract from the Report of Sir Thomas Carlton, of Carlton Hall, 1547, in Hutchinson's *History of Cumberland*, pp. 28-9.

The general spirit of the ballad then is historical. But the details are not authentic. "That which is commonly sung of the Hunting of Cheviot," says Godscroft, writing in his James VI.'s time, and apparently referring to a version of the ballad then circulating in Scotland, "seemeth indeed poetical and a mere fiction, perhaps to stir up virtue; yet a fiction whereof there is no mention, either in Scottish or English Chronicle." An event to which it might possibly refer according to Collins, in his *Peerage*, was the Battle of Pepperden, fought in 1436, as Hector Boethius informs us, "not far from the Cheviot hills, between the Earl of Northumberland, and Earl William Douglas of Angus, with a small army of about four thousand men each, in which the latter had the advantage. As this seems to have been a private conflict between these two great chieftains of the Borders,

rather than a national war, it has been thought to have given rise to the celebrated old ballad of Chevy Chase; which to render it more pathetic and interesting, has been heightened with tragical incidents wholly fictitious." But in any case these were great Border names. Percy and Douglas were typical chieftains. Moreover on the field of Otterbourne a Percy and a Douglas had fought fiercely together, man against man, under very similar circumstances. That field was much celebrated in Border poetry, and elsewhere. The ballad on the Hunting of the Cheviot,—borrowed largely from that on the Battle of Otterbourne,—was, in fact, in course of time believed to celebrate the same event. Observe these lines of it:

This was the Hontynge of the Cheviat;
 That tear began this spurn:
 Old men that knowen the grownde well yenough;
 Call it the Battell of Otterburn.

This attempt made at the identification of two actions is noticeable. We are afraid that the "old men" scarcely knew the ground well enough. Otterbourne is but some 30 miles from Newcastle. Douglas met Percy, the "Hunting" tells us, in Teviotdale. In a word, the two ballads represent two different features of the old Border life—the Raid and the defiant Hunt. But they had much in common, and so were soon confused together.

Of the battle of Otterbourne, fought in 1388, there are historical accounts in abundance—Fordun's, Froissart's, Holinshed's, Godscroft's. See *Minstrelsy of the Scottish Border*. Of the ballad concerning it—whose account is mainly accurate—indeed the facts somewhat trammel the poet's wings,—there are three versions: the English one, given by Percy in his *Reliques*, from a Harl. MS. in the earlier editions, from a more perfect Cotton MS. (Cleop. iv. f. 64) in the fourth, and two Scotch ones, to be found, one in the *Minstrelsy*, the other in Herd's *Scottish*

Songs. The differences between the English and Scotch versions are such as might be expected—are of a patriotic kind. The main difference between the two Scotch versions relates to the death of Douglas.

Of the versions of “the Hunting of the Cheviat,” that preserved in the Folio is, as we have said, the modernised one; not that heard by Sidney, who calls what he heard “the rude and ill-apparelled song of a barbarous age;” a description not applicable to the present version. When this modernisation was made, cannot be said exactly. “That it could not be much later than Queen Elizabeth’s time,” says Percy, “appears from the phrase ‘doleful dumps;’ which in that age carried no ill sound with it, but to the next generation became ridiculous. We have seen it pass uncensured in a sonnet that was at that time in request, and where it could not fail to have been taken notice of, had it been the least exceptionable [in “a song to the lute in Musicke” from the *Paradise of Daintie Devises*, 1596], yet in about half a century after, it was become burlesque. *Vide* Hudibras, Pt. i. c. iii. v. 95.” Its presence in the Folio MS. shows that it was not made later than the first half of the seventeenth century. It soon became the current version. Addison in his *critique* in the *Spectator* knows of no other. A comparison of it with the old versions will show, besides one or two verbal blunders, that much of its vigour has been lost in the process of translation.

Of all our ballads this perhaps has enjoyed the widest popularity, both North and South of the Tweed. This popularity has scarcely ever decayed. It was translated into rhyming Latin verses by a Mr. Wold of New College, Oxford, at the instance of Dr. Compton, Bishop of London, in 1685.

Vivat Rex noster nobilis,
Omnis in tuto sit;
Venatus olim flebilis
Chevino luco fit.

It circulated on many a broad sheet. It was eulogised in

he *Spectator* in Queen Anne's reign. It was printed wherever anything of the kind was printed in the succeeding years, when such things were held in but slight esteem. It is as it were the *Epic* of Border poetry.

GOD Prosper long our noble King,
our liffes & saftyes all !

[page 188]

a woefull hunting once there was
4 in Cheuy Chase befall.

A woeful
hunt was
held in
Chevy
Chase.

to drine the deere with hound and horne
Erle Percy took the way :
the Child may rue *that* is vnborne
8 the hunting of *that* day !

Earl Percy

the stout Erle of Northumberland
a vow to god did make,
his pleasure in the Scottish woods
12 3 sommers days to take ;

vowed to
kill Scotch
deer for
three days.

the cheefest harts in Cheuy C[h]ase
to kill & beare away.
these tydings to Erle douglas came
16 in Scotland where he Lay,

Douglas

who sent Erle Percy present word
he wold prevent his sport.
the English Erle, not fearing that,¹
20 did to the woods resort

said he'd
stop that
sport.

But Percy

went to his
hunt

with 1500 ² bowmen bold,
all chosen men of Might,
who knew ffull well in time of neede
24 to ayme their shafts arright.

with 1500
bowmen,

¹ this.—P.

² 2000.—P.

the Gallant Greyhound ¹ swiftly ran
 to Chase the fallow deere ;
 and on Monday they began his hunt. 28 ere ² daylight did appeare ;

 By noon 100 bucks are slain. & long before high noone thé had
 a 100 fatbuckes slaine.
 After dinner, they 32 then hauing dined, the drouyers went
 to rouze the deare ³ againe ;

 The Bowmen mustered on the hills,
 well able to endure ;
 theire backsids all with speciall care
 36 that they ⁴ were guarded sure.

 hunt again, the hounds ran swiftly through the woods
 the Nimble deere to take,
 and the hills echo their cries. 40 that with ⁵ their cryes the hills & dales
 an Eccho shrill did make.

 Percy Lord Percy to the Querry ⁶ went
 to veiwe the tender deere ;
 wonders whether Douglas will appear. 44 quoth he, " Erle douglas promised once
 this day to meete me heere ;

 " but if I thought he wold not come,
 noe longer wold I stay."
 with that a brane younge gentlman
 48 thus to the Erle did say,

 " There he is, " Loe, yonder doth Erle douglas come,
 hys men in armour bright,
 with 2000 men ! " 52 full 20 hundred ⁷ Scottish speres
 all Marching in our sight,

¹ greyhounds.—P.² when.—P.³ them up.—P.⁴ that day.—P.⁵ And with.—P.⁶ Quarry.—P.⁷ 15,00.—P.

"all pleasant men of Tinydale¹
fast by the riuer Tweede."

56 "O ceaze your sportts!"² Erle Percy said,
"and take your bowes with speede,

Percy calls
on his men

"& now with me, my countrymen,
your courage forth advance!
for there was neuer Champion yett³
60 in Scotland nor in france

to be brave;

"that euer did on horsbacke come,
& if my hap⁴ it were,
I durst encounter man for man,
64 with him to breake a spere."

he will fight
anyone,

man to man.

Erle douglas on his⁵ Milke white steede,
Most Like a Baron bold,
rode formost of his company,
68 whose armour shone like gold:

Douglas

[page 189]

"shew me," sayd hee, "whose men you bee
that hunt soe boldly heere,
that without my consent doe chase
72 & kill my fallow deere."

asks whose
men they are
that hunt

his deer.

the first man that did⁶ answer make
was noble Percy hee,
who sayd, "wee list not to declare,
76 nor shew whose men wee bee,

Percy

will not tell,

"yett wee will⁷ spend our deerest blood
thy cheyrest⁸ harts to slay."
then douglas swore a solempne oathe,
80 and thus in rage did say,

but will
fight for the
right to
hunt.

Douglas

declares

¹ met. of pleasant Tinydale. — P.

² They cease sport. — P.

³ For there was there a champion. — P.

⁴ As if my hap. — P.

⁵ a. — P.

⁶ man that first did. — P.

⁷ will we. — P.

⁸ the choicest. — P.

that one of
them must
die,

“ Ere thus I will outbraned bee,
one of vs tow shall dye !
I know thee well ! an Erle thou art,
84 Lord Pearcy ! soe am I ;

and as it
would
be wrong to
kill their
guiltlesse
men,

“ but trust me, Pearcy, pittye it were,
& great offence, to Kill
then any of these our guiltlesse ¹ men,
88 for they haue done none ill ² ;

he chal-
lenges Percy
to single
combat.
Percy
accepts.

“ Let thou ³ & I the battell trye,
and set our men aside.”
“ accurst bee [he !] ” Erle ⁴ Pearcye sayd,
92 “ by whome it is denyed.”

A squire,
Withering-
ton,
protests

then stept a gallant Squire forth,—
witherington was his name,—
who said, “ I wold not haue it told
96 to Henery our King, for shame,

that he'll
not look on
while Percy
fights :

“ *that* ere my captaine fought on foote,
& I stand looking on :
you bee 2 Erles,” ⁵ quoth witheringhton,
100 “ & I a Squier alone,

he'll fight
too.

“ Ile doe the best *that* doe I may,⁶
while I haue power to stand !
while I haue power to weeld my ⁷ sword,
104 Ile fight with hart & hand ! ”

The English
archers
shoot, and
kill 80 Scots.

Our English archers bend ⁸ their bowes—
their harts were good & trew,—
att the first flight of arrowes sent,
108 full foure score scotts ⁹ thé slew.

¹ harmless.—P.

² no ill.—P.

³ thee.—P.

⁴ he, Lord.—P.

⁵ Lords.—P.

⁶ that e'er I may.—P.

⁷ a.—P.

⁸ Scottish bent.—P.

⁹ they 4 score English.—P.

to drine the deere with hound & horne,
 danglas ¹ Bado on the bent;
 2 Captaines ² mosed with Mickle might,³
 113 their speres to abiners went.

they closed fall fast on enerye side,
 noe slacknes there was found,
 but ⁴ many a gallant gentleman
 114 lay gasping on the ground.

The four
 close,

and many
 are slain.

O Christ! it was great groene ⁵ to see
 how echo man chose his speres,⁶
 & how the blood out of their breasts ⁷
 115 did gush like water cleare! ⁸

Christ! it
 was sad to
 see.

at last these 2 stout Eries ⁹ did meet
 Like Captaines of great might;
 like Lyons moods ¹⁰ they Layd on Lode,¹¹
 116 the made a cruell fight.

Percy and
 Douglas

fight

the fought, vntill they both did sweat,
 with swords of tempered steels,
 till blood [a-]downe their cheekes like raine
 117 the trickling downe did feele.¹²

till their
 blood drops
 like rain.

"O yeeld thee, Pearcy!" ¹³ Douglas sayd,
 " & ¹⁴ infaith I will thee bringe
 where thou shall high advanced bee
 118 by lances our scottish King;

Douglas
 calls on
 Percy to
 yield.

¹ The Scotch Editor thinks this sh^d be
 Percy - P.

² a cap^t - P.

³ pride - P.

⁴ and - P.

⁵ great - P.

⁶ And likewise for to hear. - P.

⁷ The Crye of Men lying in their
 gore. - P.

⁸ And lying here & there. - P.

⁹ Lords. - P.

¹⁰ mov'd. - P. ? for woods, wild. - P.
 or 'the mood or pluck' of lions. - Skent.

¹¹ ? A.-S. *ladd*, a man; or for *blude*,
 loudly. - P. or (a) *load*, laid on heavily.
 - Skent.

¹² Until the blood like drops of rain
 They trickling down did feel. - P.

¹³ yield the Lord P. - P.

¹⁴ d. - P.

“thy ransome I will freely giue,
 & this ¹ report of thee,
 thou art the most couragious *Knight*
 136 [that ever I did see.²] ”

Percy will
 never yield
 to a Scot.

“Noe, Douglas ! ” quoth Erle³ Percy then, [page 190
 “thy profer I doe scorne ;
 I will not yeelde to any scott
 140 *that euer yett was borne !* ”

An English
 arrow

kills
 Douglas,

with *that* there came an arrow keene
 out of an english bow,
 who ⁴ scorke Erle douglas on the brest ⁵
 144 a deepe and deadlye blow ;

exhorting
 his men to
 fight.

who neuer sayd ⁶ more words then these,
 “fight on, my merrymen all !
 for why, my life is att [an] end,
 148 Lord Percy sees my ⁷ fall.”

Percy

laments
 over his
 dead foe ;

then leauing liffe, Erle Percy tooke
 the dead man by the hand ;
 who ⁸ said, “ Erle dowglas ! for thy ⁹ sake
 152 wold I had lost my Land !

a braver
 knight ne’er
 died.

“ O christ ! my verry hart doth bleed
 for ¹⁰ sorrow for thy sake !
 for sure, a more redoubted ¹¹ *Knight*,
 156 Mischance cold ¹² neuer take ! ”

¹ thus.—P.

² That ever I did see.—P.

³ Lord.—P.

⁴ which.—P. *scorke*, for *storke*, stroke,
 struck ; *skorke* means scorch ; see
skorche in Halliwell’s Gloss.—F.

⁵ to y^e heart.—P.

⁶ spake.—P.

⁷ me.—P.

⁸ And.—P.

⁹ life.—P.

¹⁰ with.—P.

¹¹ renowned.—P.

¹² did.—P.

[Part II]

5 parts { Sir Hugh Montgomery was in combat
 who, with a spear full of ire,
 well mounted on a galant steed,
 ran fiercely through the fight.

Montgomery

And ³ past the English archers all
 without all dread or fear,
 & through Eric Perreyes body then
 100 he thrust his hateful spear

Perreyes
Montgomery

with such a vehement force & might
 that his body he did pierce.
 the staff ran ⁴ through the other side
 120 a large cloth yard & more

Perreyes
Montgomery

thus ⁵ did both those knights fight
 whose courage none could match
 as English archers then perceived
 140 the Noble Eric was slain

Perreyes
Montgomery

he had [a] good bow in his hand
 made of a trusty tree
 as arrows of a cloth yard long
 160

shoots Mont-
gomery

through the
heart.

The fight
lasts all day.

Names of
the English
knights
slain.

Withering-
ton fights on
his stumps
when his
legs are cut
off.

Names of
the Scotch
knights
slain.

against Sir Hugh Mountgomerye ¹
his shaft full right ² he sett ;
the grey goose winge *that* was there-on,
184 in his harts bloode ³ was wett.

this fight from breake of day did last ⁴
till setting of the sun,
for when thé rung the Euening bell
188 the Battele scarce was done.

with ⁵ stout Erle Percy there was slaine ⁶
Sir Iohn of Egerton,⁷
Sir Robert Harcliffe & Sir William,⁸
192 Sir Iames that bold barron ;

& with Sir George & ⁹ Sir Iames,
both *Knights* of good account ;
& good Sir Raphe Rebbye ¹⁰ there was slaine,
196 whose prowesse ¹¹ did surmount.

for witherington needs must I wayle
as one in too full ¹² dumpes,
for when his leggs were smitten of,
200 he fought vpon his stumpes.

And with Erle dowglas there was slaine
Sir Hugh Mountgomerye,
¹³ & Sir Charles Morrell ¹⁴ *that* from feelde
204 one foote wold neuer flee ;

¹ then.—P.
² so right his shaft.—P.
³ heart-blood.—P.
⁴ did last from break.—P.
⁵ the.—P.
⁶ There is a dot for the *i*, but nothing more in the MS.—F.
⁷ Ogerton.—P.

⁸ Ratcliffe & Sir John.—P.
⁹ Sir George also & good.—P.
¹⁰ Good . . . Rabby.—P.
¹¹ courage.—P.
¹² doleful.—P.
¹³ d.—P.
¹⁴ Murray.—P.

Sir Roger Heuer of Harcliffe tow,—¹

his sisters sonne was hee,—

Sir david Lambwell well ² esteemed,

210 but saved he cold ³ not bee;

& the Lord Maxwell in like case ⁴

with Douglas he did dye; ⁵

⁶ of 20 ⁷ hundred scottish speeres,

212 scarce 55 did flye;

Of 2000
Scotch
scarce 55
were left;

of 1500 Englishmen

went home but 53 ⁸;

of 1500
English,
only 53.

the rest in Cheuy chase were slaine,

214 Under the greenwoode tree.

[page 191]

Next day did many widdowes come

their husbands to bewayle;

they washt ⁹ their wounds in brinish teares,

220 but all wold not ⁹ prevayle.

Next day
the widows
come,
and weep,

theyr bodies bathed in purple blood,

the bore with them away,

they kist them dead a 1000 times

224 ere the ¹⁰ were cladd in clay.

and carry
the corpses
off

to the grave.

the ¹¹ newes was ¹² brought to Eddenborrow

where Scottlands King did rayne,

that brave Erle Douglas suddainlyo

226 was with an arrow slaine.

¹ Sir Roger Murray of Harcliffe tow. — P.

² Lambwell. — P.

³ He could not. — P.

⁴ He was. — P.

⁵ He was slain. — P.

⁶ Of 2000 Scotch speeres

went home but 53,

Of 20,00 Englishmen

scarce 55 did flee. — P.

⁷ 15. — P.

⁸ MS. they washt they. — F. d. — P.

⁹ could not. — P.

¹⁰ when they. — P.

¹¹ These. — P.

¹² were. — P.

- King James
laments the
loss of
Douglas.
No such
captain has
he left. 232 “¹ O heavy newes ! ” *King James* can say,
“ Scotland may wittnesse bee
I haue not any *Captaine* more
of such account as hee ! ”
- King Henry
like tydings to *King Henry* came
within as short a space,
laments
Percy's loss ; 236 *that Percy* of Northumberland
in Chevy chase was slaine.²
- he has ⁵⁰⁰
as good still
left, 240 “ Now god be with him ! ” said our *King*,
“ sith it will noe better bee,³
I trust I haue within my realme
⁵⁰⁰ as good as hee !
- but he will
take ven-
grance
for Percy's
death. 244 “⁴ yett shall not Scotts nor Scotland say
but I will vengeance take,
& be revenged on them all
for braue Erle Percyes sake.”
- And he did
on Humble
Downe,
killing
Lords, and 248 ⁴ this vow the *King* did well performe
after on humble downe ;
in one day 50 *Knights* were slayne,
with Lords of great renowne,
- hundreds of
less account. 252 & ⁵ of the rest of small ⁶ account,
did many hundreds dye :
thus endeth the hunting in ⁷ Chevy Chase
made ⁸ by the Erle Pearcy.
- God grant
that strife
between
noble men
may cease ! 256 God saue our ⁹ *King*, and blesse this ¹⁰ land
with plentye, Ioy, & peace ;
& grant hencforth *that* foule debate
twixt noble men may ceaze !
ffins.

¹ Now God be with him, *cried* our king,
Sith will no better be !
I trust I haue &c.—P.
² Was slain in Chevy Chase.—P.
³ O heavy news, K. Henry said,
Engl^d can witness be.—P.

⁴ These 2 stanzas omitted in y^e Scotch
Edition.—P. See note, p. 1.—F.
⁵ Now.—P. ⁶ mean.—P.
⁷ of.—P. ⁸ led.—P.
⁹ the.—P. ¹⁰ the.—P.

When Love with unconfin'd.¹

LOVELACE'S songs were in great request in his day. They were set to music by popular composers of the time,—by Dr. John Wilson, by Mr. John Lanier, by Mr. Henry Lawes whom Dante was to give Fame leave to set higher than his Casella—and circulated widely in Royalist Society. Till 1649—the author was born in 1618—they led a scattered and wandering life. In that year they were gathered together and published in a volume entitled “*Lucasta, Epodes, Odes, Sonnets, Songs, &c. to which is added Aramantha a Pastorall, by Richard Lovelace, Esq.*” Meanwhile there were, no doubt, in vogue many versions of the greater favourites, more or less inaccurate. The copy of the exquisite song beginning “When Love with unconfin'd wings,” here printed from the Folio MS., is one of these.

Of all the Cavalier poets Lovelace is the most charming. He is a true cavalier; he is a true poet. The world, that has long turned away its ear from Cowley and Cleveland, still listens to his sweet voice. Are there any gems brighter than his song “to Lucasta on going to the Wars,” or that to “Althea from Prison”? How chivalrous the thought of them! How tremulously delicate the expression!

His life was full of sadness. The son of a Kentish knight, educated at the Charterhouse and at Gloucester Hall, Oxford,

¹ Written by Col. John Lovelace (i.e. Richard Lovelace). See Wood's *Athenæ*

Oxon. Vol. 2^d. Written by the Author when imprison'd.—P.

“the most amiable and beautiful person that eye ever beheld, a person also of innate modesty, virtue and courtly deportment, which made him then [at Oxford], but especially after, when he retired to the great city, most admired and adored by the female sex.” Thus physically endowed, thus happily circumstanced, he was yet crossed in love, and died in a state of destitution.

Lucy Sacheverell—the *Lux Casta* or *Lucasta* of his poems, from the nunnery of whose chaste breast and quiet mind he had fled to war and arms, that “dear” whom he loved so much because he loved honour more—misled by a report that he had died of wounds received at Dunkirk while commanding a regiment, of his own forming, in the service of the French king, became the wife of somebody else. The close of the civil war, in which he had devoted both his services and his fortunes to his king’s cause, found him beggared. His loyalist zeal got him twice into prison. “During the time of his confinement,” says Wood of the first imprisonment, “he lived beyond the income of his estate, either to keep up the credit and reputation of the king’s cause by furnishing men with horses and arms, or by relieving ingenious men in want, whether scholars, musicians, soldiers, &c.; also by furnishing his two brothers Colonel Franc. Lovelace, and Capt. Will. Lovelace (afterwards slain at Caermarthen) with men and money for the king’s cause, and his other brother called Dudley Posthumus Lovelace with monys for his maintenance in Holland to study tactics of fortification in that school of war.” “After the murther of King Charles I., Lovelace was set at liberty [from his second captivity], and having by that time consumed all his estate, grew very melancholy (which brought him at length into a consumption), became very poor in body and purse, was the object of charity, went in ragged cloaths (whereas when he was in his glory he wore cloth of gold and silver), and mostly lodged in obscure and dirty places, more befitting the worst of beggars and poorest of servants, &c. . .

He died in a very mean lodging in Gunpowder alley near Shoe-lane, and was buried at the west end of the church of St. Bride alias Bridget in London, near to the body of his kinsman, Will. Lovelace of Gray's Inn, Esq."—"Richard Lovelace, Esq.," says Aubrey, "obit in a cellar in Long Acre, a little before the restauration of his ma^{ty}. Mr. Edm. Wyld, &c., had made collections for him and given him money. . . . Geo. Petty, haberdasher, in Fleet Street, carryed XXs to him every Munday morning from Sir ——— Many, and Charles Cotton, Esq., for months, but was never repay'd." He died in 1658, and so was saved from experiencing Stuart gratitude. These accounts of his dismal indigence may perhaps be coloured. But there can be no doubt he ended in extreme poverty, in a sad contrast to the brilliancy of his early days.

The following song was written during his first captivity. He had been chosen by his county to present a Petition to the House of Commons "for the restoring of the king to his rights, and for settling the government." He presented it, and by way of answer was committed to the Gate House at Westminster. But his mind, serene and quiet, took his prison for a hermitage. His gaolers heard him singing in his bonds. Love with wings that brooked no confinement hovered near him. Brought by that chainless spirit the divine Althea came to visit him in his durance. She drew away the captive into a second captivity. With her fair hair she laid fresh bonds for him; she laid on new fetters with her eyes. But he revelled in these chains. Having freedom in his soul, angels alone that are above enjoyed such liberty.

WHEN Love with unconfin'd wings
 hovers within my gates,
 A ray divine Althea brings
 to whisper at my grates,

When my
 love visit
 my prison,

I am free
as a bird.

when I lye tangled in her heere
& fettered with her eye,
the burds *that* wanton in the ayre
8 enioyes¹ such Lybertye.

When I,
confined,
sing my
king's
goodness,

When, Lynett like confined, I
with shriller note shall sing
the mercy, goodnesse, maiestye
12 & glory of my kinge,
when I shall voice aloud how good
he is, how great shold bee,
the enlarged winds *that* curles the floods²
16 enioyes such Lybertye.

I am free as
the winds.

When I
drink with
boon com-
panions

to our cause,

When flowing cupps run swiftly round
with woe-allaying theames,
our carlesse heads with roses crowned,
20 our harts with Loyall flames,
when thirsty soules in wine wee steepe,
when cupps and bowles goe free,
ffishes *that* tyle in the deepe
24 enioyes such Lybertye.

I am as free
as a fish.

Though in
prison,

yet with a
pure soul

and free
love,

I am free as
an angel.

Stone walls doe not a prison make,
nor Iron barrs a cage,
the spotlesse soule an[d] Inocent³
28 Calls this an hermitage.³
if I haue freedome in my loue,
& in my soule am free,
angells alone *that* sores aboue
32 enioyes such Lybertye!

ffins.

[page 19]

¹ This final s and several others have
been marked through by a later hand.
—F.

² flood.—P.

³ These lines differ from the usual
reading.—Skeat.

Cloris.¹

SEVERAL collections of Waller's Poems appeared as early as 1645, while he was living in France. The first edition "corrected and publish'd with the approbation of the Author" came out in 1664. "When the Author of these verses," says the Printer to the Reader in this one, " (written only to please himself and such particular persons to whom they were directed), returned from abroad some years since, He was troubled to find his name in print, but somewhat satisfied to see his lines so ill rendered, that he might justly disown them, and say to a mistaking Printer, as one did to an ill Reciter, *male dum recitas, incipis esse tuum*. Having been ever since pressed to correct the many and gross faults (such as use to be in impressions wholly neglected by the authors) his answer was, That he made these when ill verses had more favour and escaped better than good ones do in this age, the severity whereof he thought not unhappily diverted by these faults in the impression, which hitherto have hung upon his Back, as the Turks hang old raggs (or such like ugly things) upon their fairest Horses, and other goodly creatures, to secure them against fascination; and for those of a more confident understanding (who pretend not to censure) as they admire most what they least comprehend, so his Verses (mained to that degree that himself scarce knew what to make of many of them), might that way at least have a title to some Admiration, which is no small matter, if what an old Author observes be true, that the

¹ An elegant old song written by Mr. Waller. See his Poems.—P.

um of Orators is Victory, of Historians Truth, and of Poets Admiration: He had reason, therefore, to indulge those faults in his Book whereby It might be reconciled to some, and commended to others." But the considerations expressed in this longwinded and somewhat confusing manner, were overcome by the importunity of the worthy Printer, and the Poet at last gave leave "to assure the Reader, that the Poems which have been so long and so ill set forth under his name, are here to be found as he first writ them, as also to add some others which have since been composed by him." The following song does not occur in this edition: nor in that of 1682, "the Fourth Edition with several Additions never before printed." It appears in that of 1711, "the eight edition, with additions," and no doubt in several of the preceding editions.

The song is a fair specimen of Waller's average style. It exhibits his faults, and his merits—his affectation, and strained gallantry, with something of his elegance and grace.

His life was not a noble one. He was not inspired by that spirit which enabled Lovelace to sing that

Stone walls do not a prison make. Nor iron bars a cage.

He lived from 1605 to 1687, from the year of the Gunpowder Treason to the year before the Revolution. He sat in Parliament, for various places, from his nineteenth year to his death, except from 1643 to the Restoration, in which period his connection with the Royalist Plot of 1643 suspended his public life.

*Cloris, I
must go,*

*or lose my
sight.*

CLORIS, farwell! I needs must goe!
for if with thee I longer stay,
thine eyes prevayle upon me soe,
4 I shall grow blynd & lose my way.¹

¹ Lines 2, 3, 4, are almost all eaten away by the ink of the title at the back.—F.

CLORE.

fame of thy bewty & thy youth,
amongst the rest me hither brought ;
but finding fame fall short of truth,
1 made me ¹ stay longer then I thought.

For I am engaged by word [and] othe
a servant to anothers will ;
but for thy love wold forfitt both,
12 were I but sure to keepe itt still.

But what assurance can I take,
when thou, fore-knowing this abuse,
for some [more ²] worthy lovers sake
14 mayst leave me with noe Inst excuse.

For thou wilt say it, "it was ³ not thy fault
that I to thee ⁴ vncconstant prone,
but were by mine ⁵ example taught
20 to breake thy othe to mend thy love."

Nee, Cloris, Nee ! I will returne,
& rayse thy story to that height
that strangers shall att distance burne,
24 & shce distrust thee ⁶ reprobate.

Then shall my love this Doubt displace,
& gaine the trust that I may come
& sometimes banquet on thy face,
28 but make my constant meales att home.

Though I
am be-
trothd,

I'd break
my troth if
I could
secure you ;

but how
could I ?

You'd hit
me, and

plead my
example as
your excuse.

No ! I'll go,
and praise
your beauty
from afar,

seeing you
sometimes
but loving
my own
love.

¹ my Qu.—P.

² more.—P. A may that precedes for
in the MS. is crossed out.—P.

³ = —P.

⁴ thou to me. Qu.—P.

⁵ One stroke too few in the MS.—P.

⁶ mee. Qu.—P.

The kinge enioyes his righ[ts againe.]¹

THIS song occurs in the *Roxburghe Collection of Ballads*, iii. 256, in the *Loyal Garland containing choice Songs and Sonnets of our late Revolution* (London, 1671, Reprinted by the Percy Society), in a *Collection of Loyal Songs*, in Ritson's *Ancient Songs*. Mr. Chappell, in his *Popular Music of the Olden Time*, ii. 434–9, gives the air to which it was sung, along with much information concerning it (which should be read), and nine more stanzas than are included in our Folio. It was written by Martin Parker, as appears from the following extract from the *Gossips' Feast or Morall Tales*, 1647: "The gossips were well pleased with the contents of this ancient ballad, and Gammer Gowty-legs replied 'By my faith, Martin Parker never got a fairer brat; no, not when he penn'd that sweet ballad, *When the King injoyes his own againe.*'" It was an extreme favourite with the Cavaliers.

Booker, Pond, Rivers, Swallow, Dove, Dade, and Hammond, were eminent astrologers and almanack-makers. See *Ritson*, and *Chappell*, ii. 437, note ^a.

<p>Who can foretell</p>	<p></p>	<p>WHAT Booker can prognosticate, consider[i]ng now the kingdomes state? I thinke my selfe to be as wise</p>
<p></p>	<p>4</p>	<p>as he that gaseth ² on the skyes; my skill goes beyond the depth of Pond ³ or Riuers in the greatest raine,</p>
<p>when the King will enjoy his own againe?</p>	<p>8</p>	<p>wherby I can tell <i>that</i> all things will goe well when the <i>King</i> enioyes his rights againe.</p>

¹ An old Cavilier Song.—P.

² gazeth.—P.

³ ponds.—P.

There is neither swallow, done nor dade,
 can sore more high, or deeper wade
 to shew a reason from the starres,
 12 what causeth these our ciuill warres.
 the man in the moone may weare out his shoo[ne¹]
 in running after Charles his wayne;
 but all is to noe end, for the times will not me[nd²]
 16 till the King enioyes his right againe.

No storyman
 can tell
 what causes
 our ciuill
 warre.

The times
 wvill mend
 till the King
 has his own.

Full 40 yeres his royall crowne
 hath bene his fathers and his owne,
 & is there any more nor³ hee
 20 that in the same shold sharrers⁴ bee,
 or who better may the scepter sway
 then he that hath such rights to raine?
 there is noe hopes of a peace, or the war to ce[ase⁵],
 24 till the King enioyes his right againe.

Who has
 better right
 to the crown
 than our
 King?

Although for a time you see Whitehall
 with cobwebbs hanging on the wall
 instead of silkes & siluer brasse
 28 which formerly [t] was⁶ wont [to] haue,
 with a sweete perfume in euerye roome
 delightfull to that princely traine:
 which againe shalbe when the times you see
 32 that the King enioyes his right againe.⁷
 ffnas.

[page 125] Though
 Whitehall is
 all cobwebbs
 now,
 soon it will
 be silke

and per-
 fumes,

when the
 King enjoys
 his right
 againe.

¹ shoo[n].—P.

² mend.—P.

³ thea.—P.

⁴ sharrers.—P.

⁵ cease.—P.

⁶ formerly t was.—P.

⁷ This fourth stanza is put before the third in the copy that Mr. Chappell prints, ii. 438.

The Ægyptian Quene.¹

THIS song under the title of *Mark Anthony* is found, *minus* vv. 13–20 inclusive, in *Poems by J. C.* 1651, the first edition of Cleveland's Poems, and in such of the many subsequent ones as we have examined, those of 1654 (B. in the notes below), of 1677 (C. in the notes), and of 1687 (D. in the notes). Our copy is probably a bad one of the verses before they were printed, when lines 13–20 were cut out. The song is marked by Cleveland's characteristic vigour and tendency to "conceits."

John Cleveland sang and suffered much in the Royal cause. Educated at Christ's College, elected a Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge—"To cherish such hopes," says an old biographer of him, "the Lady Margaret drew forth both her breasts"—he joined the King at Oxford when the breach with the Parliament became irreparable, and gallantly adhered to the King's fortunes to the end. After the capture of Newark, when he was Judge Advocate, he seems to have led, for some years, a life of wretched vagrancy. In 1655 he was taken prisoner. He made an appeal to Cromwell, which was heard. He did not live to see the restoration of the race which he had served with all his trenchant wit, with the truest devotion. April 29, 1659, is the date of his death.

As the copy in our folio MS. is corrupt in many places, we give here the copy from the first edition of 1651, collated with the editions of 1654, 1677, and 1687.

MARK ANTHONY.

WHEN as the Nightingale chanted her Vespers,
And the wild Forester couch'd on the ground,
Venus invited me in th' Evening whispers,
4 Unto a fragrant field with Roses crown'd:

¹ Not an inelegant old song. Corrected by an Edition in Cleveland's *Poems*. 12^{mo} 1687. p. 65.—P.

THE EGYPTIAN QUEEN.

- Where she before had sent
My wishes complement,
Unto my hearts content
6 Plaid with me on the Green,
Never Mark Anthony
Dallied more wantonly
With the fair Egyptian Queen.
- 13 First on her cherry cheeks I mine eyes feasted,
Then ' fear of surfeiting made me retire .
Next to her warm ' lips, which when I tasted,
My duller spirits made ' active as fire.
- 16 Then we began to dart
Each at anothers heart,
Arrows that knew no smart -
Sweet lips and smiles between,
- 20 Never Mark, &c.

- Wanting a glass to plate her amber tresses,
Which like a bracelet rich decked mine arm,
Gardier than *June* vents when as she graces
24 Jew with embraces more stately than warm.
- Then did she peep in mine
Eyes humour Christalline ;
I in her eyes was seen,
28 As if we one had been.
- Never Mark, &c.

- Mystical Grammar of amorous glances,
Feeling of pulses the Physick of Love,
32 Rhetorical courtings and Musical Dances ;
Numbring of kisses Arithmetick prove.
- Eyes like Astronomy,
Streight limb'd Geometry :
- 36 In her heart's ingeny
Our wits are sharp and keen.
- Never Mark, &c.

- WHEN as the Nightingale chanted her vesper,⁴ At eve
& the wyld fayryes lay coucht⁵ on the ground,
Venus invited me to an evening Wisper,⁶ my Love
4 to fragrant fields⁷ with roses crounde to toy with

¹ Thence.—B. C. D.

² warmer.—B. C. D.

³ made me.—C. D.

⁴ her vesper.—P.

⁵ summer coucht. I w^d read here

forresters, i.e. the deer, the Inhabitants
of the forrest.—P.

⁶ in th' evening whispers.—P.

⁷ Unto a frag^t field.—P.

her in the
fields. which ¹ shee before had sent her cheefest complement,
Vnto my ² harts content sport ³ with me on the
 greene ;

We dallied
like Antony
and Cleo-
patra. 8 Neuer marke Anthony dallyed more wantonly
 With his fayre Ægipsian queene ⁴ !

I looked at
her cheekes,
 ffirst on her Cherry cheekes I my eyes ⁵ feasted ;
 thence feare of surffetting made me retyre,
kissed her
lips, 12 then to her warmed [lips], ⁶ which when I tasted,
 my spiritts duld were made actiue by ⁷ fyer.
pressed her
hand, ⁸ this heat againe to calme, her moyst hand yeolderd
 balme ;
 whilest wee Ioyned ⁹ palme to palme as if wee one
 had beene,
 Neuer marke Anthony dallyed more wantonly
16 with his fayre Cor ¹⁰ egyptian queene !

twined mine
in her hair, Then in her golden heere ¹¹ I my hands twined ;
 shee her hands in my lockes twisted againe,
 as if her heere had beene fetters assigned, .
20 Sweet litle Cupid ¹² Loose captiue ¹³ to chayne ;
 soe did wee often dart one at anothers hart
 arrows *that* felt ¹⁴ noe smart, sweet lookes and
 smiles ¹⁵ between.
 Neuer, &c.

Her tresses
deckt my 24 Wa[ying a glass to platt] those amorus tresses ¹⁶
 which like a [bracelet] deckt richly mine arme,

¹ Where.—P. *For* her cheefest *Percy* puts my wishes.—F.

² And to my. query.—P.

³ Play'd.—P.

⁴ Only half the *n* in the MS.—F.

⁵ mine eyes.—P.

⁶ warmer lips.—P.

⁷ active as.—P.

⁸ N.B. from hence to [So did we often dart] is wanting in the printed Copy.—P.

⁹ A *t* is between *Ioyned* and *palme* in the MS. *as if wee one had beene* has been first written as a separate line, then

struck out and written after *palme* ; then *one had bee* was struck out, and copied in again by Percy.—F.

¹⁰ ? MS.—F.

¹¹ haira.—P.

¹² After the *d* Percy puts '*s*.—F.

¹³ After the *e* Percy adds *s*.—F.

¹⁴ fett, fetch'd.—query: it is knew no sm^t in print.—P.

¹⁵ Lipps and smiles.—P.

¹⁶ Wayting a glass to platt (plait) her amber tresses.—P. The ink of the heading *The king enioyes* on the back has eaten the MS. away.—F.

- gandyer then Iuno was which¹ when shee blessed² eye like a
bracket;
 loue with Euers races³ more richly⁴ their warme.
 20 shee sweetely poept in eyne that was more cristalline,
 which by reflection shine ech eye and eye was seene. she poept
sweetly at
me,
 Neerer, &c.
- Misticall grammers⁵ of⁶ amorous glances,
 25 feeling of pulses, the phisicke of loue,
 Rhetoricall courtings & musicall dances,
 sumbring of kimes arithmeticke proues⁷;
 Eyes like astronomy, strayght limbes geometry,
and in her
glances
 30 in her harts enginy⁸ ther eyes & eyes were some.⁹ I saw kimes
shine.
 Neerer, &c.

fin.

- | | |
|--|--|
| ¹ Iuno vena.—P. | Astronomy, Geometry.—Short. |
| ² poept (gaze) Fr. Copy.—P. | ⁴ are. quarry.—P. |
| ³ In in the MS.—P. embrace.—P. | ⁷ prove. p.a.—P. |
| ⁵ study. P.Q.—P. | ⁸ Arts Ingeny.—P. |
| ⁶ grammers; grammar of: pr. Copy. | ⁹ our wits were sharp and keen. |
| —P. Note the Seven Sciences—Grammar, | Printed Copy.—P. |
| Physic, Rhetoric, Music, Arithmetic, | |

["The Mode of France," and "Be not affrayd," printed in Lo. and Ham. Songs, p. 45-8, follow here in the MS.]

Hollowe me ffancye.

THIS song, says Percy's marginal note, is "printed in a collection of Scots Poems, Edingboro', 1713, pag. 142."

Mens prætrepidans avet vagari. Led by Fancy, it throws off for the nonce the fetters of the body, and "dances through the welkin." It inspects the phenomena of cloudland, rejoices *rerum cognoscere causas*. Then, turning its gaze downwards, it studies that great ant-hill the earth. It sees mankind rushing to and fro upon it, with all their various pursuits, humours, passions. At last the much-travelled spirit wearies. Its wings droop, and it implores its ever-vigorous guide to lead it no further. The great world-prospect, with its tumult and turmoil, is too tremendous a vision. So the spirit hies it back to its home, the body.

Melancholy, I dance		I N: a Melancholly fancy, out of my selfe, thorrow the welkin dance I, all the world survayinge, noe where stayinge;
like an elf over moun- taine, plaine, and woods.	4	like vnto the fierye elfe, ¹ over the topps of hyest mountaines skipping, ouer the plaines, the woods, the valleys, tripping, ² ouer the seas without oare of ³ shipping, 8 hollow, me fancy! wither wilt thou goe?

¹ shlyr elfe.—P.

² Only half the *n* in the MS.—F.

³ oare or.—P.

Anydwt the cloudy vapors, faine wold I see
 what are those burning vapors
 which benight vs and affright vs,

I'd like to
 see what the
 stars and
 meteors are ;

12 & what the Meesters ¹ bee.

faine wold I know what is the roaring thunder, (page 135)
 & the bright Lightning which cleaves the clouds in
 sunder,

what the
 thunder,
 lightning,

& what the comets are att which men gaze & wonder.

and comets.

14 Hollow, me do.

Locke but downe below me where you may be bold,
 where none can see or know mee ;

I'd like to
 look down
 on the bust-

all the world of gadding, running of madding,

ling world,

20 none can their stations hold :

One, he sits drooping all in a dumpish passion ;
 another, he is for Mirth and recreation ;
 the 3^d, he hangs his head because hees out of fassion.

and see one
 man in the
 dumps,
 another all
 mirth ;

22 Hollow, do.

See, See, See, what a bustling !

Now I descry one another Instlynge !

how they are turmoyling, one another foyling,

others jost-
 ling their
 fellows,

24 & how I past them bye !

hee *thats* above, him *thats* below ² despiseth ;

hee *thats* below, doth enuye him ² *that* ryseth ;

euerye man his plot & counter ² plott deviseth.

high de-
 spising low,
 low envying
 high ;

26 Hollow.

Shippa, Shippa, Shippa, I descry now !

shipmen

crossing the maine Ile goe too, and try now

what they are proiecting & protecting ;

projecting

28 & when the turne againe.

One, hees to keepe his country from innadinge ;

another, he is for Merchandise & tradinge ;

the other Lyes att home like summers cattle shadding.³

defence
 from foes
 or gain in
 trade.

30 Hollow.

¹ meteors.—P.

² MS. blotted.—F.

³ ? getting into a shed or the shade.—F.

I can't go
on.
Fancy, come
back to me;

leave off
soaring,
and keep to
your book.

Hollow, me fancy, hollow !

I pray thee come vnto mee, I can noe longer follow !

I pray thee come & try [me] ; doe not flye me !

44 Sithe itt will noe better bee,

come, come away ! Leave of thy Lofty soringe !

come stay att home, & on this booke be poring !

for he *that* gads abroad, he hath the lesse in storinge.

48 welcome, my fancye ! welcome home to mee !

ffins.

Newarke.¹

THIS song may very well have been written, as Percy suggests, by Cleveland to cheer the garrison of Newark; when, during the Royalist occupation of it, he was Judge Advocate. See Introduction to "Egyptian Queen."

"In the reign of Charles I. Newark was garrisoned for the King, and held in subjection the whole of this country, excepting the town of Nottingham; and a great part of Lincolnshire was laid under contribution; here that unfortunate sovereign established a mint. . . . During this contest the town sustained three sieges: in the first, all Northgate was burnt by order of the governor, Sir John Henderson; in the second, when under the government of Sir John, afterwards Lord, Byron, the town was relieved by the arrival from Chester of Prince Rupert, who, according to Clarendon, in an action between his forces and the parliamentarians under Sir John Meldrum, on Beacon Hill, half a mile eastward of the town, took four thousand prisoners and thirteen pieces of artillery; in the third siege, after the display of much prowess and several vigorous sallies, the fortress remained unimpaired; afterwards Lord Bellasis, then governor, surrendered the town to the Scottish army, by the King's order, on the 8th of May, 1646. At the close of this siege, the works and circumvallations were demolished by the country people, with the exception of two considerable earth-works, which are now nearly perfect, and are called the King's Sconce and the Queen's Sconce; about this time the castle also was destroyed." (Lewis' *Topogr. Dict. of England*.)

¹ Very probably writ by Jack Cleveland during the siege of Newark upon

Trent; to Chear the Garrison: where he was judge advocate.—P.

Fill us a
cup!

Here's a
health to
King
Charles.

We dread
not our foes.

If Leslie gets
hold of 'em
he'll play
the devil
and all.

Drink to our
garrison.

I fear no foe,

for our
Maurice is
coming.

OUR: braines are asleepe, then fyll vs ¹ a cupp
of capping sacke & clarett;
here is a health to King Charles! then drinke it all vp,
4 his cause will fare better for itt.
did not an ould arke saue noye ² in a fflood?
why may not a new arke to vs be vs ³ good?
wee dread not their forces, they are all made of wood,
8 then wheele & turne about againe.

Though all beyond trent be sold to the Scott,
to men of a new protestation
if Sandye come there, twill fall to their Lott
12 to haue a new signed possession;
but if once Lesly gett [them] in his power,
gods Leard! heele play the devill & all!
but let him take heed how hee comes there,
16 lest Sweetelipps ring him a peale in his eare.

Then tosse itt vp merrilye, fill to the brim!
wee haue a new health to remember;
heeres a health to our garrisons! drinke it to them,
20 theyle keepe vs all warme in December.
I care not a figg what enemy comes;
for wee doe account them but hop-of-my-thumbes;
for Morrise ⁴ our prince is coming amaine
24 to rowte & make them run againe.

ffins.

¹ MS. vis or vus.—F.

² Old Ark—Noë.—P.

³ as.—F.

⁴ Maurice.—P.

Amongst the mirtles.¹

THE first collection of Carew's poems was made in 1640, the year after his death. But many of them had been set to music during his life; others no doubt had circulated in MS.

"He was a person," says Clarendon, "of a pleasant and facetious wit, and made many poems (especially in the amorous way), which for the sharpness of the fancy and the elegance of the language in which that fancy was spread, were at least equal, if not superior to any of that time: but his glory was that after fifty years of his life spent with less severity or exactness than it ought to have been, he died with great remorse for that license, and with the greatest manifestation of Christianity, that his best friends could desire."

-
- Amongst the Mirtles as I walket,
 lone & my thoughts nighte this ² inter-talket:
 "tell me," said I in deepe distresse,
 4 "Where may I find [my sheperdesse.³]
 "Thou foole!" said lone, "knowes thou not this?
 in euerye thing *thats* good shee is.
 in yonder tulepe goo & seeke,
 8 there thou may find her lipp, her cheek;e;
 "In yonder enameled Pancye,
 there thou shalt hane her curyous eye;
 in bloome of peach & rosee ⁴ budd,
 12 there wane the streamers of her blood;

Where can I
 find my
 shepherdess?

[page 196]

She's in all
 that's good,
 her hie in
 the tulip,

her eye in
 the pancy,

¹ A very elegant old song. Writ by
 Mr Thomas Carew. See his poems, b:
 L 1640. — P.

² thus. — P., and nighte marked for

omission by Percy. — F.

³ The MS. is cut away. — F.

⁴ roses. — P.

her hand in
the lily,

the scent of
her bosom
on the hills.

I went to
pluck these
flowers,

but all
vanished.

So shall pass
my joy!

“ In ¹ brightest Lyllyes *that* heere stand,
the ² emblemes of her whiter hands ;
in yonder rising hill, their smells ³
16 such sweet as in her bosome dwells.”

“ It is trew,” said I ; & therevpon
I went to plucke them one by one
to make of *parts* a vnyon ;
20 butt on a sudden all was gone.

With *that* I stopt, sayd, “ lone,⁴ these bee,
fond man, resemblance-is of thee ⁵ ;
& as these flowers, thy Ioyes shall dye
24 Euen in the twinkling of an eye,

“ And all thy hopes of her shall wither
Like these short sweetes soe knitt together.”

ffi[ns.]

¹ The.—P.

² are.—P.

³ there smells.—P.

⁴ stop'd. S^d Love &c.—P.

⁵ resemblances of thee.—P.

The worlde is changed.¹

Songs of a very similar kind are common enough in the collections of Royalist poems: as, for instance, "The Humble Petition of the House of Commons" in *A Collection of Loyal Songs written against the Rump Parliament between the years 1639 and 1661, 1731.*

If Charles thou wilt but be so kind
To give us leave to take our mind,
Of all thy store;
When we thy Loyal Subjects, find
Th'ast nothing left to give behind
We'll ask no more.

and "Pym's Anarchy" in the same collection:

Ask me no more, why there appears
Daily such troops of Dragooners?
Since it is requisite, you know,
They rob *cum privilegio*.

Ask me no more, why from Blackwall
Great Tumults come into Whitehall?
Since it's allow'd, by free consent,
The Privilege of Parliament.

Ask me no more, for I grow dull,
Why Hotham kept the Town of Hull?
This answer I in brief do sing,
All things were thus when Pym was King.

THE: world is changed, & wee haue choyces,
not by most reason, but most voyces;
the Lyon is trampled by the Mouse,
the lower is the vpper house,
& thus from laus² orders come,
but now their orders laus² frome.

Not Reason,
but most
voices rule.

The lower
house is the
upper.

¹ A good old Cavalier song. — P.

² qu. Caus. — F.

They want
to enslave
their king,

In all humilitey they craue
8 theire soueraigne to be their slaue,
beseeching him *that* hee wold bee
betrayd to them most Loyallye ;
for it were Meeknesse soe in him
12 to be a vice-Roy vntoy Pyim.¹

and put him
under Pym.

If *that* hee wold but once Lay downe
his scepter, maiestye, & crowne,
hee shalbe made in time to come
16 the greatest prince in christendome.
Charles, att this time hauing noe neede,
thankes them as much as if they did.

Charles
would rather
not.

No petitions
are to be
presented
but their
own.

Petitions none must be presented
20 but what are by themselves inuented,
that once a month thé thinke it ffitting
to fast from soine ² because from sittinge ;
Such blessings to the Land are sent
24 by priuiledge of Parlaiment.

ffins.

¹ unto Pym.—P.

² ? MS. *soine*, with a dot over the first stroke of the *n*.—F.

The tribe off Banburge.¹

This song, not before printed so far as we know, gives an excellent Cavalier account, put in the mouth of a Puritan, of the occupation of Banbury by a Royalist force. Banbury was visited more than once by such a force during the Civil War of 1642-6. The visit here referred to was paid in the very beginning of the disturbances, some seventeen days before the Royal Standard was set up at Nottingham. When the King and the Parliament each insisted on having the management of the militia, the former appointed the Earl of Northampton to "array" it in Warwickshire, the latter Lord Brook. In July the Parliament granted its deputy six pieces of ordnance to strengthen his castle, at Warwick. These were conveyed as far as Banbury by the 29th. The attempt to convey them on to Warwick was barred by Lord Northampton. The two lords at last agreed that they should be carried back to Banbury, and that neither party should move them without giving the other three days' notice. On the 4th and 5th of August great alarm began to prevail in the town, that the enemy was meditating an assault, and a seizure of the said ordnance. On Sunday night, the 7th, the enemy was discovered by a scout, coming down Hardwick lane in great force. But "the night growing extreme dark, they forbore all that night." Then next morning a parley was held, when the Cavaliers by turns cajoled and threatened the fearful citizens.

The town being in a sad case, not knowing how they would deal with them, exposed themselves and town on Monday morning (the 8th) and in a while after they came in with about 5 or 600 horses,

¹ See further Song in the Taking of Banbury by Colonel Lamford — P.

but 300 good ones, and the rest sorry jades, anything [they] could get from the poor countrey men, some at work; and as beggarly riders set on them, though for the present they flourished with money, yet their cloths bewrayed them to be neither gentlemen nor Cavaliers. And having fil'd the town with horses the chief of them came to the Red Lion Inne, and desired to speak with Colonell Feines and Captaine Vivers, who were in the Castle, to whom reply was made they should, if they would send two as considerable men in lieu, which they did; then they produced the Commission of Array, and required them to deliver the Ordnance, otherwise they would take them by force, and fire the town. And having obtained that they came for, the ordnance and ammunition thereunto belonging, they clear'd the town againe, and were all departed before night, who carried them to the E. of Northampton's house [Compton Wyngate], and it was thought they intended to goe to Warwicke castle the next day, but the Lord Brooke had noe notice from the Earle of three dayes warning, as was agreed between them; There was also Colonell Lunsford, and divers Lords too long to name; There was the Lord Wilmot, who kept backe the town of Atherbury from coming in to aide Banbury, and threatned he would hang up the men and send the souldiers to their wives and children; There was also the Lord Dunsmore.—“Proceedings at Banbvry since the Ordnance went down for the Lord Brooke to fortifie Warwick Castle,” 4to, 1642. Among the King's Pamphlets in the Brit. Mus. *apud Beesley's "History of Banbury,"* p. 302.

On July 7

ON: the 7th day on the 7 month,
most Lamentablie

the Cavi-
liers took
Banbury.

the men of Babylon did spoyle
4 the tribe of Banburye.

We had news
of Lunsford's
coming,

A brother post from couentry
ryding in a blew rockett,¹
sayes, “Colbronde Lunsford comes, I saw,
8 with a child's arme hang in his pockett.”

¹ A.-S. *roc*, clothing, an outer garment, a coat, jacket, vest: Bosworth, Germ. *rock*, a coat. Chaucer describes dame Fraunchise in a *rocket*, see Fairholt's Glossary:

Fulle wel [y-] clothed was Fraunchise,
For ther is no cloth sittith bet
On damyselle, than doth *rocket*.
A womman wel more fetys is

Then wee called up our men of warr,
 younge Viners, Cooke & Denys,¹
 whome our Lord Sea² placed vnder
 12 his Sonne Master ffyenys.³

and called
 out our men
 of war,

When hee came neere, he sent vs word
 that hee was coming downe,
 & wold, vnles wee lett him in,
 16 Granado⁴ all our towne.

butLansford
 said he'd

granado our
 town,

Then was our Colbronde—fines,⁵—& me,
 in a most woefull case ;
 for neither he nor I did know
 20 who this granado was.

wee had 8 gunnes called ordinance,⁶
 & foure score Musquetiers,⁷
 yett all this wold not serue to stop
 24 those Philistime cauleeres.

and our guns
 and men

[page 197] couldn't stop
 him.

Good people, the did send in men
 from Dorchester & Wickam ;
 but wher this Gyant did them see,
 28 good Lord, how he did kick han⁸ !

¹ Viners, a name of the Viners, was.
² Sea, a name of the Sea, &c.
³ ffyenys, a name of the ffyenys, &c.
⁴ Granado, a name of the Granado, &c.
⁵ fines, a name of the fines, &c.
⁶ ordinance, a name of the ordinance, &c.
⁷ Musquetiers, a name of the Musquetiers, &c.
⁸ kick 'em, a name of the kick 'em, &c.

ing the e in the MS.—F.

¹ Say.—P.

² Fiennes.—P.

³ Fr. *Grenade*. A Pomegranet; also, a ball of wild-fire, made like a Pomegranet: Cotgrave. An iron case filled with powder and bits of iron, like the seeds in a pomegranate: Wedgwood.—F.

⁴ Fiennes.—P.

⁵ Ordinance, all sorts of Artillery, or great Guns used in War. Phillips.—F.

⁶ Musquetiers.—P. The last e is made over a y in the MS.—F.

⁷ kick 'em.—P.

He swore
and threat-
ened us so

“ You round heads, rebells, ronga,¹ ” quoth hee,
“ Ile crop & slitt eche eare,
& leane you neither arme nor lege
32 much longer then your heere² ! ”

that we
opened our
gates,

Then wee sett ope our gates³ full wyde ;
they swarmed in like bees,
& they were all arraydd in buffe
36 thicker then our towne cheese.⁴

and his
blood-
thirsty men

Now god deliuer vs, we pray,
from such blood-thirstye men,
forom⁵ Lenyathan Lunsford
40 who eateth our children !

hung us and
plundered
us.

ffor Banburye, the tinkers crye,
you hanged vs vp by twelues ;
now since Lunsford hath plundred you,
44 you may goe hang your selues.

ffins.

¹ rogues.—P.

² haire. N.B. The Roundheads were
so called from wearing their hair cropt
short.—P.

³ gater in the MS.—F.

⁴ Banbury Cheese.—P.

⁵ this.—P.

[“Doe you meane to overthrowe me,” and “A Maid & a Younge Man,”
printed in Lo. and Hum. Songs, p. 49–52, follow here in
the MS.]

Ap : me : Ap me :

THE Editors have not found any printed copy of this song. Mr. Chappell informs them that there is a tune in the *Dancing Master* of 1657 entitled "Ay me, or the Symphony," but it requires words of a different metre to that of this song.

"A fling at the Scots, probably writ in James I. time" is Percy's MS. note; or, as Mr. Halliwell says of *Joky will prove a gentillman*,¹ a "satire . . doubtlessly levelled against the numerous train of Scotch adventurers who wisely emigrated to England in the time of James I., in the full expectation of being distinguished by the particular favour and patronage of their native sovereign." Poor Sialy, the chief speaker in the piece, laments the dropping off of her suitors. She once had twelve, and now she has but one. The first was handsome; the ten following were all well-to-do in the world in one way or another; the one that yet remains has no merit of either sort. The others were Welsh, Dutch, French, or Spanish; this one is a werry Scotchman. A doleful state of things; but the best must be made of it. At any rate, as this last lingering wooer is a beggar, he can never be declared bankrupt. But indeed begging is the way to wealth now-a-days—begging for appointments, &c. In *Joky will prove* such begging is introduced as the cause of the marvellous change of the hero's cowhide shoes into Spanish-leather ones decked with roses, of his twelpenny stockings into "milken blewe," of his list garters into silk tasselled with gold and silver, &c.

Thy hose and thy dublett, which were full plaine,
 Whereof great store of lice [did] containe,
 Is turned nowe. Well fare thy braine
That can by begginge this mair.tayne!
 By my fay, and by Saint Ann,
 Joky will prove a gentilman!

Moved by this disinterested consideration—that begging is the winning game—Sisly resolves to give the constant Scot the right to beg for her as well as himself.

Oh dear!
 I had twelve
 suitors,

and all are
 gone but
 one,
 the worst of
 all,

a regular
 weed.

The rest
 were good,

this one's
 naught,

“AY: me, ay me, pore sisley, & vndone¹!
 I had 12 sutors, now I have but one!
 they all were wealthy; had I beene but wise;
 4 now haue all left me since I haue beene soe nice,²
 but only one, and him all Maidens scorne,
 for hees the worst I thinke *that* ere was borne.”
 “peace good sisley! peace & say noe more!
 8 bad mends in time; good salue heales many a sore.”

“ffaith such a one as I cold none but loue,³
 for⁴ few or none of them doe constant prone;
 a man in shape, proportion, looke, and showe,
 12 much like a Mushroome in one night doth grow;
 proud as a lay *thats* of a comely hew,
 cladd like a Musele in a capp of blew.⁵”
 “peace, good sisley! peace, & say noe more!
 16 be Merry, wench, & lett the welkin rore!”

“The first I had was framed in bewtyes mold,
 the second: 3^d and 4th had store of gold,
 the 5. 6. 7. 8th had trades eche one,
 20 the best had goods & lands to line vpon;
 Now may I weepe, sigh, sobb, & ring my hands,
 since this hath neither witt, trade, goods, nor Land[s.]”

¹ I'm vndone.—P.

² Particular; not Fr. *niais*, a simple, witlesse, vnexperienced gull. *Nice*, dull, simple: Cotgrave.—F.

³ As none but I *could* love.—P.

⁴ But.—P.

⁵ The Scotch cap. See *Blew-cap for me* in *Sat. Songs*, p. 130, &c.—F.

“ peace, good siale; peace & take that one
 24 that stayes behind when all the rest are gone ! ”

“ He [is,] as ¹ turkes doe say, noe renegatoe,²
 noe Portugall, Gallowne, or reformato³;
 but in playne termes some say he is a scott,
 26 that by his witta some old cast suite hath gott,
 & now is as ⁴ briake⁵ as my ⁶ Bristow Taylor,
 & swaggers like a pander or a saylor.⁷ ”
 “ kisse him, siale, kisse him, he may prone the best,
 28 & wee him kindly, but witt bee all the rest. ”

a Scott,
 in a cast-off
 suite.

“ One was a welchman, her wold⁸ scorne to crye;
 & 3 were Dutchmen that sill⁹ drunke wold bee;
 & 6 were frenchemen that were pockye proude;
 30 & one a spanyard that cold bragg alowd.
 Now all are gone, & way¹⁰ not me a figge,
 but one poore Scott who can doe nought but begg.”
 “ take him, siale ! take him, for itt is noe doubt,
 32 his trades that begga, heele neuer prooffe¹¹ banquerout. ”

My other
 suitors were
 Welch,
 Dutch, &c.

This one is a
 poor begging
 Scott.

“ Nay, sure, Ile haue him, for all people say
 that men by begging grow rich now a day,
 & that oftentimes is gotten with a word
 34 att great mens hands that neuer was woone by sword.
 then welcome Scotchman, wee will weded bee,
 & one day thou shalt begg for thee and mee.”
 “ well sayd, siale ! well said ! on another day,
 36 by begging thou maist weare a garland gay ! ”

But I'll take
 him;
 begging's a
 good trade
 now ;

and he'll beg
 for us both

He is, &c. — P.

¹ renegado — P.

² reformato. — P. Sp. *reformado*, re-
 turned. *Minister. Reformado, or Reformed*
after an Officer whose Company or
Regt. is disbanded, and yet he continu'd
a whole or half Pay, still being in the
way of Preferment, and keeping his
Right of Seniority. Also a Gentleman
who serves as a Volunteer in a Man of
War, in Order to learn Experience, and

succeed the Principal Officers. Phillips.
 — F.

³ It may be *al* in the MS. — F.

⁴ And now's as brisk. — P.

⁵ any. — P.

⁶ ? MS. Jaylor. — F.

⁷ her wold, &c. — P.

⁸ still. — P.

⁹ weigh. — P.

¹⁰ The Man that bega will ne'er prove
 — P.

faine : wolde : & change :

[page 199]

THIS is the song of one who entertains a supreme horror of living and dying an old maid. She has been told by old wives, no doubt well informed on the subject, that those who do so are employed subsequently in "leading apes in hell;"¹ after which singular occupation she feels no great hankering. "To the church," then, is the word. Ding-dong away, Marriage bells.

I want to
change my
maiden life,

"FAINE wold I change my maiden liffe
to tast of loues true Ioyes."
"What? liffe! woldest² thou chuse to bee a wiffe?
4 maids wishes are but toyes."
"how can there bee a greater hell then line a maid
soe long,³
a mayd soe long?
to the church ring out the Marriage bells,
8 ding dong, ding dong, ding dong!"

for I'm
nearly six-
teen,

"Beffore *that* 15 yeeres were spent,
I knew, & haue a sonne."
"how old art thou?" "sixteene next Lent."
12 "alas, wee are both vndone!"
how can there bee &c.

¹ Mr. Dyce says: "The only instances of the expression *leading apes in* (or *into*) *hell*, which at present occur to me, are these:—

"— and he that is less than a man, I am not for him: therefore I will even take sixpence in earnest of the bearward, and *lead his apes into hell*."—Shakespeare's *Much ado about Nothing*, act ii. sc. 1.

"— but keeping my maidenhead till it was stale, I am condemned to *lead apes in hell*."—Shirley's *Love-Tricks*, act iii.

sc. 5; *Works*, vol. i. p. 53, ed. Gifford and Dyce.

"This phrase, which is still in common use, never has been (and *never will be*) satisfactorily explained. Steevens suggests, 'That women who refused to bear children, should, after death, be condemned to the care of apes in leading-strings, might have been considered as an act of posthumous retribution.'—F.

² why would'st.—P.

³ ? MS.—F. so long.—P.

"Besides, I heard an old wiffe tell
 that all true maids must dye."
 16 "what must they doe?" "lead apes in hell!
 a dolefull destinye."

and true
 maids die
 and lead apes
 in hell.

"& wee will lead noe apes in hell;
 ' weele change our maiden song, our maiden song;
 20 to the church ring out the Marriage bells,
 wee haue lined true mayds to ' longe."

I won't do
 that,
 but will off
 to church.

ffins.

* "Weele change" is in the 18th line in the MS.—F.

* too.—P.

When first I sawe.

THIS song occurs, as Mr. Chappell remarks, in the *Golden Garland of Princely Delight*, 3rd edition, 1620. Mr. Chappell adds a fourth stanza from later copies, “such as *Wit's Interpreter*, third edition, 8vo. 1671 :”

If I have wronged you, tell me wherein,
And I will soon amend it ;
In recompense of such a sin,
Here is my heart, I'll send it.
If that will not your mercy move,
Then for my life I care not ;
Then. O then, torment me still,
And take my life and spare not.

He gives the tune to which the song was sung, composed by Thomas Ford (one of the musicians in the suite of Prince Henry, the eldest son of James I.), who published it in his *Musick of Sundrie Kindes*, in 1607.

I loved you
at first sight,

and you bade
me love ;

WHEN first I saw her face, I resolved ¹
to honor & renowne thee ;
but if I be disdayned, I wishe
4 that I had neuer knowne thee.
I asked leaue ; you bade me loue ;
is itt now time to chyde mee ?
O : no : no : no ! I loue you still, what fortune euer
betyde mee !
8 If I admire or praise you too much,
 that fortune [you] might ² forgiue mee ;
or that my hand hath straid but to touch,³
 thenn might you iustly leaue mee,

¹ thee I resolv'd.—P. ² that fault you might.—P. ³ MS. teach.—F. to touch.—P.

12 but I that liked, & you that loned,
is now a time to wrangle?

O no: no: no, my hart is fixt, & will not new
entangle.

will you
now quarrel
with me?

The sun, whose beames most glorious are,
16 rejecteth¹ noe beholder;
your faire face, past all compare,
makes my faint hart the bolder.

Your beauty

when bewtye likes, & witt delights,
20 & shewes of Loue doe bind mee;
there, there! O there! whersoener I goe,
He leane my hart behind mee!

has stolen
my heart.

ffins.

¹ MR. & reacheth.—F.

[“*A Creature for Feature,*” and “*Lye alone,*” printed in
Lo. and Ham. Songs, p. 53–56, follow here in the MS.]

How fayre shee be.¹

THIS well-known song by George Wither (1590–1667) appeared in 1619, appended to his *Fidelia*, and again in *Juvenilia*, in 1633, in “Fair Virtue the Mistress of Philarete.” It was reprinted again and again, sometimes with another stanza. The version here given is slightly corrupt. “A copy of this song,” says Mr. Chappell, “is in the Pepys collection, i. 230, entitled A new song of a young man’s opinion of the difference between good and bad women. To a pleasant new tune. It is also in the second part of the Golden Garland of Princely Delights, third edition 1620, entitled The Shepherd’s Resolution. To the tune of The Young Man’s Opinion.”

Shall I kill
myself

because my
love doesn’t
care for me?

Not I.

SHALL: I, wasting in dispayre,
dye because a womans fayre?
or make pale my cheekes with care?²
4 because anothers rose-ye³ are?
Be shee fairer then the day
or the flowry Meads in may,
if shee thinke not well of mee,
8 What care I how fayre shee bee?

Shall my foolish hart be pind
because I see a woman kind,
or a well disposed nature
12 with⁴ a comlye feature?

¹ An elegant old Song by Withers. This song is in *the Tea Table Miscellany* of Allan Ramsay, 1753, page 304. But the Printed Copy wants the 2^d stanza:— it containing only three. It is also in Dryden’s Misc. V. 6. p. 335, with the

omission of St. 2^d—P.

² shall my Cheeks look pale with care (printed Copy).—P.

³ rosie are.—P.

⁴ matched or joined.—P.

Be shee Meeker, kinder, then
the turtledoue or Pelican,
if shee be not soe to me,
16 what care I how kind shee bee ?

If she's not
kind to me,
let her go.

Shall a womans vertues¹ moue
me to perish for her loue,
or her worthy merritta knowne
20 make me quite forgett mine owne ?
were shee with *that* goodness blest,
as may meritt name of best,
if shee be not soe to me,
24 what care I how good shee bee ?

Shall I
perish for
her love ?

Not I.

² Be shee good or kind or fayre,
I will neuer more disp[air ;]
if shee loue me, this helpe me,
28 I will dye ere shee shall g[reine ;]
if shee slight me when I woo,
I will scorne & lett her goe.
or if shee be not ³ for mee,
32 what care I ⁴ for whom shee bee ?

If she slight
me,
let her go.

What care I ?

¹ goodness (printed Copy).—P.

² Percy inserts *fit*.—F.

³ The following four lines are written
in two in the MS.—F.

⁴ A *whom* struck out follows *I* in the
MS.—F.

[“*Downe sate the Shepard,*” and “*Men that more,*” printed in
Lo. and Ham. Songs, p. 57-60, follow here in the MS.]

Come : Come : Come :¹

[page 202]

THIS is, says Percy in his marginal note in the Folio, "A curious old drinking song, supposed to be sung by an old gouty Bacchanal." Not content with fellow mortal toppers, the old roisterer calls on all the Gods to join him in his carouse. Not his the Lotus-eater's conception of the Deities. He does not think that "careless of mankind they lie beside their nectar . . where they smile in secret, looking over wasted lands," smile at the music centred in the doleful song of lamentation, the ancient tale of wrong, from the "ill-used race of men that cleave the soil." He sees them madding their brains for "a little care of the world's affair," "utterly consumed with sharp distress" at the world's misery; and he calls on them to be such fools no longer—to "let mortals do as well as they may"—while they, the Gods, take up their wine and drink with him. Mars, Momus, Mercury, Apollo, Vulcan, the great Jove himself, dread Juno, and Venus, Goddess of Love—none are excused—all must join; the grape is sweet, and wine for them as well as men: let all quaff, and sing fa la la!—F.

Let's be jolly!

Though
we have
the gout,wine'll make
us sing.

COME: Come, come! shall wee Masque or mum?
by my holly day,² what a coyle is heere!
some must³ sway, & some obay I,
4 or else, I pray, who stands in feare?
though⁴ my toe, *that* I limpe on soe,⁵
doe cause my woe & wellaway,
yett this sweet spring & another thing
8 will make you sing fa.la.la.la.la.

¹ A curious old drinking song, supposed to be sung by an old gouty Bacchanal.—P.

² Dame.—P.

³ *mist* in the MS.—F.

⁴ what tho'.—P.

⁵ sc. with the Gout.—P.

- fellow gods, will you fall att odds?
 what a fury madds your morttall¹ braines!
 for a litle care of the worlds affare,
 12 will you frett, will you square,² will you vexe, will
 you vai[r?]³
 No, gods! no! let fury go,⁴
 & Morttalls doe as well as they may!
 for this sweet &c.
- 16 God of Moes,⁵ with thy toting Nose,
 with thy mouth *that* growes to thy Lolling eare,
 stretch thy mouth from North to south,
 & quench thy drought⁶ in vinigar!
 20 though thy tounge be too Large & too Longe
 to sing this song of fa la la la la,
 Ioyne Momus grace to vulcans pace,
 & with a filthy face crye "waw waw waw!"
- 24 Brother Mine, thou⁷ art god of wine!
 will you tast of the wine⁸ to the companye?
 King of quaffe, carrouse & doffe
 your Liquor of, and follow mee!
 28 ⁹ Sweete soyle of Exus Ile,
 wherin this coyse¹⁰ was euery day,
 for this sweet &c.
- Mercurye, thou Olimpian spye!
 32 wilt thou wash thine eye in this fontaine cleere?
 when¹¹ you goe to the world below,
 you shall light of noe such Liquor there,
- Don't bothe r
about
business.
- Momus,

drink
vinegar!
- Sing with us
somehow!
- Bacchus,

join me in a
bowl!
- Mercury,
drink!

¹ immortal, qu.—P.
² i. e. quarrel.—P.
³ will you vex your vaines.—P. *Vair*
 for *veer*, turn. It should rhyme with
square.—Chappell.
⁴ ? MS. *gott*, with *tt* blotched out.—F.
⁵ Mows, i. e. Mockery. Sc. Momus.—P.

⁶ drowth.—P.
⁷ that.—P.
⁸ vine.—P.
⁹ To the.—P.
¹⁰ ? MS. *coyle*.—F. ? *coyse*, body.—
 Halliwell.
¹¹ whene'er.—P.

- though ¹ you were a winged stare
 36 & flyeth ² farr as shineth day ;
 Wine'll wing your heart. yett heeres a thing your hart will wing,
 & make you sing &c.
- Mars,
 You *that* are the god of warr,
 40 a cruell starr peruerse & froward,
 Mars ! prepare thy warlicke speare,
 & targett ! heers a combatt towards !
³ then fox ⁴ me, & Ile fox thee ;
 stop strife, and drink. 44 then lets agree, & end this fray,
 since this sweet &c.
- Venus,
 Venus queene, for bewtye seene,
 in youth soe greene, & loued soe young,
 48 thou *that* art mine owne sweet hart,
 you drink too! shalt haue a part in Cuppe [&] songe ⁵ ;
 though my foot be wrong, my swords full long
 & hart full strong; cast care away,
 52 Since this sweet &c.
- Apollo,
 Great Appollo, crowned with yellow,⁶
 Cynthius, fellow ⁷-muses deere !
 here's wine for you !
 It will refine your music. 56 heere is wine, itt must be thine,
 itt will refine thy Musicke cleere ;
 to the wire of this sweet lire
 you must aspire another day,
 for this sweet &c.
- Juno, 60 Inno clere, & mother dere,
 you come in the rere of a bowsing feast ;

¹ Altho', or even tho', or perhaps
 What tho' you are a winged star
 And fly as far.—P.

² and flew as, as, That flyeth.—P.

³ Do thou fox me.—P.

⁴ a toping Word.—P. *Fox*, to make
 tipsy. A cant term. See Hobson's Jesta,

1607, repr. p. 33. Halliwell.—F.

⁵ Cup & song.—P.

⁶ Cloath'd in yellow.—P.

⁷ Cease to follow, or Quit thy fellow,
 or With thy fellow.—P. Apollo was
 surnamed *Cynthius*, and Diana *Cynthia*,
 as they were born on Mount Cynthus,
 which was sacred to them. Lempriere.—F.

- thus I meet, your grace to greet;
 the grape is sweet & the last is best.
- 66 now let fall your angry brawlee¹ leave your
 from immortall & wayghtye sway; anger,
 tis a gracious thing to please your King,
 & beare you sing &c. drink and
 sing!
- 68 Awfull airc, & king of fire! Jove,
 let wine aspire to thy mighty throne,
 & in this quire of voices clere drink,
 Come thou, & beare an immortall drame²; and join our
 song!
- 72 for fury ends, & grace d[e]sends
 with Stygian feinde to dwell for aye.
 lett Nectar spring & thunder ring
 when Ioue³ doth sing &c. &c.
- 76 Vulcan, Momus, hermes, Bacchus,
 Mars & Venus, & and toce, Vulcan and
 Phobus brightest, Inno rightest, all you gods,
 & the mightiest of the crew,
 80 Ioue, and all the heauens great⁴ hall,
 keepe festinall & holy-day!
 since this sweete spring with her blacke thing rejoice
 will make you sing fa la la la. and drink
 wine.

ffins.

¹ brawle.—P.

² drame, i. e. bass.—P.

³ Jove. —P. MS. Iohus, with perhaps
 the & marked out.—F.

⁴ full here, struck out.—F.

The Grene Knight.¹

[In 2 Parts.—P.]

THIS is a late, popular version of the old romance of “Sir Gawain and the Green Knight,” preserved amongst the Cottonian MSS. (Nero A. X. fol. 91) edited by Sir Frederick Madden for the Bannatyne Club in 1839 and by Richard Morris Esq. for the Early English Text Society in 1864.² The old romance, written, according to Mr. Morris, about 1320 A.D., by the author of the Early English Alliterative Poems also printed by the E. E. Text Society, is lengthy, is written in alliterative metre, and is as difficult as the old alliterative poems usually are. To dissipate this besetting obscurity, to relieve this apparent tediousness, the present translation and abridgement was made. The form is changed; the language is modernised. In a word, the old romance was adapted to the taste and understanding of the translator’s time. Moreover, it was made to explain a custom of that time—a custom followed by an Order that was instituted, according to Selden and Camden, some three-quarters of a century (A.D. 1399) after the time when, according to Mr. Morris, the poem first appeared. It explains why

Knights of the bathe weare the lace
Untill they have wonen their shoen,
Or else a ladye of hye estate
From about his necke shall it take
For the doughtye deeds hee hath done.

On this point SOMERSET HERALD has kindly furnished us with the following note : _____

¹ A curious adventure of Sir Gawaine, explaining a custome used by the Knights of the Bath.—P.

N.B. See a Fragment p. 29 [of MS.; vol. i. p. 70, l. 213 of text] wherein is mention of a Green Knight & decapita-

tion p. 29–31 [of MS.; pp. 70–3 of text]. —P.

² In his edition of *Syr Gawayne*, Sir F. Madden printed the present poem as No. III. in his Appendix, p. 224–242.

College of Arms, June 8

It appears to have been the custom of Knights of the Bath, from at least as early as the reign of Henry IV., to wear a lace or shoulder knot of white silk on the left shoulder of their mantles or gowns, & these xxiith law knights proceeding immediately before the king in their gowns and hoodis, and taking of white silke upon their shoulders as is accustomed att the Bath " MS *Temp. Edw. IV.*, fragment published by Hearne at the end of Sprout's Chronicle, p. 381. This lace was to be worn till it should be taken off by the hand of the prince or of some noble lady, upon the knight's having performed "some brave and considerable action," vide Anstis's History of the Order. What this custom originated in does not appear, and the writer of the poem has only exercised the allowed privilege of his craft, in attributing the derivation to the adventure of Sir Gawaine and "the lady gay" in this legend of "The Green Knight."

In the Statutes of the Order, 11th of George I. 1725, it is commanded that they shall wear on the left shoulder of their mantle "the lace of white silk antiently worn by the said knights," but there is no mention of its being taken off at any time for any reason.

J. R. PLANCHÉ

The recast belongs then to an age which was beginning to study itself, and to enquire into the origin of practices which it found itself observing. It is an infant antiquarian effort. But the poem has lost much of its vigour in the translation. It is in its present shape but a shadow of itself. Moreover, the following copy appears much mutilated. Several half-stanzas have dropped out altogether, probably through the sheer carelessness of the scribe.

The two leading persons of the romance are the well-known Sir Gawain, of King Arthur's court, and Sir Bredbeddle of the West country—the same knight who appears in *King Arthur and the King of Cornwall*, vol. i. p. 67. The main interest rests upon Sir Gawain. His "points three"—his boldness, his courtesy, his hardiness—are all proved. He is eager for adventures; he unshrinkingly pursues them to the end; he bears extreme hardships patiently; his courtesy is shown in his nobly *French* says, "un double cordon de soye blanche a blanches luyettes pendans."

resisting the overtures made him by his host's wife, whom Agostes has brought to his bedside.

The ladye kissed him times three,
 Saith, " Without I have the love of thee,
 My life standeth in dere."
 Sir Gawaine blushed on the Lady bright,
 Saith, " Your husband is a gentle Knight,
 By Him that bought mee deare !
 To me itt were great shame,
 If I shold doe him any grame,
 That hath beene kind to mee."

All these provings are given much more fully in the original romance. But enough is given here to uphold the fame of the chivalrous knight. See the *Turk and Gowin*.

When
 Arthur
 lived, he
 ruled all
 Britain,

LIST ! wen ¹ Arthur he was King,
 he had all att his leadinge
 the broad Ile of Brittain ;

4 England & Scotland one was,
 & wales stood in the same case,
 the truth itt is not to layne.²

and lived, for
 a time, in
 peace.

8 he drive allyance ³ out of this Ile,
 soe Arthur liued in peace a while,
 as men ⁴ of Mickle maine,
 knights strong of ⁵ their degree
 [strove] which of them hiest shold bee ;
 12 therof Arthur was not faine ;

To stop his
 knights con-
 tending for
 precedency,

he made the
 Round
 Table,

that all

hee made the round table for their behone,
 that none of them shold sitt abone,
 but all shold sitt as one,⁶

¹ when.—P.

² without layne, i.e. without lying.—
 or without altering the line (only dele it
 is) it is " Not to conceal the truth."—P.
 Old Norse *leyna*, to hide.—F.

³ drave aliens.—P.

⁴ man.—P.

⁵ Kn^{ts} strove of (about) &c.—P.

⁶ at one.—P. Compare *Arthur*, E. E.
 Text Soc., p. 2, l. 43–53 :

At Cayrlyone, wythoute fable,
 he let make þe Rounde table :

16 the King himselſe in ſtate royall,
 Dame Guenener our queene withall,
 ſeemlye of body and bone.

might be
 equal.

itt fell againe the chriſtmase,
 20 many came to *that* Lords place,
 to *that* worthy one
 with helme on ¹ head, & brand bright,
 all *that* tooke order of knight;
 24 none wold linger att home.

One Chriſt-
 mas many
 knights
 came to
 Arthur's
 court.

there was noe caſtle nor manour free
that might harbour *that* companye,
 their uiſſance was ſoe great.
 28 their tents vp thē pight ²
 for to lodge there all *that* night,
 therto were ſett to meate.

No houſe
 could hold
 all of them,

ſo they
 pitched their
 tents,

Meeſſengers there came [&] went ³
 32 with much victualls verament
 both by way & ſtreete;
 wine & wild fowle thither was brought,
 within they ſpared nought
 36 for gold, & they might itt gett.

and food
 was ſerved
 to them.

Now of King Arthur noe more I mell ⁴;
 but of a venterous knight I will you tell ⁵
that dwelled in the weſt countrie ⁶;
 40 Sir Bredbeddle, for ſooth he hett ⁷;
 he was a man of Mickle might,
 & Lord of great bewtye.

But I ſhall
 leave
 Arthur,
 and tell you
 about
 Sir Bred-
 beddle.

And why þat he maketh hyt þus,
 þis was þe reſon y-wys,
 þat no man ſchuld ſytt alone oþer,
 no haue indignacion of hyt brother;
 And alle hadde on a cryng,
 þat no þey ſchuld aryse
 þat any degree of vyttyng
 oþer for any cryng. — F.

¹ MS. &.—F.
² pitched, or put.—P.
³ and went.—P.
⁴ mell, meddle, fr. mêler. Urry.—P.
⁵ I tell.—P.
⁶ See line 515.—F.
⁷ hight, was called.—P. The earlier
 romance makes the knight's name "Bern-

- he had a lady to his ¹ wiffe,
 He loved his 44 he loued her deerlye as his liffe,
 wife dearly,
 shee was both blyth and blee ² ;
 but she
 loved Sir
 Gawaine. because Sir Gawaine was stiffe in stowre,
 shee loued him priuilye paramour,³
 48 & ⁴ shee neuer him see.
- itt was Agostes *that* was her mother ;
 Her mother
 Agostes
 dealt in
 witchcraft,
 itt was witchcraft & noe other
that shee dealt with all ;
- shee cold transpose *knights* & swaine
 could trans- 52
 form men,
 like as in battaile they were slaine,
 wounded ⁵ both Lim & lightt,⁶
 and told
 Bredbeddle
 to go, trans- 56
 formed,
 in transposed likenesse he shold goe ⁷
 both by fell and frythe ;
- shee said, " thou shalt to Arthurs hall ;
 to Arthur's
 court to see
 adventures.
 for there great aduentures shall befall
 60 That euer saw King or Knight." [page 204]
 all was for her daughters sake,
that which she ⁸ soe sadlye spake
 This was in
 order to get
 to her sonne-in-law the Knight,
 Gawaine 64 because Sir Gawaine was bold and hardye,

lak de Hautdesert" (p. 78, l. 2445); it does not make his wife fall in love with Gawain, but Bernlak sends her to tempt him (p. 75, l. 2362). Gawain comes out of the temptation as one of the most faultless men that ever walked on foot, and as much above other knights as a pearl is above white pese (l. 2364). The enchantress is *Morgue la Faye*, Arthur's half-sister and Gawaine's aunt; and she sends Bernlak to Arthur's court in the hope that his talking with his head in hand would bereave all Arthur's knights of their wits, and grieve Guinevere, and make her die (p. 78, l. 2460). The description of *Morgue la Faye* (p. 30-1) is

very good, with her rough yellow wrinkled cheeks, her covered neck, her black chin muffled up with white vails, her forehead enfolded in silk, showing only her black brows, eyes, nose, and lips "sowe to se and sellyly blered."—F.

¹ MS. wis.—F.

² so bright of blee, *blee* is colour, complexion, bleo S. Color. Urry.—P.

³ I w^d read par amour.—P.

⁴ and yet.—P.

⁵ and wound.—P.

⁶ lythe, a joint, a limb, a nerve, Sax. lix, artus. Urry.—P.

⁷ to go.—P.

⁸ MS. *that* theye which.—F.

& therto full of curtesye,¹
to bring him into her sight.

brought to
her daugh-
ter.

the knight said "soe mote I thee,
68 to Arthurs court will I mee hye
for to praise thee right,
& to proue Gawaines points 3;
& *that* be true *that* men tell me,
72 by Mary Most of Might."

Bredbeddle
agrees to go,

and prove
whether
Gawaine is
so good.

earlye, soone as itt was day,
the Knight dressed him full gay,
vmstrode² a full good steede;
76 helme and hawberke both he hent,
a long fauchion verament
to fend them in his neede.

Bredbeddle
starts next
day

on horse-
back.

*that*³ was a lolly sight to seene,
80 when horse and armour was all greene,
& weapon *that* hee bare.
when *that* burne was harnisht still,
his countenance he became right well,
84 I dare itt safelye sweare.

He was a
goodly sight,
in his green
armour, and
on his green
horse.

that time att Carleile lay our King;
att a Castle of flatting was his dwelling,
in the florrest of delamore.⁴
88 for sooth he⁵ rode, the sooth to say,
to Carleile⁶ he came on Christmas day,
into *that* fayre countrie.⁷

Arthur is at
Carlisle,
at Castle
Flatting,
in Delamore
Forest.

Bredbeddle
arrives on
Christmas
day.

¹ "his fyne fader of nurture" the old
romance calls him, p. 29, l. 919.—F.

² and stride, i.e. hestrole.—P. *vm-*
strode See the elaborate description of
the knight, his armour and horse, in the
old romance, p. 5-6, l. 151-202.—F.

³ Yt, i.e. *it*.—P.

⁴ Delamore.—P. In Cheshire.—H.

⁵ for soe hee.—P.

⁶ Camylot, in the old romance.—F.

⁷ countrie faire.—P.

- The porter
asks
him where
he's going to.
- 92 when he into *that* place came,¹
the porter thought him a Maruelous groome :
he saith, " Sir, wither wold yee ? "
hee said, " I am a venterous *Knight*,
& of your *King* wold haue sight,
96 & other *Lords* *that* heere bee."
- The porter
tells Arthur
- 100 noe word to him the porter spake,
but left him standing att the gate,
& went forth, as I weene,
& kneeled downe before the *King* ;
saith, " in lifes dayes old or younge,
such a sight I haue not seene !
- of the Green
Knight's
arrival,
- 104 " for yonder att your gates right ; "
he saith, " hee is ² a venterous *Knight* ;
all his vesture is greene."
then spake the *King* proudest in all,³
saith, " bring him into the hall ;
108 let vs see what hee doth meane."
- and the
king
orders him
to be let in.
- Bredbeddle
comes,
- wishes
Arthur God
speed,
- 112 when the greene *Knight* came before the *King*,
he stood in his stirrops strechinge,
& spoke with voice cleere,
& saith, " *King* Arthur, god saue thee
as thou sittest in thy prosperitye,
& Maintaine thine honor ⁴ !
- and says he
has come
- 116 " why ⁵ thou wold me nothing but right ;
I am come hither a venterous [*Knight*,⁶]
& kayred ⁷ thorow cuntrye farr,⁸
to proue poynts in thy pallace
that longeth to manhood in euerye case
120 among thy *Lords* deere."
- to challenge
his lords to
a trial of
manhood.

¹ come or was come.—P.² there is.—P.³ first or foremost of all.—P.⁴ honnere.—P.⁵ for why, because.—F.⁶ Knight.—P.⁷ have gone ; A.-S. *cérran*, *círran*, to turn, pass over or by.—F.⁸ farre, or perhaps faire.—P.

- the King, he sayd ¹ full still ²
 till he had said all his will ;
 certein thus can ³ he say :
- 124 “as I am true knight and King,
 thou shalt haue thy askinge !
 I will not say thy nay,⁴
- “whether thou wilt ⁵ on foote fighting,
 128 or on steed backe ⁶ iusting
 for loue of Ladyes gay.
 If & thine armor be not fine,
 I will giue thee part of mine.”
- 132 “god amercy, Lord ! ” can he say,
- “here I make a challenging
 among the Lords both old and younge
 that worthy beene in weede,
 136 which of them will take in hand ⁷—
 hee that is both stiffe and stronge
 and full good att need—
- “I shall lay my head downe,
 140 strike itt of if he can ⁸ .
- with a stroke to garr ⁹ itt bleed,
 for this day 12 monthe another at his :
 let me see who will answer this,
 144 a knight ¹⁰ that is doughtye of deed;
- “for this day 12 month, the sooth to say,
 let him come to me & seicth his praye ;
 rudlye,¹¹ or euer hee blin,¹²

Arthur

consents to
let him try

on foot,

or horse-
back.Bredbeddle
challenges
Arthur's
lords :he'll let any
one[page 205] cut his head
off,for a return
cut at his
executioner's
head a year
hence¹ satt.—P.² quietly.—P.³ certes then 'gan.—P.⁴ say thee nay.—P. *þy* is the abla-
tive of the A.-Sax. demonstrative pro-
noun, *se*, *seo*, *þæt*.—F.⁵ wilt be.—P. wilt = wishest, pre-
ferest.—H.⁶ on steed-back, i.e. on horse-back.
—P.⁷ hond.—P.⁸ con.—P.⁹ *gar*, cause.—F.¹⁰ perhaps To a k^t.—P.¹¹ redlye, i.e. readily. Vid. G.D.—P.¹² *blin*, linger, delay.—P.

at the
Greene
Chappell.

148 whither to come, I shall him tell,
the readie way to the greene chappell,
that place I will be in."

the King att ease sate full still,
152 & all his lords said but litle ¹
till he had said all his will.

Kay

vpp stood Sir Kay *that* crabbed knight,
spake mightye words *that* were of height,
156 *that* were both Loud and shrill ;

accepts the
challenge.

" I shall strike his necke in tooe,
the head away the body froe."

The other
knights tell
Kay to be
quiet ;
he's always
getting into
a mess.

thé bade him all be still,
160 saith, ² " Kay, of thy dints make noe rouse, ³
thou wottest full litle what ⁴ thou does ⁵ ;
noe good, but Mickle ill."

Eche man wold this deed haue done.

Sir Gawaine

164 vp start Sir Gawaine soone,
vpon his knees can kneele,
he said, "*that* were great villanye
without you put this deede to me,
168 my leege, as I haue sayd ;

says it will
be too bad if
Arthur
doesn't let
him take the
adventure.

Arthur
consents,

" remember, I am your sisters sonne."
the King said, " I grant thy boone ;
but mirth is best att meelee ;

172 cheere thy guest, and giue him wine,
& after dinner, to itt fine,
& sett the buffett well ! "

but not till
after dinner.

¹ littel.—P.

² i. e. they say.—P.

³ praise, extolling, boast.—Jun. per-

haps *roust*, noise. G. Doug.—P.

⁴ that.—P.

⁵ doest.—P.

now the greene Knight is set att meate,
 176 seemlye ¹ served in his seate,
 beside the round table.
 to talke of his welfare, nothing he needs,
 like a Knight himselfe he feeda,
 180 with long time reasnable.²

Bredbeddle
dies.

when the dinner, it was done,
 the King said to Sir Gawaine soone,
 withouten any fable
 184 he said, "on ³ you will doe this deede,
 I pray Iesus be your speede !
 this knight is nothing vnstable."⁴

Arthur
wishes
Gawaine

God speed.
Bredbeddle
is a stiff one.

the greene Knight his head downe layd ;
 188 Sir Gawaine, to the axe he braid ⁴
 to strike with eger will ;
 he stroke the necke bone in twaine,
 the blood burst out in euerye vaine,
 192 the head from the body fell.

Gawaine

chops off
Bredbeddle's
head.

the greene Knight his head vp hent,⁵
 into his saddle wightilye ⁶ he sprent,
 spake words both Lowd & shrill,
 196 saith : "Gawaine ! thinke on thy couenant !
 this day 12 monthes see thou ne want
 to come to the greene chappell !"

Bredbeddle
picks it up,
jumps into
his saddle,

reminds
Gawaine to
meet him
twelve
months
hence,

¹ MS *seemlye*, with a horizontal line and two vertical strokes over the *u*, denoting a contraction, and showing that I ought to have read as in the example *u* is the heading of "Eger and Grise." vol. 1. p. 241. The title would then have corresponded with the text; but never having noticed the contraction before, I hesitated to alter the MS.—F.

² *reasnable*.—P.

³ *an*.—P.

⁴ See Herbert Coleridge's *Glossary* on this word, Old Norse *bregða*. He abstracts from Egilsson. As a neuter verb it is used "of any violent motion of body, as to leap."—F.

⁵ *took*.—P. The old romance makes some of the knights kick the head with their feet, l. 428.—F.

⁶ *actively*.—P.

- All had great maruell, *that* thé see
 200 *that* he spake so merrilye
 & bare his head in his hand.
 rides off, forth att the hall dore he rode right,
 and *that* saw both King and knight
 204 and Lords *that* were in land.
- puts his
 head on
 again,
 and promises
 Gawaine
 a better
 buffet.
 208 without the hall dore, the sooth to saine,
 hee sett his head vpon againe,¹
 saies, "Arthur, haue heere my hand!
 when-soeuer the *Knight* cometh to mee,
 a better buffett sickerlye
 I dare him well warrand."
- Arthur is
 very sorry
 for Gawaine,
 212 the greene *Knight* away went.
 all this was done by enchantment
 that the old witch had wrought. [page 20
 sore sicke fell Arthur the King,
 and for him made great mourning
 216 that into such bale was brought.
- so is Lance-
 lot.
 220 the *Queen*, shee weeped for his sake;
 sorry was Sir Lancelott dulake,
 & other were dreery in thought
 because he was brought into great perill;
 his mightye manhood will not availe,
 that before hath freshlye fought.
- Gawaine
 cheers them
 up,
 224 Sir Gawaine comfort King and *Queen*,
 & all the doughtye there be-deene²;
 he bade thé shold be still;
 said, "of my deede I was neuer feard,³
 nor yett I am nothing a-dread,
 swears that 228 I swere by Saint Michaell;

¹ The old romance makes the head open its eyelids and speak while it's on the knight's hand, l. 446.—F.

² immediately.—P. or all together.—F.

³ fraid.—P.

- “for when draweth toward my day,
I will dresse me in mine array
my promise to fulfill.
232 Sir,” he saith, “as I haue blis,
I wott not where the greene chappell is,
therefore seeke itt I will.”
- the royall Couett¹ verament
236 all rought² Sir Gawaines intent,
they thought itt was the best.
they went forth into the feild,
knights that ware both speare and sheeld
240 the priced³ forth full preest⁴;
- some chuse them to Iustinge,
some to dance, Renell, and sing;
of mirth the wold not rest.
244 all they swore together in fere,
that and Sir Gawaine ouer-come were,
the wold beu all the west.
- Now leane wee the King in his pallace.
248 the greene Knight come home is
to his owne Castle;
this folke frend⁵ when he came home
what doughtye deeds he had done.
252 nothing he wold them tell;
- full well hee wist in certaine
that his wiffe loued Sir Gawaine
that comelye was vnder kell.⁶
256 listen, Lords⁷! & yee will sitt,
& yee shall heere the second fitt,
what adventures Sir Gawaine befell.

he'll keep
his pledge,

and will
seek out
the Green
Chapel.

The court
approve,

and go forth

to joust,
revel,
and sport,

swearing to
revenge
Gawaine if
he's killed.

Bretbeddis
reaches his
home,

tells no one
what he has
done,

but knows
that his wife
loves
Gawaine.

¹ royall Couett.—P. ? covey, Fr.
couett.—P.

² ? reached, took in.—P.

³ pricked.—P.

⁴ ready.—P.

⁵ His folke frend, i.e. inquired.—P.

⁶ A child's caul, any thin membrane.
“Rim or kell wherein the bowels are
lapt.” Florio, p. 340. Sir John “rofe
my kell” (deflowered me) MS. Cantab.
ff. v. 48, fo. 111, Halliwell's Gloss.—P.
⁷ Lordings.—P.

[Part II.]

The way is
to. and
inward
and so.

250

The day is come that Gawaine must gone;

Knights & Ladies waned wann

that were without in that place;

251

the King himselfe siked ill,

the Queen a swoonding almost fell,

252

at that Lorney when he shold passe.

The king
and queen
grieved.

When he was in armour bright,

he was one of the goodlyest Knights

that ever in Britayne was borne.

His name
was known
far.

253

they brought Sir Gawaine a steed,

was chappie gray and good at need,¹

I tell withouten sorne;

his bridle
was set.

254

his bridle was with stones sett,

with gold & pearle overfrett,

& stones of great vertue;

he was of a furley² kind;

his stirrups
were set.

255

his stirrups were of silke of ynd;

I tell you this tale for true.

he glittered
like gold.

when he rode over the Mold,

his geere glistered as gold.

by the way as he rode,

280 many furleys³ he there did see,

fowles by the water did flee,

by brimes & bankes soe broad.

¹ Gryngolet is the steed's name in the old romance, but his colour is not given. All the jolly bits about his trappings, and Gawaine's armour, with its pentangel devised by Solomon, and called in English "the endeles knot," are omitted

here.—F.

² *ferlie*, wonder, wonderful; Sax. *ferlic*, repentinus, horrendus, Gl. ad G.D.—P.

³ ? MS. *furlegs*, for *ferlies*, wonders.—F.

many furleys there saw hee
 234 of wolven & wild beasts mikerlye;
 on hunting hee tooke most heeds.
 forth he rode, the sooth to tell,
 for to seeke the greene chappell,
 236 he wist not where ¹ indeed.

Gawaine sees
 wondrous
 beasts;

As he rode in an ene[n]ing late,
 riding downe a greene gate,²
 a faire castell saw hee,³
 238 that seemed a place of Mickle pride;
 thitherward Sir Gawaine can ryde
 to gett some harborrowe.⁴

(page 297)

discovers a
 castle,

rides to
 it,

thither he came in the twylight,
 239 he was ware of a gentle Knight,
 the Lord of the place was hee.
 Meekly to him Sir Gawaine can speake,
 & asked him, "for King Arthurs sake,
 240 of harborrowe I pray thee!

and asks the
 lord

lodging

"I am a far Labordd Knight,
 I pray you lodge me all this night."
 he sayd him not nay,
 241 hee tooke him by the arme & led him to the hall.
 a poore child ⁵ can hee call,
 saith, "dight well this palfrey."

for the night.

The lord
 leads him in,

into a chamber the went a full great speed;
 242 there the found all things readye att need,
 I dare safelye swere;

¹ The & is made over an or in the MS.
 —P.

² gate, way, lal. Gata, etc. Gl. ad G.D.
 —P.

³ has saw, or saw he there.—P.

⁴ harbours or harbours. Lodging. Urry.
 —P.

⁵ "Sere segges," several men, "stabeled
 his stede, stif men in-noys." Old Rom.
 which has a fine description of the
 castle and room, &c.—P.

fier in chambers burning bright,
 candles in chandlers ¹ burning light ;
 and they go 312 to supper the went full yare.²
 to supper.
 The lord's he sent after his Ladye bright
 wife to come to supp with *that* gentle Knight,
 & shee came blythe with-all ;
 316 forth shee came then anon,
 her Maids following her eche one
 in robes of rich pall.³
 as shee sate att her supper,
 sups with 320 ener-more the Ladye clere
 them,
 Sir Gawaine shee looked vpon.
 when the supper it was done,
 and then shee tooke her Maids, & to her chamber gone.⁴
 retires.
 324 he cheered the Knight & gaue him wine,
 & said, "welcome, by St. Martine !
 The lord I pray you take itt for none ill ;
 asks Ga-
 waine
 328 one thing, Sir, I wold you pray ;
 what he has what you make soe farr this way ?
 come there the truth you wold me tell ;
 for.
 "I am a Knight, & soe are yee ;
 He will keep 332 Your concell, an you will tell mee,
 his counsel.
 forsooth keepe itt I will ;
 for if itt be poynt of any dread,
 perchance I may helpe att need
 336 either lowd or still."
 for ⁵ his words *that* were soe smooth,
 had Sir Gawaine wist the soothe,
 all he wold not haue told,
 Gawaine
 tells him all,
 not knowing
 he was in

¹ Candlesticks.—P.

² *Yare*, acutus, ready, eager, nimble.—P.

³ any rich or fine Cloth, but properly purple: taken from the Robe worn by Bishops.—P. See the description of the

Ladye in the old romance, with "Hir brest & hir bryxt prote bare displayed," (p. 30-1).—F.

⁴ Next line wanting in the MS.—F.

⁵ for all.—P. The old romance keeps the secret till the end.—F.

340 for that was the greene Knight
that hee was lodged with that night,
& harbarrowes¹ in his hold.

Bredbeddle's
castle.

he saith, "as to the greene chappell,
344 thitherward I can you tell,
itt is but furlongs 3.
the Master of it is a venterous Knight,
& workes by witchcraft day & night,
348 with many a great furley.²

Bredbeddle
directs
Gawaine to
the Green
Chapel,

(whose
master
works
witchcraft),

"if he worke with neuer soe much france,³
he is curteous as he sees cause.
I tell you sikerlye,
352 you shall abyde, & take your rest,
& I will into yonder fforrest
vnder the greenwood tree."

but advises
him to stay
and rest.

they plight their truthes⁴ to beleene,⁵
356 either with other for to deale,
whether it were siluer or gold;
he said, "we 2 both [sworn⁶] wilbe,
what soeuer god sends you & mee,
360 to be parted on the Mold."

They agree
to share

whatever
either may
get.

The greene Knight went on hunting⁷;
Sir Gawaine in the castle beinge,
lay sleeping in his bed.

¹ harberow'd, lodged.—P.

² wonder.—P.

³ perhaps *frise*—to make a noise,
crash. G. and G.D.—P.

⁴ truthes.—P.

⁵ be leil.—P. See Leela, l. 478. But if the text is right, see Wedgwood on *be-leil* in his *English Etymology*. "The fundamental action seems to be, to approve, to sanction an arrangement, to deem an object in accordance with a certain standard of fitness."—P.

⁶ ? See l. 481, "wee were both." The old romance sets out the agreement at length, l. 1105-9: What the Green Knight wins hunting in the wood, Gawaine is to have; what Gawaine gets at home, the Green Knight is to have—"Sweet, swap we so, swear with truth, whether, man, loss befall, or better."—P.

⁷ The spirited accounts in the old romance of the three-days' hunt of the deer, wild boar, and fox, are all left out here. All the go is taken out of the poem.—P.

Bredbeddle's
witch
mother-in-
law

364 Vprose the old witche with hast throwe,¹
& to her dauhter can shee goe,
& said, "be not adread!"

[page 208]

tells his wife

to her daughter can shee say,
368 "the man *that* thou hast wisht many a day,
of him thou maist be sped;

that Ga-
waine
is in the
castle,
and takes
her to him,

for Sir Gawaine *that* curteous Knight
is lodged in this hall all night."
372 shee brought her to his bedd.

and tells
him to
embrace her.

shee saith, "gentle Knight, awake!
& for this faire Ladies sake
that hath loued thee soe deere,
376 take her boldly in thine armes,
there is noe man shall doe thee harme;"
now beene they both heere.

The wife
kisses him
thrice,
and asks his
love.

the ladye kissed him times 3,
380 saith, "without I have the loue of thee,
my life standeth in dere.²"

Gawaine

Sir Gawaine blushed on the Lady bright,
saith, "your husband is a gentle Knight,
384 by him *that* bought mee deare!

refuses to
shame his
host.

"to me itt were great shame
if I shold doe him any grame,³
that hath beene kind to mee;
388 for I haue such a deede to doe,
that I can neyther rest nor roe,⁴
att an end till itt bee."

¹ tho, then.—P. Sc. *thro*, *thra*, eager, earnest, Isl. *thrá*, pertinax. Jamieson. The old romance makes the Green Knight's wife go to Gawaine of herself, and on three successive nights.—F.

² *Dere*, lædere, nocere. Lye.—P.

³ *Grame*—Chaucer. Grief, sorrow, vexation, anger, madness, trouble, affliction. S. L, am [or *Gram*,] furor. Urry.—P.

⁴ A.-Sax. *row*, quiet, repose.—F.

then spake that Ladye gay,
 392 saith, "tell me some¹ of your Iourney,
 your succour I may bee;
 if itt be poynt of any warr,
 there shall noe man doe you noe darr²
 393 & yee wilbe gouerned by mee;

The wife

offers to
help Ga-
waine in his
adventure,

"for heere I haue a lace of silke,
 it is as white as any milke,
 & of a great value."
 400 shee saith, "I dare safelye sweare
 there shall noe man doe you deere³
 when you haue it⁴ vpon you."

and will
give him a
silk lacethat will
protect him
from all
harm,

Sir Gawaine spake mildlye in the place,
 404 he thanked the Lady & tooke the lace,
 & promised her to come againe.
 the Knight in the florrest slew many a hind,
 other venison he cold none find
 405 but wild bores on the plaine.

Gawaine
takes the
lace.Brettonne,
after
hunting.

plentye of does & wild swine,
 foxes & other ravine,
 as I hard true men tell.
 412 Sir Gawaine swore sickerlye
 "home⁵ to your owne, welcome you bee,
 by him that harrowes hell!"

is welcomed
home by
Gawaine.

the greene Knight his venison downe Layd;
 416 then to Sir Gawaine thus hee said,
 "tell me anon in heght,⁶
 what noneltyes that you haue won,
 for heere plenty of venison."
 420 Sir Gawaine said full right,

He shares
his venison
with Ga-
waine.¹ Sir.—P.² A.-B. *dar*, injury, hurt.—P.³ hurt, *vid. supra* [p. 72, n. 2].—P.⁴ on you.—P. There is a bit of a por & in the MS. between *it* and *upon*.—P.⁵ to your own home welcome, &c.—P.⁶ speed; like *highing*, from *to high*.—P.

and Ga-
waine gives
him his
three kisses,
424 Sir Gawaine sware by S^t Leonard,¹
“such as god sends, you shall haue part : ”
in his armes he hent the Knight,
& there he kissed him times 3,
saith, “heere is such as god sends mee,
by Mary most of Might.”

but keeps
back the
lace.
428 euer priuilye he held the Lace :
that was all the villanye *that* euer was
prooued by ² Sir Gawaine the gay.
then to bed soone the went,
& slept there verament
Next day 432 till morrow itt was day.

Gawaine
takes leave,
436 then Sir Gawaine soe curteous & free,
his leane soone taketh hee
att ³ the Lady soe gaye ;
Hee thanked her, & tooke the lace,
& rode towards the chappell apace ;
he knew noe whitt the way.

[page 209]

Bredbeddle
rides there
too.
440 euer more in his thought he had
whether he shold worke as the Ladye bade,
that was soe curteous & sheene.
the greene knight rode another way ;
he transposed him in another array,
444 before as it was greene.

Gawaine
hears a horn,
as Sir Gawaine rode ouer the plaine,
he hard one high ⁴ vpon a Mountaine
a horne blowne full lowde.

¹ November 6.—S. Leonard or Lionart may be termed the Howard of the sixth century. He was . . probably received into the Church at the same time as his royal master, Clovis, with whom he was in high favour, and who gave him permission to set many of the prisoners at liberty

who were confined in the dungeons which his charity prompted him to visit. *Notes on the Months*, p. 341.

² on.—P. A.-Sax. *be*, *bi*, of, concerning.—F.

³ of.—P. *Att* is right.—F.

⁴ on high.—P.

448 he looked after the greene chappell,
 he saw itt stand vnder a hill
 couered with euyes ¹ about;

and sees the
 Green
 Chapel,

he looked after the greene Knight,
 452 he hard him wehett a fauchion bright,
 that the hills rang about.

and the
 Green
 Knight;

the Knight spake with strong cheere,
 said, " yee be welcome, S[ir] Gawaine heere,
 456 it behooveth thee to Lowte." ²

who calls
 him to lay
 down his
 head,

he stroke, & litle perced the akin,
 vaneth the flesh within.

then strikes,

then Sir Gawaine had noe doubt;

but hardly
 cuts through
 the flesh.

460 he saith, " thou shontest ³ ! why dost thou see ? "
 then Sir Gawaine in hart waxed throe ⁴ ;
 vpon his fleete can stand,

He re-
 proaches
 Gawaine for
 shrinking.

& soone he drew out his sword,

464 & saith, " traitor ! if thou speake a word,
 thy life is in my hand ⁵ ;

Gawaine
 threatens
 to kill him.

I had but one stroke att thee,

& thou hast had another att mee,

468 noe falshood in me thou found ! "

the Knight said withouten laine,

" I wend I had Sir Gawaine slaine,

the gentlest Knight in this land ⁶ ;

472 men told me of great renowne,

of curtesie thou might haue woon the crowne

aboue both free & bound, ⁷

Bredbeddle
 answers that
 Gawaine

¹ I suppose *eyes* or perhaps *Eyghes*,
 as *ywa*.—P.

² some great omission. Note in MS. *Sir
 Gawaine and the Green Knight* makes
 Gawaine answer that he is ready and
 will not shrink. "Then the grim man
 smote his grim tool," strikes, and as it
 comes gliding down, Gawaine shrinks a
 litle. Bredbeddle (that is, Bernlak de
 Houndstort) reproaches him for his

cowardice. Gawaine promises not to
 shrink again, stands firm, and Bred-
 beddle strikes. (ed. Morris, E. E. Text
 Soc. p. 72-4.)—F.

³ shuntest, flinchest, shrinkest.—F.

⁴ *furte idem ac Thra*, apud G. Doug.
ferox, acer, audax, vel potius pertinax.
Vide Lye.—P.

⁵ *bond.*—P.

⁶ *Londe.*—P.

⁷ *bond.*—P.

- has lost his
three chief
virtues, of
truth, gen-
tleness, and
courtesy.
He has
concealed
the lace,
- 476 & alsoe of great gentrye ;
& now 3 points ¹ be put fro thee,
it is the Moe pittye :
Sir Gawaine ! thou wast not Leele ²
when thou didst the lace conceale
480 *that* my wiffe gane to thee !
- and should
have shared
it.
- “ ffor wee were both, thou wist full well,
for thou hadst the halfe dale ³
of my venerye ⁴ ;
484 if the lace had neuer beene wrought,
to haue slaine thee was neuer my thought,
I swere by god verelye !
- Yet Bred-
beddle will
- “ I wist it well my wiffe loued thee ;
488 thou wold doe me noe villanye,
but nicked her with nay ;
but wilt thou doe as I bidd thee,
take me to Arthurs court with thee,
492 then were all to my pay. ⁵ ”
- Gawaine
agrees.
They go
back to
Hutton
Castle,
and next
day on to
Arthur's
court.
- now are the *Knights* accorded thore ⁶ ;
to the castle of hutton ⁷ can thé fare,
to lodge there all *that* night.
496 earlye on the other day
to Arthurs court thé tooke the way
with harts blyth & light.
- All reioice
at Gawaine's
return.
- all the Court was full faine,
500 aline when they saw Sir Gawaine ;
they thanked god abone. ⁸

¹ perhaps these points, q. d. thou hast forfeited these qualities.—P.

² i. e. loyal, honourable, true.—P.

³ A.-S. *dæl*, part.—F.

⁴ venison, or rather hunting. So in Chaucer. Fr. *Venerie*. Urry.—P.

⁵ content, liking.—P.

⁶ there.—P.

⁷ Hutton Manor-house, [Somersetshire] : the hall, 36 feet by 20, is of the fifteenth century, with arched roof and panelled chimney-piece. *Domestic Architecture*, iii. 342. The scene is laid “in the west countrye,” see l. 39, l. 515.—F.

⁸ ? MS. *aboue*.—F. *aboone*, *abone*, *idem*.—P.

that is the matter & the case
 why Knights of the bathe weare the lace
 804 vntill they haue wonen their shoen,¹
 or else a ladye of hye estate
 from about his necke shall it take,
 for the doughtye deeds that hee hath done.
 808 it was confirmed by Arthur the K[ing ;]
 thorow Sir Gawaines desiringe
 The King granted him his boone.

This is why
 knights of
 the Bath
 wear the
 lace till
 they've won
 their spurs,
 or a lady
 takes the
 lace off.

Thus endeth the tale of the greene Knight. [page 210]
 812 god, that is soe full of might,
 to heauen their soules bring
 that haue hard this litle storye
 that fell some times in the west countrye
 816 in Arthurs days our King ! ffinis.

God bring
 all my
 hearers to
 heauen !
 This litle
 storye befall
 in the West
 Country.

¹ See p. 123, l. 1232.—F.

[It may be noted, that as the story is told here, the point of it is missed. As the agreement of Bredbeddle and Gawaine is here only to share with the other what each gets, p. 71, l. 366, not to change it, as in the old romance. Bredbeddle gives Gawaine only half his venison, p. 76, l. 402, and Gawaine gives Bredbeddle

half his gettings, three kisses, out of three kisses and a lace. As he couldn't cut three kisses in half, to go with the half of the lace, he divided the gift fairly in another way,—the three kisses to Bredbeddle, the lace to himself. Rather hard measure to lose one's "3 points" for that.—F.]

Sir : Triamore. :¹

THE earliest known existing copy of this Romance is preserved at Cambridge. It is of the time of Henry VI., according to Mr. Halliwell, who has edited it for the Percy Society. There is, too, an old MS. copy preserved in the Bodleian Library. The Romance once enjoyed a wide popularity. It was twice printed by William Copland. From one of these editions Mr. Ellis draws the outline he gives in his *Early English Metrical Romances*. One of the old printed versions was reprinted by Mr. Utterson in 1817. The copy here given differs but slightly from Copland's and from the Cambridge version. The more important of what differences there are, are mentioned in the notes.

The piece is a fair specimen of the old Romances, with all their vices and their virtues; with their prolixity, their improbability, their exaggeration; with their wild graces also, their chivalrousness, their pageantry.

The story tells how a good lord and his gentle lady were estranged by the treachery of their steward; how their son, conceived in honour, was born in shame; how, after many a weary year, the execrable fraud was discovered; and how, at last, the son (who has in the meantime won himself a wife) and his mother are happily reunited to the grieving husband. These various incidents are described with much power and feeling.

King Arradas was blessed with a wife, Margaret, "comely to be seen, and true as the turtle-doves on trees." As their union was not followed by the birth of any child, the King determines to

¹ 271 Stanzas.—P.

go and fight in the Holy Land, so to propitiate Heaven and persuade it to grant him an heir. On the very eve of his departure his desire is granted. But he sets forth to the wars not knowing. During his absence his steward Marrock evilly solicits the Queen. "But she was steadfast in her thought." When the King returned from heathenness, and

at last his Queen beheld,
And saw her go great with child,
He wondered at that thing.
Many a time he did her kiss,
And made great joy without miss,
His heart made great rejoicing.

The wicked steward avails himself of the King's wonder to insinuate, and more than insinuate, that the child is none of his. The King unhappily listens. The Queen is presently, at the steward's advice, banished the country.

So now is exiled that good Queen,
But she wist not what it did mean,
Nor what made him to begin.
To speak to her he nay would ;
That made the Queen's heart full cold,
And that was great pity and sin.

* * * * *
For oft she mourned as he did fare,
And cried and sighed full sore.

Lords, knights, and ladies gent
Mourned for her when she went,
And bewailed her that season.

In this way came to pass the sad schism that was to bring so many years of forlornness and anguish, the source of so many bitter tears and poignant self-reproaches. The child whom the dishonoured lady then bore in her womb was to be a full-grown man, and a warrior even more formidable than his father himself, ere Arradas and Margaret kissed conjugally again. Who does not rejoice when the fair fame of this true wife is vindicated, the iniquity of her tempter made bare? When at last, at the marriage of their son, Sir Triamour, to the beautiful Helen of Hungary, she and her husband are again brought face to face :

King Arradas beheld his Queen ;
 Him thought that he had her seen,
 She was a lady faire.
 The King said, " If it is your wish,
 Your name me for to tell,
 I pray you with words fair."
 " My lord," said she, " I was your Queen ;
 Your steward did me ill teen.
 That evil might him befall !"
 The King spake no more words
 Till the cloths were drawn from the boards,
 And men rose in hall,
 And by the hand he took the Queen,
 So in the chamber forth he went,
 And there she told him all.
 Then was there great joy and bliss
 When they together gan kiss ;
 Then all the company made joy enough.

But we do not propose here to gather the wild flowers of this poem for our readers. They shall wander through the meadows and cull for themselves. They will easily find them blowing and blooming, if they have any care for the blossoms of Romance.

God bless
you all !

LOW ¹ Iesus christ, o ² heauen King !
 grant you all his deare blessing,
 & his heauen for to win !

If you'll
listen,
I'll tell you
a tale

4 if you will a stond ³ lay to your eare,
 of adventures you shall heare
 that wilbe to your liking,

of King
Arradas

of a King & of a queene
 8 that had great Ioy them betweene ;
 Sir Arradas ⁴ was his name ;

and Queen
Margaret,

he had a queene named Margaret,
 shee was as true as steele, & sweet,

who was
defamed by

12 & full false brought in fame ⁵

¹ Now.—Cop. (or Copland's edition.
 Collated by Mr. Hales.)

² our.—Cop.

³ stounde.—Cop.

⁴ Arduus.—Ca. (or Cambridge text,
 ed. Halliwell.—F.)

⁵ evil report, disrepute ; L. *fame* (in
 a bad sense), ill-repute, infamy, scandal ;

by the Kings steward *that* Marrocke hight,
a traitor & a false knight :

Sir Marroch

herafter yee will say all the same.

- 14 hee loved well *that* Ladye gent ;
& for shee wold not with him consent,
he did *that* good Queene much shame.

*because she
would not
yield to him.*

- this King loved well his Queene
20 because shee was comlye¹ to be seene,
& as true as the turtle on tree.
either to other made great Moane,
for children together had they none
24 begotten on their bodye ;

*Armed and
Maugre*

*lament
that they
are children,*

- therefore the King, I vnderstand,
made a vow to goe to the holy land,
there for to fight & for to slay² ;
30 & praid god *that* he wold send him the
grace to gett a child be-tweene them tow,
that the right haire might bee.

*and Armed
vows to go
to the Holy
Land,*

*praying God
to send him
an heir.*

- for his vow he did there make,
32 & of the pope the Crosse he did take,
for to seek the land were god him bought.
the night of his departing, on the Ladye Mild,
as god it wold, hee gott³ a child ;
36 but they both wist itt naught.

*He begots a
child on his
wife,*

& on the morrow when it was day
the King hyed on his Iourney ;
for to tarry, he it not thought.

*and next
day starts
on his
journey.*

famous, infamous. (White.) Compare
For yf it may be founde in thee
That thou them fame for enemye,
Thou shalt be taken as a felon,
And put full depe in my pryson.

The Squeyr of Lowe Degre. l. 392
(Ritson iii. 161, Hall?).—F.

¹ *comely. —Cop.*

² *sla. —Cop.*

³ *gate. —Cop.*

Queen
Margaret
mourns ;

40 then the *Queene* began to mourne
because her *Lord* wold noe longer sojourne ;
shee sighed full sore, & sobbed oft.

their parting
is sad.

the *King* & his men armed them right,
44 both *Lords*, *Barrons*, & many a knight,
with him for to goe.

then betweene her & the *King*
was much sorrow & mourninge
48 when the shold depart in too.

Arradas
charges
Marrock to
take care of
his Queen,

he kissed & tooke his leaue of the *Queene*,
& other *Ladies* bright & sheene,
& of *Marrocke* his steward alsoe ;
52 the *King* commanded him on paine of his life
for to keepe well his *queene* & wiffe
both in weale & woe.

and goes to
the Holy
Land.

now is the *King* forth gone
56 to the place where god was on the crosse done,
& warreth there a while.

Marrock

then bethought this false steward—
as yee shall here after[ward,¹]
60 his lord & *King* to beguile ;

wooes the
Queen,

he wooed ² the *Queens* day & night
for to lye with her, & he might ;
he dread no creature thoe.

and seeks to
lie with her.

64 ffull fayre hee did *that* Lady speake,
that he might in bed with *that* Ladye sleepe ;
thus full oft he prayed her thoe.

[page 21

Margaret is
true,

but shee was stedfast in her thought,
68 & heard them speake, & said nought
till hee all his case ³ had told.

¹ MS. hereafter. P. has added *ward*.—F.

² wowed.—Cop.

³ tale.—Cop.

- then shee said, "Marrocke, hast thou not thought
all *that* thou speakeest is ffor nought?
72 I trow not *that* thou wold¹;
- "for well my Lord did trust thee,
when hee to you deliuered mee
to haue me vnder the² hold;
76 & [thou] woldest full faine
to doe thy Lord shame!
traitor, thou art to bold!"
- then said Marrocke vnto *that* Ladye,
80 "my Lord is gone now verelye
against gods foes to flight;
&, without the more wonder bee,
hee shall come noe more att thee,
84 as I am a true knight.
- "& Madam, wee will worke soe prinilye,
that wethere³ he doe liue or dye,
for of this shall⁴ witt noe wight.⁵"
88 then waxed the Queene wonderous [wroth,⁶]
& swore many a great othe
as shee was a true woman,
- shee said, "traitor! if euer thou be soe hardiye
92 to show me of such villanye,
on a gallow tree I will thee hange!
if I may know after this
that thou tice me, I-wis⁷
96 thou shalt haue the law of the land."
- and re-
proaches
Marrock.
- Her lord
trusted him,
- and he
betrays his
trust.
- Marrock
tells the
Queen
- that Arradas
is sure never
to return;
- and promises
to keep their
sin secret.
- Margaret
angrily
- threatens to
hang
Marrock,
- if he says
another
word to her.

¹ I didn't think you were capable of this.—F.

² they.—Cop.

³ After the first *e* an *h* is marked out.
—F.

⁴ there shall.—Ca.

⁵ man.—P.

⁶ Added by Percy.—F.

⁷ tyce me to do a mysse.—Cop.

Marrock assures her
he meant
her no
wrong,
but only to
try her
truth.

Sir Marroccke said, "Ladye, mercye!
I said itt for noe villainé,
by Iesu, heauen Kinge!
100 but only for to proue your will,
whether *that* you were good or ill,
& for noe other thinge;

Now he
knows she is
true,

104 "but now, Madam, I may well see
you are as true as turtle on the tree¹
vnto my Lord the King;
& itt is to me both glad & leefe;
therfore take it not into greefe
108 for noe manner of thinge."

Margaret
believes him.

& soe the traitor excused him thoe,
the Lady wend itt had beene soe
as the steward had said.
112 he went forth, & held him still,
& thought he cold not haue his will;
therfore hee was euill apayd.

But
Marrock,
disgusted,

² soe with treason & trecherye
116 he thought to doe her villanye;
thus to himselfe he said.
night & day hee laboured then
for to betray³ *that* good woman;
120 soe att the last he her betraid.

schemes how
to betray
her,
and does it.

now of this good Queene leane wee,
& by the grace of the holy trinityo
full great with child did shee gone.
124 now of King Arradas speake wee,
that soe farr in heathinnesse is hee
to fight against gods fone⁴;

Arradas

¹ as stole on tree.—Ca.² This stanza is not in Ca.—F.³ deceyue.—Cop.⁴ fonne.—Cop.

there with his army & all his might
 120 slew many a sarrazen¹ in fight.

and his men
 slay
 Saracens

great words of them there rose
 in the heathen Land, & alsoe in Pagainé²;
 & in euerye other Land that they come bye,
 122 there sprang of him great loase.³

and grow
 famous.

when [he⁴] had done his pilgrimage,
 & labored all that great voyage⁵
 with all his good will & lybertye,—
 126 att Home Lorden & att Bethlem,⁶
 & att Caluarye beside Ierusalem,
 in all the places was hee;—

After
 visiting

[page 313]

Jordan and
 Calvary,

then he longed to come home
 140 to see his Ladye that lined at one;
 he thought ouer on her greatlye.
 soe long the sealed on the fome
 till att the last they came home;
 144 he arriued ouer the Last⁷ strond.

he longs for
 home,

and sets sail.

the shippes did strike their sayles eche one,
 the men were glad the King came home
 vnto his owne Land.
 148 there was both mirth & game,
 the Queene of his cominge was glad & faine,
 Ecbe of them told other tydand.⁸

Arradas
 reaches
 home,

meets
 Margaret,

the King at last his Queene beheld,
 152 & saw heer goe great with childe:
 [&⁹] hee wondred att that thinge.

and finds
 her great
 with child,

to his
 wonder,

¹ merrye.—Cop.

² Pagainy.—Cop.

³ Loos or fame, *Fama*. Promptorium.

—F

⁴ he.—Ca.

⁵ vayge.—Cop.

⁶ Bedloem.—Cop.

⁷ salte.—Cop.

⁸ tydyngs.—Cop.

⁹ A hole in the MS.—F.

many a time he did her kisse,
 & made great ioy without misse ;
 156 his hart¹ made great reioceinge.

Marrock
 tells him

that the
 child is

soone after the King hard tydinges newe
 by Marroccke : *that* false knight vntrue
 with reason his lord gan fraine,
 160 "my lord," he sayd, "for gods² byne³ !
 for of *that* childe *that* neuer was thine,⁴
 why art thou soe fayne ?

certainly
 not his. His
 Queen has
 been false ;
 another
 knight begot
 the child.

"you wend *that* itt your owne bee ;
 164 but," he said, "Sir, ffor certaintye
 your *Queene* hath you betraime ;
 another *Knight*, soe god me speed,
 begott this child sith you yeed,
 168 & hath thy *Queene* forlaine."

"What ?
 When I put
 her in your
 charge ?"

"Alas !" said the King, "how may this bee ?
 for I betooke her vnto thee,
 her to keepe in waile & woe⁵ ;
 172 & vnder thy keeping how fortunéd this
that thou suffered her doe amisse ?
 alas, Marroccke ! why did thou soe ?"

Marrock
 excuses
 himself,

"Sir," said the steward, "blame not me ;
 176 for much mone shee made for thee,
 as though shee had loued noe more ;

but declares
 he saw a
 knight lie
 with her,

"I trowed on her noe villanye
 till I saw one lye her by,
 180 as the Mele⁶ had wrought.

for which he
 killed him,

to him I came with Egar mood,
 & slew the traitor as he stood ;
 full sore itt [me] forethought.

¹ First written *halt*.—F.

² Goddes.—Cop.

³ Goddys pyne.—Ca.

⁴ MS. thine was.—F.

⁵ weal & woe.—P.

⁶ ? Fr. *mal*, evil ; or *meslée*, a mixtur mingling, melling. Cotgrave.—F.

- 184 "then shee trowed shee shold be shent,
 & promised me both Land & rent;
 soe fayre shee me besought
 to doe with her all my will
 188 if *that* I wold [keepe] me still,
 & tell you naught."
- "of this," said the King, "I haue great wonder;
 for sorrow my hart will breake assunder¹!
- 192 why hath shee done amaine?
 alas! to whome shall I me mone,
 with I haue lost my comlye Queene
 that I was wont to kisse?"
- 196 the King said, "Marroccke, what is thy read?
 it is best to turne to dead²
 my ladye *that* hath done me this³;
 now because *that* shee is false to mee,
 200 I will neuer more her see,
 nor deale with her, I wisse.⁴"
- the steward said, "Lord, doe not see;
 thou shalt neither burne ne sloe,⁵
 204 but doe as I you shall you tell."
 Marroccke sayd, "this counsell I:
 banish her out of your Land prinilye,
 far into exile.
- 208 "deliuer her an ambling⁶ steede,
 & an old Knight to her lead;
 thus by my counsell see⁶ yee doe;
- and the
Queen pre-
mised him

herself for
his silence.

Arraies
sorrow.

He has lost
his Queen

What can he
do? He'll
kill her.

Marrocck
advise

him to
banish her,

[page 212] give her a
horse

¹ assunder.—Cop.² ? turns is for turns, cp. l. 203.—F.

brings her to dead.—Cop.

Whether that sche be done to dedd

That was my blyss?—Ca.

⁵ ywys.—Cop.⁶ so.—Cop.⁶ ambelynge.—Cop. colds.—Ca.⁶ loka.—Cop.

and money,

and let her
go.

& giue them some spending money
212 *that* may them out of the land bring;
I wold noe better then soe.

“ & an other mans child shalbe you heyre,
itt were neither good nor fayre

216 but if itt were of *your* kin.”

Arradas
agrees.

then said the *King*, “soe mote I thee,
right as thou sayest, soe shall it bee,
& erst will I neuer blin.¹”

Queen
Margaret is
to be exiled;

220 Loe, now is exiled *that* good Queene;
but shee wist not what it did meane,
nor what made him to begin.

the King
will not
speak to her.

to speake to her he nay wold;
224 *that* made the Queenes hart full cold,
& *that* was great pittye & sin.

He gives her
an old steed,

he did her cloth in purple² weede,
& set her on an old steed

228 *that* was both crooked & almost blinde;

an old
knight,
Sir Roger,
to look after
her,

he tooke her an old Knight,
kine to the Queene, Sir Rodger³ hight,
that was both curteous⁴ & kind.

and three
days to quit
the land in,

232 3 dayes he gaue them leaue⁵ to passe,
& after *that* day sett was,
if men might them find,

(or the
Queen will
be burnt,)

the Queene shold burned⁶ be starke dead
236 in a ffyer with flames redd:
this came of the stewards⁷ mind.⁸

¹ blyne.—Cop.

² He let clothe hur in sympulle.—Ca.

³ Roger.—Cop.

⁴ curteyse.—Cop.

⁵ And gaf them twenty dayes.—Ca.

⁶ brenned.—Cop.

⁷ stuardes.—Cop.

⁸ mimd, in the MS.—F.

- 40th florences for their expence¹
 the King did gine them in his presence,
 240 & comanded them to goe.
 the Ladye mourned as shée shold dye;
 for all this shée wist not whye
 hee fared with her soe.
 244 that good Knight comforted the Queene,
 & said, "att gods will all must beene;
 therefore, Madam, mourne you noe more."
 Sir Rodger for her hath much care,
 248 [For ofte she mourned as she dyd fare,²
 & cryed & sighed full sore;
 Lords, Knights, & ladyes gent
 mourned for her when shée went,
 252 & be-wayled³ her that season.
 the Queene began to make sorrow & care
 when shée from the King shold fare
 with wrong, against all reason.
 256 forth they went, in number⁴ 3,
 Sir Rodger, the Queene, & his greyhound trulye;
 ah! o⁵ worth wicked treason!
 then thought the steward trulye
 260 to doe the Queene a villanye,
 & to worke with her his will.
 he ordained him a companye
 of his owne men priuilye
 264 that wold assent him till;
 all vnder a Wood⁶ side they did lye
 wheras the Queene shold passe by,
 & held them wonderous still;

she forty
florens.

Queen
Margaret
mourns.

Sir Roger
comforts her.

but she
wailes still.

and they set
off.

Marrock

gets his men
together.

and lies in
ambush for
the Queen.

¹ Threety florens to there spendyng.
—Ca.

² This line is from Copland's text.—H.

³ MS. he wayled.—F.

⁴ nunner, in the MS.—F.

⁵ wo.—Cop.

⁶ wodes.—Cop. The W is made like
w in the MS.—F.

to work his
lust on her.

268 & there he thought verelye
his good Queene for to lye by,
his lusts ¹ for to fulfill.

The Queen
and Sir
Roger

& when hee came into the wood,
272 Sir Rodger & the Queene soe good,
& there ² to passe with-out doubt;
with *that* they were ware of the steward,
how hee was coming to them ward
276 with a ffull great rout.

perceive
Marrock's

treason.

"heere is treason!" then said the Queene.
"alas!" said Roger, "what may this meane?
with foes wee be sett round about."

Sir Roger
prepares

280 the Knight sayd, "heere will wee dwell;
Our life wee shall full deere sell,
be they neuer soe stout.

[page 214]

for defence.

"Madam," he sayd, "be not affrayd,
284 for I thinke heere with this sword
that I shall make them lowte."

Marrock
threatens to
kill him.

then cryed the steward to Sir Rodger on hye,
& said, "Lord, ³ traitor! thou shalt dye!
288 for *that* I goe about."

Sir Roger
defies him,

Sir Rodger said, "not for thee!
my death shalt thou deare abyee;
for with thee will I fight."
292 he went to him shortlye,
& old Sir Rodger bare him manfullye ⁴
like a full hardye Knight;

attacks his
men,

he hewed on them boldlye;
296 there was none of *that* companye
soe hardye nor sow ⁵ wight.

¹ lustes.—Cop.

² ? construction. Is *there* miswritten
for *thought*, or is *thought* understood, or

is *thereto* one word?—H.

³ olde.—Cop.

⁵ so.—Cop.

⁴ manly.—Cop.

- Sir Rodger hitt ¹ one on the head
 that to the girdle the sword yeed,
 289 then was hee of them quitte ²;
- he smote a stroke with a sword ³ good
 that all about them ran the blood,
 soe sore he did them smite ;
 291 truiye-hee, ⁴ his greyhound that was soe ⁵ good,
 did helpe his master, & by him stood,
 & bitterlye can hee byte.
- then that Lady, that fayre foode, ⁶
 293 she feared Marrocks in her mood ;
 shoo light on foote, & left her steede,
 & ran fast, & wold not leaue,
 & hid her vnder a greene greene, ⁷
 295 for shoo was in great dread.
- Sir Rodger then the Queene can behold,
 & of his life he did nothing hold ;
 his good grayhound did help him indeed,
 316 & as itt is in the romans ⁸ told,
 14 he slew of yeomen ⁹ bold ; ¹⁰
 soe he quitted him in that steede.
- if hee had beene armed, I-wisse ¹¹
 297 all the Masterye had been his ;
 alas hee lacked weed.
 as good Sir Rodger gaue a stroake,
 behind him came Sir Marroccke,—
 299 that euill might he speed,—

spite one to
the girdle,wounds
others,and his
greyhound,
Truiyhe,
helps.Queen
Margaretdiamonds,
runs away,
and hides
herself.

Sir Roger

kills fourteen
yeomen,

but Marrocks

¹ byt.—Cop.² quyte.—Cop.³ sword.—Cop.⁴ True-love.—Ca.⁵ do at the end has been marked out
of the MS.—F.⁶ lode.—Cop. person.—F.⁷ greve.—Cop. grove.—F.⁸ Romaines.—Cop.⁹ yemen.—Cop.¹⁰ 21st Syr Roger downe can folde.—

Ca.

¹¹ ywis.—Cop.

stabs him in
the back

he smote Sir Rodger with a speare,
& to the ground he did him beare,
& fast *that* Knight did bleed.

328 Sir Marroccke gaue him such a wound
that he dyed there on ground,
& *that* was a sinfull deede.

and kills
him.

Marrock

now is Rodger slaine certainlye.

332 he rode forth & let him Lye,
& sought after the Queene.
fast hee rode, & sought euerye way,
yet wist he not where the Queene Laye.

searches
everywhere
for the
Queen,

336 then said the traitor teene ; ¹

but cannot
find her : he

ouer all the wood hee her sought ;
but as god wold, he found her nought.
then waxed he wrath, I weene,

gets wroth,

340 & held his Iourney euill besett,
that with the Queene had not mett
to haue had his pleasure, the traitor keene.

and goes
home,

& when he cold not the lady finde,
344 homeward they began to wend,
hard by where Sir Rodger Lay.
the steward ² him thrust throughout,
for of his death, he had noe doubt,
348 & this the storye doth say.

stabbing Sir
Roger's
corpe on
the way,

& when the traitor had done soe,
he let him lye & went him free,
& tooke noe thought *that* day ;

352 yett all his companye was nye gone,
14 he left there dead for one ;
there passed but 4 away. ³

and having
lost fourteen
men.

¹ If a stanza is not omitted, *said* must
mean *assayed*, tried.—F.

² stuarde.—Cop.

³ xl. he had chaunged for oone.
Ther skaped but two away.—Ca.

then the Queene was full woe,
 226 And shee saw *that* they were goe,
 shee made sorrow & crye.
 then shee rose & went againe
 to Sir Rodger, & found him slaine;
 230 his grey-hound by his feet did lye.

*Queen
laments*
 [page 215]

laments over

"*alas*," shee said, "*that* I was borne!
 my trew knight *that* I haue borne,
 they haue him there slaine!"
 234 full pittouslye shee mad her moene,
 & said, "now must I goe alone!"
 the grey-hound shee wold haue had full faise;

*Sir Roger's
corpse.*

the hound still by his Master did lye,
 238 he licked his wounds, & did whine & crye.
 this to see the Queene had paine,
 & said, "Sir Roger, this hast thou for me!
 alas *that* [it] shold euer bee!"
 242 her hayre shee tare in twayne;

*The grey-
hound will
not leave the
corpse.*

& then shee went & tooke her steed,
 & wold noe longer there abyde
 lest men shold find her there.
 246 shee said, "Sir Roger, now *thou* art dead,
 who will the right way now me lead?
 for now thou mayst speake noe more."

The Queen

*laments
again the
loss of Sir
Roger.*

right on the ground there as he lay dead,
 250 shee kist him or shee from him yead.¹
 god wott her hart was sore!
 what for sorrow & dread,
 fast away shee can her speede,
 254 shee wist not wither nor where.

*kisses his
corpse,*

*and speeds
away.*

¹ This incident is not in Ca.—F.

The hound the good grayhound for waile & woe
 from the *Knight* hee wold not goe,
 but Lay & licked his wound ;
 licks his 388 he waite ¹ to haue healed them againe,
 master's & therto he did his paine :
 wounds, to loe, such loue is in a hound ² !
 heal them.
 What love !
 this knight lay till he did ³ stinke ;
 The hound 392 the greayhound he began to thinke,
 & scraped a pitt anon ;
 scrapes a therin he drew the dead ⁴ corse,
 grave, & couered itt with earth & Mosse,⁵
 and buries 396 & from him he wold not gone.
 his master.
 the grayhound lay still there ;
 Margaret this *Queene* gan forth to fare
 for dread of her fone ;
 400 shee had great sorrow in her hart,
 the thornes pricked her wonderous smart,⁶
 shee wist not wither to goe.
 rides on into this lady forth fast can hye
 Hungary. 404 into the land of Hugarye ⁷ ;
 thither came shee with great woe.
 at last shee came to a wood side,
 The pains of but then cold shee noe further ryde,
 labour come 408 her paynes tooke her soe.
 on,
 shee lighted downe in *that* tyde,
 for there shee did her trauncell ⁸ abyde ;
 god wold *that* it shold be soe.
 412 then shee with much paine
 tyed her horsse by the rayne,
 & rested her there till her paynes were goe.

¹ expected.—F.² (I)rete kyndenes ys in howndys.—Ca.³ The last *d* is made over an *s* in the MS.—F.⁴ deed.—Cop.⁵ And scraped on hym bothe ryne and

mosse.—Ca.

⁶ wonder smert.—Cop.⁷ Hongarye.—Ca. Hongrye.—Cop.⁸ for trauell, *travail*.—F. tranayll.

—Cop.

shee was deliuered of a manchild sweete ;
 416 & when it began to crye & weepe,
 it ioyed her hart greatlye.
 soone after, when shee might stirr,
 shee tooke her child to her full neere,
 420 And wrapt¹ itt full softlye. [page 216]

and she is
 deliuered of
 a male child.

She joys,

takes her
 baby to her,

What for wearye & for woe,
 they fell a-sleepe both towe ;
 her steed stood her behind.
 424 then came a knight rydand there,²
 & found this ladye soe louelye of cheere
 as hee hunted after the hind.

and falls
 asleep.

A knight
 finds her,

the Knight hight Bernard Mowsyinge,³
 428 that found the Queens sleepinge,
 vnder the greenwoode lyande.⁴
 softlye he went neere & neere ;
 he went on foot, & beheld her cheere,
 432 as a Knight curteous & kind.

Sir Bernard
 Mowsyinge,

he awaked that ladye of beawtye⁵ ;
 shee looked on him pitteouslee,
 & was affrayd⁶ full sore.
 436 he said, " what doe you here, Madame ?
 of whence be you, or whats your name ?
 haue you your men forlorne⁷ ? "

wakes her,

and asks her
 what she
 does there,
 what is her
 name ?

" Sir," shee sayd, " if you will witt,⁸
 440 my name is⁹ called Margerett ;
 in Arragon I was borne ;
 heere I sufferd much greefe ;
 helpe me, Sir,¹⁰ out of this Mischeefe !
 444 att some towne that I were."

" Margaret ;

help me ! "

¹ wrapped.—Cop.

² here.—Cop.

³ Sir Bernard Mowsyinge.—Ca. Bar-
 nel Mowsyinge.—Cop.

⁴ lynde.—Cop.

⁵ beawty.—Cop.

⁶ aferde.—Cop.

⁷ MS. forlorne.—F. forlore.—P.

⁸ wete.—Cop.

⁹ MS. is is ; ? for it is.—F.

¹⁰ There appears a word like it marked
 out here in the MS.—F.

- Sir Bernard the Knight beheld the Ladye good ;
 hee ¹ thought shee was of gentle blood
 that was soe hard bestead ² ;
- takes her 448 he tooke her vp curteouslye,
 & the child that lay her bye ;
 them both with him he led,
- & made her haue a woman att will,
 452 tendinge of her, as itt was skill,³
 all for to bring her a-bedd.
 whatsoener shee wold haue,
 shee needed itt not long to craue,
 456 her speech was right soone sped.
- thé christened the child with great honour,
 & named him Sir TRYAMORE.
 then they were of him glad ;
 460 great gifts to him was giuen
 of Lords & ladyes by-deene,
 in bookes as I read.
- there dwelled *that* Ladye longe
 464 with much Ioy them amonge ;
 of her thé were neuer wearye.
 the child was taught great nurterye ⁴ ; .
 a Master had him vnder his care,
 468 & taught him curtesie.⁵
 this child waxed wonderous well,
 of great stature both of fleshe & fell ;
 enerye man loued him trulye,
- 472 of his companye all folke were glad ;
 indeed, noe other cause they had,
 the child was gentle & bold.

¹ MS. shee.—F. And.—Ca.² bestadde.—Cop.³ skell.—Cop. reason.—F.⁴ nurture.—P. norture.—Cop.⁵ Sche techyd hur sone for to wyrke,
 And taght hym evyr newe.—Ca.

Now of the *Queene* let wee bee,
 476 & of the grayhound speake wee
 that I erst of told.

Sir Roger's
 grayhound

long 7 yeeres, soe god me saue,
 he did keepe his *Masters* grane,
 480 till that hee waxed old ;
 this Gray-bound Sir Roger kept¹ long,
 & brought him vp sith he was younge,
 in story as it is told ;

keeps to his
 master's
 grave seven
 years,

for Sir Roger
 had brought
 him up.

therefore he kept soe there
 for the² space of 7 yeere,
 & goe from him he ne wold.
 ever vpon his *Masters* grane he lay,
 490 there might noe man haue him away
 for heat neither for cold,

The hound
 never leaves
 the grave,

[page 217]

without it were once a day
 he ran about to gett his prey³
 492 of beasta that were bold,
 conyes, when he can them gett ;
 thus wold he labor for his meate,
 yett great hungar he had in how.⁴

except
 to get food.

& 7 yeeres he dwelled there,
 till itt befell on that yeere,
 euen on christmasse day,
 the gray-hound (as the story sayes)
 500 came to the Kings palace⁵
 without any⁶ delay.

One Christ-
 mas
 the hound

goes to
 Arradas's
 palace,

¹ had kepte.—Cop.

² By the.—Cop.

³ preys.—Cop.

⁴ holde.—Cop. *How*, care. Halliwell.
 F.

⁵ palaces.—Cop.

⁶ ony.—Cop.

when they Lords were ¹ sett at meate, soone
the grayhound into the hall runn

504 amonge the knights gay ;

all about he can behold,

cannot find
what he
seeks,

but he see not what hee wold ;

then went he his way full right

508 when he had sought & cold not find ;

ffull gentlye he did his kind,

speed better when he might.

and goes
back to Sir
Roger's
grave.

the grayhound ran forth his way

512 till he came where his Master Lay,

as fast as euer he mought.

Arradas

the king marueiled at *that* deed,

from whence he went, & whither he yeed,

516 or who him thither brought.

thinks he
has seen the
dog before.

the King thought he had seene him ere,

but he wist not well where,

therfor he said right nought.

520 soone he bethought him then

that he did him erst ken,

& ² still stayd in *that* thought.

Next day

the other day, in the same wise,

524 when the King shold from his meate rise,

the hound
returns,

the Grayhound came in thee ;

all about there he sought,

but cannot
find
Marrock.

but the steward found he nought ;

528 then againe he began to goe.

Arradas says
it is Sir
Roger's dog,

the[n] sayd the King in *that* stond,

"methinkes it is Sir Rogers hound

that went forth with the Queene ;

and perhaps
the Queen
has come
back ;

532 I trow they be come againe to this land.

Lords, all this I vnderstand,

it may right well soe bee ;

¹ The first *e* is made over an *h* in the MS.—F.

² sate styll in a.—Cop.

“if *that* they be into this Land come,
 536 we shall haue word therof soone
 & within short space;
 for neuer since thé went I-wisse
 I saw not the gray hound ere this;
 540 it is a marueilous case!

“when he cometh againe, follow him,
 fo[r] euermore he will run ¹
 to his *Masters* dwelling place;
 544 run & goe, looke ye not spare,
 till *that* yee come there
 to Sir Rodger & my Queene.”

when the
 dog comes
 again, some
 lords are to
 follow him

to Sir Roger
 and the
 Queen.

then the 3^d day, amonge them all
 548 the grayhound came into the hall,
 to meate ere thé were ² sett.
 Marrocke the steward was within,
 the grayhound thought he wold not blin
 552 till he with him had mett;

Next day
 the dog
 comes again,

finds
 Marrock,

he tooke the steward by the throte,
 & assunder he it bote ³;
 but then he wold not byde,
 556 for to his graue he rann.
 there follolwed him many a man,
 some on horsse, some beside;

and
 bites him
 through the
 throat.

Men follow
 the dog

& when he came where his *Master* was,
 560 he Layd him downe beside the grasse
 And barked at the men againe. [page 218]
 there might noe man him from the place gett,
 & yett with stanes thé did him beate,
 564 *that* he was almost slaine.

to Sir Roger's
 grave,

which he will
 not quit.

¹ renne.—Cop.

² werere, in the MS.—F.

³ MS. o over a y.—F. The hovnd
 wrekyd hys maystys dethe.—Ca.

They return. & when the men saw the better boote,
when the men went home on horse & foote,
with great willer. I weene.

and Arraine
in the time
Marroccke was
slain the
Roger. 564 the King said - by gods paine,
I trow Sir Marroccke hath Sir Rodger slaine,
& with treason fained¹ my Queene.

He returne a
search for
his corpse. 572 - give yee & seeke there againe :
for the bodie's Master there is slaine,
some treason there hath beene."

They find
the body. 576 thither they went, see god me saue,
& found Sir Roger in his grane,
for that was soone seene :

and take it
to Arraine. & there they looked him there vpon,
for he was hole both flesh & bone,
& to the court his body they brought.

who weeps, 580 for when the King did him see,
the teares ran downe from his eye,
full sore itt him forethought.

the grayhound² he wold not from his course³ fare :
584 then was the King cast in care,
& said, "Marroccke hath done me teene ;
slaine he hath a curteous Knight,
& fained⁴ my Queene with great vnright,
588 as a traitor keene."

the King let draw anon-right
the stewards bodye, that false Knight,
with horse through the towne ;

and hanged. 592 then he hanged him on a tree,
that all men might his body see,
that he had done treason.

¹ defamed.—F. flemmed.—Cop.

² grehound.—Cop.

³ corse.—Cop.

⁴ for fained, defamed.—F. flemyd.
—Ca. flemmed.—Cop.

Sir Rogers Boly the next day
 598 the King buryed in good array,
 with many a bold baron.¹

Sir Roger's
 corpse is
 buried,

the Grayhound was neuer away
 by night nor yet by day,
 600 but on the ground he did dye.
 the King did send his messengere
 in euerye place far & neere
 after the Queene to spye ;
 604 but for ought he cold enquire,
 he cold of *that* Ladye nothing heare ;
 therfore the King was sorrye.¹

and his
 hound

dies.

Armes tries
 to get

tidings of
 his Queene,

but can hear
 none.

the King sayd, "I trow noe reed,
 608 for well I wott *that* shee is dead ;
 for sorrowe now shall I dye !
 alas, *that* euer shee from mee went !
 this false steward hath me shent
 612 througho his false treacherye."

He thinks
 her dead,

this King liued in great sorrow
 both euening & morrow
 till *that* hee were brought to ground.
 616 he liued thus many a yeere
 with mourning & with euill cheere,
 his sorrowes lasted long :

and liues in
 sorrow

many years,

& euer it did him great paine
 620 when hee did thinke how Sir Roger was alaine,
 & how helped him his hound ;
 & of his Queene *that* was soe Mylde,
 how shee went from him great with child ;
 624 for woe then did hee sound.²

grieving
 over Sir
 Roger's
 death

and his
 pregnant
 Queene's
 miscarriage.

¹ Every marks the three last lines to those that precede them.—F.
² separate stanzas, but I add them to those that precede them.—F.

He mourns
and is sad at heart.

long time thus lined the *King*
in great sorrow & Mourning,
& oftentime did weepe ;
628 he tooke great thought more & more,
It made his hart verrye sore,
his sighs were sett soe deepe.

[page 219]

Meantime
Triamore
is fourteen,

now of the *King* wee will bline,
632 & of the Queene let vs begin,
& Sir ¹ Tryamore ;
for when he was 14 yeere old,
there was noe man soe bold
636 durst doe him dishonor ² ;

strong,
and tall,

in euerye time ³ both stout & stronge,
& in stature large & longe,
comlye of hye color ;
640 all *that* euer he dwelled amonge,
he neuer did none of them wronge,
and well-doing. the more *that* was his honor.

The King of Hungary
dies,

leaving only
a daughter,
fair Helen,
of fourteen,

in *that* time sikerlye
644 dyed the *King* of Hungarye ⁴
that was of great age I-wiss ⁵ ;
he had no heire his land to hold
but a daughter was 14 ycers old ⁶ ;
648 faire [*Hellen* ⁷] shee named is.

white as a lily.

shee was as white as lilye ⁸ flower,
& comely, of gay color,
the fairest of any towne or tower ;

¹ her sonne.—Cop.² dysshonoure.—Cop.³ lymme.—Cop.⁴ Hungry.—Cop.⁵ The second *s* is made over an *e* in the MS.—F.⁶ of vij. yerys elde.—Ca.⁷ See l. 775. *Hellene*, l. 1587 below.—F. Her name *Helyne* ya.—Ca. *Elyne*.—Cop.⁸ The top of a long *s* whose bottom is marked through, is left in the MS. before the first *l*.—F.

652 shee was well shapen of foote & hand,
 peere shee had none in noe land,
 shee was soe fresh & soe amorous.

for when her father was dead,
 656 great warr began to spread
 in *that* land about;
 then the Ladyes councell gan her reade,
 ‘gett her a lord her land to lead,
 660 to rule the realme without doubt;
 some mightye prince *that* well might
 rule her land with reason & right,
that all men to him might Lout.’

Her land is
 invaded;

her council
 tell her to
 marry a
 lord to
 protect her.

664 & when her councell had sayd soe,
 for great need shee had therto,
 shee graunted them without Lye:
 the Lady said, “I will not feare
 668 but he [be] prince or princes peere,
 & cheefe of all chivalrye.”

She consents,

therto shee did consent,
 & gaue her Lords commandement
 672 a great Iusting for to crye;
 & at the Iustine, shold soe bee,
 what man *that* shold win the degree,¹
 shold win *that* Ladye trulye.

proclaims a
 jousting,

the winner
 at which
 shall win her
 too.

676 the day of Iusting then was sett,
 halfe a yeere without lett,
 without any more delay,
 because *thé* might haue good space,
 680 Lords, *knights*, dukes, in euerye place,
 for to be there *that* day.

The day is
 fixed.

¹ Fr. *degré*, a degree, ranke, or place of honour. Cotgrave.—F.

The best
lords

Lords, the best in euerye Land,
hard tell of *that* rydand,

prepare to
contend.

684 & made them readye full gay ;
of euerye land there was the best,¹
of the States *that* were honest ²
attyred ³ many a Lady gay.

Triamore
hears of the
jousting,
and resolves
to go to it,

688 great was *that* chivalrye
that came *that* time to HUNGARYE,
there for to Iust with might.
at last TRIAMORE hard tyding
692 that there shold be a Iusting ;
thither wold he wend.

but he has no
horse or
arms.

if he wist *that* he might gaine
with all his might, he wold be faine ⁴
696 *that* gay Ladye for to win ;
hee had noe horsse nay noe other geere,
Nor noe weapon with him to beare ;
that brake his hart in twaine.

[page 220]

He asks Sir
Bernard to
lend him
some,

700 he thought both euen & morrow
where he might some armour borrowe,
therof wold hee be faine
to Sir Barnard then he can wend,⁵
704 *that* he wold armour lend ⁶
to iust against the knights amaine.⁷

and the
knight tells
him he
knows no-
thing about
it.

Triamore
asks to
be tried.

then said Sir Barnard, " what hast thou thought ?
pardew ! of iusting thou canst nought !
708 for yee bee not able wepon to weld."
" Sir," said TRIAMORE, " what wott yee
of what strenght *that* I bee
till I haue assayd in feeld ? "

¹ bestee.—Cop.

² moost honasty.—Cop.

³ dressed herself: parallel to l. 684.

States may mean "nobles."—F.

⁴ He wolde purvey hym fulle fayne.
—Ca.

⁵ mene.—Cop.

⁶ lene.—Cop.

⁷ of mayne.—Cop.

- 712 then Sir Barnard *that* was full hend,
 . said, " TRIAMOR, if thou wilt wend,
 thou shalt lacke noe weed ;
 I will lend thee all my geere,
 716 horsse & harneis, sheild & spere,
 thou art nothing ¹ to dread ;
- " alsoe thither with thee will I ryde,
 & euer nye be by thy side
 720 to helpe thee if thou haue need ;
 all things *that* thou wilt haue,
 gold & siluer, if thou wilt crane,
 thy Iourney for to speed."
- 724 then was TRIAMORE glad & light,
 & thanked Barnard with all his might
 of his great proferinge.
 that day the Iusting shold bee,
 728 TRIAMORE sett him on his knee
 & asked his mother blessinge.
- at home shee wold haue kept him faine ;
 but all her labor was in vaine,
 732 there might be noe letting.
 shee saw it wold noe better bee,
 her blessing shee gaue him verelye
 w[i]th full sore weepinge.
- 736 & when it was on the Morrow day,
 TRIAMORE was in good array,
 armed & well dight ;
 when he was sett on his steed,
 740 he was a man both ² lenght & bread,³
 & goodlye in mans sight.

Sir Barnard
then prom-
ises to lend

him horse
and arms,

go with him,

and provide
him money.

On the day
of the joust,
Triamore
asks his
mother's
blessing,

and she gives
it him
sorrowfully.

In the
morning,
Triamore

¹ nothenge.—Cop.

² in.—Cop.

³ brede.—Cop.

starts with
Sir Bernard.

then TRIAMORE to the feild can ryde,
& Sir Barnard by his side ;
744 they were Iocund & light ;
there was none in all the feild
that was more seemlye vnder sheild ;
he rode full like a knight.

Queen Helen
of Hungary
looks from a
turret

748 then was the faire Lady sett
full hye vppon a turrett,¹
for to behold *that* play ;

on the gay
scene of

there was many a seemlye *Knight*,
752 princes, Lords, & dukes of Might,
themselues for to assay,

helmed
knights.

with helme on theire heads bright
that all the feelds shone with light,
756 they were soe stout & gay :

Triamore

then Sir TRIAMORE & Sir BARNARD
thé pressed them into the feeld forward,²
there durst noe man say nay.

760 there was much price³ & pride
when euerye man to other can ryde,
& lords of great renowne ;

happens to
choose his
father, King
Arradas's
side.

it beffell TRIAMORE *that* tyde
764 for to be on his fathers side,
the King of Arragon.

A big Lom-
bard lord
rides forth ;

the first *that* rode forth certainlye
was a great Lord of Lumbardye,
768 a wonderfull bold Barron.

Triamore
throws him,

TRIAMOR rode him againe :
for all *that* lord had Might & maine,
the child bare him downe.

[page 221]

¹ Hye up in a gareth.—Ca.

² warde.—Cop.

³ prees.—Cop.

772 ¹ then cryed Sir Barnard with honor,
 "A TRIAMOR, a TRIAMORE!"
 for men shold him ken.
 Mayd Hellen ² *that* was soe mild,
 776 more shee beheld TRIAMORE the child
 then all the other men.

and Sir
 Bernard
 shouts "*A
 Triamore*"
 to make him
 known.
 Queen Helen
 views him
 with favour.

then the *Kings* sonne of Nauarrne ³
 wold not his body warne ⁴;
 780 he pricked forth on the plaine.
 then young Triamore *that* was stout,
 turned himselfe round about,
 & fast rode him againe;

The Prince
 of Navarne

rides out;

Triamore

charges him;

784 soe neither of them were to ground cast,⁵
 they sate soe wonderous fast,
 like men of much might.
 then came forth a Bachelour,⁶
 788 a prince proud without peere;
 Sir Iames, forsooth, he hight;

neither is
 thrown.

Sir James of
 Almaine

he was the Emperours sonne of Almaine ⁷;
 he rode Sir TRIAMORE ⁸ againe,
 792 with hard strenght to fight.
 Sir Iames had such a stroake indeed
that he was tumbled from his steed;
 then failed all his might.
 796 there men might see swords brast,
 helmes ne sheilds might not last;
 & thus it dured till night;

next charges
 Triamore,

and is un-
 horsed.

The joust
 lasts

till night.

¹ Ca. puts this stanza after the next.
 —F.

² Elyne.—Cop.

³ Armony.—Ca. Nauerne.—Cop.

⁴ A.-S. *warnian*, to take care of, beware.
 —F.

⁵ Ca. makes Triamore bear him down,
 and transfers this to Sir James in
 the next stanza.—F.

⁶ batchelere.—Cop.

⁷ Almaine.—Cop.

⁸ ? MS. Triamoir.—F.

- but when the sun drew neere¹ west,
 800 and all the Lords went to rerst,
 [Not so the maide Elyne.²]
 Next day, the *Knights* attired them in good arraye,
 on steeds great, with trappers³ gaye,
 before the sun can⁴ shine ;
- it begins
 again, 804 then to the feeld thé pricked prest,
 & euerye man thought himselfe best
 [As the mayden faire they paste.³]
 and the
 knights
 charge
 fiercely. then they feirclye ran together,
 great speres in peeces did shimmer,⁵
 808 their timber might not last.
- King
 Arradas & at *that* time there did run⁶
 the *King* Arradas of Arragon :
 his sonne Triamore mett him in *that* tyde,
 is thrown by
 his son 812 & gaue his father such a rebound
 Triamore, *that* harse & man fell to the ground,⁷
 soe stoutlye gan he ryde.
- who also
 vanquishes
 Sir James. then the next *Knight that* hee mett
 816 was Sir Iames ; & such a stroake him sett
 vpon the sheild ther on the plaine
 that the blood brast out at his nose & eares,
 his steed vnto the ground him beares ;
 820 then was Sir Barnard faine.
- Queen Helen
 falls in love
 with
 Triamore. *that* Maid of great honor
 sett her loue on younge TRIAMORE
 that fought alwayes as a feirce⁸ Lyon.

¹ ferre.—Cop.² This line is from Copland's text.—H.³ The trappings of horses. Halliwell.
—F.⁴ gan.—Cop.⁵ shyuer.—Cop.⁶ dyde ronne.—Cop.⁷ Tryamore must be supposed to have
 changed since the first day, when hewas on his father's side: see l. 763. In
 l. 920, Arradas is accused of killing the
 Emperor's son, whom Triamore slays
 (l. 860-1), but he (Arradas) declares he
 had nothing to do with it, l. 974-9. He
 only rescues his son from the Emperor's
 men, l. 866-7.—F.⁸ fyers.—Cop.

824 speres *that* day many were spent,
 & with swords there was many a stripe lent,
 till the[re] failed light of the sunn.

on the Morrow all they were faine
 828 for to come into the feild againe
 with great spere & sheild.

Next day

then the Duke of Synille, Sir Phylar,¹
that was a doughtye knight in euerye warr,
 832 he rode first into the feild;

the Duke of
Seylle

& Triamore tooke his spere,
 against the Duke he can it beare,
 & smote him in the sheild;
 836 a-sunder in 2 peeces it went;
 & then many a louelye Lady gent,
 full well they him beheld.

is charged
by Triamore,and his
shield split.

then came forth a Knight *that* hight Terrey,
 840 hee was a great Lord of Surrey,² [page 225]
 he thought Noble TRIAMORE to assayle;
 & TRIAMORE rode to him blithe
 in all the strenght *that* he might drine,
 844 he thought he wold not sayle;

Sir Terrey
of Syriachargen
Triamore.

he smote him soe in *that* stond
that horse & man fell to the ground,³
 soe sore his stroke he sett.

and was
thrown.

848 then durst noe man att TRIAMORE [ride,⁴]
 for fortune held all on his side
 all those dayes 3.⁵

No one else
will try
Triamore;

¹ Synille, sir Sywere.—Ca. Cycyll.
 or Phylar.—Cop.

² The dewke of Lythyr, sir Tyrre.
 —Ca.

³ . . . the dewke, bothe horse and man,
 Turnyd toppe ovr tayle.—Ca.

⁴ to Tryamoure ryde. Cop.

⁵ The Cambridge text makes Triamore

but Sir
James

lies in wait
for him,

Sir Iames, sonne vnto the Emperour,
852 had enuye to Sir Triamore,
and laid wait ¹ for him priuilye.

and runs
him through
the thigh,

att the last TRIAMORE came ryding bye.
Sir Iames said, "Triamore! thou shalt dye,
856 for thou hast done me shame."
he rode to Triamore with a spere,
& thorow ² the thigh he can him beare;
he had almost him slaine.

for which
Triamore
kills him,

860 but Tryamore hitt him in ³ the head
that he fell downe starke dead.

but is beset
by his men.

then was all his men woe;
then wold they haue slaine Tryamore
864 without he had had great succour ⁴;
they purposed to doe soe.

Arradas
rescues
Triamore,

with *that* came King Arradas ⁵ then,
& reschued Tryamore with all his men,
868 *that* stood in great doubt.

and Sir
Bernard

then Sir Barnard was full woe
that Tryamore was hurt soe;

takes him
home.

then to his owne house he him brought.

His mother

872 but when the Mother saw her sonns wound,
shee fell downe for sorrow to the ground,
& after a Leeche shee sent.

sends for a
doctor.
The jousting
knights
ride to
Queen Helen

of ⁶ this, all the Lords *that* were ⁷ Iustinge,
876 to the pallace ⁸ made highinge,⁹
& to *that* Ladye went.

serve "the dewke of Aymere" as he served
Terrey, and shiver the shield and spear of
James of Almayne, p. 28-9 Percy Soc.
ed.—F.

¹ layde wayte.—Cop.

² throughe.—Cop.

³ hytt hym on.—Cop.

⁴ the greter socoure.—Cop.

⁵ Arragus.—Cop.

⁶ on *or* after.—F.

⁷ was at.—Cop.

⁸ pallayes.—Cop.

⁹ hyenge.—Cop.

- truly, as the story sayes,
 thé¹ pricked forth to the pallace
 880 the Ladyes will to heare, to hear
 Bachelours & knights prest,
 that shee might choose of them the best whom she
 which to her faynest were. will choose.
- 884 the Ladye beheld all *that* fayre Meanye,
 but Tryamore shee cold not see :
 tho chaunged all her cheere,
 then² shee sayd “ Lord, where is hee³ She chooses
 888 *that* euerye day wan the degree ? Triamore.
 I chuse him to my peere.⁴ ” Where is he?
- al about⁵ thé Tryamore sought ; He can't be
 he was ryddn home ; thé found him nought ; found,
 892 then was *that* Ladye woe.
 the Knights were afore her brought,
 & of respite shee them besought, so Helen
 a yeare & noe more : asks for a
year's delay,
- 896 shee said, “ Lords, soe god me saue !
 he *that* wan me, he shall me haue ;
 ye wot well *that* my cry was soe.”
 thé all consented her vntill,
 900 for shee⁶ said Nothing ill,
 thé said it shold be soe.
- for when they had all sayd,
 then answered *that* fayre Mayd,
 904 “ I will haue none but Tryamore.” she will have
 then all the Lords *that* were present none but
 tooke their Leaue, & home went ; Triamore.
 there wan thé litle honor.

¹ they.—Cop.² Tho.—Cop.³ he.—Cop.⁴ fere.—Cop.⁵ All aboute.—Cop.⁶ had *inserted*.—Cop.

Sir James's
men carry
his corpe

908 Sir James men were nothing faine
because their *Master*, he was slaine,
That was soe stout in stowre ;
in chaire his body thé Layd,

[page 223]

to his father,
the Emperour,

912 & led him home, as I haue sayd,
vnto his father the Emperour ;

and tell him
that
Triamore

& when *that* hee his sonne gan see,
a sorrye man then was hee,
916 & asked ' who had done *that* dishonor ¹ ? '
thé sayd " wee [ne] wott who it is I-wisse,²
but Sir Tryamore he named is,
soe thé called him ³ in the crye ;

and Arradas
killed his
son.

920 " the *King* of Arragon alsoe,
he helped thy ⁴ sonne to sloe,
with all his companye."
they said, " thé be good warryoirs ;
924 they byte ⁵ vs with sharpe showers ⁶
with great villanye.⁷ "

The Emperour
vows
revenge,

" Alas ! " said the Emperour,
" till I be reuenged on *that* traytour,
928 now shall I neuer cease !
thé shall haue many a sharpe shower,
both the *King* & Tryamore,
they shall neuer haue peace ! "

summons a
host,

932 the Emperour sayd thé shold repent ;
& after great companye he sent
of princes bold in presse,
Dukes, Earles, & lords of price.⁸

and invades
Arragon.

936 with a great armye, the Duke sayes,
thé yeed to Arragon without lesse.

¹ dysshonour.—Cop.

² has ywys.—Cop.

³ called thé him.—Cop.

⁴ MS. the.—F.

⁵ bete.—Cop.

⁶ shoutes.—Cop.

⁷ vilany.—Cop.

⁸ pryse.—Cop.

- King Arradas¹ was a-dread²
 for the Emperour such power had,
 949 that battell hee wold him bid³;
 he saw his land nye ouer-gon,
 & to a castle hee fledd anon,
 & victualls⁴ it for dread.
 954 the Emperour was bold & stout,
 & beseged the castle about;
 his⁵ banner he began to spread,
 & arrayd his host full well & wiselye,
 958 with wepons strong & mightye
 he thought to make them dread.
 the Emperour was bold & stout,
 & beseged the castle about,
 962 & his banner he gan to spread;
 he gaue assaut⁷ to the hold.
 King Arradas was stout & bold,
 ordayned him full well.⁸
 966 with gunes & great stones round
 were throwne downe to the ground,
 & on the men were cast;
 they brake many backes & bones,
 969 that they fought euerye[day⁹] ones
 while 7 weekes did last.
 the Emperour was hurt ill therfore,
 his men were hurt sore,
 974 all his Ioy was past.

Arradas

takes refuge
in his castle.where the
Emperour
besieges him,and assaults
th.
ArradasGuns and
large stoneson the
besiegers.After seven
weeks,

Arradas.—Cop.
¹ a-dreadde.—Cop.
² bydde.—Cop.
³ vycaylled.—Cop. vctaylyd.—Ca.
⁴ This stanza, which seems super-
 fluous, is not in the Cambridge text.
 —F.

⁵ A letter like t, seemingly blotched
 out, precedes *his* in the MS.—F.

⁷ assalte.—Cop.

⁸ And defendyd hym full faste.—Ca.
 And ordered it full well. Rawlinson
 MS. (Percy Soc., p. 62).—F.

⁹ day.—Cop.

- Arradas *King Arradas thought full longe
that hee was beseeged soe stronge,
with soe much might & maine :*
- sends to 968 2 Lords forth a Message he sent,
 & straight to the Emperour thé¹ went.
 soe when they cold him see,
 of peace² they can him pray,³
 972 to take truce⁴ till a certaine day.
 thé kneeled downe on their knee,

 to say that & said, "our *King* sendeth word to thee
 that he neuer your sonne did slay,⁵
 976 soe he wold quitt him faine ;
 he was not then present,
 nor did noe wise⁶ consent
 that your sonne was slaine.
 980 That [he] will proue, if you will soe,
 your selfe and he betweene you tow,
 if you will it sayne ;

 and to "or else take your selfe a *Knight*,
 propose a & he will gett another to fight
 settlement on a certaine day :
 of their if that your *Knight* hap soe
 quarrel by ours for to discomfort or sloe,
 single 988 as by fortune itt may,
 combat ; our *King* then will doe your will,
 be att your bidding lowde & still
 without more delay ;

 if the 992 " & alsoe if it you betyde
 Emperor's that your knight on your syde
 knight wins be slaine by Mischance,

 Arradas will
 give in ;

[page 22]

¹ y^r.—Cop. ² peas.—Cop.
³ Only the long part of the y is in the
 MS.—F.

⁴ treues.—Cop.
⁵ sle.—Cop.
⁶ noe wise did.—Cop.

- My Lord shall make your warr to cease,¹
 [and we shall after be at pease,²]
 996 without any distance.³”
- the Emperour said⁴ without fayle
 “sett a day of Battell
 by assent of the King of france;”
 1000 for he had a great Campiowne,⁵
 in euerye realme he wan⁶ renowne;
 soe the Emperour ceased his distance.
- when peace was made, & truce came,⁷
 1004 then King Arradas were⁸ a Ioyfull man,
 & trusted vnto Tryamore.
 Soe after him he went without fayle,
 for to doe the great battelle
 1008 to his helpe & succour.
- his Messengers were come & gone,
 tydings of him hard⁹ the none.
 the King Arradas thought him long,
 1012 “& he be dead, I may say alas!
 who shall then fight with Marradais
 that is soe stout & stronge?”
- when Tryamore was whole¹⁰ & sound,
 1016 & well healed of his wound,
 he busked him for to fare;

the Emperor
shall stop
his rage.

The
Emperor
agrees,

as he has a
famous
champion.

Arradas

sends for
Triamore
to fight for
him.

but can hear
no tidings of
him.

Triamore
gets well.

¹ cease.—Cop.

² This line is from Copland's text. —H.

H. petyeth you that ye wyll cease.

And let our lordys be in pees. —Ca.

³ —Distance, supra in Debate of
Wyrtshir (discreet). —Promptorium.

It distance, difference. —Cotgrave.—F.

⁴ We keep the end of the MS., though

it is not wanted, and the Cambridge text
has not got it.—F.

⁵ Champion. MS. campanye.—F.

Company.—Cop.

⁶ the.—Cop.

⁷ truces tane.—Cop.

⁸ was. —Cop.

⁹ harde.—Cop.

¹⁰ hole.—Cop.

and asks his
mother who
his father is.

he sayd, "mother," with mild cheere,
" & I wist what my father were,
1020 the lesse were my care."

His mother
will not tell
him till he
marries,

"sonne," shee said, "thou shalt witt;
when ¹ thou hast Marryed *that* Ladye sweet,
thy father thou shalt ken."
1024 "mother," he said, "if you will [soe,²]
haue good day, for now I goe
to doe my Masteryes if I can.³"

so he starts
for Arragon.

then rode he ouer dale & downe
1028 vntill he came to Arragon,
ouer many a weary way.
aduentures many him befell,
& all he scaped full well,
1032 in all his great Iourney.

On his way

he saw many a wild beast
both in heath & in forrest ;

he sets his
grey hounds
at a hart,

he had good grey-hounds 3 ;
1036 then to a hart he let them run
till 14 fosters spyed him soone,
soe threatened him greatlye ;

and is
attacked by
fourteen
survaters.

they yeede to him with weapons on euerye side ;
1040 it was noe boote to bid them byde ;
Tryamore was loth to flye,

'Triamore
tries to
pacify them,

& said vnto them, " Lords, I you pray,
lett me in peace wend my way
1044 to seeke my grayhounds 3."

offers them
all his
munev.

then said Tryamore as in this time,
"gold & siluer, take all mine
if ⁴ *that* I haue tresspassed ought."

¹ Whan.—Cop.
² soo.—Ca.

³ and speke wyth my lemman.—Ca.
⁴ Of.—Cop.

- 1048 Thé said, "wee will meete with thy anon, [page 215] They refuse
there shall noe gold borrow thee soone,¹ it,
but in prison thou shalt be brought, and threaten
Such is the law of the ground;² to prison
1052 Whosoever therin may be found, him.
other way goe thé nought."
- then Sir Tryamore was full woe
that to prison he shold goe;
1056 hee thought the flesh to deare bought.
there was no more to say,
the fosters att him gan lay
with strokes sterne and stout.
1060 there Tryamore with them fought;
some to the ground be brought;
he made them lowe to looke;
some of them fast gan pray,
1064 the other fled fast away
with wounds wyde that they sought.³
- Tryamore sought & found⁴ his gray-hounds;
he hear[k]ned to their yerning⁵ sounds,
1068 & thought not for to leaue them soe.
at last he came to a water side;
there he saw the beast abyde
that had slaine 2 of his grayhounds;
1072 the 3^d full sore troubled the hind,
& he hurt him with his trinde⁶;
then was Tryamore woe.
if the battaile had lasted a while,
1076 the hart wold the hound beguile,⁷
& take his life for euermore.

¹ MS. it may be meant for *frome*;
but one stroke of the *m* is missing. — F.

² Ca. has "ye must lee yowre ryght
hande" — F.

³ ? *take*. — F.

⁴ *red and sought*. — Cop.

⁵ ? running — F.

⁶ One stroke of the *n* is wanting in the
MS. Ca. has *7yndys*, branches of the
antlers. — F.

⁷ *begyle*. — Cop.

Triamore
kills the
deer,
blows his
horn,

Tryamore smote att the deere,
and ¹ to the hart went the spere ;
1080 then his horne he blew full sore.
the King Lay there beside
at Mannour ² *that* same tide ;
he hard a horne blowe ;

and king
Arradas
hears it.

1084 they had great wonder in hall,
both *Knights*, *Squiers*,³ & all,
for noe man cold it know.

A forester
runs in,

with *that* ran in a foster
1088 into the hall with euill cheere,
& was full sorry, I trow.

tells the king
that his
keepers have
been slaine
by the
knight

the King of tydings gan him fraine ;
he answered, " Sir King, your Keepers be slaine,
1092 and lye dead on a rowe.
there came a knight *that* was mightye,
he let 3 grayhounds *that* were wightye,
& laid my fellowes full lowe : "

that blew
the horn.

1096 he sayd, it was full true
that the same *that* the horne blew
that all this sorrow hath wrought.

Arradas says
he wants
such a man.

King Arradas said then,
1100 " I haue great need of such of a man ;
god hath him hither brought. "

and tells
three knights
to fetch him.

the King commanded *Knights* 3,
he said, " goe ⁴ feitch yond gentleman to me
1104 *that* is now at his play ;
looke noe ill words with him yee breake,
but pray him with me for to speake ;
I trow he will not say nay. "

¹ One stroke of the *n* missing in the MS.—F.

² maner.—Cop.

³ Squiers, knights.—Cop.

⁴ MS. god:—F.

- 1100 Every knight his steed hent,
 & lightlȳ to the wood ¹ thē went
 to seeke Tryamore *that* child.
 thē found him by a water side
- 1112 where he brake the beast ² *that* tyde,
that hart *that* was soe wyld.
- thē said, "Sir! god be at your game!"
 he answered them even the same;
- 1116 then was he frayd of guile.
 "Sir Knight!" they said, "is itt your will
 to come & speake our King vntill
 with word(e)s meeke & mylde?" (page 230)
- 1120 Tryamore asked shortly,³
 "what hight your King, tell yee mee,
that is lord ⁴ of this land?"
 "this Land hight Arragon,
- 1124 & our King, Arradas, with crowne;
 his place his heire att hand."
- Tryamore went vnto the K[ing,]
 & he was glad of his cominge,
- 1128 he knew him att first sight;
 the King tooke him by the hand,
 & said, "welcome into this land!"
 & asked ⁵ him what he hight.
- 1132 "Sir, my name is Tryamore;
 once you helpt me in a stowre
 as a noble man of might;
 & now I am here in thy Land;
- 1136 soe was I neuer erst, as I vnderstand,
 by god full of might."

The knights

Saw
Tryamore,

salute him,

and ask if he
will come to
their king,Arradas of
Arragon.Tryamore
comes,Arradas
welcomes
him,and
Tryamore
tells him
who he is.¹ wode.—Cop.² The top of some letter over the *a* is
marked out in the MS. *brake* means
"cut up."—P.³ shortly.—Cop.⁴ There is a round blot like an *o* after
the *r* in the MS.—P.⁵ askt.—Cop.

- Arradas
 is very glad,
 1140 when the *King* wist it was hee,
 his hart reioiced greatlye ;
 3 times he did downe fall,
 & [said] “ Tryamore, welcome to me !
 great sorrowe & care I haue had ¹ for thee ; ”
 and he told him al ;
 and tells
 Triamore
 of the day
 set for the
 fight with the
 Emperor's
 champion.
 1144 “ with the Emperour I ² tooke a day
 [to] defend me if *that* I may ;
 to Iesu I will call ;
 for I neuer his sonne slew ;
 1148 god he knoweth I speake but true,
 & helpe me I trust he shall ! ”
 then said Tryamore thoe, [“ I am fulle woe³]
that you for me haue beene greeued soe,
 1152 if I might it amend ;
 & att the day of battell
 I trust to proue⁴ my might as ⁵ well,
 if god will grace me send.”
 Triamore
 agrees to
 fight for
 Arradas,
 of which the
 latter is
 glad.
 1156 then was *King* Arradas very glad,
 and of Marradas was not adread :
 when he to the batteile shold wend,
 he ioyed ⁶ *that* he shold well speed,
 1160 for Tryamore was warry ⁷ at neede
 against his enemye to defend.
 there Tryamore dwelled with the *King*
 many a weeke without lettinge ;
 1164 he lacked right nought.
 & when the day of battayle was came,
 the Emperour with his men hasted full soone,
 & manye wonder thought ;
 On the day
 fixed, the
 Emperor

¹ Cop. omits *had*.—H.² MS. he.—F.³ From Ca.—F.⁴ prome, in the MS.—F.⁵ This word is blotted in the MS.—i⁶ joyed.—Cop.⁷ ware.—Cop.

1166 he brought thither both King & Knight;
 & Marradas, that was of might,
 to batteille he him brought.
 there was many a seemelye man,
 1172 moe then I tell you can;
 of them all he no wrought.

brings his
 champion,
 Marradas;

both partyes that ilke day
 into the feeld took the way,
 1178 they were already ¹ dight.
 the King there kissed Tryamore,
 & sayd, "I make thee mine [heyre²] this hower,
 & dubb thee a knight."

the King
 brings

Tryamore,

1180 "Sir," said Tryamore, "take no dread;
 I trust Iesus will me speede,
 for you be in the right;
 therefore through gods grace
 1186 I will fight for you in this place
 with the helpe of our Lords might!"

who trusts
 in Christ's
 help.

both partyes were full swore
 to hold the promise that was made before;
 1190 to Iesus can bee ³ call.
 Sir Tryamore & Sir Marradas
 both well armed was
 amonge the Lords all;

Both parties
 swear to
 abide by the
 result.

1192 ecche of them were sett on steede;
 all men of Tryamore had dreede,
 that was soo hind in all.⁴
 Marradas was stiffe & sure,⁵
 1196 their ⁶ might noe man his stroake endure,
 But that he made them fall.

Tryamore

and
 Marradas

[page 127]

¹ al redy.—Cop.

² heyre.—Cop.

³ they.—Cop.

⁴ Ther was none so hynde in halle.—Ca.

⁵ so styff in stoure.—Ca.

⁶ then.—Ca.

- charge, then rode they together¹ full right;
 with sharpe speres & swords bright
 1200 they smote together sore;
 break their spears and shields,
 thé spent speres & brake sheelds,
 thé busled² fowle in middest the feelds,
 either fomed as doth a bore.
- 1204 all thé³ wondred *that* beheld
 and fight marvel-
 lously.
 how thé fought in the feeld;
 there was but a liffe.⁴
 Marradas fared fyer⁵ wood
- 1208 because Tryamore soe long stood;
 sore gan hee smite.
 Sir Tryamore fayled of Marradas,
 Triamore kills Mar-
 radas's horse,
that sword lighted vpon his horsse,
 1212 the sword to ground gan light.
- Marradas said, "it is great shame
 on a steed to wreake his game!
 thou sholdest rather smite mee!"
- 1216 Tryamore swore, "by gods might
 I had leuer it had on thee light!
 then I wold not be sorye⁶;
- and then offers him his own.
 1220 "but here I giue thee steede mine
 because I haue slaine thine;
 by my will it shalbe soe."
- Marradas refuses it.
 Marradas sayd, "I will [him] nought
 till I haue him with stroakes bought,"
 1224 [and won him from my foe.⁷]
- & Tryamore lighted from his horsse,
 & to Marradas straight he goes,
 Both alight for both on foote they did light.

¹ the longer.—Cop.² powsed.—Cop.³ they.—Cop.⁴ ? a life to be lost.—F. lyte (little).
—Cop.⁵ fare.—Cop.⁶ sore.—Cop.⁷ ?; a line is wanting in the MS. Co.
has "And wonne hym here in fyght
—F.

- 1220 Sir Tryamore spared him nought,
 [But evyr in his hert he thought ¹]
 "this day was I made a Knight!"
- & thought *that* hee himselfe wold be slaine soone,
 1225 "or else of him I will win my shoone"
 through the gods might."
 the laid eche at other with good will
 with sharpe swords made of steele;
 1230 that saw ² many a knight.
- great wonder it was to behold
 the stroakes *that* was betwixt them soe bold;
 all men might it see.
 1235 the were weary, & had soe greatlye bled;
 Marradas was sore adread,
 he fainted then greatlye;
- & *that* Tryamore lightlye beheld,
 1240 & fought feerolye in the feeld;
 he stroke Marradas soe sore
 that the sword through the body ran.
 then was the Emperour a sorry man;
 1245 he made theen peace for ever-more;
- he kissed the King, & was his freind,
 & tooke his leance homewards to wend;
 noe longer there dwell wold hee.
- 1250 then King Arradas & Tryamore
 went to the palace with great honor,
 into *that* rych citye.
 there was ioy without care,
 1255 & all they had great welfare,
 there might no better bee;

and fight on foot

sorely.

Marradas grows faint.

Tryamore kills him.
The Emperor

kisses Arradas, and goes home.

Arradas and Tryamore return to the city.

¹ From Ca.—P. ever in hys herte he thought.—Cop.² See p. 77, l. 504.³ same.—Cop.

hunt, ride,
and enjoy
themselves.

they hunted & rode many a where,
full great pleasure they had there.

1260

Arradas
offers to
make
Triamore his
heir,

among the knights of price
the *King* profered him full fayre,
& sayd, "Tryamore, Ile make thee mine heyre,
for thou art strong & wise."

but Triamore
declines, and

1264

Sir Tryamore said, "Sir, trulye
into other cuntryes goe will I ;

asks only a
steed ;

I desire of you but a steed,
& to other lands will I goe

he means to
do adven-
tures.

1268

some great aduentures for to doe,
thus will I my liffe lead."

the *King* was verry sorry tho ;

Arradas
gives him

1272

when *that* hee wold from him goe,
he gaue him a sure weede,¹

money

& plenty of siluer & gold,

and a fearless
steed,

& a steed as hee wold,

that nothing wold feare.

1276

hee tooke his leaue of the *King*,
And mourned at his departing,
then hasted he him there ;

[page 228]

and promises
him all

1280

the *King* sayd, "Tryamor ! *that*² is mine,
when thou list it shall be thine,
all my kingdome lesse & more."

his realm.

Triamore

Now is Tryamore forth goe ;

Lords & ladyes were full woe,³

1284

euerye man loued him there.

rides to

Hungary.

Tryamore rode in hast trulye
into the Land of Hungarye,
aduentures for to seeke.⁴

¹ *steede* is marked out in the MS.—F.

² whatever, all that.—F.

³ for him were woe.—Cop.

⁴ The Cambridge text sends him generally everywhere before going to Hungary.—F.

1224 betweene 2 mountaines, the sooth to say,
 he rode forth on his way;
 with a palmer he did meete;

On his road
 a palmer

he asked almes for gods sake,
 1273 & Tryamore him not forgate,
 he gaue him with words sweete.
 the palmer said, "turne yee againe,
 or else I feare you wilbe alaine;
 1276 you may not passe but you be beat."

warns him
 to turne back

Tryamore asked "why soe?"

"Sir," he said, "there be brethren towe
 that on the mountaine dwells."

for fear of
 two brethren
 there.

1280 "faith," said Tryamore, "if there be no more,
 I trust in god that way to goe,
 if this be true that thou tells."

he bade the palmer good day,

1294 & rode forth on his way
 oer heath & feelde;

Tryamore
 rides on,

the palmer prayed to him full fast,
 Tryamore was not agast,

1300 he blew his horne full shrill.
 he had not rydden but a while,
 not the Mountenance of a mile,
 2 knights he saw on a hill:

and soon
 meete

two knights,

1312 the one of them to him gan ryde,
 they other still gan abyde
 a litle there beside.

who order
 him to go
 back.

& when the did Tryamore spye,
 1316 the said, "turne thee traytor,¹ or thou shalt dye,
 therfore stand & abyde!"

¹ traytor turne.—Cop.

One charges
him,

either againe other ¹ gan ryd fast,
theire strokes mad their speres to brast,

1320

& made them wounds full wyde.

the other

the other knight *that* honed ² soe,
wondred *that* Tryamore dared soe :
he rode to them *that* tyde

separates
them,

1324

& departed them in twaine,
& to speake fayre he began to fraine
with words *that* sounded well :

asks
Triamore
his name,

1328

to Tryamore he ³ sayd anon,
“a doughtyer Knight I neuer saw none !⁴
thy name *that* thou vs tell.”

Tryamore said, “first will I wett
why *that* you doe keepe this street,
1332 & where *that* you doe dwell.”

and says
that their
brother
Marradas

thé said, “wee had a brother hight Marradas,
with the Emperour forsooth he was,
a stronge man well I-know.⁵

1336

in Arragon, before the Emperour,
a knight called Sir Tryamore
in battel there him slew ⁶ ;

was slain by
one
Triamore,

and their
elder brother
Burlong

1340

“& alsoe wee say another,
Burlong ⁷ our elder brother,
as a man of much might ;
he hath beseeged soothlye
the Kings daughter of HUNGARVE ;
1344 to wed her he hath height ;

¹ other than.—Cop. *ryd* has a tag at the end.—F.

² hoved, *i.e.* hovered on the hill, qu.—P. *howd* is common in the sense of halted.—F.

³ they.—Cop.

⁴ so doughty a knight knowe I none.—Cop.

⁵ y-nough (enough).—Ca.

⁶ There is something like another *e* before the *w* in the MS.—F.

⁷ Burlonde.—Ca.

" & noe well hee hath sped
 that hee shall that Lady wedd
 but shee may find a Knight
 1352 that BERLONGER overcome may ;
 so that they haue tooks a day,
 wage battel & fight ;

is to wed
 Queen Helen
 of Hungary
 unless she
 can find a
 knight to
 beat him,

" for that same Tryamore
 1362 loved that Ladye paramoure,
 as it is before told ;
 if he will to Hungarye,
 needs must he come vs by ;
 1366 to meete with him wee wold."

and she is
 Tryamore's
 love.

[page 128]

They'd like
 to catch him.

Tryamore said, " I say not nay,
 but my name I will tell this day,
 in faith I will not Laine :
 1380 thinke your Iourney well besett,
 for with Tryamore you haue mett
 that your brother hath slaine."

Tryamore
 says

" here he is."

" welcome ! " the said, " Tryamore !
 1394 his death shalt thou repent sore ;
 thy sorrow shall begin.
 yeeld thee to vs anon,
 for thou shalt not from vs gone
 1398 by noe manner of gin.¹ "

They call on
 him to yield.

the smote feircly att him tho,
 & Tryamore against them 2
 without more delay.
 1379 Sir Tryamore proued him full prest,
 he brake their spere on their brest,
 hee had such assay ;

He fights
 them,

¹ gyane.—Cop. wils.—F.

SIR TRIAMORE.

- lit
old
all his 1376 his sheeld was broken in peecees 3,
his horsse was smitten on his knee,
soe hard att him thé thrust.¹
Sir Tryamore was then right wood,
he slays
of them. 1380 & slew the one there as he stood
with his sword full prest.
- the other
1384 that other rode his way,
his hart was in great affray,
yet he turned againe *that* tide,—
when Tryamore had slaine his brother,
a sorry man then was the other,—
rides at him, & straight againe to him did rydde ;
- but Triamore kills
him too. 1388 then they 2 sore foughte
that the other to the ground was brought
then were thé both slaine.
- Helen
wonders
where
Triamore is. 1392 tho the Ladye on Tryamore thought,
for of him shee knew right nought,
shee wist not what to say.
- The day to
win her is
come ; the day was come *that* was sett,
the Lords assembled without lett,
all in good array.
- Burlong
calls for her
knight. 1396 Burlonge was redye dight,
he bade the Lady send the *Knight*.
shee answered “ I ne may : ”
for in *that* castle shee had hight
She has
none. 1400 to keepe her with all her might,
as the story doth say.
- 1404 thé said, “ if Tryamore be aline,
hither² will hee come blithe ;
god send vs good grace to speed !

¹ thrust.—Cop.

² MS. eith

with *that* came in Sir Tryamore
in the thickest of *that* stower,
into the feild without dread.

But just
then
Triamore

rides into
the field,

- 1408 he asked 'what all *that* did meane.'
the people shewed *that* a battel there shold beene
for the loue of *that* Ladye.
he saw BURLONG on his steede,
1412 & straight to him he yeede ;
that Ladye challengeth hee.

goes straight
to Burlong,

- Burlong asked him if he wold fight.
Tryamore said, " with all [my] might
1416 to slay thee, or thou me."
anon *thé* made them readye,
& none there knew him sikerlye,
thé wondred what he shold bee.

and says he'll
fight him.

- 1420 high on a tower stood *that* good Ladye ;
shee knew not what *Knight* verelye
that with Burlong did fight.
fast shee asked of her men
1424 'if *that* *Knight* they cold ken
that to battell was dight ;

Helen
does not
know him ;

- 'a griffon he beareth all of blew.'¹
a herald of armes soone him² knew,
1428 & said anon-right,
"Madame ! god hath sent you succor ;
for yonder is Tryamore
That with Burlong will fight."

but a herald
recognises
his crest,

and tells her
it is
Triamore.

[page 230]

- 1432 to Iesus gan the Ladye pray
for to speed him on his Iourney
that hee about yeed.

She prays for
his success.

¹ A kreste he beryth in blewe.—Ca.

² Syr Barnardo.—Ca.

Triamore
and Burlong
fight

1436 then those *Knights* ran together,
the speres in peeces gan shiuer,
thé fought full sore indeed ;

for a long
while,

1440 there was noe man in the feild tho
who shold haue the better of them tow,
soe mightilye they did them beare.
the Battel lasted wonderous long ;
though Burlong was neuer soe stronge,
there found he his peere.

till Triamore
loses his
sword.

1444 Tryamore a stroke to him mint,¹
his sword fell downe at *that* dint
out of his hand him free.
then was Burlong verry ² glad,
1448 & the Ladye was verry sad,
& many more full woe.

He asks for
it,
and Burlong
agrees to
give it him
if he'll tell
his name.

1452 Tryamore asked his sword againe,
but Burlong gan him fraine
to know first his name ;
& said, " tell me first what thou hight,
& why thou challengeth the Ladye bright,
then shalt thou haue thy sword againe."

Triamore
tells him.

1456 Tryamore sayd, " soe mote I thee,
My name I will tell trulye,
therof I will not doubt ;
men call me Sir Tryamore,
1460 I wan this Ladye in a stowre
among Barrons stout."

Burlong
reproaches
him with
killing
Marradas

1464 then said Burlong, " thou it was
that slew my brother Marradas !
a faire ³ hap thee befell !"

¹ mynt.—Cop. minded, meant, intended.—F.

² wonder.—Cop.

³ ? fowle.—F.

Sir Tryamore sayd to him tho,
 "and haue I done thy Brethren 2
 that on the Mountaines did dwell."

1466 Burlong said, "wee may thou bee,
 for thou hast slaine my brethren 3!
 sorrow hast thou sought!
 thy sword getts thou neuer againe
 1472 till I be avenged, & thou slaine;
 now I am well bethought!"

and his other
 brethren,

and refuses
 to let him
 have his
 sword,

Sir Tryamore sayd, "noe force¹ tho,
 thou shalt repent it ere thou goe;
 1476 doe forth! I dread thee nought!"
 Burlong to smite was readye bowne,
 his fete slipt,² & hee fell downe,
 & Tryamore right well nought,³

Burlong
 makes ready
 to strike; his
 foot slips,
 and he falls.

1480 his sword lightlye he vp hent,
 & to Burlonge fast he went;
 for nothing wold he flee;
 & as he wold haue risen againe,
 1484 he smote his leggs euen in twaine
 hard fast by the knee.

Tryamore
 gets his
 sword againe,

cuts his
 Burlong off
 at the knee,

Tryamore bade him "stand vpright,
 & all men may see now in fight
 1488 wee beene meete of a size."
 Sir Tryamore suffered him
 to take another weapon,
 as a knight of much prize.

to make him
 his equal in
 height,

and lets him
 get a sword.

1492 Burlong on his stumpes stood
 as a man that was nye wood,
 & fought wonderous hard.⁴

Burlong
 fights well
 on his
 stumpes,

¹ *utter.*—F.

² *his fete schett.*—Ca.

³ *wylyly wrought.*—Ca.

⁴ *wunder faste.*—Cop.

wrought.—Cop.

- 1496 & Sir Tryamore strake stroakes sure,
for he cold well endure ;
 of him hee was not affrayd,
- but
Triamore
cuts his head
off,
1500 & vnder his ventale
his head he smote of without fayle ;
 with *that* in peeces his sword brast.
- and goes to
his love.
1504 Now is Burlong slaine,
 & Triamore with maine
 into the Castle went,
Helen to the Ladye *that* was full bright ;
 & att the gates shee mett the *Knight*,
 & in her armes shee him hent.
- welcomes
him.
1508 Shee said, " welcome sir Tryamore !
for you haue bought my loue full deere,
 my hart is on you lent ! " [page 231]
The barons
agree to hold
their lands
of him,
1512 then said all the Barrons bold,
 " of him wee will our lands hold ; "
 & therto they did assent.
- and the
wedding-day
is fixed.
1516 there is noe more to say,
but they haue taken a certaine day
 that they both shalbe wed.
Triamore
sends for his
mother,
1520 Sir Tryamore for his mother sent,
a Messenger for her went,
 & into the castle he[r] led.
- and she
tells him
that King
Arradas is
his father,
1524 Tryamore to his mother gan saine,
 " my father I wold know faine,
 sith I haue soe well sped."
 shee said, " *King* Arraydas of Arragon,
is thy father, & thou his owne sonne ;
 I was his wedded Queene ;

- “ a leasing was borne me in hand,¹
 & falsely fleamed me out of his land
 by a traitor Keene,
 1528 Sir Marrocke the hight²: he did me woe,
 & Sir Rodger my knight he did sloe,
that my guide³ shold haue beene.”
- & when *that* Tryamore all heard,⁴
 1532 & how his mother shee had⁵ sayd,
 letters he made & wrought;
 he prayd King Arradas to come him till,
 if *that* it were his will,
 1536 thus he him besought:
- ‘ if hee will come into HUNGARYE
 for his Manhood & his Masterye,
 & *that* he wold fayle in nought.’
 1540 then was King Arradas verry glad;
 the Messengers great guifts had
 for they tydings *that* they brought.
- the day was come *that* was sett,
 1544 the Lords came thither without let,
 & ladyes of great pryde;
 then wold they noe longer lett;
 shortlye after⁶ they are fett,
 1548 with 2 dukes on euerye side;
- they lady to the church the led;
 a Bishopp them together did wed,
 in full great hast the hyed.
 1552 soone after *that* weddinge
 Sir Tryamore was crowned King,
 they wold noe longer abyde.
- that she was
 banished
 wrongfully,
 through Sir
 Marrock.
 Triamore
 writes and
 begs
 Arradas
 to come to
 Hungary.
 On the
 wedding-
 day,
 Queen Helen
 is married to
 Triamore,
 who is then
 crowned
 king.

¹ forced on me.—F.² ? the wight.—F.³ gyder.—Cop.⁴ herde.—Cop.⁵ to him.—Cop.⁶ after forthe.—Cop.

- the *Queene*, his mother *Margarett*,
 1556 before the *King* shee was sett
 in a goodlye cheare.¹
- Arradas sees
 Margaret,
 1560 *King* Arradas beheld his *Queene*,
 him thought *that* hee had her scene,
 shee was a ladye fayre ;
 the *King* said, "it is your will
 your name me for to tell,
 I pray you with words fayre."
- and asks her
 what her
 name is.
 1564 "my Lord," sayd [she,] "I was your *Queene* ;
 your steward did me ill ² teene ;
that euill might him befalle !"
 the *King* spake noe more words
- After dinner 1568 till the clothes were drawn from the bords,
 & men rose in the hall.
 & by the hand he tooke the *Queene* gent ;
 soo in the chamber forth he went,
 she tells him
 all her
 history. 1572 & there shee told him all.
- They kiss,
 and all
 reioice.
 then was there great Ioy & blisse !
 when they together gan kisse,
 then all they companye made Ioy enough.
 1576 the younge *Queene* [was] full glad
that shee a *Kings* sonne to her Lord had,
 shee was glad, I trowe ;
- Helen is
 glad too,
 and both
 couples live
 long and
 happily. 1580 in Ioy together lead their liffe
 all their dayes without striffe,
 & liued many a fayre yeere.
 Then king Arradas & his *Queene*
 had ioy enough them betweene,
 1584 & merrilye ³ liued together.

[page 232]

¹ For the preceding half-stanza the
 Cambridge text has a whole one :

Ye may welle wete certeynly
 That there was a great mangery,
 There as so many were mett :

Qwene Margaret began the deyse ;
Kyng Arduus wyth-owtyn lees,
 Be hur was he sett.—F.

² mekyll.—Cop.

³ merely.—Cop.

& thus wee leane of Tryamore
that liued long in great honor
 with the fayre HELLENE.¹

Good bye,
 Triamore!

1588 I pray god giue their soules good rest,
 & all *that* haue heard this litle Iest,²
 highe heauen for to win!
 god grant vs all to haue *that* grace,
 1592 him for to see in the celestyall place!
 I pray you all to say Amen!

God send all
 my hearers
 to heauen!
 Amen!

ffins.³

¹ Elyne.—Cop.

² Gest. P.C.—P. gest.—Cop.

³ Copland's colophon is, "¶ Im-

printed at London in Temes strete vpon
 the thre Crane wharfe. By Wyllyam
 Copland."—F.

Guye : & Amarant.¹

[See the General Introduction to the Guy Poems, under *Guy & Colebrande* below.]

Guy jour-
neys in the
Holy Land,

GUYE : iourneyed ore the sanctified ground
wheras the Iewes fayre citye someti[me] stood,
wherin our saviours sacred head was crowned,
4 & where for sinfull man he shed his blood.
to see the sepulcher was his intent,
the tombe *that* Ioseph vnto Iesus lent.

and meets
a woeful
man,

whose fifteen
sons are held
in bondage
by

With tedious miles he tyred his wearye feet,
8 & passed desarts places² full of danger;
att last with a most woefull wight did meet,
a man³ *that* vnto sorrow was noe stranger,
for he had 15 sonnes made captines all
12 to slauish⁴ bondage, in extremest thrall.

the giant
Amarant.

A gyant called Amarant detained them,
whom noe man durst encounter for his strenght,
who, in a castle *which* he held, had chaineid them.

Guy under-
takes to free
them,

16 Guy questions w[h]ere,⁵ & vnderstands at lenght⁶
the place not farr. "lend me thy sword," quoth Guy;
"Ile lend my manhood all thy sonnes to free."

and knocks
loudly at the
giant's door.

20 With that he goes & layes vpon the dore
like one, he sayes, *that* must & will come in.
the Gyant, he was neere soe rowzed before,

¹ By the elegance of Language & easy Flow of *the* versification, this Poem should be more modern than the rest.—P. The first bombastic rhodomontade affair in the book. Certainly modern, and certainly bad, as bad as it well can be, if it was meant seriously. One is tempted in charity to think it a quiz of

the style it affects. Cp. st. 31, "but did not promise you they should be fatt." l. 186.—F.

² desert-p[laces].—P.
³ called Erle Jonas, p. 253 [of MS. torn out for *King Estmere*].—P.

⁴ There are two strokes in MS. after the u, one is dotted.—F.

⁵ where.—P.

for noe such knocking at his gate had beene ;
 soe takes his keyes & club, & goeth out,
 24 Staring with irefull countenance about : Amarant
comes forth,

“ Sirra ! ” saies hee, “ what busines hast thou heere ?
 art come to feast my crowes about the walls ¹ ?
 didst ² neuer heare noe ransome cold him cleere
 25 that in the compas of my furye falls ³ ?
 for making me to take a porters paines,
 with this same club I will dash out thy braines.” and says
he ll dash
Guy's brains
out.

“ Gyant,” saies Guy, “ your quarrelsome, I see ;
 32 choller & you are something neere of Kin ;
 dangerous at a club be-like you bee ;
 I haue beene better armed, though now goe th[in.]
 but shew thy vtmost hate, enlarge thy spite !
 24 heere is the wepon that must doe me right.” Guy answers
that his
sword will
right him.

Soe takes his sword, salutes [him ⁴] with the same
 about the head, the shoulders, & the sides,
 whilst his erected club doth death proclaime,
 40 standing with huge Collossous spacious strydes,
 putting such vigor to his knotted beame
 that like a furnace he did smoke extreme. and attacks
the giant,

who strikes
fierce
strikes,

But on the ground he spent his stroakes in vaine,
 44 for Guy was nimble to avoyde them still,
 & ere he cold reconers ⁵ clubb againe,
 did beate his plated coate against his will :
 att such aduantage Guy wold neuer fayle
 46 to beate him soundly in his coate of Mayle. which Guy
avoids,

and backs at
the giant.

¹ all - P.

² MS *daled* or the *e* has been altered
to part of the *s*—F.

³ said - P

⁴ him *with*. - P.

⁵ There's an apostrophe in recent MS.
over the *s* in the MS. - P.

Amarant
grows faint,

and asks
Guy to let
him drink at
a spring.

Att last through strength, Amarant ¹ feeble grew,
& said to Guy, "as thou art of humane race,
shew itt in this, ginee nature ² wants her dew ;
52 let me but goe & drinke in yonder place ;
thou canst not yeeld to ³ [me] a smaller thing
then to grant life *thats* giuen by the spring."

Guy gives
him leave.

56 "I giue the leaue," sayes Guy, "goe drinke thy ⁴ last,
to pledge the dragon & the savage beare,⁵
suceed the tragedyes *that* they haue past ;
but neuer thinke to drinke ⁶ cold water more ⁷ ;
drinke deepe to death, & after *that* carrouse
60 bid him receiue thee in his earthen house."

Amarant
drinks so
greedily

Soe to the spring he goes, & slakes his thirst,
takeing in ⁸ the water in, extremly like
Some wracked shipp *that* on some rocke is burst, [p. 233]
64 whose forced bulke against the stones doe stryke ;
Scoping it in soe fast with both his hands
that Guy, admiring, to behold him stands.

that Guy
wonders.

He calls on
Amarant to
fight again.

68 "Come on," quoth Guy, "lets to our worke againe ;
thou stayest about thy liquor ouer longe ;
the fish *which* in the riuer doe remaine
will want thereby ; thy ⁹ drinking doth them
wrong ;
but I will [have] their ¹⁰ satisfaction made ;
72 with gyants blood *thé* must & shall be payd ! "

The giant

"Villaine," quoth Amarant, "He crush thee straight !
thy life shall pay thy daring touns offence !
this club, *which* is about some hundred waight,

¹ the strength of A: or thro' lacke of strength he.—P. This circumstance seems borrowed from song 104. p. 349, [of MS. *Guy & Colebrande*].—P.

² An 's has been added by P. in the MS.—F.

³ unto.—P.

⁴ One stroke too many for *thy* in the MS.—F.

⁵ boar. Qu.—P.

⁶ Only half the *n* in the MS.—F.

⁷ here, Qu., or mair.—P.

⁸ delend.—P.

⁹ MS. their.—F. thy.—P.

¹⁰ have their.—P.

76 has deathe's commission to dispatch¹ thee hence :
 dresse thee for Rancens dyett. I must needs
 & breake thy bones as they were made of reeds : "

Guy br²
 break Guy's
 bones.

Incensed much art³ this bold Pagans host,
 80 which worthy Guy cold ill endure to beare.
 he hewes vpon those bigg supporting postes
 which like 2 pillars did his body beare.
 Amarant for those wounds in choller growes,
 84 & desperately att guy his club he throwes,

Guy hews
 away at
 Amarant's
 legs :

he throwes his
 club at Guy.

Which did directlye on his body light
 soe heauy & soe weaghtye⁴ there withall.
 That downe to ground on sudden came the Knight :
 88 & ere he cold reconer from his fall.
 the gyant gott his club againe in his fist,
 & stroke a blow that wonderfullye mist.

and knocks
 him down.

" Traytor ! " quoth Guy, " thy falshood Ile repay.
 92 this coward art to intercept my bloode."
 sayes Amarant, " Ile murther any way ;
 with enemyes, all vantages are good ;
 o' cold I poyson in thy nostrills blowe,
 96 be sure of it, I wold destroy the soe ! "

Guy re-
 proaches
 him for
 fighting
 unfairly.

" Its well," said Guy, " thy honest thoughts appear
 within that beastlye bulke where devills dwell,
 which are thy tennants while thou liuest heere,
 100 but wilbe landlords when thou comest in hell.
 Vile miscreant ! prepare thee for their den !
 Inhumane monster, hurtfull vnto men !

" But breath thy selfe a time while I goe drinke,
 104 for flameing Phoebus with his fyerye eye
 torments me soe with burning heat, I thinke

and asks
 leave to
 drinke.

¹ Here again is the *eth* for *eth*, noticed
 in vol. i. p. 23, note 1.—F

² MS. all. — F. — at this — P.

³ wrightye. — P

my thirst wold serue to drinke an Ocean drye.
 forbear a litle, as I delt with thee."

108 Quoth Amarant, "thou hast noe foole of mee!

Amarant
 refuses: he
 is not such a
 fool

"Noe! sillye wretch! my father taught more
 how I shold vse such enemyes as thou.
 by all my gods! I doe reioyce at itt,
 112 to vnderstand *that* thirst constraines thee now;
 for all the treasure that the world containes,
 one drop of water shall not coole thy vaynes.

as to refresh
 his foe.

"Releene my foe! why, twere a madmans part!
 116 refresh an aduersarye, to my wronge!
 if thou imagine this, a child thou art.
 no, fellow! I haue knowne the world to longe
 to be soe simple now I know thy want;
 120 a Minutes space to thee I will not grant."

Amarant
 swings his
 club round,

And with these words, heauing a-loft his club
 into the ayre, he swinges the same about,
 then shakes his lockes, & doth his temples rubb,
 124 & like the Cyclops in his pride doth strout¹;
 "Sirra," said hee, "I haue you at a lifte;
 now you are come vnto your latest shift;

and promises
 to kill Guy

"Perish for euer with this stroke I send thee,
 128 a Medcine will doe thy thirst much good;
 take noe more care of drinke before I end thee,

and drink
 his blood.

& then weclle haue carowses of thy blood!
 heeres at thee with a buchers downe-right blow,
 132 to please my fury with thine ouerthrow!"

Guy abuses
 the giant,

"Infe[r]nall, false, obdurat feend!" Guy said,²
 "that seemes a lumpe of crueltye from hell!
 ingratefull monster! since thou hast denyd³

¹ Strowt yñ, or bocyn owto (bowtyn, S.) Turgeo, Catholicon, Prompt.—F.

² cryd; [or] perhaps, 'said Guy.'—P
³ dost deny.—P.

136 the thing to mee wherin I vsed thee [well,¹]
with more reuenge then ere my sword did make,
On thy accursed head revenge Ile take ! [page 234]

“ Thy gyants longitude shall shorter shrinke,
140 except thy sunscorcht sckin doe weapon prone.² bids the
farwell my thirst ! I doe disdaine to drinke. streams keep
streames, keepe you[r] waters to you[r] owne their waters
behoues,³ for them-
or let wild beasts be welcome therunto ; selves,
144 with those pearle dropps I will not haue to doe.

“ Hold, tyrant ! take a tast of my good will ;
for thus I doe begin my bloodye bout ;
you cannot chuse but like the greeting ill,—
148 it is not *that* same club will beare you out,— strikes
& take this payment on thy shaggye crowne,” Amarant,
a blow *that* brought him with a vengeance fetches him
dow[ne]. down,

Then Guy sett foot vpon the monsters brest, cuts off his
152 & from his shoulders did his head deuyde, head,
which with a yawninge mouth did gape vnblest,—
noe dragons lawes were euer scene soe wyde
to open & to shut,—till liffe was spent.
156 soe Guy tooke Keyes, & to the castle went,

Where manye woefull captiues he did find, sets free his
which had beene tyred with extremitye, captiues,
whom he in freindly manner did vnbind,
160 & reasoned with them of their miserye.
eche told a tale with teares & sighes & cryes,
all weeping to him with complainning eyes.

¹ well.—P

² be weapon-proof.—P

³ behoues.—P.

- some, ladies There tender Laidyes in darke dungeon¹ lay,
 164 *that* were surprised in the desart wood,
 & had noe other dyett euerye day
 then flesh of humane creatures for their food ;
 who had
 been fed on
 their dead
 lovers and
 husbands,— 168 & in their wombes² their husbands buried.
- and the
 palmer's
 fifteen sons, Now he bethinkes him of his being there,
 to enlarge they³ wronged Brethren from⁴ their
 w[oes ;]
 & as he searcheth, doth great clamors heare ;
 172 by *which* sad sounds direction, on he goes
 vntill he findes a darkesome obscure gate,
 armed strongly ouer all with Iron plate :
- That⁵ he vnlockes, and enters where appeares
 176 the strangest obiect *that* he euer saw,
 men *that* with famishment of many yeerres
 will⁶ were like deaths picture, *which* the painters
 dra[w ;]
 diuers of them were hanged by eche thumbe ;
 180 others, head downward ; by the middle, summe.⁷
- With dilligence he takes them from the walls,
 with lybertye their thraldome to acquainte.
 Guy restores
 the palmer
 his sons, 184 then the perplexed Knight the father calls,
 & sayes, “ receiue thy sonnes, thee poore & faint !
 I promised you their liues ; except of *that*⁸ ;
 but did not promise you thé shold be fatt.
- gives him
 the giant's
 castle, 188 “ The castle I doe giue thee,—heere is the Keyes,—
 where tyranye for many yeerres did dwell ;
 procure the gentle tender Ladyes ease ;

¹ Only half of the first *n* in the MS.
 —F.

² ? MS. wombers.—F.

³ the.—P.

⁴ There is something like a blotched *o*
 before the *r* in the MS.—F.

⁵ Then.—P.

⁶ delend.—P.

⁷ some.—P. The *e*, and last stroke of
 the *m*, have been cut off by the binder.
 —F.

⁸ accept of that.—P.

for pittye sake vse wronged women well!
 men may easilye revenge the deeds men doe,
 192 but poore weake women haue no strenght therto."

and charges
 him to use
 the women
 well.

The good old man, euen ouerioyed with this,
 fell on the ground, & wold haue kist Guys fee[t.]
 "father," quoth hee, "refraine soe base a kisse!
 196 for age to honor youth, I hold vnmeete;
 ambitious pryde hath hurt me all it can,
 I goe to mortifie a sinfull man." ffins.

Guy refuses
 to let the
 palmer kiss
 his feet.

Cales : Voyage :¹

THE allusions in these lines are principally to well-known incidents in the reign of Charles I., most of which occurred between 1625 and 1630.

“Cales,” of course, means “Cadiz;” and the expeditions of Viscount Wimbledon to that place in 1625, of the Duke of Buckingham to Rhé in 1627, and of the Earl of Denbigh to Rochelle in 1628—all failures—are commemorated in lines 1, 2, and 3. Line 4 alludes to the grant of five subsidies made on the concession of the Petition of Right; lines 6, 8, and 9, refer to the death of Buckingham. The peace with Spain, mentioned in line 7, was proclaimed on the 5th of December, 1630. Lines 9 to 12 commemorate the recent passing of the Petition of Right, which took place on the 5th of June, 1628. Of lines 17 to 24 I take the meaning to be: “Do not meddle with the hierarchy for fear of the Inquisition, that is, the Star Chamber, where thou shalt find a crop-ear doom, cries Leighton.” The allusion is to the dreadful sentence inflicted on Dr. Alexander Leighton, a portion of which was that he should have “one of his ears cut off, and his nose slit, and be branded in the face.” (*State Trials*, vol. iii. p. 385.)

Line 25 alludes to the King’s commission for extracting fines from those who, having 40*l.* a year in lands, did not attend at the coronation to be knighted. Lines 26 to 30 refer to the case of Walter Long, sheriff of Wilts, who was fined 2,000 marks for absenting himself from his county to attend his duty in parliament. (*State Trials*, vol. iii. p. 235.)

¹ A kind of State Satire on the abuses in Charles 1st time—very obscure.—P.

Lines 33 to 37 relate to a speech of Sir Dudley Carleton in the House of Commons in 1628, in which he warned the House of the fate of parliaments in foreign countries, where they had been overthrown by monarchs as soon as they began to know their own strength. Hence, he continued, the misery of the people on the continent, who look like ghosts and not men, being nothing but skin and bones, with some thin cover to their nakedness, and wearing only wooden shoes on their feet. *Rushworth*, vol. i. p. 359. Whitelocke substitutes "canvas clothes" for the thin covering, p. 6. Both agree in the wooden shoes.

The allusion in the closing lines, 39 and 40, is to the Lord Chief Justice Tresilian, in the reign of Richard II. He was one of that King's evil advisers, was impeached by parliament, found guilty of treason, and hanged at Tyburn¹—which may be said to be the moral of this poem.

J. BRUCE.

ATT cales wee latelye made afay,
att Ile of Re² wee run away,
our shippes poore Rochell did betray.

We've been
defeated
right and
left.

4 5 subsiddees for that,

but give us
five subsidies

And then wee shall to sea againe,
all that³ our generall was slaine,
& now wee haue made peace with spaine,
8 lacke Fellton!

and we'll
fight again.

Sir Artigall grand Torto⁴ slew;
now euerie man must have his dew
by vertue of a gracions new
12 Petition of right.

(page 230)

We've a new
Petition of
Right.
What a
blasting!

¹ See *Political Poems and Songs*, ed. Wright, vol. i. p. 422, 440.

² See Marc Lescart's "La chaine des Anglois en l'Isle de Re et en Siege

de la Rochelle." Paris, 1629.—P.

³ Altho' or Albert.—P.

⁴ See Spencer's *Fairy Queen*.—P.

The child of honor did deffye
 In mortall fight his enemye,
 & when he came to doe him dye,
 16 cryes Sall : Brooke.

Don't talk
 of Pope
 John's
 children,

Eleuen children had Pope Iohn,
 Pope Iohn the twelft, an able man ;
 heeres to the daffe, Ile pledge the don,
 20 A pulpitt of sacke !

or the
 Inquisition
 will catch
 hold of you.

Noe more of *that*, doe not presume,
 ffor feare of the Inquisition at Rome,
 where thou shalt find a cropeare dome,
 24 Cryes Layston.

Don't leave
 your county
 when you're
 Sheriff.

Ten poundes for not being made a *Knight* ;
 ffine thousand Markes was deemed right
 for being out of his cuntryes sight
 28 In time o Shreaullye.

These & such like, as I you tell,
 In fayrye land latelye befell,
 where Iustice ffought with Iustice Cell
 32 Att Gloster.

Be dutiful,
 or else you'll
 turn French-
 men, and
 have to wear
 wooden
 shoes.

Be dutifull, good people all,
 the gouernment else alter shall,
 & bring you to the state of Gaule,
 36 Haire shirts & woodden shooes !

Hang bad
 counsellors.

Noe habeas corpus shall be gott ;
 but for all this damned plott
 Tresilian went vnto the pott
 40 Att Tyburne ! fins.

Kinge & Miller : ¹

THIS copy is given in the *Reliques* "with corrections," and "collated with an old black-letter copy in the Pepys Collection intitled 'A pleasant ballad of K. Henry II. and the Miller of Mansfield.' " "There are copies of this ballad," says Mr. Chappell, who prints the tune, "in the Roxburghe Collection, vol. i. p. 178, and p. 228; in the Bagford p. 25."

"It has been a favourite subject," says Percy, "with our English ballad-makers to represent our kings conversing, either by accident or design, with the meanest of their subjects. Of the former kind, besides this song of the King and the Miller, we have 'K. Henry and the Soldier,' 'K. James I. and the Tinker,' 'K. William III. and the Forester' &c. Of the latter sort are 'K. Alfred and the Shepherd,' 'K. Edward IV. and the Tanner,' 'K. Henry VII. and the Cobbler' &c."

"The earliest of these stories," says Professor Child in his Introduction to King Edward Fourth and the Tanner of Tamworth, "seems to be that of King Alfred and the Neatherd, in which the herdsman's wife plays the offending part and the peasant himself is made Bishop of Winchester. Others of a very considerable antiquity are the tales of Henry II. and the Cistercian Abbot in the *Speculum Ecclesiæ* of Giraldus Cambrensis (an. 1220) printed in *Reliquiæ Antiquæ* i. 147; *King Edward and the Shepherd*, and *The King [Edward] and the Hermit* in Hartshorne's *Metrical Tales* (p. 35. p. 293, the latter previously in *The British Bibliographer* iv. 81); *Rauf Coilzear*,

¹ In the printed Collection of Old Ballads, 1727, Vol. i. p. 53. No. VIII.—P.

how he harbrait King Charles in Laing's Select Remains; John de Reeve and the King and the Barker, the original of the present ballad."

The idea of majesty compelled, or condescending to fraternise with low life has in foreign countries, too, excited the vulgar imagination. Such meetings of extremes—the fellowships of a power so high with a thing so low—have proved extremely fascinating. And while the stories of them show how tremendous was the interval between the king and his poor subjects, they show also how friendly was the popular conception of royalty. The king was far, far off; but he was kindly and genial. He could be imagined descending from his supreme height, and enjoying the humours of the humblest and vulgarest. Such descents were a kind of Avatars, which the people rejoiced to remember and celebrate. They served to kindle and fan their loyal affection; to bind the king and people, as showing that he was a man of like passions with themselves, not an alien unsympathetic being, scarcely human.

1

King Henry
will go a
hunting.

Hawk and
hound are
let go.

HENERY, our royall King, wold goe a huntunge
to the greene fforrest soe pleasant & fayre,
to haue the harts chased, the daintye does tripping;
4 to merry Sherwood his nobles repayre;
hauke & hound was vnbound, all things prepared
for the same to the game with good regard.

2

The King
hunts all
day,

and at night
loses himself
in the wood.

8 All a longe summers day rode the King pleasantlye
with all his princes & nobles eche one,
chasing the hart & hind & the bucke gallantlye,
till the darke euening inforced them turne home.
then at last, ryding fast, he had lost quite
12 all his Lords in the wood in the darke night.

3

Wandering thus wearilye all alone vp & downe,
 with a rude Miller he mett att the Last,
 asking the ready way vnto fayre Nottingham.

He meets a
 Miller,
 and asks his
 way to Not-
 tingham.
 The Miller

“Sir,” Quoth the Miller, “I meane not to Iest,
 yett I thinke what I thinke truth for to say,
 you doe not lightlye goe out of your way.”

4

“Why, what dost thou thinke of me?” Quoth our
 King merrily,

“passing thy iudgment vpon¹ me soe breefe.”

“good faith,” Quoth the Miller, “I meane² not to
 flatter thee,

“I gesse thee to bee some gentleman theefe;
 stand thee backe in the darke! light not adowne,

lest I presentlye cracke thy knaues cro[wn]e!”

takes the
 King for a
 thief,
 and
 threatens to
 crack his
 crown.

5

“Thou doest abuse me much,” quoth our King,
 “saying thus.

I am a gentleman, and lodging doe lacke.”

“thou hast not,” quoth the Miller, “a groat in thy
 purse;

The King
 says he's a
 gentleman
 who wants
 lodging.

all thine inheritance hanges on thy backe.”

“I haue gold to discharge for *that* I call;
 if itt be 40 pence, I will pay all.”

and can pay
 for it.

6

“If thou beest a true man,” then said the Miller,

The Miller
 offers to
 lodge him.

“I sweare by my tole dish Ile lodge thee all night.”

“Heeres my hand,” quoth our King, “*that* was I
 enrr.” (page 236)

“nay, soft,” quoth the Miller, “thou mayst be a
 sprite;

better Ile know thee ere hands I will shake;

with none but honest men hands will I take.”

but won't
 shake hands
 with him.

¹ MS vpon.—F.

² Only half the *a* in the MS.—F.

7

They go into

Thus they went all alonge into the Millers house,
where they were seeding¹ of puddings & souce.²

the Miller's
smoky house,

40

the Miller first entered in, then after went the King ;
neuer came he in soe smoakye a house.³

"now," quoth hee, "let me see heere what you are."
Quoth our King, "looke you[r] fill, & doe not spare."

8

"I like well thy countenance; thou hast an honest
fac[e];

44

with my sonne Richard this night thou shalt Lye."

and the wife
asks if the
King is a
runaway.

Quoth his wiffe, "by my troth it is a good handsome
yout[h];

yet it is best, husband, to deale warrilye.

art thou not a runaway? I pray thee, youth, tell;

Where is his
passport?

48

show vs thy pasport & all shalbe well."

9

Then our King presentlye, making lowe curtesie,
with his hatt in his hand, this he did say :

He has none,
as he is a
courtier.

52

"I haue noe pasport, nor neuer was seruator,
but a poore Courtyer rode out of the way ;
& for your kindnesse now offered to me,
I will requite it in euerye degree."

10

Then to the Miller his wiffe whisperd secretlye,
saing, "it seemeth the youth is of good kin
both by his apparell & by his Manners ;

56

to turne him out, certainly it were a great sin."

The Miller
thinks the
King behaves
well to his
betters,

60

"yea," quoth hee, "you may see hee hath some grace,
when as he speaks to his betters in place."

11

"Well," quoth the Millers wiffe, "younge man, welcome
heer[e]!

& tho I sayt, well lodged shalt thou be ;

¹ seething, boiling.—F.

² The head, feet, and ears of swine
boi'ed and pickled for eating. Halli-

well.—F.

³ See Forewords to *Babes Bats*, p.
lxiv.—F.

fresh straw I will lay vpon your bed see brane,
 64 good browne hempen sheetes likewise," Quoth shee.
 "I," quoth the goodman, "& when *that* is done,
 thou shalt lye noe worse then our owne sonne."

and he may
 therefore lay
 on straw
 and hempen
 sheetes with
 their son,

12

"Nay first," quoth Richard, "good fellowe, tell me
 true,
 66 hast thou noe creepers in thy gay hose?
 art thou not troubled with the Scabbado¹?"
 "pray you," quoth the King, "what things are
 those?
 art thou not lowsye nor scabbed?" quoth hee;
 72 "if thou beest, surely thou lyst not with me."

if he has no
 creepers in
 his breeches,

and is not
 scabbed.

13

This caused our King suddenly to laugh most hartilye
 till the teares trickled downe from his eyes.
 then to there supper were the sett orderlye,
 76 to hott bag puddings & good apple pyes;
 nappy ale, good & stale, in a browne bowle,
 which did about the bord Merrilye trouble.

They sup on
 bag-
 puddings,
 apple pies,
 and nappy
 ale.

14

"Heere," quoth the Miller, "good fellowe, Ile drinke
 to thee
 80 & to all the courtynolls *that* curteous bee."
 "I pledge thee," quoth our King, "& thanke thee
 heartilye
 for my good welcome in euerye degree;
 & heere in like manner I drinke to thy sonne."
 84 "doe then," saies Richard, "& quicke let it come."

The Miller
 drinks to the
 King,

and the King
 to him

and his son.

15

"Wiffe," quoth the Miller, "feitch me forth lightfoote,
that wee of his sweetnesse a litle may tast."
 a faire venson pastye shee feiched forth presentlye.

The Miller
 calls for
 Lightfoot.

¹ *MA* may be *Scallado*. See *Forewords to Babes Bats*, 1888, p. lxiiv.—F.

The King
likes it
immensely.

88

“eate,” quoth the Miller “but first make noe wast;
heer is dainty Lightfoote.” “infaith,” quoth our King,
“I neuer before eate of soe daynty a thinge.”

16

92

Where can
he buy some?

“Iwis,” said Richard, “noe daynty att all it is,
for wee doe eate of it euerye day.”

It's the
King's deer
from
Sherwood.

96

“in what place,” sayd our King, “may be bought lik
to th[is?]”

“wee neuer pay peennye for it, by my fay;
from merry Sherwood wee feitch it home heero;
now & then we make bold with our Kings deere.”

17

Don't tell
him.

100

“Then I thinke,” quoth our King, “that it is Venison.”
“eche foole,” quoth Richard, “full well may see that;
neuer are we without 2 or 3 in the rooffe,
verry well fleshed & exellent ffatt.
but I pray thee say nothing where-ere thou goe,
we wold not for 2 pence the King shold it know.”

18

Certainly
not, says
the King.

104

“doubt not,” saies¹ our King, “my promised secresye;
the King shall neuer know more ont for mee.”
a cupp of lambes woole² they dranke vnto him,
& to their bedds thé past presentlye.

Next
morning the
nobles

108

the Nobles next Morning went all vp & downe
for to seeke the King in euerye towne;

19

[page 237]

find the King
at the
Miller's
house.
and fall on
their knees
before him.

At last, att the Miller's house soone thé did spye him
plaine,
as he was mounting vpon his faire steede;
to whome thé came presentlye, falling downe on their
knees,

¹ MS. saiy.—F.

² A favourite liquor among the com-
mon people, composed of ale and roasted

apples; the pulp of the roasted apple
worked up with the ale, till the mixture
formed a smooth beverage. Nares.—F.

119 which made the Millers hart wofullye bleed.
Shaking & quaking before him he stood,
thinking he shold be hanged by the rood.

The Miller
quakes.

20

The K[ing] perceiuing him fearfully trembling,
116 drew forth his sword, but nothing he said ;
the Miller downe did fall crying before them all,
doubtinge¹ the King wold cut of his head.
but he, his kind curtesie for to requite,
120 gaue him great lining, & dubd him a Knight.

The King
draws his
sword.

The Miller
expects to
have his
head cut off,

but is
knighted.

21

When as our noble King came from Nottingham,
& with his nobles in westminster Lay,
recounting the sports & the pastime thé had tane
124 in this late progresse along on the way ;
of them all, great & small, hee did protest
the Miller of Mansfeild liked him best ;

At West-
minster,
afterwards,

22

" And now, my Lords," quoth the King, " I am de-
termined,
126 against St. Georges next sumptuous feast,
that this old Miller, our youngest confirmed Knight,
with his sonne Richard, shalbe both my guest ;
for in this merriment it is my desire
132 to talke with this lollye Knight & the younge squier."

the King
resolves
to ask the
Miller and
his son up
to a feast.

23

When as the Noble Lords saw the Kings merriment,
thé were right loyfull & glad in their harts.
A Purinant thé sent straight on this busines,
134 the which oftentimes vsed those parts.
when he came to the place where he did dwell,
His message merrilye then he did tell.

A pur-
suiuant is
sent with
the invita-
tion.

¹ fearing.—P.

24

which he
delivers in
due form.

140 “ God saue your worshippe,” then said the messenger,
“ & grant your Ladye ¹ her owne harts desire ;
& to your sonne Richard good fortune & happinesse,
that sweet younge gentleman & gallant squier !
our King greets you well, & thus doth say,
144 ‘ you must come to the court on St. Georges day ’ ;

25

At first the
Miller is
half afraid,

“ Therefore in any case fayle not to be in place.”
“ I-wis,” quoth the Miller, “ it is an odd Iest !
what shold wee doe there ? ” he sayd, “ infaith I am
halfe afraid.”
148 “ I doubt,” quoth Richard, “ to be hanged att the
least.”

but on
hearing of
the feast

“ nay,” quoth the Messenger, “ you doe mistake ;
our King prepares a great feast for your sake.”

26

gives the
pursivant
three
farthings,

and promises
to come.

“ Then,” said the Miller, “ now by my troth, Mes-
senger,
152 thou hast contented my worshipp full well :
hold ! there is 3 farthings to quite thy great gentleness
for these happy tydings which thou dost me tell.
let me see ! hearest thou me ? tell to our King,
156 wee le wayte on his Mastershipp in euerye thing.”

27

The
pursivant
reports all
to the King.

The pursivant smyled at their simplicitye ;
& making many ² leggs, tooke their reward,
& takeing then his leaue with great humilitee,
160 to the Kings court againe hee repayred,
showing vnto his grace in euerye degree
the Knights most liberall gifts & great bountye.

¹ ? MS. Ladyes.—F.

² Only half the *n* in the MS.—F.

28

When hee was gone away, thus can the Miller say,
 164 "heere comes expences & charges indeed !
 now must wee needs be brane, tho wee spend all wee
 haue ;
 for of new garments wee haue great need.
 of horses & serving men wee must haue store,
 168 with bridles & saddles & 20th things more."

The Miller
 purposes to
 buy new
 clothes,
 horses, &c.

29

"Tush, Sir Iohn," quoth his wife, "neither doe frett
 nor frowne !
 you shall bee att noe more charges of mee !
 for I will turne & trim vp my old russett gowne,
 172 with enerye thing else as fine as may bee ;
 & on our Mill horses full swift wee will ryd,
 with pillowes & pannels as wee shall prouyde."

His wife
 dissuades
 him.

She'll trim
 up the old
 clothes,

and they'll
 ride their
 mill-horses.

30

In this most statelie sort the rod vnto the court,
 176 their lusty sonne Richard foremost of all,
 who sett vp by good hap a cockes fether in his cappe ;
 & soe the ietted downe towards the Kings hall,
 the Merry old Miller with his hands on his side,
 180 his wife like Maid Marryan did Mince at that tyde.

Thus they
 go to court.

31

The King & his nobles that hard of their coming,
 meeting this gallant Knight with this braue traine,
 "welcome, Sir Knight," quoth hee, "with this your
 gay Lady !
 184 good Sir Iohn Cockle, once welcome againe ;
 & soe is this squier of courage soe free !"
 Quoth dicke, "abotts on you ! doe you know me ?"

The King
 welcomes
 them,

32

Quoth our King gentlie, "how shall I forgett thee ?
 188 thou wast my owne bed-fellow ; well that I wot,

and assures
 Richard
 that he

remembers
him.

but I doe thinke on a tricke ; tell me, pray thee, dicke,
how with farting we made the bed hott."
" thou horson happy knaue," the[n] quoth the Knight,
192 " speake cleanly to our [king now,] or else goe shite ! "

33

[page 238]

The King
conducts
them to
table,

The king and his councellors hartilye laugh at this,
while the King tooke them by the hand.
with Ladyes & their maids, like to the Queene of
spades
196 the Millers wiffe did most orderlye stand ;
a milkemaids curtesye at euerye word,
& downe these folkes were set to the bord,

34

and after
dinner
drinks to
the Miller,

Where the King royally with princely Maiestye
200 sate at his dinner with Ioy & delight.
when he had eaten well, to resting then hee fell ;
taking a bowle of wine, dranke to the Knight,
" heeres to you both ! " he sayd, " in ale, wine, & beere,
204 thanking you hartilye for all my good cheere."

35

and wants
some of his
venison.

Quoth Sir Iohn Cockle, " Ile pledge you a pottle,
were it the best ale in Nottingham-shire."
" but then," said our King, " I thinke on a thinge,
208 some of your lightfoote I wold we had heere."
" ho : ho : " Quoth Richard, " full well I may say it ;
its knauerye to eat it & then to bewray it."

36

He asks
Richard to
pledge him.

" What ! art thou hungry ? " quoth our King merrilye,
212 " infaith I take it verry vnkind ;
I thought thou woldest pledg me in wine or ale
heartil[y.] "

Dick says he
must finish
his dinner
first ;

he wants a
black
pudding,

" yee are like to stay," quoth Dicke, " till I haue
dind ;
you feed vs with twatling dishes soe small.
216 zounds ! a blacke pudding is better then all."

37

"I, marry," quoth our King, "that were a dainty thing,
if wee cold gett one heere for to eate."

with that, dicke straight aroos, & plucket one out of
his h[ooe,]

and gally
one out of
his tutchin.

220 which with heat of his breech began for to sweate.

the King made profer to snatch it away;

"its meate for your Master, good Sir, you shall stay!"

"That's meate
for your
master, Sir
King."

38

Thus with great merriment was the time¹ wholly spent;

224 & then the Ladyes prepared to dance.

old Sir Iohn² Cockle & Richard incontinent

vnto this practise the King did advance,

where-with the Ladyes such sport the did make,

228 the Nobles with laughing did make their heads ake.

The Miller
and Richard
dances with
the ladies,

and make
the nobles
laugh.

39

Many thanks for their paines the King did gine them
then,

asking young Richard if he wold be wed:

"amongut these ladyes faire, tell me which liketh thee."

232 Quoth hee, "Iugg Grumball with the red head;

shees my lone; shees my liffe; her will I wed;

shee bath sworne I shall haue her maidenhead."

The King
asks Dick
which lady
he'd like.
"Jugg
Grumball
with the red
head."

40

Then Sir Iohn Cockle the King called vnto him;

236 & of Merry sherwood made him ouerseer,

& gane him out of hand 300³ yearlye,

"but now take heede you steale noe more of my deere!

& once a quarter lets heare haue your vew;

240 & thus, Sir Iohn Cockle, I bid thee adew!"

The King
makes the
Miller
overseer of
Sherwood,
and warns
him not to
steal any
deer.

ffins.

¹ A y has been altered into part of
the m in the MS.—F.

² Only half the s in the MS.—F.

[*"Panche,"* printed in *Lo. and Hum. Songs*, p. 61, follows here
in the MS.]

Agincourte Battell.¹

AGINCOURT must have been a tempting theme to the ballad-writer and poet of its day. The splendid pluck with which the little English army, wasted by dysentery, ill-fed, and harassed by long marches and hostile skirmishers, nevertheless went at its enemies, facing the terrible odds of more than six to one, and put to ignominious rout the vaunting knights of France, must have appealed to the English heart and the English pride, and ought to have been worthily sung. The ballad-writer especially was bound to take it up, for the class he wrote for led the van and won the field. As at Crecy, as at Poitiers, so at Agincourt, the English yeomen humbled the gentlemen of France. Like the *feu d'enfer* of our rifles at Inkerman, the hail of yeomen's arrows gained England honour in the olden hard-fought field. But though at Agincourt the rout of the first division of the French army was due solely to our bowmen, against the second, squire and knight, noble and king did well their part too—none better than the Harry who said “WE WILL NOT LOSE,” and gave the battle lastingly the name of *Azincourt*. To the valour of all was due the flight of the French third division, which, though more than double the number of the English host, feared to face their arrows and their swords, and galloped off the field. That “the people of England were literally mad with joy and triumph” at the victory—rushing into the sea to meet Henry, and carrying him on shore on their shoulders—we do not wonder; but it is somewhat odd that no better ballad or poem on the battle should have come down to us, though in a play Shakspeare has done it justice. The ballads known to me are only—

¹ In the printed Collection of Old Ballads, 1726, vol. ii. p. 79, No. xii.

1. The *Deo gratias, Anglia, redde pro victoria* printed by Percy in his *Reliques*, vol. ii. p. 24, "from a MS. copy in the Pepys collection, vol. i., folio," and to which the musical notes of the MS. are given in vol. ii. p. 24 of the second edition of the *Reliques*. 2. The present copy, having seven stanzas more than, but being otherwise nearly the same as, that in the *Crown Garland of Golden Roses*, ed. 1569 (p. 69 of the Percy Soc. reprint), the *Collection of Old Ballads*, 1726-38, vol. ii. p. 79, No. xii.; *Erebus*, vol. ii. p. 351, &c. 3. The *Three Man's Song*,—far the best of the lot, the first verse of which is quoted in Heywood's *King Edward IV.* ed. 1600 (p. 52 of the Shakspeare Soc. reprint), and the whole of which is printed from a black-letter copy (about 1665, Mr. Collier tells me) in Collier's *Shakspeare*, ed. 1858, vol. iii. p. 538. Its title is "Agincourt, or the English Bowman's glory:" to a pleasant new Tune. London, printed for Henry Harper in Smithfield. It is a broadside, and contains eleven seven-line stanzas. It begins "Agincourt! Agincourt! Know ye not Agincourt?" 4. The ballad No. 286 in the Halliwell Collection in Chetham's Library, Manchester, entitled, "King Henry V., his Conquest of France in Revenge for the Affront offered by the French King in sending him instead of the Tribute a Ton of Tennis Balls." It begins, "As our King lay musing on his bed;" and two versions different from it and from one another are given in *Nicolas*, Appendix, p. 78, and p. 80, ed. 1832. 5. *The Cambro-Briton's Ballad of Agincourt*, by Michael Drayton, *ib.* p. 83. Nos. 3 and 4 will be printed at the end of this volume.

Of Poems, there are :

1. *a.* That attributed to Lydgate, in three Passus, in Harl. MS. 367, fol. 102-114, beginning "God put alle þis world gan make," and printed among the illustrations of *The Chronicle of London*, 4to. 1827, and in *Nicolas*, p. 301-29. *β.* "The Siege of Harfleur, & Batall of Agincourt, by K. Hen. 5;" another copy of Lydgate's poem, says *Nicolas* (p. 301), but differing from it so materially that it was necessary to print it as notes to the corresponding passages of the other. It was printed by Hearne at p. 359-75 of his edition of *Blundell's Life of Henry V.*, from the since burnt Cotton MS., Vitellius D. xii. fol. 214 b. Extracts from it are given by *Nicolas*, p. 301-29.

7. The *Batavill of Evingecourt, and the great Sege of Rouen*. Imprinted by John Skot about 1530 *v. p.* Reprinted in *Nicolas*, and in Mr. W. C. Hazlitt's *Remains of the*

Early Popular Poetry of England, vol. ii. p. 88–108. is, says Nicolas (App. p. 69), “merely another, though a very different version of the one” attributed to Lydgate.

2. Drayton’s *Battaile of Agincourt*, 1627. (Besides *The Lay of Agincourt*, Edinburgh, 1819 (a very poor performance), and possibly other modern productions.)

Of Dramas, we find :

1. The Famous Victories of Henry the Fifth : Containing the Honourable Battell of Agin-court: as it was plaide by the Queene’s Maiesties Players. London, Printed by Thomas Creede, 1598, 4to, 26 leaves. *Bodleian*. (Malone).¹

2. The Chronicle History of Henry the Fifth, With his Battell fought at Agin Court in France. Together with auncient Pistoll. 1600 : the first cast of Shakspeare’s *Henry V.*²

In prose, a full and admirable account of the battle, with contemporary accounts and plentiful extracts from historians, is given by Sir Nicholas Harris Nicolas in his *History of the Battle of Agincourt, and of the Expedition of Henry V. into France in 1415*, (2nd ed., 1832 ; 3rd, 1838); and from this book it may be worth while just to run through the points of our ballad, and see how far they are borne out by facts. The Council of line 1, Nicolas thinks was the parliament which met in November 1514, which elected Chaucer’s son Thomas its Speaker, and voted the King supplies for the defence of the kingdom of England and the safety of the seas. But it may have been a smaller Council, no doubt held before the Commission of the 31st of May, 1514, absurdly claiming the French crown, was issued to the Bishops of Durham and Norwich, the Earl of Salisbury, Richard Lord Grey, &c.—whom Monstrelet calls *le Comte d’Ourset, oncle du Roy d’Angleterre, le Comte de Grez, l’Admiral d’Angleterre, les Euesques du Dumelin et de Noruegue, et plusieurs autres iusques au nombre de six cens cheuaux ou environ* (vol. i. p. 216, ed. 1595)—and who were so hospitably entertained in Paris. The great Council at which the arrange-

¹ Hazlitt’s Handbook.

² Bohn’s Lowndes, p. 2280, col. 2.

ments for the expedition were made was held at Westminster on three successive days, April 16, 17, 18, A.D. 1415, directly after the despatch of Henry's second letter to Charles.

The story of the scornful treatment of the ambassadors in L 16-28 is belied by Monstrelet's account of the *moult notable feste dedans Paris en boyres, mangiers, joustes, dances et autres esbalementz*, at which the English ambassadors were present; and there seems no foundation whatever for the present of the tennis balls, which would have gone directly counter to the French King's policy, letters, and interest. But still his young son may have been saucy, and have sent a saucy message to Henry. The story was believed to be true at the time or soon after; it is mentioned by Elmham in his Latin-verse life of Henry V¹ (though not in his prose life), and a long account of it is given in a middle fifteenth-century Cotton MS. (Claudius A. viii.) which Sir H. Nicolas prints, and which, as I had to refer to it to correct his *cornet* to the MS. *scorne*, I add here too:

And than the dolphine of Frannee answered to our embassatours, and said in this maner, 'that the kyng was ouer yong and to tender of age to make any warre ayens hym, and was not lyke yet to be a good werrioure to doo and to make suche a conquest there vpon hym. And somewhat in scorne and dispite he sente to hym a tonne full of tenys ballis, be-cause he wolde haue some-what for to play withalle for hym and for his lordis, and that be-came hym better than to mayntayn any werre. And than anone oure lordes that was embassatours taken hir leue and comen in to England ayenne, and shewed the kyng and his counceill of the vngoodly answer that they had of the Dolphyn, and of the present the which he had sent vnto the kyng. And whan y^e kyng had hard her wordis, and the answer of the Dolpynne, he was wondre sore agrened, and righte euell apayd toward the frensshemen, and toward the kyng, and the Dolphynne, and thought to auenge hym vpon hem as some as good wold send hym grete and myghte; and anon lette make tenys ballis for the Dolpynne and the last that the myghte be made, and they were grete gonne ballis for the Dolpynne to play wyth-all. (fol. 1, back.)

¹ Printed in Cole's *Memorials of Henry V.*

This Dauphin was Louis, eldest son of Charles VI., then between eighteen and nineteen years of age. He was born on January 22, 1396, and died before his father, without issue, on December 18, 1415, in his twentieth year (*Nicolas*). But as Henry V. was eight years older than the Dauphin, having been born in 1388, it is not likely that he would have taunted Henry with his youth.

Lines 33–40 : Henry exerted himself greatly to get his army together, and had to pledge his crowns, his jewels, plate, &c. to his men to guarantee them their wages. Nobody would move without taking security from him. He sailed from Southampton on August 7, 1415, with a fleet of between 1200 and 1400 vessels of various sizes, from 20 to 300 tons, according to *Nicolas*. Lingard makes the fleet 1500 sail, carrying 6000 men-at-arms and 2400 archers. The army landed at Clef de Caus, or Kideaux, on August 15; on the 19th arrived before Harfleur, and at once laid siege to it. On “the English balls,” l. 34, and missiles, *Laboureur* states that, among other engines, the English had some which threw stones of a monstrous size, and projected entire millstones (*des meules toutes entières*), which threw down the walls with a frightful noise, so that by the Feast of the Assumption (August 15, a wrong date) all their batteries were destroyed. I find nothing about the “great gunn of Calais” of l. 49; but on September 17 at midnight the French messengers came to treat with Henry; and as the town was not relieved by September 22, the Lord de Gaucourt and thirty-four of the noblest persons of the town then surrendered it to him. He turned out the inhabitants (l. 58) to the number of 2000, besides citizens, 60 knights, and more than 200 other gentry; left in the town more than the 300 Englishmen of our ballad, l. 59, even,¹ “under the captain”² (Sir John Blount, says

¹ There is a muster-roll of the garrison of Harfleur, under the Earl of Dorset, taken in the months of January, February, and March, immediately following the battle. It consisted of 4 barons,

22 knights, 273 men-at-arms, and 798 archers. Most of these, we may presume, had been left behind when the King marched on to Agincourt. *Hunter*, p. 55.

² *pelord* Beauford, Harl. MS. 575, f. 75 b.

Monstrelet, certain barons and knights skilful in affairs of war, with 3000 lances, and 900 archers on pay" (*Nicolas*, p. 217), and marched out himself on October 7 with "not above 900 lances and 5000 archers," says a writer who was with him. *Nicolas* puts the force at from 6000 to 9000 fighting men. Lines 61-4 of the ballad are not true, for Henry's movements were watched, his stragglers cut off, and the country laid waste before him. He was repulsed in his first attempts to cross the Somme, between October 12 and 18; but on the 19th, finding a ford not staked, his army got over; on the 24th reached Maisoncelles, and on the 25th fought the battle.

The 600,000 French of l. 72 is of course an exaggeration, a 0 has been added for effect.¹ The message and answer of lines 73-88 are not historical, though the following particulars are nearly so, and the 10,000 killed of l. 137 is borne out by *Nicolas's* conclusion, that the whole of the French loss on the field was between 10,000 and 11,000 men.

The Duke of Yorke of line 117 was "Edward, Duke of York, son of Edmund of Langley, Duke of York, son of King Edward III., and cousin german to the King. He indented on Apr. 29 to serve with 1 banneret, 4 knights, 94 esquires, and 500 mounted archers. His contingent, in the indenture of jewels, is said to have been 99 lances and 300 archers. He had one of the crowns in pledge. He went on with the King to Agincourt, where he lost his life" (*Hunter*, p. 22). On the Wednesday before the battle, says *Monstrelet*, l. 227, "le due d'Yorch, son cousin, commandant l'avantgarde, se logea à French sur la rive de l'Esche." This leadership of the vanguard the Duke kept on the 25th, and as the Cotton MS. already quoted from narrates his asking for it, and the events of the battle, I copy a page and a half of it from leaves 3 and 4.

¹ The English writer says of the French force, "N'est-ce pas une merveille que ce nombre de gens?" and *Nicolas* gives the number as 100,000. The French writer says "le due d'Yorch, son cousin, commandant l'avantgarde, se logea à French sur la rive de l'Esche." This leadership of the vanguard the Duke kept on the 25th, and as the Cotton MS. already quoted from narrates his asking for it, and the events of the battle, I copy a page and a half of it from leaves 3 and 4.

And the duke of yorke felle on knees and besoughte the kyng of a bone, that he wold graunte hym that day the avaunteward in his batayle. And the kyng graunted hym his askyng, And sayd, "graunte mercy, cosen of yorke," and prayd hym to make hym redy. And than he bad euery man to ordeyne a stake of tre, and sharpe bothe endes that the stake myghte be pyghte in the ye-¹rthe a slope, that hir enemies shuld not ouer-come hem on horsbak, ffor that were hir fals purpose, and araide hem alle there for to ouer-ryde our meyne sodenly at the fyrst comyng on of hem at the fyrst brout: and al nyghte be-ffore the bataile þ^e ffrenshemen made many grete fiers and moche reuelle, with howtyng and showtyng, and plaid oure kyng and his lordis at the dise, and an archer alway for a blanke ² of hir money, ffor they wenden alle had bene heres. the morne arose, the day gan spryng, And the kyng by goode anise let araie his batayle ³ and his wenges, and charged euery man to kepe hem hole to-geders, and praid hem alle to be of good chere. And whan they were redy, he asked what tyme of the day it was, And they sayd prime. Than said oure kyng, "now is good tyme! For alle England praythe for vs; and therfore be of good chere, and let vs goo to oure iorney." And than he said with an highe vois, "in the name ⁴ of almyghtey god and seynt George, avaunt Baner! and seint george this day be thyne helpe!" And than these ffrenshmen come prikyng doune as they wolde haue ouer-ridden alle oure meyne. But god and oure archers made hem sone to stomble; ffor oure archers shett neuer arow a-mys, but yt persshed and broughte to grounde man and hors; ffor they put day shoten for a wager. And oure stakes mad hem stoppe, & ouer-terned eche on oothir that they lay on hepes two spere lenththe of heyghte. And oure kyng with his meyne and with his men of armes and archiers that thakked ⁵ on theym so thykke with arowes, and leyd on with strokes, and oure kyng withe his owne hondes faughte manly. And thus almyghtey god and seynt George broughte oure enymies to grounde and yaf vs that day þ^e victorie. and there were slayne of ffrenshmen that day in the felde of Agincourte mo thanne A xi m^{ll} withe prisoners that were taken. And there were nombred that day of ffrenshmen in the felde mo than six score thou-

¹ MS. fol. 3, back.

² Fr. *Blanc*, the halfe of a *Sol*, a peece of money which we call also, a blanke. *Sol*, a *Sous*, or the French shilling, whereof terme make one of ours.—Cotgrave.

³ The main body under his own command. The vanguard as the right wing under the Duke of York, the rearguard as the left wing under Lord Camois.

⁴ MS. *mame*.

⁵ thwacked, beat, pattered.

and, and of Englishemen nat vij m^{ll}; but god that day faughte for vs. And after cam ther tydynges to oure kyng that there was a new batayle of ffrenshemen redy to stele on hym, and comen towardis [fol. 4.] hym. Anone our kyng let crie that euery man shuld salue his prisoners that he had take; and anon araid his bataille ayenne to fighte with the frenshemen. And whanne they sawe that our men kylled doune her prisoners, thanne they withdrowe hem, and brake hir bataille and alle hir Array. And this oure kyng, as a worthy conqueror, had that day the victorie in the felde of Agencourt in Picardie.¹

The Duke of Orleance, l. 149, though he was taken prisoner in the battle, is not named by Monstrelet as the leader of the attack on Henry's camp:

Et adonc vindrent nouuelles au Roy Anglois, que les François les assailloient par derriere: & qu'ils auoient desia prins ses sommiers & autres bagues, laquelle chose estoit veritable: car Robinet de Bournonuille, Riffart de Clamasse, Ysambart d'Azincourt, & aucuns autres hommes d'armes, accompagnez de six cens paisans, allerent ferir au bagaige dudit Roy d'Angleterre. Et prindrent lesdites bagues, & autres choses, avec grand nombre de cheuaux desdits Anglois, entre-temps que les gardes d'iceux estoient occupez en la bataille. *Monstrelet*, vol. i. p. 229.

The 200,000 French prisoners is an impossible number, and Nicolas does not give any at all. The highest estimate of the English loss is 1600 men. From Agincourt Henry marched to Calais, where he arrived on October 29. On November 14 he crossed the Channel to Dover, and on the 24th entered London in triumph:

the Cite of london, where þat there was shewed many a fayre syghte at all the conduytes and at crosse in the chepe, as in heuenly arraye of aungels, Archangels, patriarches, prophites and Virgines, with dyuers melodies, sensyng and syngyng, to welcome oure kyng; And all the conduytes rennyng with wyne. (Cott. Claud. A. viii. leaf 1. back).

The last three verses of our ballad quicken and alter events

¹ Nicolas quotes this also, p. 277-8, at foot.

considerably. It was not till after many a weary siege and fight, culminating with the fall of Rouen on January 16, 1419,¹ that Henry saw his beautiful bride, and that for one day only, on May 30, 1419. It was not till May 20, 1420, that he married her at Troyes; not till December of that year that he made his triumphal entry into Paris with his wife and his father-in-law, the French King. He was never crowned in Paris, King of France, but his wife was crowned in Westminster Abbey, Queen of England, on St. Matthew's day, September 21, A.D. 1421.

Henry V.

A counsell braue² our *King* did hold
with many a lord & knight,
in³ whom he trulye vnderstands
4 how ffrance withheld his right.

sends an
ambassador
to the
French King

therefor a braue embassador
vnto the *King* he sent,
that he might ffully vnderstand
8 his mind & whole entente,

to yield him
his right,

or he'll take
it.

desiring him, as⁴ freindlye sort,
his lawfull wright to yeeld,
or else he sware⁵ by dint of sword
12 to win the same in feild.

Charles VI.

the *King* of ffrance, with all his lords
who⁶ heard this message plaine,
vnto our braue embassador

answers

16 did answer in disdaine ;

¹ See the "Sege of Roan," *Archæol.*
xxi. 48 ; xxii. 361.—F.

² grave, P.C. (Print^d Copy).—P.

³ Of. Conj[ecture].—P.

⁴ in, P.C.—P.

⁵ vow'd, P.C.—P.

⁶ which, P.C.—P.

who sayd,¹ "our King was yett but² younge
& of a³ tender age;
wherfor I way not for his warres,⁴
20 nor care not for his rage,⁵

that he
cares not for
Henry's
threats,

"whose⁶ knowledge eke⁷ in ffacts of armes,
whose⁸ sickill⁹ [is] but¹⁰ verry small,
whose¹¹ tender ioyns more fitter are
30 to trace a Tennys ball."

a tynn of Tennys balls therfore,
in pryde and great disdaine
he sends to Noble Henery the 5th,¹¹
40 who recompenced¹² his paine.

and sends
him a tyn of
tennis-balls.

& when our King this message hard
he waxed wrath in his¹³ hart,
& said "he wold such balls provyde
50 that¹⁴ shold make all france to smart."

Henry

an army great¹⁵ our King prepared,¹⁶
that was both good & strong;
& from Sowthampton is our King
60 with all his Nauye gone.

prepares an
army,

he landed in ffance both safe¹⁷ and sound
with all his warlike traine;
vnto¹⁸ a towne called Harfleete first¹⁹
70 he marched vp amaine.

lands in
France,

¹ And sign'd, P.C.—P.

² too, P.C.—P.

³ of too, P.C.—P.

⁴ we weigh—of his war, P.C.—P.

⁵ fear we his courage, P.C.—P.

⁶ His, P.C.—P.

⁷ in, P.C.—P.

⁸ skill—P.

⁹ As yett but &c., P.C.—P.

¹⁰ His—P.

¹¹ He sent unto our noble K^e, P.C.—P.

¹² To recompence, P.C.—P.

¹³ d.—P.

¹⁴ then, P.C.—P.

¹⁵ did raise, P.C.—P.

¹⁶ In France he landed safe, &c., P.C.—P.

¹⁷ And to, P.C.—P.

¹⁸ of Harfleur strait, P.C.—P.

besieges
Harfleur,

and when he had beseeged the same,
against these fensed walls
to batter downe their statlye towers
44 he sent his English Balls.

bids it sur-
render

¹ And he bad them yeeld [up to him ²]
themselves & eke their towne,
or else he sware vnto the earth
48 with cannon ³ to beate them downe.

[page 24:

or he'll beat
it to the
ground.

¹ the great gunn of Caleis was vpsett,⁴
he mounted against those walls ⁵;
the strongest steeple in the towne,
52 he threw downe bells & all.

The Govern-
ors give up
the town.

¹ then those *that* were the gouernors
their woefull hands did wringe ⁶;
thé brought their Keyes in humble sort
56 vnto our gracious King.

Henry
garrisons it,

¹ & when the towne was woone and last,
the ffrenchmen out thé ⁷ threw,
& placed there 300 englishmen
60 *that* wold to him be true.

and
marches to

this being done, our Noble King⁸
marched vp & downe *that* ⁹ land,—
& not a ffrenchman ffor his liffe
64 durst once his fforce withstand,—

¹ These 4 stanz⁹ not in print.—P.

² MS. cut away. It has more words.
—F. He bade the governors give up.
—P.

³ guns.—P.

⁴ then.—P.

⁵ was ..'gainst their wall.—P.

⁶ Only half the *n* in the MS.—F.

⁷ he.—P.

⁸ done our noble English King, P.
—P.

⁹ the, P.C.—P.

<p>till ¹ he came to Agincourt ; & ² as it was his chance, to find ³ the King in readinesse, 68 with him was all the power of france,</p> <p>a mightye host they ⁴ had prepared off armed souldiers then, which was noe lesse (the chronicle sayes) ⁵ 72 then 600000 ⁶ men.⁷</p> <p>the King of france <i>that</i> well did know the number of our men, in vantage pride vnto our King 76 sends one of his heralds ⁸ then</p> <p>to vnderstand what he wold giue for the ⁹ ransome of his life, when in <i>that</i> feild he had taken him ¹⁰ 80 amidst <i>that</i> ¹¹ bloody striffe.</p> <p>& when ¹² our King the Message heard, ¹³ did straight the ¹⁴ answer make, saying, " before <i>that</i> thing shold ¹⁵ come to passe, 84 many ¹⁶ of their harts shold ¹⁷ ake !</p>	<p>Agincourt,</p> <p>where the French King is,</p> <p>with 600,000 men.</p> <p>Charles sends</p> <p>a herald</p> <p>to ask Henry what ransom he'll pay for his life.</p> <p>Henry answers</p>
---	---

¹ Unal. P.C.—P.
² Where. P.C.—P.
³ He found.—P. *him was*, l. 68,
 marked out by P. conj[ecturally].—F.
⁴ He. P.C.—P.
⁵ By just account, P.C.—P.
⁶ 600,000, P.C.—P.
⁷ Between 18 and 19th Stanza of y^e
 M^e is the following in Print:—
 Which sight did much amaze our king,
 For he and ⁸ all his host
 Not passing fifteen thousand had,

Accounted at the most.—P.
⁸ Did send a Herald, P.C.—P.
⁹ d.—P.
¹⁰ he in field sh'd . . . be, P.C.—P.
¹¹ their, P.C.—P.
¹² then . . .—P.
¹³ with cheerful heart.—P.
¹⁴ this. —P.
¹⁵ *thing shold*, cut out by P.—P.
¹⁶ some.—P.
¹⁷ shall, P.C.—P.

"My heart's
blood."

"vnto your proud presumptuss prince
declare this thing," quoth hee,
my owne harts blood shall pay the price ;
88 nought ¹ else he getts of me." ²

The French

then all the night the frenchman Lyen,
with triumphe, mirth, & Ioy ;
the next morning they mad full accomp[t] ³
92 our Armye to destroye.

play at dice
for the
English,

& for our King & all his Lords
at dice thé ⁴ playd apace,
& for our comon souldiers coates
96 they set a prize but base,

and value
their red
coats at 8d.,
white at 4d.

8 pence for a redd coate, ⁵
& a groate was sett to a white ; ⁶
because they ⁷ color was soe light,
100 they sett noe better buy itt. ⁸

Henry en-
courages his
men :

the cheerfull day at last was come ;
our King with Noble hart
did pray his valliant soldiers all
104 to play a worthye part,

& not to shrinke from fainting foes,
whose fearfull harts in ffeeld
wold by their feirce couragious stroakes
108 be soone in-forced ⁹ to yeeld ;

¹ none.—P.

² Seven Stanz^e following not in Print.
—P.

³ Making account the next morning,
or,

They made &c.—P. *del.* full.—P.

⁴ they.—P.

⁵ coat was set.—P.

⁶ And fourpence for a white.—P.

⁷ The y put in brackets by P. *conj.*—F.

⁸ by't.—P.

⁹ enforced.—P.

- "regard not of¹ their multitude,
tho they are more then wee,
for eche of vs well able is
112 to beate downe ffrenchmen 8 ;
- "yett let euerye man provide himselfe²
a strong³ substantiall stake,
& set it right before himselfe,
116 the hornmans force to breake."
- & then⁴ bespake the Duke of yorke
"O noble King," said hee,
"the leading of that⁵ battell brane
120 vouch[s]afe to giue it⁶ me !"
- "god amercy, coosen yorke," sayes hee,
"I doe⁷ grant thee thy request ;
Marche you⁸ on conragiouslye, (page 348)
124 & I will guide⁹ the rest."
- then came the bragginge frenchmen downe
with cruell¹⁰ force & might,
with whome our noble King began
128 a harde & cruell flight.
- our English archers¹¹ discharged their shafts
as thicke as hayle in skye,¹²
& ¹³ many a frenchman in that¹⁴ felde
132 that happy day did dye ;

"Don't mind the French numbers ; each of us can kill three of them ; but

let every archer get a stake to stop the hornmen."

The Duke of York

leads the vanguard.

Henry

the rest.

The French come on.

Our archers

kill man y ;

¹ you, or them.—P.
² himselfe is in l. 116 in the MS. P. marks it to go to l. 112. yett is marked out by P.—V.
³ But yet let every man provide
A strong &c.—P.
⁴ With that, P.C.—P.
⁵ this (the), P.C.—P.
⁶ to, P.C.—P.

⁷ d[ist].—P.
⁸ then—thou, P.C.—P.
⁹ lead, P.C.—P.
¹⁰ greater, P.C.—P.
¹¹ d. English. [Insert] they, P.C.—P.
¹² from skye, P.C.—P.
¹³ That, P.C.—P.
¹⁴ the, P.C.—P.

their stakes
stop the
horse.

¹ ffor the horssmen stumbled on our stakes,
& soe their lines they lost;
& many a frenchman there was tane
136 for prisoners to their ² cost.

10,000
French are
slain,

10,000
taken,

10000 ffrenchmen ³ there were slaine
of enemies in the ffeeld,
& neere as many prisoners tane ⁴
140 *that* day were fforced to yeeld.

and Henry
wins the
day.

thus had our *King* a happy day
& victorye ouer ffrance;
he brought his foes vnder his ffeete ⁵
144 *that* late in pride did prance.

While the
fight is going
on, news
comes

⁶ when they were at the Maine battell there
with all their might & forces, then ⁷
a crye came ffrom our English tents
148 *that* we were robbed all them ⁸;

that the
French have
plundered
the English
tents.

for the Duke of Orleance, with a band of men,
to our English tents they came ⁹;
all ¹⁰ our Iewells & treasure *that* they haue taken,
152 & many of our boyes ¹¹ haue slaine.

Henry

much greeved was *King* ¹² Harry therat,—
this was against ¹³ the law of armes then,—
comands euerye souldier on paine of death
156 to slay euerye prisoner then. ¹⁴

orders all
the French
prisoners to
be slain,

¹ This stanza not in Print.—P.

² [prisoner..] his, [P.]C.—P.

³ men that day, P.C.—P.

⁴ (d. P.C.)—P.

⁵ them quickly under foot, P.C.—P.

⁶ The Nine Stanz^s following not in print, but instead the annexed stanza vizt. :—

The Lord preserve our noble King
And grant to him likewise
The upper hand and victory
Of all his enemies!—P.

⁷ force and might.—P.

⁸ they were robbed quite.—P.

⁹ Of men unto *them* came.—P.

¹⁰ *And* prefixed; *Iewells* & *and the* marked out by P.—F.

¹¹ all our boys, so Shakesp^r. —P.

¹² the *King*.—P.

¹³ Being 'gainst.—P. and *then* deleted —F.

¹⁴ And bade y^m slay their Prisoners
For to revenge these hurms.—P.

200000¹ frenchemen our Englishmen had,
 some 2, & some had one²;
 euerye one was commanded by sound of trumpett
 160 to slay his prisoner then.³

200,000 of
 them.

& then thé followed vpon the maine battell;
 the frenchmen thé fled then⁴
 towards the citye of Paris
 164 as fast as thé⁵ might gone.

The French
 flee towards
 Paris,

but then ther was neuer a poere with-in france⁶
 of all those⁷ Nobles then,
 of all those worthy Disse peeros,
 168 durst come to King Harry⁸ then.

and no
 Dunsop
 durst meet
 King Harry;

but then Katherine, the Kings fayre daughter there,⁹
 being proued apparant his heyre,
 with her maidens¹⁰ in most sweet attire
 172 to King Harry did repayre;¹¹

but the
 Princess
 Katherine

& when shee came before our¹² King,
 shee kneeled vpon her knee,
 desiring him¹³ that his warres wold¹⁴ cease,
 176 & that¹⁵ he her loue wold bee.

comes and
 asks him

to marry
 her.

there-vpon our English Lords then agreed¹⁵
 with the Peeres of france then¹⁶;
 soe he Married Katherine, the Kings faire daughter,
 180 & was crowned King in Paris then.¹⁷

He does, and
 is crowned
 King in
 Paris.

ffins.

¹ 100000.—P. Both *men* deleted.—F.
² Some one and some had two.—P.
³ And each was bid by Trumpets sound
 To slay his prisoner tho,
 (or)
 His Prisoner to slay.—P.
⁴ *then*—P. *the*, l. 162, and *if*, *the* and
⁵ of l. 161 deleted by P. & F.
⁶ *they*—P.
⁷ Then was there never a Peer in
 France Conj.—P.
 Then could there not be found in France
 Of their Nobles all or Some.—P.

⁸ Not one of all those.—P.
⁹ to K^e Harry come.—P.
¹⁰ King's Daughter fair, [P.]C.—P.
¹¹ all Maids.—P. *then*, l. 169, *Ans*,
 l. 170, *most*, l. 171, marked *d* by P.—F.
¹² Did to our King rep^r, [P.]C.—P.
¹³ our—P.
¹⁴ *d*.—P.
¹⁵ might.—P.
¹⁶ Our K^e & — Lords.—P.
¹⁷ Seen with the French agreed.—P.
 So at Paris he fair Kath^e wed
 And crowned was with spee l.—P.

Conscience.¹

THERE are two sides to Early English Literature ; one gay, the other grave ; one light, the other earnest : and a man who comes to the subject fresh from struggles in the cause of reform, social and political, and meets first with the grave and earnest side of our early writings, is struck with delight and surprise at finding that in the old days, too, protesters against wrong existed, and that English writers denounced from the depths of their soul, in words of sternest indignation, the oppressions and abuses from which the English poor of their days suffered. Having passed myself from those *Morning Chronicle* letters on “Labour and the Poor”—which in 1849–50 revealed so much of the sad state of our workmen,—from meetings of sweated tailors, over-worked bakers, and ballast-heavers forced into drunkenness, to the pages of Roberd of Brunne’s *Handlyng Synne*, Langlande’s *Vision of Piers Ploughman*, *Piers Ploughman’s Crede*, and works of like kind from 1303 to 1560,—I can bear witness to the deep impression made on me by the noble and fervent spirits of our early men, rebuking the selfish, denouncing the hard-hearted, calling down God’s judgment on the oppressor ; striving, in their time too, to leave the land better than they found it. As one looked backward to these sources of the river of English life, one heard a great murmur of wrong rise from the torrents’ currents, one saw the stream turbid with the woes of “humble folk ;” but there were never wanting voices, ordering the one to be stilled in orderly channels, and the other cleared. Further

¹ This is a satirical Allegory: and seems not very ancient, vid. St. 13, v. 4.—P.

study of our early writers did not lessen this impression: for though the bright side came, though Chaucer's living sketches portrayed all that was merriest in early days, yet still there was method in his mirth; abuses in religion and social life were exposed, none the less effectively because with a joke; and when he spoke seriously, he too declared, "Thilke that thay clepe thralles, ben Goddes people; for humble folk ben Christes frendes: thay ben contubernially with the Lord: . . . certes, extorcious and despit of our undirlinges is dampnable."

Perceus Tale, De avaritia.) To their honour be it said, our early writers were on the weak man's side against the strong, and did what in them lay to lessen the vice of the world. It is this which makes the lovers of them not only surprised, but indignant, at the willing and wilful ignorance in which men of our day remain with regard to them. Our moderns will not take a few days' trouble to master their language; they care little for their thoughts. But when once the readers of the nineteenth—or is it to be the twentieth?—century awake to the recognition of the fact that there *is* an Early English Literature worth studying, they will be ashamed of their countrymen's long neglect, and gladly acknowledge the value of the treasures they will find—food for all the best impulses of the human soul. So far as I know, justice has never yet been done to this spirit of our early literature by any writer on it, except the latest Professor Morley. He, a man of mind akin with that of our old men—fresh from half a life spent in struggles for reform in health-laws, education, politics, and religion, ever backing the right and fighting the wrong—has come to the old books and said to them, not only "what were you translated or altered from, what manuscripts are there of you?" but first and mainly, "what do you *mean*?" what has the spirit of our writer got to say to the spirits of me and men here now? And the old bones (that were nothing more to so many, have taken flesh again and answered him, have stretched out their hands

and gript his as a friend's; and he has put down their answer for us in his own way in divers places of his genial and able book,¹ one of which I quote. He is speaking of Gower's *Vox Clamantis*, written on Wat Tyler's rebellion.

"In that earlier work, though written with vigour and ease in Latin, the language of literature which alone then seemed to be lasting, John Gower spoke especially and most essentially the English mind. To this day we hear among our living countrymen, as was to be heard in Gower's time and long before, the voice passing from man to man that—in spite of admixture with the thousand defects incident to human character—sustains the keynote of our literature, and speaks from the soul of our history the secret of our national success. It is the voice that expresses the persistent instinct of the English mind to find out what is unjust among us and undo it, to find out duty to be done and do it, as God's bidding. We twist religion into many a mistaken form. With thought free and opinions manifold we have run through many a trial of excess and of its answering reaction. In battle for main principles we have worked on through political and social conflicts in which often, no doubt, unworthy men rising to prominence have misused for a short time dishonest influence. But there has been no real check to the great current of national thought, the stream from which the long line of our English writers, like the trees by the fertile river-bank, derive their health and strength. We have seen how persistently that slow and earnest English labour towards God and the right was maintained for six centuries before the time of Chaucer, from the day when Cædmon struck the first note of our strain of English song with the words: 'For us it is very right that we praise with our words, love in minds, the Keeper of the Heavens, Glory King of Hosts.' It was the old spirit still in Chaucer's time that worked in the 'Vision of Piers Plowman,' and spoke through the Voice of Gower as of one crying in the wilderness, 'Prepare ye the way of the Lord.' It needed not in those days that a man should be a Wicliffite to see the griefs of the Church and people, and to trace them to their root in duties unperformed. Gower's name is a native one, possibly Cymric, but derived probably in or near Kent, from the old Saxon word for marsh-

¹ *English Writers*, vol. ii. pt. i. p. 106-7.

country, of which there was much about the Thames mouth, *Lyrwa-land*. His genius is unmixed Anglo-Saxon, closely allied to that of the literature before the Conquest, in the simple earnestness of a didactic manner leavened by no bold originality of fancy. In his Latin verse Gower writes easily, and, having his soul in his theme, forcibly. But he tells that which he knows, and invents rarely. His few inventions also, as of the dream of transformed beasts that represent Wat Tyler's rabble, of the ship of the state at sea, of his landing at an island full of turmoil which an old man described to him as Britain, are contrivances wanting in the subtlety and the audacity of true imaginative genius. He does not see as he writes, and so write that all they who read see with him. But in his own old English or Anglo-Saxon way, he tries to put his soul into his work. Thus, in the '*Vox Clamantis*' we have heard him asking that the soul of his book, not its form, be looked to; and speaking the truest English in such sentences as that 'the eye is blind, and the ear deaf, that convey nothing down to the heart's depth; and the heart that does not utter what it knows is as a live coal under ashes. If I know little, there may be another whom that little will help. Poor, I give of my scanty store, for I would rather be of small use than of none. But to the man who believes in God no power is unattainable if he but rightly feels his work; he ever has enough whom God increases.' This is the old spirit of *Cadmon* and of *Beke*, in which are laid, while the earth lasts, the strong foundations of our literature. It was the strength of such a temper in him that made Gower strong. 'God knows,' he says again, 'my wish is to be useful: that is the prayer that directs my labour.' And while he thus touches the root of his country's philosophy, the form of his prayer that what he has written may be what he would wish it to be, is still a thoroughly sound definition of good English writing. His prayer is that 'there may be no word of untruth, and that 'each word may answer to the thing it speaks of, pleasantly and fitly; that he may flatter in it no one, and seek in it no praise above the praise of God. Give me,' he asks, 'that there shall be less vice and more virtue for my speaking.'"

So far as regards the spirit of our early literature, I believe that Professor Merley is justified in every word that he has said. Granted the occasional coarseness of expressions in it to us, granted many another shortcoming, the spirit of it is noble and

worthy of honour, as its words are worthy of study, by every Englishman.

The present poem, *Conscience*, is one effort, a late one, in the strain of that "slow and earnest labour towards God and the right" of which Professor Morley speaks. Differing as it does in word and form from the *Ayenbite of Inwyt* (or *Remorse of Conscience*) which Dan Michel of North Gate, "ane brother of the cloystre of saynt Austin of Canterburi," fulfilled in the year of our lordes bearing, 1340, it has yet the same aim,

þis boc is ywrite
uor englisse men, þet hi wyte (may learn)
hou hi ssolle ham-zelue ssriue,
and maki ham klene ine þise liue.

With Richard Rolle of Hampole in 1345 (or thereabouts), its writer desires that by his *Pricke of Conscience* men may

Be stird þar-by til ryghtwyse way,
þat es, tille þe way of gude lyfyng,
And at þe last be broght til gude endyng. (p. 258, l. 9611.)

With Langlande, our *Conscience* tries the Court, the Lawyers, the Landlords, the Merchants, the Clergy; and all he finds in the possession of his enemies. Covetousness, Lechery, Usury, Avarice, and Pride have their way with all; the husbandmen are left desolate so that they cannot help the poor, and Conscience is driven out to lodge in the wood, and eat hips and haws, his only comforters being Mercy, Pity, and Almsdeeds. In early times Langlande's *Conscience* fared better: he got the King on his side; stood his ground well; reprov'd Mede or Bribery; brought sinners to repentance, sent them seeking for truth, and remained master of the situation. (See *Langlande's Vision of Piers the Ploughman*, ed. Skeat, E. E. Text Soc. 1867, Passus 3-5.)

A contrast of the different evils complained of by reforming writers in different ages, and the comparative prominence given to each vice by each writer, could not fail to bring out the cha-

characteristics of the successive periods of our social history, and be of great interest. But though I have some material for it, want of space forbids my attempting it here. Still, the point may be illustrated by looking at the clergy's hinderers in their good work of giving, as mentioned in the present poem,

for their wines & their children soe hange them vpon,
that whosoever giue almes deeds they will giue none,

when set beside Roberd of Brunne's complaints, in his *Handlyng Synne*, about the priest's mare or concubine, and the earlier one of the *Old English Homilies* (? about 1200 A.D.) that Mr. Richard Morris will edit, probably in 1869, for the Early English Text Society :

And oðre fele lerdemen speken also lewede also ure drihten seide þarh anes prophetes muðe. *Erit sicut populus sacerdos*. Prest sal leden his lif also lewede mæn . and swo hie doð nuðe : and sumdel werse. For þe lewede man wurðeð his spuse mid cloðes more þane mid him seluen . and prest naht sis (=so his) chireche, þe is his spuse : ac his daie, þe is his hore . awlencð hire mid cloðes . more þan him seluen. De chirche cloðes ben to-brokene : and calde . and his wines shule ben hole : and newe . His alter cloð great and sole : and hire chemise smal and hwit . and te albe sol : and hire smoc hwit. Þe haueð-line sward : and hire wimpel wit . oðer maked gelen mid safran. De meshakele of medeme fustain . and hire mentel grene oðer burnet. De corporals sole : and unshapliche . hire handcloðes . and hire bord cloðes maked wite and lustliche on to siene. De caliz of tin : and hire nap of mazere and ring of golde. And is þe prest swo muðele foreudere . þane þe lewede. Swo he wurðeð his hore more þan his spuse.—*Homilies in Trinity Coll. MS. A.D. 1200.*

Translation by Mr. Richard Morris.

And many other learned men speak as the unlearned, as our Lord spake through the mouth of a prophet, *Erit sicut*, &c. The priest shall lead his life as the laity ; and so they do now, and somewhat worse, for the layman honoureth his spouse with clothes more than himself, and the priest not so his church, which is his spouse ; but his day (maid servant), who is his whore, whom he adorneth with clothes more than himself. The church cloths are ragged and old,

and his woman's shall be whole and new. His altar cloth great (coarse) and dirty (soiled), and her chemise small and white; and the alb soiled, and her smock white; the head linen black, and her wimple (neck-cloth) white, or made yellow with saffron. The masscloth of paltry fustian, and her mantle green or burnet; the corporas soiled and badly made, her hand-cloths and her table-cloths made white and pleasant to the sight. The chalice of tin, and her cup of maser (a sort of hard wood gilded or inlaid with jewels), and her ring of gold; and so the priest is much worse than the laity for he honoureth his whore more than his spouse.

On the question of the rents asked by grasping landlords, I may quote a passage from Ascham used in the Forewords to *The Babees Boke, &c.* (E. E. T. Soc., 1868).

“He says to the Duke of Somerset on Nov. 21, 1547 (*Works*, ed. Giles, i. 140–1),

“‘Qui auctores sunt tantæ miseræ? . . . Sunt illi qui hodie passim, in Anglia, prædia monasteriorum gravissimis annuis redditibus auxerunt. Hinc omnium rerum exauctum pretium; hi homines expilant totam rempublicam. Villici et coloni universi laborant, parcant, corradunt, ut istis satisfaciant. . . Hinc tot familiæ dissipatæ, tot domus collapsæ . . Hinc, quod omnium miserrimum est, nobile illud decus et robur Angliæ, nomen, inquam, *Yomanorum Anglorum*, fractum et collisum est. . . . NAM VITA, QUÆ NUNC VIVITUR A PLURIMIS, NON VITA, SED MISERIA EST.’

(When will these words cease to be true of our land? They should be burnt into all our hearts.)”

Harrison, in 1577, speaks more easily about rents, and as he deals also with the question of Usury or Interest noted in our poem, I make a long quotation from his *Description of England*, a book invaluable to the student of the England of Shakespeare's days, and which I hope we shall soon reprint in the Extra Series of our Early English Text Society. Harrison is speaking of the “Three things greatlie amended in England” in his day: “(1.) Chimnies; (2.) Hard lodging; (3.) Furniture of household,” and of the latter says:

The third thing they tell of, is the exchange of vessell, as of

treene platters into pewter, and wooden spoones into silver or tin. For so common were all sorts of treene stuffe in old time, that a man should hardly find foure pièces of pewter (of which one was peradventure a salt) in a good farmer's house, and yet for all this frugalitie¹ (if it may so be justly called) they were scarce able to live and paie their rents at their daies without selling of a cow, or an horse, or more, although they paid but foure pounds at the uttermost by the yearre. Such also was their povertrie, that if some one of farmer or husbandman had bene at the alehouse, a thing greatlie used in those daies, amongst six or seven of his neighbours, and there in a brauerie to shew what store he had, did cast downe his purse, and thereon a noble or six shillings in silver vnto them (for few such men then cared for gold because it was not so readie payment, and they were oft enforced to give a pemie for the exchange of an angell) it was verie likelie that all the rest could not lay downe so much against it: whereas in my time, although peradventure foure pounds of old rent be improved to fortie, fiftie, or an hundred pounds, yet will the farmer (as another palme or date tree) thinke his gaires verie small toward the end of his terme, if he haue not six or seven years rent lay by him, therewith to purchase a new lease, beside a faire garnish of pewter on his cupboard, with so much more in od vessell going about the house, three or foure featherbeds, so manie coverlids and carpets of tapestry, a silver salt, a bowle for wine (if not an whole seat) and a dozen of spoones to furnish vp the sute. This also he taketh to be his owne eliere, for what stocke of monie soever he gathereth & laeth vp in all his yeares, it is often seene, that the landlord will take such order with him for the same, when he reneweth his lease, which is commonlie eight or six yeares before the old be expired (with it is now grown almost to a custome, that if he come not to his lord so long before, another shall step in for a reversion, and so defeat him out right) that it shall never trouble him more than the haire of his beard, when the barber hath washed and shaven it from his chin. And as they commend these, so (beside the decaye of house-keeping whereby the poore haue bene relieved) they speake also of three things that are grown to be verie grievous vnto them, to wit, the enhancing of rents, lately mentioned. the daily oppression of cop-holders, whose lords weeke to bring their poore tenants almost into plaine seruitude and miserie, daily devising new means, and seeking vp all the old how to cut them shorter and

¹ The sentence here is "This was in the time of generall idleness."

shorter, doubling, trebling, and now & then seuen times increasing their fines, driuing them also for euerie trifle to loose and forfeit their tenures (by whome the greatest part of the realme dooth stand and is maintained) to the end they may fléece them yet more, which is a lamentable hering. The third thing they talke of is vsurie, a trade brought in by the Iewes, now perfectlie practised almost by euerie christian, and so commonlie, that he is accompted but for a foole that dooth lend his monie for nothing. In time past it was *Sors pro sorte*, that is, the principall onelie for the principall; but now beside that which is aboue the principall properlie called *Vsura*, we challenge *Fœnus*, that is commoditie of soile, & fruits of the earth, if not the ground it selfe. In time past also one of the hundred was much, from thence it rose vnto two, called in Latine *Vsura*, *Ex sextante*; thrée, to wit *Ex quadrante*; then to foure, to wit *Ex triente*; then to five, which is *Ex quincunce*; then to six, called *Ex semisse*, &c.: as the accompt of the *Assis* ariseth, and comming at the last vnto *Vsura ex asse*, it amounteth to twelue in the hundred, and therefore the Latines call it *Centesima*, for that in the hundred moneth it doubleth the principall; but more of this elsewhere. See *Cicero* against *Verres*, *Demosthenes* against *Aphobus*, and *Athenœus lib. 13. in fine*: and when thou hast read them well, helpe I praie thee in lawfull maner to hang vp such as take *Centum pro cento*,¹ for they are no better worthie, as I doo iudge in conscience. Forget not also such landlords as vse to value their leases at a secret estimation giuen of the wealth and credit of the taker, whereby they séeme (as it were) to eat them vp and deale with bondmen, so that if the leassée be thought to be worth an hundred pounds, he shall paie no lesse for his new terme, or else another to enter with hard and doubtfull couenants. I am sorie to report it, much more gréeued to vnderstand of the practise; but most sorowfull of all to vnderstand that men of great port and countenance are so farre from suffering their farmers to haue anie gaine at all, that they themselues become grasiers, butchers, tanners, shéepmasters, woodmen, and *denique quid non*, thereby to enrich themselues, and bring all the wealth of the countrie into their owne hands, leauing the communaltie weake, or as an idoll with broken or féeble armes, which may in a time of peace haue a plausible shew, but when necessitie shall inforce, haue an heauie and bitter sequele.—*Holinshed*, vol. i. p. 188–189, ed. 1586.

The date of the poem I cannot pretend to fix. “The new-found land” of l. 91—

¹ “By the yeare” is the sidenote.

We banisht thee the country beyond the salt sea,
& sett thee on shore in *the new-found land*—

cannot refer, I think, to the re-discovery of Newfoundland by John Cabot, then in the service of England, on the 24th of June, 1497 (*Penny Cycl.*). The date must be later than that.

The first three stanzas of the poem, which should contain twenty-one lines, in the Manuscript (which is written without divisions) contain only eighteen lines. Mr. Skeat has sent me two arrangements of them, of which the following seems the right one:

As I walked of late by one wood side,
to god for to meditate was my entent,
where vnder a hawthorne I suddenly espyed
a silly poore creature ragged & rent,
with bloody teares his face was besprent,
his fleshe & his color consumed away,
& his garments they were all mire, mucke, & clay;

with turning & winding his bodye was toste,

* * * * *
* * * * *
* * * * *

“good lord! of my liffe depriue me, I pray,
for I, silly wretch, am ashamed of my name;
& I curse my godfathers *that* gaue me the same.”

this made me muse & much desire
to know what kind of man hee shold bee;
I stept to him straight, and did him require
his name & his secretts to shew vnto me.
his head he cast vp, & wooful was hee,
“my name,” quoth hee, “is the causer of my care,
& makes me scornd, & left here soe bare.”—F.

AS : I walked of late by one¹ wood side,
 ² to god for to meditate was my entent,
where vnder a hawthorne I suddenly espyed
4 a silly poore creature ragged & rent;

As I walked
out to
meditate,

I spied
a poor

¹ an.—P.

² perhaps On God.—P.

ragged
creature

with bloody teares his face was besprent,
his fleshe & his color consumed away ;

mired all
over.
He wished
himself dead,

¹ with turning & winding his bodye was toste,
8 & his garments they were all mire, mucke, & clay.

“ good lord ! of my liffe deprive me, I pray,
for I, silly wretch, am ashamed of my name !

his name
caused his
trouble.

² my name, “ quoth hee, “ is the causer of my care,
12 & I curse my godfathers *that* gaue me the same ! ”

this made me muse, & much desire

to know what kind of man hee shold bee ; ³

I asked him
to tell it me.

I stept to him straight, & did him require
16 his name & his secretts to shew vnto me. [page 244]

his head he cast vp, & wooful was hee,⁴

[“ My name,” quoth hee, is the causer of my care,
& makes me scornd, & left ⁵ here soe bare.”

then straight-way he turnd him & prayd him⁶ sit
dow[ne]

He said his
name was
Conscience.

20 “ & I will,” saithe he, “ declare my whole greefe.
my name is called Conscience ; ” wheratt he did
fro[wne]

he pined to repeate it, & grinded his teethe.

.⁷

When young

for while I was young & tender of yeeres,
24 I was entertained with Kings⁸ & with Peeres,

¹ This verse is redundant.—P.

² To come in below.—P.

³ Percy, in his *Reliques*, omits three of these lines, and transfers line 11 to line 18, where it must be, at least, repeated, without notice to the reader. The bishop warns his readers in his second and later editions that some corruptions in the old copy are here corrected, but not without notice to the reader, where it was necessary, by inclosing the corrections between inverted ‘commas.’ He must have therefore thought the omission

of lines 9, 10, and 12, a correction not necessary to be noticed.—F.

⁴ The verse

[“ my name ” quoth hee, “ is the causer of my care,”]

to come in here.—P.

⁵ The *f* is like an *f* in the MS.—F.

⁶ me.—P.

⁷ Though now silly wretche, I’m deny’d all relief,
Yet . . .—*Reliques*.

⁸ kinges.—*Rel.*

- “ there was none in all ¹ the court *that* liued in such fame ; he was honoured
 for with the Kings counsell he sate ² in Commission ;
 Dukes Erles & Barrons esteemed of my name ; by Dukes
 32 & how *that* I liued there needs no repetition ;
 I was euer holden in honest condition ;
 for howsoeuer the lawes went in westminster hall, and in Law Courts.
 when sentence was giuen, for me the wold ³ call.

 32 “ noe Incombes ⁴ at all the landlord wold take, Landlords obeyed him ;
 but one pore peny, *that* was their fine,
 & *that* they acknowledged to be for my sake ;
 the poore wold doe nothing without counsell mine ; the poor,
 36 I ruld the world with the right line ; the world,
 for nothing *that* was ⁵ passed betweene foe & freind,
 but Conscience was called to bee at an ⁶ end.

 “ noe Merchandize nor bargaines the Merchants wold and merchants.
 ma[ke],
 40 but I was called a wittnesse therto ; No usury was practised.
 no vse ⁷ for noe mony, nor forfeit wold take,
 but I wold controwle them if *that* they did soe ;
that makes me liue now in great woe,
 44 for then came in pride, Sathans disciple, “ Then came in Pride,
that now is ⁸ entertained with ⁹ all kind of people ;

 he brought with him 3, whose names they be these, ¹⁰ Covetousness,
that is conetousnes, Lecherye, vsury, ¹¹ beside ; Lechery, and Usury
 48 they neuer preuailed till they had ¹² wrought my who overthrew me.
 downe-fall.

¹ all omitted.—*Rel.*

² I sate. *P.*

³ they wold. *P.*

⁴ Incomes. *P.*

⁵ *that was* seem redundant.—*P.*

⁶ the —*P.*

⁷ interest —*F.*

⁸ is now.—*Rel.*

⁹ of.—*P.*

¹⁰ thus they call.—*Rel.*

¹¹ ‘& pride’ was added here in the MS., then struck out with a heavy ink stroke, the acid of which has eaten the paper away.—*F.*

¹² And omitted.—*Rel.*

soe pride was entertained, but Conscience was deride.¹

I tried
abroad,

yet st[i]ll² abroad haue³ I tryed
to haue had entertainment with some one or other,
52 but I am reiected & scorned of my brother.

then the
Court;

“then went I to the⁴ court, the gallants to winn,
but the porter kept me out of the gates.

but was told
to pack off to
St. Bartholo-
mew's.

to Bartlwew⁵ spittle, to pray for my sinnes,⁶
56 they bad⁷ me goe packe me; it was fitt for my state;
“goe, goe, threed-bare conscience, & seeke thee a
mate!”

good Lord! long preserue my King, Pirince, & Queene,
with whom euer more I haue esteemed⁸ beene!

Next I tried
London,
but they

60 “then went I to london, where once I did wonne,⁹
but they bade away with me when thé knew my
name;

sent me off
too.

“for he will vndoe vs to bye & to sell,”
they bade me goe packe me, & hye me for shame,
64 they lought at my raggs, & there had good game;
“this is old threed-bare Conscience *that* dwelt with
St. Peete[r];
but they wold not admitt me to be a chimney sweeper.

I spent my
last penny
in an awl and
patches to
cobble shoes,

68 “not one wold receiue me, the Lord god doth know.
I, hauing but one poore pennye in my pursse,
of an aule¹⁰ & some patches I did it bestow;
I thought better to¹¹ cobble shooes then to doe worsse.

¹ perhaps decried.—P.

² now ever since.—*Rel.*

³ (Only half the *u* in the MS.—F.

⁴ *the* omitted.—*Rel.*

⁵ Bartlemew.—*Rel.*

⁶ Sin.—P.

⁷ *me* omitted in 1st edⁿ, restored in

2nd.—*Rel.*

⁸ esteemed I've.—P. I *ever* esteemed have.—*Rel.*

⁹ perhaps dwell. (*idem*)—P. dwell.
Rel.

¹⁰ On an awl.—P.

¹¹ For I thought better.—*Rel.*

straight then all they ¹ Coblers they began to curse,
 72 & by statute *thé* wold proue me ² I was a rouge &
 forlor[ne,]
 & they whipt ³ me out of towne to see ⁴ where I was
 borne.

but the
cobblers
whipt me out
of the town.

“ then did I remember & call to my minde
 they court ⁵ of conscience where once I did sit,
 76 not doubting but there some favor I shold find,
 for ⁶ my name & the place agreed soe fitt.
 but therof my ⁷ purpose I fayled a whitt,
 for the ⁸ iudge did vse my name in euerye condicion ⁹
 80 for Lawyers with their qu[i]llets ¹⁰ wold get a ¹¹
 dismission.

I tried the
Court of
Conscience,

but there the
lawyers
whredled me
out.

“ then westminster hall was noe place for me ;
 good god ! ¹² how the Lawyers began to assemlee ;
 & fearfull they were lest there I shold be !
 84 the silly poore clarkes began to tremblee ; ¹³
 I showed them my cause, & did not dissemble.
 soe then they gaue me some mony my charges to beare,
 but they ¹⁴ swore me on a booke I must neuer come there.

Then I went
to Westmin-
ster Hall,
and the
lawyers

gave me
money,
but made me
swear to go.

88 “ then ¹⁵ the Merchants said, ‘ counterfeite, get thee
 away,
 dost thou remember how wee thee found ? ¹⁶
 we banisht thee the country beyond the salt sea,
 & sett thee on shore in the new-found land, ¹⁷

The mer-
chants too
rejected me,

¹ the. — P.

² (I was) defend. — P.

³ And whipp. — Rel.

⁴ seke — Rel.

⁵ The court — P.

⁶ Sith — Rel.

⁷ there of my. — P. sure of my. — Rel.

⁸ and — Rel.

⁹ For this — commission. — P.

¹⁰ The Lawyers—quilllets.—P.

¹¹ my. — Rel.

¹² lord. — Rel.

¹³ tremble.—Rel.

¹⁴ they omitted.—Rel.

¹⁵ Next. — Rel.

¹⁶ found. — Rel.

¹⁷ land.—P. land.—Rel.

92 & there thow & wee most freindly shook hands ;¹
 & we were verry² glad when thou did refuse vs,
 for when we wold reape proffitt heere³ thou wold⁴
 accuse vs.'

so I had to
 go to Gentle-
 men's houses,
 and tell them
 I had made
 their fore-
 fathers grant
 just leases.

96 " then had I noe way but for to goe an⁵
 to gentlemens houses of an ancyent name,
 declaring my greeffes; & there I made moane, [page 245]
 &⁶ how there⁷ forfathers had held me in fame,
 & in letting of their ffarmes I alwayes vsed the same.⁸

They cursed
 me.

100 thé sayd, " fye vpon thee ! we may thee cursse !
 they haue leases⁹ continue, & we fare the worsse."

At last I was
 driven to
 husband-
 men;
 but land-
 lords had left
 them no-
 thing to give
 away ;

104 "& then I was forced a begging to goe
 to husbandsmens houses ; who greeved right sore,
 who sware *that* their Landlords had plaged them so
 sore¹⁰
that they were not able to keepe open doore,
 nor nothing thé¹¹ had left to giue to the pore.

so I am in
 this wood,
 and eat hips
 and haws,

108 therefore to this wood I doe repayre
 with hepps & hawes ; *that* is my best fare.

but am
 comforted
 by Mercy,
 Pity, and
 Almsdeeds."

112 "& yet within this same desert some comfort I haue
 of Mercy, of pittye, & of almes-deeds,
 who haue vowed to company me to my¹² grane.
 wee are ill¹³ put to silence, & line vpon weeds ;¹⁴

our banishment is their vtter decay,
 the *which* the rich glutton will answer one day."

¹ hond.—P.

² right.—*Rel.*

³ *proffitt heere* omitted.—*Rel.*

⁴ woldst.—*Rel.*

⁵ on.—*Rel.*

⁶ Telling.—*Rel.*

⁷ their.—P.

⁸ And at letting their farmes how
 always I came.—*Rel.*

⁹ their leases, i. e. the indulgent Leases
 let by our forefathers.—P.

¹⁰ soe.—*Rel.*

¹¹ (the) redundant.—P.

¹² *ny* in the MS.—P.

¹³ all.—*Rel.*

¹⁴ and hence such cold housekeeping
 proceeds.—*Rel.*

'why then," I said to him, "methinkes it were best
 116 to goe to the Clergee; for dealye¹ thé preach
 eche man to loue you aboue all the rest;
 of mercy & of Pittie & of almes they doe² teach."
 "O," said he, "no matter of a pin what they doe
 preach,
 120 for their wines & their children soe hangs them vpon,
 that whosoener giues almes deeds³ they will⁴ giue
 none."

"Go to the Clergy," said I.

It'd be no good; their wives and children stop their giving.

then Laid he him downe, & turned him away,
 prayd⁵ me to goe & leane him to rest,
 124 I told him I might happen to⁶ see the day
 to haue⁷ him & his fellowes to liue with the best;
 "first," said hee, "you must banish pride, & then
 all England were blest,⁸
 &¹⁰ then those wold loue vs that now sells¹¹ their lands,¹²
 128 & then good houses euerye where wold be kept¹³ out of
 hand."

Banish Pride; then England will be blest.

ffins.

¹ daily.—P.

² doe omitted.—*Rel.*

³ deeds omitted.—*Rel.*

⁴ It ought in justice and Truth to be
 "can."—P.

⁵ And prayd. —*Rel.*

⁶ haplie might yet.—*Rel.*

⁷ For.—*Rel.*

⁸ This line written as two in the MS.
 —F.

⁹ First said he, banish Pryde: Then
 all England were blest.—P. These make
 two lines in the MS.—F.

¹⁰ For.—*Rel.*

¹¹ sell.—*Rel.*

¹² land.—P.

¹³ house-keeping wold revive.—*Rel.*

Durham feilde.¹

SAYS Shakespeare's Henry V. :

You shall read, that my grandfather
Never went with his forces into France,
But that the Scot on his unfurnisht kingdom
Came pouring, like a tide into a breach,
With ample and brim-fullness of his force ;
Galling the gleaned land with hot assays ;
Girdling, with grievous siege, castles and towns,
That England being empty of defence
Hath shook and trembled at th' ill neighbourhood.

Perhaps the best account of the expedition celebrated in the following ballad is given by Fordun. "The local accuracy," observes Surtees, "with which Fordun describes the advance of the English army from Auckland, infers that his account must have been received from eye-witnesses." Other accounts are furnished by Knighton, Walsingham, Froissart. Harl MS. No. 4843 contains an ancient monkish poem on it.

The confidence of the Scotch King is amusingly represented in the First Part of the ballad.

Oddly enough, nothing is said of the Queen, who, though probably Froissart exaggerates the part she played, yet was certainly not remote from the scene of the conflict. One would have expected her presence to have been made much of by the ballad-writer.

John Copeland, who captured the King, was a Northumbrian esquire. He was afterwards Governor of Berwick and Sheriff of Northumberland.

¹ Fought Oct. 17, 1346, at St. Nevil's Cross, near Durham. "An excellent" [*half scratched out*].—P.
Old Ballad. The Subject is the

inrode (*sic*) into England by the Scotts, & the taking of their King, while Edward 3^d was in France.—P. .

	LORDINGES , listen, & hold yo[n] ¹ still ; hearken to me a litle ; I shall you tell of the fairest battell 4 <i>that euer</i> in England beffell.	Listen, and I'll tell you of a fair battle.
8	for as it befell in Edward the 3 ^d , dayes, ² in England, where he ware the crowne, then all the cheefe chivalry of England they busked ³ & made them bowne ⁴ ;	When Ed- ward III. was king, all his knights
12	they chosen all the best archers <i>that</i> in England might be found, and all was to fight with the King of ffrence within a litle stounde. ⁵	and archers went to fight the French.
16	and when our King was ouer the water, and on the salt sea gone, then tydings into Scotland came <i>that</i> all England was gone ;	Then the Scotch bear
20	bowes and arrowes they were all forth, at home was not left a man ⁶ but shepards and Millers both, & preints with shauen crownes.	that no men are left in England but millers and preints.
24	then the King of Scotts in a study stood, as he was a man of great might ; he aware 'he wold hold his Parliament in leeue ⁷ London if he cold ryde there right.'	The Scotch king swears he'll ride to London.

¹ ? MS. . it may be *yo*. - F.

² when Edward the 3^d - P.

³ See P. 397, st. 46. (of MS.) - P.

⁴ *turne*, *paratus*, *la* - P.

⁵ *Novad*, *signum*, *momentum*, *spa-*
tium, *hora*, *tempus*. Lye. - P.

⁶ *mon*. P. See vol. i. p. 217, l. 109.
 - F.

⁷ *Leeve*, perhaps the same as *leef*,
lief, *leif*, *dear*, *beloved* - A.-S. *leifa*, *leig*.
lief. Teut. *lieb*, *charus*, *amicus*, *gratus*.
 Gloss^{es} to Glaw^{es} Douglas. P.

A squire then bespake a Squier of Scotland borne,
 & sayd, "my leege, apace,
 tells him he'll before you come to leeue London
 rue his 28 full sore youle rue *that* race !
 resolve,

 "ther beene bold yeomen in merry England,
 husbandmen stiffe & strong ;
 sharpes swords they done weare,
 32 bearen bowes & arrowes longe."

for which the King was angrye at that word,
 the King a long sword out hee drew,
 and there befor his royall companye
 kills him, 36 his owne squier hee slew.

so no one else hard hansell had the Scottes *that* day
 dares say a *that* wrought them woe enoughe,
 word. for then durst not a Scott speake a word
 40 ffor hanging att a boughe. [page 246]

James tells "the Earle of Anguish,¹ where art thou ?
 the Earl of in my coate armor² thou shalt bee,
 Angus to and thou shalt lead the forward³
 lead the van, 44 thorrow the English countrie.

 "take thy⁴ yorke," then sayd the King,
 "in stead wheras it doth stand ;
 and promises He make thy eldest sonne after thee
 him North- 48 heyre of all Northumberland.

 "the Earle⁵ of Vaughan,⁶ where be yee ?
 To the Earl in my coate armor thou shalt bee ;
 of Buchan he the high Peak & darbyshire
 promises Derbyshire ;
 52 I giue it thee to thy fee."

¹ Earl of Angus.—P.² Cote-Armour. A name applied to the tabard by Chaucer and others. Fairholt.—F.³ vaward.—P. There is a tag to the*d* in the MS.—F.⁴ thee, i. e. to thee.—P.⁵ The *l* is made over an *e*.—F.⁶ It should be Baughan, i. e. Buchan.—P.

- then came in famous Douglas,
 saies, " what shall my meede bee?
 & he lead the vaward,¹ Lord,
 54 therow the English countrye."
- " take thee Worster," sayd the King,
 " Taxburye,² Killingworth, Burton vpon trent;
 doe thou not say another day
 60 but I haue ginen thee lands and rent.
- " Sir Richard of Edenborrow, where are yee?
 a wise man in this warr!
 He gine thee Bristow & the shire
 64 the time that wee come there.
- " my Lord Nevill, where beens yee?
 you must in this warres bee!
 He gine thee Shrewsburye," saies the King,
 68 " and Conentrye faire & free.
- " my Lord of Hambleton, where art thou?
 thou art of my kin full nye;
 He gine thee lincolne & Lincolneshire,
 72 & thats enouge for thee."
- by then came in William Douglas
 as breeme³ as any bore;
 he kneeled him downe vpon his knees,
 76 in his hart he sighed sore,
- saies, " I haue serued you, my louelye loege,
 this 30 winters and 4,
 & in the Marches⁴ betweene England & Scotland
 80 I haue beens wounded & beaten sore;

to Douglas,

Worster;

to Sir
Richard of
Edinburgh,Bristol and
the shire;to Lord
Nevill,Shrewsbury
and Coven-
try;to Lord
Hambleton,Lincoln-
shire.William
Douglasreminds the
King of his
long service,

¹ i. e. the Van, the Vanguard. Fr. avant-
garde. L. P.

² ga. MS.—P.

³ breeme, serous, stous, cruel, sharp,
severe. Lye.—P.

⁴ Marches, confinia, limites, alienigenae
territorii: refer ad *Mark* Scotia.
March, a landmark, &c. Vul. Lye. ad
Jan.—P.

and asks
what his re-
ward is to be.

“for all the good service *that* I haue done,
what shall my meed bee?
& I will lead the vanward
84 thorrow the English countrye.”

“Whatever
you ask,”
answers
James.
“Then I ask
for London.”

“aske on, douglas,” said the King,
“& granted it shall bee.”
“why then, I aske litle London,” saies William
Douglas,
88 “gotten giff *that* it bee.”

James
refuses that,

the King was wrath, and rose away,
saies, “nay, *that* cannot bee!
for *that* I will keepe for my cheefe chamber,
92 gotten if it bee;

but gives
Douglas N.
Wales and
Cheshire,

“but take thee North wales & weschaster,
the cuntrye all round about,
& rewarded thou shalt bee,
96 of *that* take thou noe doubt.”

makes 100
new knights

5 score *knights* he made on a day,
& dubbd them with his hands;
rewarded them right worthilye
100 with the townes in merry England.

and gives
them the
English
towns.

They make
ready for
battle,

& when the fresh *knights* they were made,
to battell thé buske them bowne;¹
Iames Douglas went before,
104 & he thought to haue wonnerd him shoone.

but the
English
Commons
meet them,
and let none
escape;

but thé were mett in a morning of May
with the comminaltye of litle England;
but there scaped neuer a man away
108 through the might of christes hand,

¹ See Page 397, st. 46 [of MS.].—P.

- but all onely James Douglas ;
 in Durham in the feild
 an arrow stroke him in the thye.
 112 fast flinge[s he] towards the King.
- the King looked toward litle Durham,
 saies, "all things is not well !
 for James Dowglas beares an arrow in his thye,
 116 the head of it is of steele.
- "how now James ?" then said the King,
 "how now, how may this bee ?
 & where beene all thy merrymen
 120 That thou tooke hence with thee ?" [page 247]
- "but cease, my King," saies James ¹ Douglas,
 "aline is not left a man !"
 "now by my faith," saies the King of scottes,
 124 "that gate ² was euill gone ;
- "but Ile reuenge thy quarrell well,
 & of that thou may be faine ;
 for one Scott will beate 5 Englishmen
 128 if thé meeten them on the plaine."
- "now hold your tounge," saies James Douglas,
 "for in faith that is not soe ;
 for one English man is worth 5 Scotts
 132 when they meeten together thoe ;
- "for they are as Fgar men to fight
 as a faulcon vpon a pray.
 alas ! if euer thé winne the vanward,
 136 there scapes noe man away."
- except
Douglas,

who is
wounded
and sees to
the King.

James asks
where his
men are.

All dead.
James vows

revenge ;

one Scott is a
match for
five English.

"No," says
Douglas,

"one Eng-
lishman is
worth five
Scotts ;

they let no
one escape
alive."

¹ James in the MS.—F.² gate, is a way : march or walk. Lye.—P.

“ O peace thy talking,” said the *King*,
 “ they bee but English knaues,
 but shepards & Millers both,
 140 & [mass] preists with their staues.”

A herald
reports to
James

the *King* sent forth one of his heralds of armes
 to vew the Englishmen.

that he has
ten to the
English one,

144 “ be of good cheere,” the herald said,
 “ for against one wee bee ten.”

“ who leades those Ladds ? ” said the *King* of Scottes,
 “ thou herald, tell thou mee.”

whom the
Bishop of
Durham
leada.

148 the herald said, “ the Bishopp of Durham
 is captaine of *that* companye ;

for the Bishopp hath spred the *Kings* banner
 & to battell he buskes him bowne.”

152 “ I sweare by St. Andrewes bones,” saies the *King*,
 “ Ile rapp *that* preist on the crowne ! ”

[Part II.]

James sees

Lord Percy
in the field.

156 { The *King* looked towards litle Durham,
 & *that* hee well beheld,
that the Earle Percy was well armed,
 with his battell axe entred the feild.

2^d part { the *King* looket againe towards litle Durham,
 4 ancyents there see hee ;
 there were to standards, 6 in a valley,
 160 he cold not see them with his eye.

There, too,
are Lords
York, Car-
lisle,
and two Fitz-
williams.

164 My Lord of yorke was one of them,
 my lord of Carlile was the other ;
 & my Lord ffluwilliams,
 the one came with the other.

	the Bishopp of Durham commanded his men, & shortlye he them bade, ' that neuer a man shold goe to the feild to fight 168 till he had serued his god.'	The Bishop orders all his men to hear masse.
	500 preists said masse <i>that</i> day in durham in the feild ; & afterwards, as I hard say, 172 they bare both speare & sheeld.	500 priests say it, and then take arme,
	the Bishopp of Durham ' orders himselfe to fight with his battell axe in his hand ; he said, " this day now I will fight 176 as long as I can stand ! "	as does the Bishop.
	" & soe will I," sayd my Lord of Carlile, " in this faire morning gay ; " " & soe will I," said my Lord ffuwilliams, 180 " for Mary, <i>that</i> myld may."	Carlisle and the Fitzwilliams swear to fight.
	our English archers bent their bowes shortlye and anon, they shott ouer the Scottish Oast 184 & scantlye ' toucht a man.	Our archers first shoot (as) high.
	" hold downe your hands," sayd the Bishopp of Durham, " my archers good & true." the 2 ^d shoote <i>that</i> the shott, 188 full sore the Scottes itt rue.	The Bishop orders them to shoot low. They do, and punish the Scots,
	the Bishopp of Durham spoke on hye <i>that</i> both partyes might heare, " be of good cheere, my merrymen all, 192 the Scotts flyen, & changen there cheere ! "	

1 Durham in MS. - F.

¹ scantily, scarcely.—P.

but as thé saidden, soe thé didden,
 they fell on heapes hye ;
 our Englishmen laid on with their bowes
 196 as fast as they might dree.

King James

¹ The King of Scotts in a studye stood
 amohgst his companye,

[page 248]

is shot
through the
nose,

200 an arrow stoke him thorow the nose
 & thorow his armorye.

gets off his
horse,

the King went to a marsh side
 & light beside his steede,
 he leaned him downe on his sword hilts
 204 to let his nose bleede.

and is sum-
moned to
yield by an
English
yeoman,
Copland.

there followed him a yeaman of merry England,
 his name was Iohn of Coplande :
 “yeeld thee Traytor !” saies Coplande then,
 208 “thy liffe lyes in my hand.”

James
refuses,

“how shold I yeeld me ?” sayes the King,
 “& thou art noe gentleman.”
 “noe, by my troth,” sayes Copland there,
 212 “I am but a poore yeaman ;

“what art thou better then I, Sir King ?
 tell me if that thou can !
 what art thou better then I, Sir King,
 216 now we be but man to man ?”

and strikes
at Copland,

the King smote angerly at Copland then,
 angerly in that stonde ² ;

who floors
him,

& then Copland was a bold yeaman,
 220 & bore the King to the ground.

¹ Here a short leaf is inserted in the MS. in a more modern hand, Percy's late upright hand, differing from the early

small one of most of his notes.—F.
² stound.—? Percy.

- he sett the King upon a Palfrey,
 himselfe upon a steede,
 he tooke him by the bridle rayne,
 224 towards London he can him Lead.
- & when to London *that* he came,
 the King from ffance was new come home,
 & there unto the King of Scottes
 228 he sayd these words anon,
- "how like you my shepards & my millers,
 my priests with shaven crownes?"
 "by my fayth, they are the sorest fighting men
 232 *that* ever I mett on the ground;
- "there was never a ycaman in merry England
 but he was worth a Scottish knight!"
 "I, by my troth," said King Edward, & laughe,
 236 "for you fought all against the right."
- but now the Prince of merry England
 worthilye under his Sheelde
 hath taken the King of ffance
 240 at Poytiers in the ffeelde.
- the Prince did present his father with *that* food,¹
 the louely King off ffance,
 & fforward of his Iourney he is gone:
 244 god send us all good chance!
- "you are welcome, brothers!" sayd the King of Scotts,
 to the King of ffance,
 "for I am come hither to soone;
 Christ leue *that* I had taken my way
 248 unto the court of Roome!"

puts him on
a palfrey.

and takes
him to
London.

where King
Edward is.

Edward asks
James how
he likes his
millers and
priests.
"They're
the hardest
fighters I
ever met."

The King of
France is
also taken
at Poytiers

by the Black
Prince.

and both he
and the
Scotch King

¹ food or foralry. P Person - see note 1, p. 456, vol. i - F

wish they
had kept out
of England.

"& soe wold I," said the King of ffance,
"when I came over the streame,
that I had taken my Iourney
252 unto Ierusalem."

Durham
Field,

Thus ends the battell of ffaire Durham
in one morning of may,

[page 249]

Cressy, and
Poictiers,
all won in a
month!

256 the battell of Cressey, & *the* battle of Potyers,
All within one monthes day.

Then was
wealth
and mirth in
England,

then was welthe & welfare in mery England,
Solaces, game, & glee,
& every man loved other well,

and the King 260
loved the
yeomanry!

& the King loved good yeomanrye.

but God *that* made the grasse to growe,
& leaves on greenwoode tree,

God save
him, and the
yeomen too!

264 now save & keepe our noble King,
& maintaine good yeomanry!

ffinis.¹

¹ (*Pencil note in Percy's late hand.*)
"This & 2 following Leaves being unfortunately torn out, in sending the subsequent piece [King Estmere] to the Press, the conclusion of the preceding ballad has been carefully transcribed; and indeed the fragments of the other Leaves ought to have been so."

The loss of *King Estmere* is much to be lamented. It was, perhaps, the best ballad in the Manuscript. Percy says in the 2nd edition of the *Reliques*, p. 59, that "this old Romantic Legend . . is given from two copies, one of them in the Editor's folio MS."; but we have not been able to find the second copy. It is not in the other small MS. in the possession of the Bishop's descendants now. It is evident at a glance that Percy must have touched up the ballad somewhat, as in line 4 he has *y-were*, were, for a perfect tense, *y* being the past participle prefix; and a comparison of the first three editions with the 4th shows what liberties he took with the (supposed) text of the MS. Some of these will be pointed out in a note at the end of this volume. The thing to be noticed here is

that Percy must have deliberately and unnecessarily torn three leaves out of his MS. when preparing his 4th edition for the Press, and after he had learnt—to use his own words—to *reverence* the MS. These leaves were in the MS. till that time, as he says in his note on "Ver. 253. Some liberties have been taken in the following stanzas; but wherever this edition differs from the preceding, it hath been brought nearer to the folio MS." As the differences of the fourth from the other editions, after v. 253, are only in spelling *louked*, 'looked,' and *wyfe*, 'wiffe,' we must take the latter part of Percy's sentence to apply to the whole ballad. By tearing out the leaves he has prevented us from knowing the extent of his large changes, and has sacrificed not only the original of the whole of *King Estmere* but also the first 22 (or more or less) stanzas of *Guy and Phillis*, of which his version is printed in the *Reliques* iii. 143, 4th ed., and Child's *Ballads* i. 63–8. I calculate Percy's additions to *Estmere* and the lost part of *Guy* at 40 lines.—F.

Guy & Phyllis.¹

[A fragment.]

[See the General Introduction to all the Guy Poems in *Guy & Colebrande* below.
The beginning of this Poem was on one of the torn-out leaves of the MS.]

	In winsor florrest I did slay	[page 254]	In Windsor Forest I
	a bore of passing might & strenght, ²		slew a big
	whose like in England neuer was		boar,
4	for hugnasse, both for breadth & lenght ;		
	some of his bones in warwicke yett		some of
	within the Castle there doth ³ Lye ;		whose bones
	one of his sheeld bones to this day		are in
8	doth hang in the Citye of Couentrye.		Warwick
	on Dunsmore heath I alsoe slewe		Castle
	a mightye wyld & cruell beast		and
	cald the Duncow of Dunsmore heath,		Coventry.
12	which many people had opprest ;		On Dun-
	some of her bones in warwicke yett		more Heath
	there for a monument doth ⁴ lye,		I slew
	which vnto euery lookers veue		the Dun
16	as wonderous strange they may espye.		Cow,
	another dragon in this Land		
	in fight I alsoe did destroye,		whose bones
	who did bothe men & beasts opresse,		are also in
20	& all the countrie sore anoye ;		Warwick.
	& then to warwicke came againe		
	like Pilgrim poore, & was not knowen ;		Another
	& there I liued a Hermitta life		Dragon I
24	a mile & more out of the towne ;		also slew,
			and then
			came back
			to Warwick.
			and liued a
			hermit a life.

¹ Title written in by P. -F. ² strenght in the MS.—F. ³ do.—P. ⁴ do.—P.

in a cave
cut out of a
rock,

where with my hands I hewed a house
out of a craggy rocke of stone,
& lined like a palmer poore

28 within the caue my selfe alone ;

and
begged my
food at my
own castle
of my wife.

& daylye came to begg my foode
of Phillis att my castle gate,
not knowing ¹ to my loued wiffe,

32 who daylye moned for her mate ;

At last I fell
sick,

till att the last I fell soe sicke,

yea, sicke soe sore *that* I must dye.

sent her a
ring,

I sent to her a ring of gold

36 by *which* shee knew me presentlye ;

and she
closed my
dying eyes.

then shee, repairing to the graue,

befor *that* I gaue vp the ghost

shee closed vp my dying eyes,

40 my Phillis faire, whom I loued most.

I died like a
palmer to
save my soul.

thus dreadfull death did me arrest,

to bring my corpes vnto the graue ;

& like a palmer dyed I,

44 wherby I sought my soule to saue.

You may
see my
statue now.

tho now it be consumed to mold,

my body *that* endured this toyle,

my stature ingrauen in Mold

48 this present time you may behold.

ffins.

¹ knowen.—P.

John : a : Side.

THE rescue of a prisoner was a favourite subject with the ballad-makers of the Borders. There are in the *Minstrelsy of the Scottish Border* "no fewer than three poems on the rescue of prisoners, the incidents in which nearly resemble each other; though the poetical description is so different, that the editor did not think himself at liberty to reject any one of them as borrowed from the others." These three are *Jock o' the Side*, *Kinmont Willie*, and *Archie of Ca'field*. The ballad here given for the first time is vitally the same with *Jock o' the Side*. The persons are partly changed: Sybill o' the Side takes the place of the Lady Downie of Scott's ballad; Much the Miller's Son answers to the Laird's Saft Wat, though as the Folio copy does not give the names of the five who accompany Hobbie Noble, the Laird's Saft Wat may have been one of them. The incidents differ very slightly: as at Culerton or Cholerford, when the rescuers are going and returning, at Newcastle where the *Minstrelsy* copy brings in "a proud porter" to be duly made away with, at the gaol on the way back, where that same copy gives the lanter with which the heavy-ironed prisoner was assailed by his triumphant friends. The Folio copy is a very fresh, valuable version of the ballad.

"The reality of this story," says Scott, "rests solely upon the foundation of tradition. Jock o' the Side seems to have been nephew to the laird of Margertoun, cousin to the Laird's Jock, one of his deliverers, and probably brother to Chrystie of the Syde, mentioned in the list of border clans, 1597. Like the Laird's Jock, he is also commemorated by Sir Richard Maitland:

He is weil kend, Johne of the Syde.
 A greater theif did never ryde;
 He never tyris
 For to brek byris,
 Our muir and myris
 Ouir gude and guide.

- John-a-Side
is taken,
and sent
prisoner to
Newcastle. 4
- PEETER a whifeild ¹ he hath slaine ;
 & Iohn a side, he is tane ;
 & Iohn is bound both hand & foote,
 & to the New-castle he is gone.
- His mother,
Sybill,
tells Lord
Mangerton. 8
- but Tydinges came to the Sybill o the side,
 by the water side as shee rann ;
 shee tooke her kirtle by the hem,
 & fast shee runn to Mangerton.
-
- the Lord was sett downe at his meate ;
 when these tydings shee did him tell,
 neuer a Morsell might he eate.
- Lords and
Ladies
lament, 12
- but lords thé wrunge their fingars white,
 Ladyes did pull themselves by the haire,
 crying "alas and weladay !
 for Iohn o the side wee shall neuer see more ² !
- and vow to
lose their all 16
- "but weele goe sell our droues of Kine,
 & after them our oxen sell,
 & after them our troopes of sheepe,
 but wee will loose him out of the New-castell."
- or rescue
him.
- Hobby Noble 20
- offers to
fetch John,
with five
men.
- but then bespake him hobby noble,
 & spoke these words wonderous hye,
 sayes "giue me 5 men to my selfe,
 & Ile feitch Iohn o the side to thee."

[page 255]

¹ ? The first *i* may be *t*.—F.² maire.—P.

- 24 "yea, thoust haue 5, hobby noble,
of the best *that* are in this countrie!
He giue thee 5000, hobby Noble,
that walke in Tyuidale trulye." The lord
promises
5000 ;
- 28 "nay, He haue but 5," saies hobby Noble,
" *that* shall walke away with mee ;
wee will ryde like noe men of warr ;
but like poore badgers¹ wee wilbe." but Hobby
will only
have five,

dressed as
corn-dealers.
- 32 they stuffet vp all their baggs with straw,
& their steeds barefoot must bee ;
"come on my bretheren," sayes hobby noble,
"come on your wayes, & goe with mee." They start,
- 36 & when they came to Culerton² ford,
the water was vp, they cold it not goe ;
& then they were ware of a good old man,
how his boy & hee were at the plowe. but at
Culerton
Ford find the
water up.
- 40 "but stand you still," sayes hobby noble,
"stand you still heere at this shore,
& I will ryde to yonder old man,
& we were the gate³ it Lyes ore. Hobby

asks an old
man
- 44 "but christ you saue, father," Quoth hee,
"crist both you saue and see !
where is the way ouer this flord ?
for christa sake tell itt mee !" the way
over the
ford.
- 48 "but I haue dwelled heere 3 score yeere,
we haue I done 3 score and 3 ;
I neuer sawe man nor horsse goe ore
except itt were a horse of 3.⁴" The old man
won't tell it.

¹ corn-dealers, Fr. *Madiers*. F.² Challeston, probably. — P.³ way, ford. — F.⁴ Tree, qu. — P.

Hobby tells
him to go to
the devil,

- 52 “but fare thou well, thou good old man ;
the devill in hell I leave with thee!
noe better comfort heere this night
thow giues my bretheren heere & me.”

and rides
back to his
mates.

They find
the ford,

- 56 but when he came to his brether againe,
& told this tydings full of woe,
& then they found a well good gate
they might ryde ore by 2 and 2.

and get safe
over,

- 60 and when they were come ouer the fforde,
all safe gotten att the last,
“thankes be to god !” sayes hobby nobble,
“the worst of our perill is past.”

cut down a
tree, 33 ft.
high,

- 64 & then they came into HOWBRAME wood,
& there then they found a tree,
& cutt itt downe then by the roote ;
the lenght was 30 ffoote and 3.

carry it to
John-a-
Side's prison,

- 68 & 4 of them did take the planke
as light as it had beene a fflee,
& carryed itt to the Newcastle
where as Iohn a side did lye ;

and climb up
to where he
is lamenting
his fate.

- 72 & some did climbe vp by the walls,
& some did climbe vp by ¹ the tree,
vntill they came vpp to the top of the castle
where Iohn made his moane trulye :

He takes
leave of his
mother
Sybill,

- 76 he sayd, “god be with thee, Sybill o the side !
my owne mother thou art,” Quoth hee,
“if thou knew this knight ² I were here,
a woe woman then woldest thou bee !

¹ MS. eaten through by ink.—F.

² night.—P.

- 80 " & fare you well, Lord Mangerton !
 & ever I say ' god be with thee ! '
 for if you knew this night I were heere,
 you wold sell your land for to loose mee.
- 84 " & fare thou well, Much Millers sonne !
 Much Millars sonne, I say ;
 thou has beene better att Merke midnight
 then ever thou was att noone o the day.
- 88 " & fare thou well, my good Lord Clough !
 thou art thy ffathers sonne & heire ;
 thou neuer saw him ¹ in all thy life,
 but with him durst thou breake a speare.
- 92 " wee are brothers childer 9: or :10:
 & sisters children 10: or :11:
 we neuer come to the feild to fight,
 but the worst of us was counted a man."
- 96 but then bespake him hobynoble,
 & spake these words vnto him,
 saies, " sleepest thou, wakest thou, Iohn o the side,
 or art thou this castle within ? "
- 100 " But who is there," Quoth Iohn oth side, (page 256)
 " that knowes my name soe right & free ? "
 " I am a bastard brother of thine ;
 this night I am comen for to loose thee."
- 104 " now nay, now nay," quoth Iohn othe side ;
 " itt feares me soe *that* will not bee ;
 for a peeke of gold & silver," Iohn sayd,
 " infaiith this night will not loose mee."

of Lord
Mangerton,

of Much the
Miller's son,

and of Lord
Clough ;

and boasts
that his
family is
large and
brave.

Hobby tells
him

he has come
to free him.

I fear not,
says John ;

but Hobby 108 but then bespake him hobby Noble,
 & till his brother thus sayd hee,
 says his four can do it. sayes, "4 shall take this matter in hand,
 and 2 shall tent our geldings ffree."

112 for 4 did breake one dore without,
 then Iohn brake 5 himsell;
 They break five doors, and get to the iron one. but when they came to the Iron dore,
 it smote 12 vpon the bell.

Much fears they'll be taken. 116 "itt ffeares me sore," sayd much the Miller,
 "that heere taken wee all shalbee."
 "but goe away, bretheren," sayd Iohn a side,
 "for euer, alas! this will not bee."

Hobby reproaches him, 120 "but fbye vpon thee!" sayd Hobby Noble;
 "Much the Miller! fye vpon thee!"
 "it sore feares me," said Hobby Noble,
 "man *that* thou wilt neuer bee."

124 but then he had fflanders files 2 or 3,
 & hee fyled downe *that* Iron dore,
 files down the iron door, takes John out, & tooke Iohn out of the New-castle,
 & sayd "looke thou neuer come heere more!"

128 when he had him fforth of the Newcastle,
 "away with me, Iohn, thou shalt ryde."
 but euer alas! itt cold not bee;
 for Iohn cold neither sitt nor stryde.

wraps sheets round his chains, 132 but then he had sheets 2 or 3,
 and sets him on a horse & bound Iohns boults fast to his ffeete,
 & sett him on a well good steede,
 himselfe on another by him seete.

- 136 then Hobby Noble smiled & lounge,¹
 & spoke these words in mickle pryde,
 "thou sitts soe finely on thy geldinge
that, Iohn, thou rydes like a bryde."
 woman-fashion.
- 140 & when they came thorow HOWBRAME towne,
 Iohns horsse there stumbled at a stone ;²
 "out & alas !" cryed much the Miller,
 "Iohn, thoule make vs all be tane."
 Much the Miller gets into another fright,
- 144 "but fye vpon thee !" saies Hobby Noble,
 "much the Millar, fye on thee !
 I know full well," sayes Hobby Noble,
 "man *that* thou wilt neuer bee !"
 and is again snubbed by Hobby Noble,
- 148 & when the came into HOWBRAME wood,
 he had fflanders files 2 or 3
 to file Iohns bolts beside his ffeete,
that hee might ryde more easilye.
 who files off John's chains from his feet.
- 152 sayes Iohn, "Now leape ouer a steede,"
 & Iohn then hee lope ouer 5 :
 "I know well," sayes Hobby Noble,
 "Iohn, thy ffellow is not alieue !"
 Thereupon John leaps over five horses,
- 156 then he brought him home to Mangerton ;
 the Lord then he was att his meate ;
 but when Iohn o the side he there did see,
 for faine hee cold noe more cate ;
 and goes home to Lord Mangerton.
- 160 he sayes "blest be thou, Hobby Noble,
that euer thou wast man borne !
 thou hast feitched vs home good Iohn oth side
that was now cleane ffrom vs gone !"
 Lard Mangerton blesses Hobby Noble.

ffins.

¹ lounge. — P.² stane. — P.

Risinge in the Northe: ¹

THIS ballad is printed in the *Reliques*, “from two MS. copies, one of them in the Editor’s folio collection. They contained (*sic*) considerable variable variations, out of which such readings were chosen as seemed most poetical and consonant to history.”

On the subject see the Introduction to “The Earle of Westmorelande,” vol. i. p. 292, and Percy’s, in the *Reliques*, i. 248, 1st ed.

Listen,		LISTEN, liuely lordings all, & all <i>that</i> beene this place within ! if youle giue eare vnto my songe,
and I’ll tell all about it.	4	I will tell you how this geere did begin.

The Earl of Westmore- land		It was the good Erle of westmorlande, a noble Erle was called hee ; & he wrought treason against the crowne ;
turned traitor ;	8	alas, itt was the more pittye !

so did the Earl of North- umberland.		& soe itt was the Erle of Northumberland, another good Noble Erle was hee, they tooke both vpon one part,
	12	against their crowne they wolden bee.

[page 257]

Earl Percy tells his wife		Earle Pearcy is into his garden gone, & after walkes his awne ladye ² ; “ I heare a bird sing in my eare
he must fight or flee.	16	that I must either ffight or flee.”

¹ A.D. 1569. N.B.—To correct this by my other copy, which seems more modern.—P. The other copy in many

parts preferable to this.—Pencil note.

² This lady was Anne, daughter of Henry Somerset, E. of Worcester.—*Rel.*

- “ god fforbidd,” shee sayd, “ good my lord,
that euer soe that it shalbee !
 but goe to London to the court,
 20 & faire fall truth & honestye ! ”
- “ but nay, now nay, my Ladye gay,
that euer it shold soe bee ;
 my treason is knowen well enoughe ;
 24 att the court I must not bee.”
- “ but goe to the Court ! yet, good my Lord,
 take men enowe with thee ;
 if any man will doe you wronge,
 28 your warrant they ¹ may bee.”
- “ but Nay, Now Nay, my Lady gay,
 for soe itt must not bee ;
 If I goe to the court, Ladye,
 32 death will strike me, & I must dye.”
- “ but goe to the Court ! yett, [good] my Lord,
 I my-selfe will ryde with thee ;
 if any man will doe you wronge,
 36 your borrow ² I shalbee.”
- “ but Nay, Now nay, my Lady gay,
 for soe it must not bee ;
 for if I goe to the Court, Ladye,
 40 thou must me neuer see.
- “ but come hither, thou litle footpage,
 come thou hither vnto mee,
 for thou shalt goe a Message to Master Norton
 44 in all the hast *that euer* may bee :

She advises
him to go to
court.

He says

his treason
is too well
known.

She again
says, “ Go to
court with
plenty of
men.”

No, says the
Earl,

it would be
certain
death.

She offers to
go with him.

He still
refuses,

but sends a
page to ask

Master
Norton

¹ altered from *them*.— F. *they*.— P. *file junior, radimonium, pignus*. A.-S.
² *Borrow, hurrow, horge*. Spenser, *van*. *large, hurrow, Lye*.— P.

CHAPTER I THE HISTORY

THE HISTORY OF THE

THE HISTORY OF THE

THE HISTORY OF THE

THE HISTORY OF THE

THE HISTORY OF THE

THE HISTORY OF THE

THE HISTORY OF THE

THE HISTORY OF THE

THE HISTORY OF THE

THE HISTORY OF THE

THE HISTORY OF THE

THE HISTORY OF THE

THE HISTORY OF THE

THE HISTORY OF THE

THE HISTORY OF THE

THE HISTORY OF THE

THE HISTORY OF THE

THE HISTORY OF THE

THE HISTORY OF THE

THE HISTORY OF THE

THE HISTORY OF THE

THE HISTORY OF THE

THE HISTORY OF THE

THE HISTORY OF THE

THE HISTORY OF THE

THE HISTORY OF THE

THE HISTORY OF THE

THE HISTORY OF THE

THE HISTORY OF THE
THE HISTORY OF THE

“ but come you hither, my 9 good sonnes,
in mens estate I thinke you bee ;
how many of you, my children deare,
76 on my part *that* wilbe ? ”

and asks his
own nine
sons

who will be
on his side.

but 8.th of them did answer soone,
& spake full hastilye,
sayes “ we wilbe on your part, ffather,
80 till the day *that* we doe dye.”

Eight vow

to be with
him to the
death.

“ but god amercy, my children deare,
& euer I say godamercy !
& yett my blessing you shall haue,
84 whether-soeuer I line or dye. [page 258]

“ but what sayst thou, thou ffancis Nortton,
mine eldest sonne & mine heyre trulye ?
some good counsell, ffancis Nortton,
88 this day thou giue to me.”

He asks his
eldest son,
Francis,
for advice ;

“ but I will giue you counsell, ffather,
if you will take counsell att mee ;
for if you wold take my counsell, father,
92 against the crowne you shold not bee.”

and he
answers

Don't go
against the
Crown.

“ but fflye vpon thee, ffancis Nortton !
I say fflye vpon thee !
when thou was younge & tender of age
96 I made full much of thee.”

Norton
reproaches
his son
Francis,

“ but your head is white, ffather,” he sayes,
“ & your beard is wonderous gray ;
itt were shame ffor your countrie
100 if you shold rise & flee away.”

and calls him
a coward.

“but fflye vpon thee, thou coward ffrancis !
thou neuer tookest *that* of mee !
when thou was younge & tender of age
104 I made too much of thee.”

Francis
offers to go
unarmed,
but invokes
death on
traitors.

“but I will goe with you, father,” Quoth hee ;
“like a Naked man will I bee ;
he *that* strikes the first stroake against the
crowne,
108 an ill death may hee dye !”

Norton and
his men join
the Earls

but then rose vpp Master Nortton *that* Esquier,
with him a ffull great companye ;
& then the Erles they comen downe
112 to ryde in his companye.

at Wether-
by ;

they have
13,000 men.

att whethersbye thé mustered their men
vpon a ffull fayre day ;
13000 there were seene
116 to stand in battel ray.¹

Westmore-
land's.
standard is
the Dun
Bull,

the Erle of westmoreland, he had in his ancyent²
the DUME bull in sight most hye,
& 3 doggs with golden collers
120 were sett out royallye.

Northum-
berland's the
half-moon.

the Erle of Northumberland, he had in his
ancyent³
the halfe moone in sight soe hye,
as the Lord was crucifyed on the crosse,
124 & sett forthe pleasantlye.

¹ array.—P.

² Ensign, standard. See vol. i. p. 304, for the Dun Bull. That of Nevill (Chevet, Co. York ; granted 1513), is “A greyhound's head erased or, charged on the neck with a label of three points, vert, between as many pellets, one and two.” The crest of Nevill (Ireland), is a greyhound's head, erased argent, collared

gules, charged with a harp or. *Burke's Armorie*.—F.

³ Burke gives the Percy (Duke of Northumberland) badge as ‘A crescent argent within the horns, per pale, sable and gules, charged with a double manacle, fesseways or.’ *Armorie*, 1847.—F.

& after them did rise good Sir George Bowes,¹
 after them a spoyle to make ;
 the Erles returned backe againe,
 128 thought euer *that* Knight to take.

Sir G. Bowes
 rises behind
 them.

They turn
 back,

this Barron did take a Castle then,
 was made of lime & stone ;
 the vttermost walls were ese to be woon ;
 132 the Erles haue woon them anon ;

take the
 outer walls
 of his castle

but tho they woone the vttermost walls
 quickly and anon,
 the innermost² walles the cold not winn,
 136 the were made of a rocke of stone.

but can't
 win the
 inner.

but newes itt came to leene London
 in all they speede *that* euer might bee ;
 & word it came to our royall Queene
 140 of all the rebells in the North countrie.

News of the
 rebellion
 reaches
 London.

shee turned her grace then once about,
 & like a royall Queene shee sware,³
 sayes, " I will ordaine them such a breake-fast
 144 as was not in the North this 1000 yeere!"

Elizabeth
 swears she'll
 give the
 rebels a
 breakfast
 they won't
 stomach.

shee caused 30000 men to be made
 with horase and harneis all quicklye ;
 & shee caused 30000 men to be made
 149 to take the rebells in the North countrie.

She sends
 30,000 men

against them

they tooke with them the false Erle of Warwicke,
 soe did they many⁴ another man ;
 vntill they came to yorke Castle,
 152 I-wis they neuer stinted nor blan.

under Lord
 Warwick.

They march
 to York,

¹ Bowes. P.

² innermost in MS. P.

³ This is quite in character. her ma-
 jesty would sometimes swear at her

nobles, as well as loze their care. *Re-
 liques*, i 255. -F.

⁴ Only half the n in the MS.—F.

but West-
moreland,

“spread thy ancyent, Erle of Westmoreland!

The halfe moone ffaine wold wee see!”

[page 259]

Northum-
berland,

156

but the halfe moone is fled & gone,

& the Dun bull vanished awaye;

& ffancis Nortton & his 8 sonnes

are fled away most cowardlye.

and Norton
flee like
cowards.

Ladds with mony are counted men,

160

men without mony are counted none;

but hold your tounge! why say you soe?

men wilbe men when mony is gone.

ffins.

Northumberland : Betrayd by : Bowglas.¹

[A Sequel to the preceding.—P.]

THIS ballad is printed in the *Reliques* (from another copy) and elsewhere.

After the dispersion of their forces, the rebel Earls of Westmoreland and Northumberland sought refuge in the Borders. See Introduction to *Earl of Westmoreland*, vol. i. p. 294. Neville found his trust in the Borderers justified; but Percy was betrayed to the Regent Moray by Hector Graham (not Armstrong, as the ballad, v. 209, calls him) of Harlaw; whose name became thenceforward infamous, to take *Hector's cloak* becoming a proverbial phrase for betraying a friend. Moray's successor, the Earl of Morton, who during his exile in England has received many kindnesses from Northumberland, "sold his unhappy prisoner to Elizabeth," in May 1572. He delivered him up to Lord Hunsdon, governor of Berwick, who sent him to York, where he was executed.

The extradition of the refugee by Morton gave as deep dissatisfaction to the country at large as his betrayal by Hector of Harlaw did to the Borderers. Many furious ballads made their appearance, as — 'Ane exclamation maid in England upone the delyverance of the Erle of Northumberland furth of Lochlevin, quho immediattlie thairefter was execute in Yorke, 1572'—the answer to the English ballad, 'Ane schort inveccyde maid aganis the delyverance of the Erle of Northumberland.' The present

¹ Whose Sister being an enchantress would have saved him, from her Brother's treachery.—P.

This song seems unfinished.—P.

N.B. My other Copy is more correct than this, and contains much which is

omitted here.—P.

N.B. The other Copy begins with lines the same as that in pag. 112. [*Earle of Westmorelande* i. 300.] The minstrels often made such Changes.—Pencil note.

ballad so far recognises this national feeling as to introduce a Scotch woman using her utmost endeavours to preserve the Earl, from the snare laid for him. Mary Douglas¹ represents Scotia. But the Earl will not listen. He goes away with her brother, his keeper, to be the victim of a second betrayal, which was finally to conduct him to the scaffold at York.

I'll tell you
how Douglas
betrayed
banished
Percy.

NOW list & lithe you gentlemen,
& Ist tell you the veretye,
how they haue delt with a banished man,
4 drinen out of his countrie.

when as hee came on Scottish ground,
as woe & wonder be them amonge,
ffull much was there traitorye
8 thé wrought the Erle of Northumberland.

At supper

they ask
Percy

when they were att the supper sett,
beffore many goodly gentlemen
thé fell a flouting & Mocking both,
12 & said to the Erle of Northumberland,

to go to a
shooting in
Scotland.

“ what makes you be soe sad, my Lord,
& in your mind soe sorrowffullye ?
in the North of Scotland to-morrow theres a shooting,
16 & thither thoust goe, my Lord Percy.

“ the buttes are sett, & the shooting is made,
& there is like to be great royaltye,
& I am sworne into my bill
20 thither to bring my Lord Pearcy.”

¹ “ The interposal of the WITCH-LADY [l. 26, here] is probably his [the northern bard's] own invention: yet even this hath some countenance from history; for about 25 years before, the Lady Jane Douglas, Lady Glamis, sister of the earl

of Angus and nearly related to Douglas of Loughleven, had suffered death for the pretended crime of witchcraft; who, it is presumed, is the lady alluded to in verse” [101 here]. *Reliques*, i. 258.—F.

"He giue thee my Land,¹ Douglas," he sayes,
 & be the faith in my bodye,
 if *that* thou wilt ryde to the worlds end,
 24 He ryde in thy companye."

Percy pro-
mises to go
with
Douglas.

& then bespake the good Ladye,—
 Marry a Douglas was her name,—
 "you shall byde here, good English Lorl;
 28 my brother is a traiterous man;

Mary
Douglas

warns Percy
that her
brother is a
traitor

"he is a traitor stout & stronge,
 as Ist² tell you the veretye,
 for he hath tane liuerance of the Erle,³
 32 & into England he will liuor thee."

and will give
him up to
the English.

"now hold thy tounge, thou goodlye Ladye,
 & let all this talking bee;
 for all the gold *thats* in Long Leuen,⁴
 36 william wold not Liuor mee!

Percy de-
clares that
he trusts
Douglas.

"it wold breake truce betweene England & Scotland,
 & freinds againe they wold neuer bee
 if he shold liuor a bani[s]ht⁵ Erle
 40 was driuen out of his owne countrye."

"hold your tounge, my Lord," shee sayes,
 "there is much falsehood them amonge;
 when you are dead, then they are done,
 44 soone they will part them freinds againe.

Mary
Douglas

"if you will giue me any trust, my Lord,
 He tell you how you best may bee;
 youst lett my brother ryde his wayes.
 48 & tell those English Lords trulye

advises
Percy

to let
Douglas go
alone,

¹ hand. *Reliques*. F.

² I. d. See note 4, p. 20, vol. i. — F.

³ may "of the earl of Morton:" James
Douglas, Earl of Morton, elected regent

of Scotland, Nov. 24, 1572. *Rel.* vol. i.
p. 251, 250. — F.

⁴ Lough Leven. — P.

⁵ banisht. P.

and then
she'll see
him safe

52 “ how *that* you cannot with them ryde
because you are in an Ile of the sea¹ ;
then, ere my Brother come againe,
to Edenborrow castle² Ile carry thee,

into Lord
Hume's
hands.

56 “ Ile liuor you vnto the Lord HUME,
& you know a trew Scothe Lord is hee,
for he hath lost both Land & goods
in ayding of your good bodye.”

Percy says
that no
friend shall
suffer for
him again,

60 “ marry ! I am woe ! woman,” he sayes,
“ *that* any freind fares worse for mee ;
for where one saith ‘ it is a true tale,’
then 2 will say it is a Lye.

his old ad-
herents have

64 “ when I was att home in my [realme,]³
amonge my tennants all trulye,
in my time of losse, wherin my need stoode,
they came to ayd me honestlye ;

[page 261]

suffered
enough.

68 “ therfore I left many a child ffatherlese,
& many a widdow to looke wanne ;
& therfore blame nothing, Ladye,
but the woefull warres *which* I began.”

Mary
Douglas
offers to
prove her
words.

72 “ If you will giue me noe trust, my Lord,
nor noe credence you will give mee,
& youle come hither to my right hand,
indeed, my Lord,⁴ Ile lett you see.”

Percy will
have nothing
to do with
her witch-
craft.

76 saies, “ I neuer loued noe witchcraft,
nor neuer dealt with treacherye,
but euermore held the hye way ;
alas ! *that* may be scene by mee ! ”

¹ *i.e.* Lake of Leven, which hath communication with the sea.—*Rel.* i. 261.

² At that time in the hands of the opposite faction.—*Rel.*

³ This line is partly pared away.—F.

⁴ ? MS. Loid, or Louerd ; or Lord, with one stroke too many.—F.

"if you will not come your selfe, my Lord,
 youle lett your chamberlaine goe with mee,
 3 words *that* I may to him speake,
 80 & soone he shall come againe to thee."

Mary
 Douglas
 shows the
 chamberlain

when Iames Swynard came *that* Lady before,
 shee let him see thorow the weme¹ of her ring
 how many there was of English lords
 84 to wayte there for his *Master* and him.

through her
 ring the liers
 in wait for
 Percy:

"but who beene yonder, my² good Ladye,
that walkes soe royallye on yonder greene?"
 "yonder is Lord Hunsden,³ Iamy," shee saye;
 88 "alas! heele doe you both tree⁴ & teene!"

Lord Huns-
 den,

"& who beene yonder, thou gay Ladye,
that walkes soe royallye him beside?"
 "yond is Sir william Drurye,⁵ Iamy," shee sayd,
 92 "& a keene Captain hee is, and tryde."

and Sir Wm.
 Drurye,

"how many miles is itt, thou good Ladye,
 betwixt yond English Lord and mee?"
 "marry, 3⁶ 50 mile, Iamy," shee sayd,
 96 "& euen to scale⁶ & by the sea:

(150 miles
 off,

"I neuer was on English ground,
 nor neuer see itt with mine eye,
 but as my witt & wiselome serues,
 100 and as [the] booke it telleth mee.

"my mother, shee was a witch woman,
 and part of itt shee learned mee;
 shee wold let me see out of Lough Leuen
 104 what they dyd in London Cytye."

as her
 mother's
 witchcraft
 tells her.)

¹ weme, the Scottish word for the
 "yonder" word.—P.

² Iamy in MS.—P.

³ The Lord Warden of the East

Marches. *Rel. i.* 263.

⁴ dre, dre, to suffer, endure.—P.

⁵ Governor of Berwick.—*Rel. i.* 264

⁶ scale.—P.

- “ but who is yond, thou good Layde,
that comes yonder with an Osterne ¹ fface ? ”
- and Sir J.
 Forster. “ yonds Sir Iohn fforster, ² Iamye,” shee sayd ;
- 108 “ methinkes thou sholdest better know him
 then I.”
- “ Euen soe I doe, my goodlye Ladye,
 & euer alas, soe woe am I ! ”
- The cham-
 berlain
 weeps, 112 he pulled his hatt ouer his eyes,
 & lord, he wept soe tenderlye !
- and tells
 Lord Percy he is gone to his *Master* againe,
 & euen to tell him the veretye.
- that Mary “ Now hast thou beene with Marry, Iamy,” he sayd,
- 116 “ Euen as thy tounge will tell to mee;
 but if thou trust in any womans words,
 thou must refraine good companye.”
- has shown
 him the
 English
 Lords wait-
 ing to take
 him, 120 “ It is noe words, my Lord,” he sayes,
 “ yonder the men shee letts me see,
 how many English Lords there is
 is wayting there for you & mee ;
- with Lord
 Hunsden, 124 “ yonder I see the Lord Hunsden,
 & hee & you is of the 3^d. degree ;
 a greater enemye, indeed, my Lord,
 in England none haue yee,”
- his greatest
 enemy.
- Percy says
 that he's
 been three
 years in jail, 128 “ & I haue beene in Lough Leven
 the most part of these yeeres 3 :
 yett had I neuer noe out-rake, ³
 nor good games *that* I cold see ;

¹ Austerne, austere, fierce. L. *austerus*.
 Gloss. ad G.D.—P.

² Warden of the Middle March.—*Rel.*
 i. 264.

³ *rake raik*, ambulare, expatiari. As
 Isl. *reika*. *Raik* gradus citatus, a long

raik, Iter longum, to *raik* home, ac-
 celerato gradu domum abire; hinc a
Rake, homo dissolutus; an *out-raik*, a
 Riot, at large. Lye. See G.D. 224. 39.
 —P.

132 " & I am thus hidden to yonder shooting
 by william Douglas all trulye ;
 therefore speake neuer a word out of thy mouth
 That thou thinkes will hinder mee.¹ [page 261]

and he will
go to the
shooting
with
Douglas.

then he writhe the gold ring of his ffinger²
 136 & gaue itt to *that* Ladye gay ;
 sayes, "*that* was a legacye left vnto mee
 in Harley woods where I cold³ bee."

He gives
Mary a gold
ring.

140 " then farewell hart, & farewell hand,
 and farewell all good companye !
that woman shall neuer beare a sonne
 shall know soe much of your prinitye."

She laments
over him.

144 " now hold thy tounge, Ladye," hee sayde,
 " & make not all this dole for mee,
 for I may well drinke, but Ist neuer eate,
 till againe in Lough Leuen I bee."

He says he
shall soon be
back,

he tooke his boate att the Lough Leuen
 148 for to sayle now ouer the sea,
 & he hath cast vpp a siluer wand,
 saies " fare thou well, my good Ladye ! "
 the Ladye looked ouer her left sholder ;
 152 in a dead swoone there fell shee.

and gets into
the boat to
sail away.

" goe hacke againe, Douglas ! " he sayd,
 " & I will goe in thy companye,
 for sudden sicknesse yonder Lady has tane,
 156 and euer, alas, shee will but dye !

Mary
does not
swim.

Percy asks
her further
to return,

as she will
die.

¹ Part cut away by the binder.--F.
 Percy gives the verse as :
 Therefore I'll to yond shooting wend,
 As to the Douglas I have hight :

Betide me weale, betide me woe,
 He neuer shall find my promise light.
² A.-S. *written* to twist: perf. *written*
 twisted.--F.
³ *did*.--F.

“if ought come to yonder Ladye but good,
 then blamed fore *that* I shall bee,
 because a banished man I am,
 160 & drinen out of my owne cuntrye.”

Douglas
 refuses ;

the ladies can
 look after his
 sister.

“ come on, come on, my Lord,” he sayes,
 “ & lett all such talking bee ;
 theres Ladyes enow in Lough Leuen,
 164 & for to cheere yonder gay Ladye.”

Percy asks
 that his
 Chamberlain
 may go back
 with him.

“ & you will not goe your selfe, my lord,
 you will lett my chamberlaine goe with mee ;
 wee shall now take our boate againe,
 168 & soone wee shall ouertake thee.”

Douglas says

it's only his
 sister's
 tricks.

“ come on, come on, my Lord,” he sayes,
 “ & lett now all this talking bee !
 ffor my sister is craftye enoughe
 172 for to beguile thousands such as you & mee.”

They sail 50
 miles :

When they had sayled ¹ 50 : myle,
 now 50 mile vpon the sea,
 hee had fforgotten a message *that* hee
 176 shold doe in lough Leuen trulye :
 hee asked ‘ how ffarr it was to *that* shooting.
that william Douglas promised mee.’

the Cham-
 berlaine asks
 how far it is
 to the
 shooting.

Douglas
 says

he'll never
 see it.

now faire words makes fooles faine² ;
 180 & *that* may be seene by thy Master & thee ;
 ffor you may happen think³ itt soone enoughe
 when-euer you *that* shooting see.”

¹ There is no navigable stream between Lough-leven and the sea: but a ballad-maker is not obliged to understand Geography.—*Rel.* i. 266.

² *Belle promesse fol lie*: Prov. Faire promises oblige the fool; or, are noe

better than fopperies; (for the words *fol lie* equivocate vnto *folie*.) *Douces promesses obligent les fols*: Prov. Faire promises oblige fools; or, (as our) faire words make fools faine.—F.

³ A Lancashire phrase.—F.

- lamye pulled his hatt now ouer his browe ;
 184 I wott the teares fell in his eye ;
 & he is to his Master againe,
 & flor to tell him the veretye :
- “ he sayes, fayre words makes fooles faine,
 198 & *that* may be scene by you and mee,
 flor wee may happen thinke itt soone enoughe
 when-euer wee *that* shooting see.”
- “ hold vpp thy head, lamye,” the Erle sayd,
 192 & neuer lett thy hart fayle thee ;
 he did itt but to prone thee with,
 & see how thow wold take with death trulye.”
- when they had sayled other 50 mile,
 196 other 50 mile vpon the sea,
 Lord Peercy called to him, himselfe,
 & sayd, “ Douglas what wilt thou doe with
 mee ? ”
- “ looke *that* your brydle be wight, my Lord,
 200 *that* you may goe as a shipp att sea ;
 looke *that* your spurres be bright & sharpe,
that you may pricke her while sheele awaye.”
- “ what needeth this, Douglas,” he sayth.
 204 “ *that* thou needest to floute mee ?
 for I was counted a horsseman good
 before *that* euer I mett with thee.
- “ A ffalse Hector hath my horsses ;
 208 & euer an euill death may hee dye !
 & willye Armestronge hath my spurres
 & all the geere belongs to mee.”

Jamie

tells Percy
Douglas's
words.Percy says
Douglaswas only
trying his
courage.After 100
miles' sail,Percy asks
Douglas
what he'll
do with him.Douglas tells
him to have
his bridle
and spurs
ready.Percy asks
“ why this
mockery ?[page 262] My horse
and spurs are
in others'
hands.

22

3. THEORY OF THE EARTH

The theory of the earth is a branch of geology which deals with the origin and development of the earth and its various parts. It is a science which seeks to explain the processes which have shaped the earth and its features. The theory of the earth is based on the study of the earth's history and the changes which have taken place in its structure and composition. It is a science which is constantly developing and changing as new discoveries are made and new theories are proposed.

fin

The theory of the earth is a branch of geology which deals with the origin and development of the earth and its various parts. It is a science which seeks to explain the processes which have shaped the earth and its features. The theory of the earth is based on the study of the earth's history and the changes which have taken place in its structure and composition. It is a science which is constantly developing and changing as new discoveries are made and new theories are proposed.

Guye : of : Gisborne : ¹

[The fight between him and Robin Hood.—P.]

This ballad was printed from the Folio in the *Reliques*, and from the *Reliques* by Ritson, Child, and others.

“As for Guy of Gisborne,” says Ritson, “the only further memorial which has occurred concerning him is in an old satirical piece by William Dunbar, a celebrated Scottish poet of the fifteenth century, on one Schir Thomas Nory (MS. Maitland, p. 3, MMS. More (l. 5. 10) where he is named along with our hero, Adam Bell, and other worthies, it is conjectured of a similar stamp, but whose merits have not, less fortunately, come to the knowledge of posterity.

Was nevir Weild Robeine under bewch,
Nor yitt Roger of Clekkinslewch
So bauld a bairne as he ;
Gy of Gisborne, na Allane Bell,
Na Simones Sones of Qutrynsell
Off thocht war nevir slic.

Gisborne is a market town in the west riding of the county of York, on the borders of Lancashire.

WHEN shales becene sheene, & shradde² full sayre,
& leenes both Large & longe,
itt is merrry walking in the fayre florrest
to heare the small birds singe.³

It is merry
to walk in
the forest in
spring.

¹ A very curious Old Song, much more earnest and perfect than the common printed Ballads of Robin Hood.—P.

² *Shale*, a husk. The *shales* or stalks of hemp. Hollyband's *Diction-*

ary, 1593, Halliwell. *Shradde* is a twig, either from “shred, to cut off the smaller branches of a tree,” or “*shreds*, the clippings of live fences.” Halliwell.—P.

³ songe.—P.

the woodweete sang & wold not cease
amongst the leaues a lyne ; ¹
[* * * * * *]

Robin Hood
dreams that
two yeomen 8 “²& it is by ²³ wight yeomen,
by deare god *that* I meane :

beat him. “me thought they did mee beate & binde,
& tooke my bow mee free :

He vows
revenge on
them, 12 If I bee Robin a-liue in this Lande,
Ile be wrocken on both them towe.”

“sweeuens ⁴ are swift, *Master*,” quoth Iohn,
“as the wind *that* blowes ore a hill ;
ffor if itt be neuer soe lowde this night,
and orders 16 to-morrow it may be still.”
his men to
go with him.

“buske ⁵ yee, bowne yee, my merry men all !
ffor Iohn shall goe with mee ;
for Ile goe seeke yond wight yeomen
20 in greenwood where thé bee.”

They all
start, thé cast ⁶ on their gowne of greene ; ⁷
a shooting gone are they
vntill they came to the Merry greenwood
24 where they had gladdest bee ;
and soon see
one yeoman, there were thé ware of [a] wight yeoman ;
his body Leaned to a tree,

¹ of lime: I would read ‘so greene.’—P.

² As the lines that follow are part of a Speech of Robin hood relating a dream: there are certainly some lines wanting and we can no where better fix the *hiatus* than between the 2^d & 3^d lines of st. 2^d. N.B. In my printed Copy of this song in *the Reliques*, &c., Vol. I. I took the Liberty to fill up some of these *Lacunæ*, &c., from Conjecture, &c.—P.

Percy also alters lines 6 7 and 8: his verses in the 1st edition are—

The woodweete sang, and wold not cose,
Sitting upon the spraye,

Soe lowde, he wakend Robin Hood
In the greenwood where he lay.
Now by faye, said jollye Robin,
A sweaven I had this night ;
I dreamt me of tow mighty yemen
That fast with me can fight.—F.

³ of 2.—P.

⁴ i. e. dreams.—P.

⁵ i. e. get you ready.—P.

⁶ *then* inserted by Percy.—F.

⁷ Two lines wanting at *the* beginning of this St., if these 2 lines are not rather to be added to the next St.—P.

a sword & a dagger he wore by his side,
 28 had beene many a mans bane,¹
 & he was cladd in his Capull ² hyde,
 topp, & tayle, and mayne.

clad in a
 horse's hide.

"stand you still, Master," quoth litle Iohn,
 32 "vnder this trusty tree,
 & I will goe to yond wight yeoman
 to know his meaning trulye."

Little John
 tells Robin
 to stop while
 he asks who
 the man is.

"a, Iohn! ³ by me thou setts noe store,
 36 & *thats* a *ffarley* ⁴ thinge;
 how oft send I my men beffore,
 & tarry my-selfe behinde? ⁵

Robin Hood
 is angry at
 John's
 wanting to
 keep him
 back,

"it is noe cunning a knaue to ken,
 40 & a man but heare him speake;
 & itt were not for bursting of my bowe,
 Iohn, I wold thy head breake."

and threat-
 ens to break
 Little John's
 head.

but often words they breeden ball; ⁶
 44 *that* parted Robin and Iohn;
 Iohn is gone to Barnsdale,
 the gates ⁷ he knowes eche one.

This parts
 them, and

& when hee came to Barnesdale,
 48 great heauinesse there hee hadd;
 he ffound 2 of his own fellowes
 were slaine both in a slade, ⁸

where he
 finds two
 mates slain,

& Scarlett a floote flyinge was
 52 ouer stockes and stone,
 for the sheriffe with 7 score men
 fast after him is gone.

and Scarlett
 flying

from the
 Sheriff.

¹ Of many a man the bane. — P.

² Horse. — P.

³ Ah! John. — P.

⁴ *wunderous*. — Lye. — P.

⁵ meaning that he never did so. — P.

⁶ *balc.* — P.

⁷ *passes*, paths, ridings. — P. in *Rd.*

⁸ i. e., a parting between 2 Woods. — P.

Little John
tries to shoot
the Sheriff, 56

“yett one shoote He shoote,” sayes Litle Iohn ;
“with crist his might & Mayne
He make yond fellow *that* flyes soe fast
to be both glad & ffaine.

but his bow
breaks.

60 Iohn bent vp a good vciwe¹ bow,²
& ffetteled³ him to shoote :
the bow was made of a tender boughe,
& fell downe to his footee.⁴

64 “woe worth thee, wicked wood !” sayd litle Iohn
“*that* ere thou grew on a tree !
ffor⁵ this day thou art my bale,
my boote when thou shold bee !”

and yet the
arrow kills 68

this shoote it was but looselye shott,
the arrowe flew in vaine,
& ⁶ it mett one of the Sheriffes men :
good william a Trent was slaine.

William a
Trent,

(who'd
better have
been hung). 72

it had beene better ⁷ for a william Trent
to hange vpon a gallowe
then for to lye in the greenwoode
there slaine with an arrowe.⁸

76 & it is sayd, when men be mett,
6⁹ can doe more then 3 :

But Little
John is
taken.

& they haue tane ¹⁰ litle Iohn,
& bound him ffast to a tree.

¹ Query MS: the word is partly pared away.—F.

² John bent up a good yew bow.—P.

³ prepared, addressed him, verbum Salopiense.—P.

⁴ foote.—P.

⁵ ffor now.—P.

⁶ or Yet.—P.

⁷ as good.—P.

⁸ Altered in the *Reliques* i. 81, to

To have been abed with so
Than to be that day in the
slade

To meet with Little Johns

⁹ Fyve.—*Rel.*

¹⁰ insert now.—P.

- "thou shalt be drawen by dale and downe," quoth
the sheriffe,¹
- o " & hanged hye on a hill."
"but thou may ffayle," quoth litle Iohn,
"if itt be christe owne will."
- let vs leane talking of Litle Iohn,
4 for hee is bound fast to a tree,
& talks of Guy & Robin hood
in they² green woode where they bee;
- how these 2 yecmen together they mett
8 vnder the leanes of Lyne,³
to see what Marchandise they made
even at that same time.
- "good morrow, good fellow!" quoth Sir Guy;
8 "good morrow, good ffellow!" quoth hee;
"methinkes by this bow thou beares in thy hand,
a good archer⁴ thou seems to bee.⁵
- "I am wilfull⁶ of my way," quoth Sir Guye,
6 " & of my morning tyde."
"He lead thee through the wood," quoth Robin,
"good ffellow, He be thy guide."
- "I seeke an outlaw," quoth Sir Guye,
10 "men call him Robin Hood;
I had rather meet with him vpon a day⁷
then 40⁸ of golde."

and the
Sheriff vows
he shall be
hanged.

"Don't be
too sure,"
says Little
John.

Let us turn
to Guy and
Robin.

Guy greets
Robin

and tells him
he seeks an
outlaw,
Robin Hood.

¹ These three words seem added by
the copier.—P.

² the P.

³ perhaps Lyne, tho' Lyne or Lyne is
the common in these old ballads.—P.

⁴ An s has been added at the end.—

⁵ shoudent bee.—P.

⁶ probably the same as "wilcome,"
page 357 [of MN] st. 6.—P.

⁷ this day.—P.

Robin pro-
poses some
sport.

“if you tow mett, itt wold be seene whether^e were
better

104 afore yee did part awaye ;
let vs some other pastime find,
good ffellow, I thee pray.¹

No doubt, as
they go on,
they'll meet
Robin Hood.

108 “let vs some other masteryes make,
& wee will walke in the woods euen,
wee may chance ² mee[t] with Robin Hoode
att some vnsett steven.”³

They make
pricks ready
to shoot at.

112 they cutt them downe the⁴ summer shroggs⁵
which grew both vnder a Bryar,⁶
& sett them 3 score rood in twinn⁷
to shoote the prickes full neare.⁸

“leade on, good ffellow,” sayd Sir Guye,
116 “lead⁹ on, I doe bidd thee.”
“nay, by my faith,” quoth Robin Hood,
“the leader thou shalt bee.”

¹ Percy alters this in his *Reliques*, i. 81, 1st ed., to

Now come with me, thou wighty yeman,
And Robin thou soon shalt see:
But first let us some pastime find
Under the greenwood tree.

² to.—P.

³ See page 358, st. 16.—P. unfixed, unexpected moment. There is a stroke before the *v* of *steven* in the MS.—F.

⁴ two.—*Rel.*

⁵ *scrog*, a stunted shrub: Jamieson.—F.

⁶ pronounced Breer in some parts of England.—P. *Bryar* is entered in Levin's, 1570, under the words in *care*.

⁷ apart.—F.

⁸ *y-fere*.—*Rel.* Threescore roods or 330 yards must have been a long range. The *Pricke-wandes* were, I suppose, willow wands or long thin branches stuck in the ground to shoot at. *Prickes* seem

to have been the long-range targets, *butts* the near.

Moll. Out upon him, what a suiter have I got; I am sorry you are so bad an Archer, sir.

Eare. Why Bird, why Bird?

Moll. Why, to shoote at *Buts*, vwhen you shoud use *prick-shafts*, short-shooting vwill loose ye the game, I as[sure] you, sir.

Eare. Her minde runnes sure upon a *Fletcher*, or a *Bowyer*, 1633, Rowley. *A Match at Midnight*, Act ii. sc. 1.

“Modern prick shooting is practised by the Royal Archers at Edinburgh, and is their favourite, at a small round target fixed at 180 yards,” says Mr. Peter Muir, their Bowmaker. See my note on *pricks* in *The Babees Boke* &c. 1868, p. ci.—F.

⁹ *i. e.* begin to shoot.—P.

the first good shoot *that* Robin ledd,
 120 did not shoote an inch the pricke ¹ ffroe.
 Guy was an archer good enoughe,
 but he cold neere shoote soe.

Robin shoots
 first,
 an inch from
 the prick.

the 2^d shoote ² Sir Guy shott,
 124 he shott within the garlande ;
 but Robin hoode shott it better then hee,
 for he cloue the good pricke wande.

Guy next,
 within the
 garland.
 Robin then
 cleaves the
 prick-wand.

" gods blessing on thy heart ! " sayes Guye,
 128 " goode ffellow, thy shooting is goode ;
 for on ³ thy hart be as good as thy hands,
 thou were better then Robin Hood.

" Bless your
 heart, you
 shoot well,"
 says Guy.

[page 264]

" tell me thy name, good ffellow," quoth Guy,
 132 " vnder the leanes of Lyne."
 " nay, by my faith," quoth good Robin,
 " till thou haue told me thine."

" Tell me
 your name."

" Not till
 you tell me
 yours."

" I dwell by dale & downe," quoth Guye,
 136 " & I haue done many a curst turne ;
 & he *that* calles me by my right name,
 calles me Guye of good Gysborne."

" Mine is
 Guye of
 Gysborne."

" my dwelling is in the wood," sayes Robin ;
 140 " by thee I set right nought ;
 my name is Robin Hood of Barnesdale,
 a ffellow thou has long sought."

" And mine
 Robin Hood
 of Barnes-
 dale."

he *that* had neither beene a ⁴ kithe nor kin ⁵
 144 might haue scene a full fayre sight,
 to see how together these yeomen went
 with blades both browne & bright ;

It was a
 pretty sight
 to see 'em
 fight.

¹ was not an Inch the prick. — P.
² *that* inserted by P. — F.
³ an, or and. — P.

⁴ a defend. — P.
⁵ neither acquaintance nor relation.
 P.

- to haue seene how these yeomen together foug[ht]
- 148 2 howers of a summers day :
- Neither
thinks of
flying. itt was neither Guy nor Robin hood
 that fsettled them to flye away.
- But Robin
stumbles,
152 Robin was reacheles¹ on a roote,
 & stumbled² at *that* tyde ;
and Guy
hits him. & Guy was quicke & nimble with-all,
 & hitt him ore the left side.
- Robin calls
on the
Virgin,
156 “ah, deere Lady !” sayd Robin hoode,
 “thou art both Mother & may !
I thinke it was neuer mans destinye
 to dye before his day.”
- leaps up,
160 Robin thought on our Lady deere,
 & soone leapt vp againe ;
 & thus he came with an awkwarde³ stroke ;
kills Sir
Guy, good Sir Guy hee has slayne.
- sticks his
head on his
bow,
164 he tooke Sir Guys head by the hayre,
 & sticked itt on his bowes end ;
 “thou hast beene traytor all thy liffe,
 which thing must haue an ende.”
- slashes his
face till no
one can
know him,
168 Robin pulled forth an Irish kniffe,
 & nicked Sir Guy in the fface,
 that hee was neuer on⁴ a woman borne
 cold tell who Sir Guye was :
- 172 saies, “lye there, lye there, good Sir Guye,
 & with me be not wrothe ;
 if thou haue had the worse stroakes at **my hand**,
 thou shalt haue the better cloathe.”

¹ i. e. careless.—P.² he stumbled.—P.³ perhaps backward.—P.⁴ of woman.—P.

Robin did on ¹ his gowne of greene,
 176 [on] Sir Guye ² hee did it throwe ;
 & hee put on *that* Capull hyde
that cladd him topp ³ to toe.

throws his
 own green
 coat on the
 corpse,
 puts on Sir
 Guy's horse-
 hide,

" the ⁴ bowe, the ⁴ arrowes, & litle horne,
 180 & ⁵ with me now Ile beare ;
 for now I will goe to Barnsdale,
 to see how my men doe flare."

and takes
 his horn,

Robin sett Guyes horne to his mouth ;
 184 a lowd blast in it he did blow.
that beheard the Sheriffe of Nottingham
 as he leaned vnder a lowe ⁶ ;

and blows it.

The Sheriff
 hears it,

" hearken ! hearken !" sayd the Sheriffe,
 188 " I heard noe tydings but good ;
 for yonder I heare Sir Guyes horne blowe,
 for he hath slaine Robin hoode :

thinks Guy
 has slain
 Robin Hood,

" for yonder I heare Sir Guyes horne blow,
 192 itt blowes soe well in tyde,
 for yonder comes *that* wighty yeoman
 cladd in his capull hyde.

" come hither,⁷ thou good Sir Guy !
 196 aske of mee what thou wilt haue ! "
 " Ile none of thy gold," sayes Robin hood,
 nor Ile none of itt haue " ;

and promises
 him what-
 ever reward
 he asks.
 Robin asks

" but now I haue slaine the Master," he sayd, (page 265)
 200 let me goe strike the knaue ;
 this is all the reward I aske,
 nor noe other will I haue."

leave to kill
 Little John.

¹ *off.* - P.

² On Sir Guy. - P.

³ from topp - P

⁴ thy *hid.*

⁵ and defend. - P.

⁶ perhaps lowe. - P hill, A.-S. *Mar.*

- F.

⁷ come hither [repeated]. - P.

⁸ Perhaps

None of it I will have

or

Nor nothing else Ill have. - P

- "thou art a Madman," said the shiriffe,
 204 "thou sholdest haue had a knights fee.
 The Sheriff grants it. seeing thy asking beene ¹ soe badd,
 well granted it shall be."
- but litle Iohn heard his Master speake,
 208 well he knew *that* was his steuen ²;
 Little John knows Robin's voice, and thinks he shall be freed.
 "now shall I be loset, ³" quoth litle Iohn,
 "with Christs might in heauen."
- but Robin hee hyed him towards Litle Iohn;
 212 hee thought hee wold loose him believe.
 The Sheriff and his men press on them.
 the Sheriffe & all his companye
 fast after him did drine.
- "stand abacke! stand abacke!" sayd Robin;
 216 "why draw you mee soe neere?
 Robin orders them back,
 itt was neuer the vse in our countrie
 ones shrift ⁴ another shold heere."
- but Robin pulled forth an Irysh kniffee,
 220 & losed Iohn hand & ffoote,
 looses Little John, and gives him Guy's bow.
 & gaue him Sir Guyes bow in his hand,
 & bade it be his boote.
- ⁵ but Iohn tooke Guyes bow in his hand,
 224 his arrowes were rawstye by the roote;
 Little John prepares to shoot.
 the Sherriffe saw litle Iohn draw a bow
 & ffettle him to shoote;

¹ hath been.—P.² i. e. voice.—P.³ loosed.—P.⁴ i. e. confession.—P.⁵ Then John he took Guyes bowe in his hand,His boltes and arrowes eche one:
When the sheriffe saw Little John bend
his bow.He fettled him to be gone.—*Rd.*
? is *rawstye*, l. 224, rusty. *Rd.* is
rude; unskilful. Halliwell.—F.

towards his house in Nottingham
 228 he fled full fast away,—
 & soe did all his companye,
 not one behind did stay,—

The Sheriff
 takes to
 flight,

but he cold neither soe fast goe,
 232 nor away soe fast runn,¹
 but litle Iohn with an arrow broade
 did cleane his heart in twinn.²

but can't get
 away from
 Little John's
 arrow,
 which
 cleaves his
 heart.

ffins.

¹ ryde.—*Ref.*

² He shott him into the 'backe'-
 eyde.—*Ref.* Too bad, Bishop! And to

put your inverted commas too, as if
 you'd only altered the one word 'backe.'
 —F.

Hereford & Norfolk.¹

THIS ballad is to be found in Dryden's *Miscellany Poems*, in the 1727 *Collection of Old Ballads*, and elsewhere.

The subject is the well-known quarrel between the Earls of Hereford and Norfolk,² which finally resulted in their banishment in 1398. A full description of the Lists of Coventry (in September, not August) is given by Hall.³ The ballad's account of the origin of the quarrel is not quite fair. Hereford accused Norfolk, not Norfolk Hereford, of treason. But the ballad goes with the winning side. Vox populi mostly shouts in favour of the successful. The cause pleases it that "pleases the gods."

The ballad is evidently written by a practised ballad-writer, some time about 1600 probably. But it may have been founded on some older one. The subject is not likely to have lain uncelebrated till late in Elizabeth's reign.

I sing the
fall of two
noble Dukes,

TOWE noble dukes of great renowne
that long had liued in ffame,
throug ffatall envye were cast downe
4 & brought to sudden bane :

Hereford

the Duke of Hereford was the one,
a prudent prince & wise,
gainst whom such mallice there was shoven,
8 which soone in fight did rise.

¹ In the printed Collection of old Ballads, 1727, Vol. i. p. 120. N. XV., and in Dryden's Misc. Vol. 5. 382.—P.

² See Shakspeare's *Richard II.*—F.

³ Hall's descriptions of armour and

fashions before his time were his own fabrication, though adopted as genuine by Gough and Sharon Turner. *Planché's Hist. of Costume*, p. 223.—F.

- the Duke of Norfolke most vntrue ¹
 declared to the King,
 " the duke of Hereford greatly grew
 12 in hatred of eche thinge
- which by his grace was acted still
 against both hye & lowe,
 & how he had a traiterous will
 16 his state to ouerthrowe."
- the Duke of Hereford then in hast
 was sent for to the Kinge,
 & by his lords in order placet
 20 examined in eche thinge ;
- which being guiltesse of *that* crime
 which was against him layd,
 the duke of Norfolke at that time ²
 24 these words vnto him sayd :
- " how canst thou with a shamelesse face
 deny a truth soe stout,
 & there before his royall grace
 28 soe falselye faced itt out ?
- " did not these treasons from thee passe
 when wee together were,
 how *that* the King vnworthye was
 32 the royall crowne to weare ?
- " wherfore, my gracyous Lords," quoth hee,
 " & you, his Noble Peeres,
 to whom I wish long liffe to bee,
 36 with many happy yeeres,

and Norfolk.

Norfolk de-
 nounces
 Hereford

to the King

as a traitor.

The King
 sends for
 Hereford,

has him
 examined,

and he is
 guiltless.

Norfolk

reproves him
 for his
 shameless-
 ness,

(page 266)
 declares
 Hereford has
 talked
 treason,

¹ Only half the *u* in the MS.—F.

² MS. time.—F

and avows

he is a
traitor.

“I doe pronounce before you all
the duke of Hereford here,
a traytour to our Noble Kinge,
40 as time shall show itt clere.”

Hereford

the Duke of Herefford hearing *that*,
in mind was greeved much,
& did returne this answer flatt,
44 *which* did Duke Norfolke tuche ;

hurls back
his accusa-
tion in his
face,

“the terme of Traytor, trothelesse Duke,
in scorne & deepe disdaine,
with flatt deffiance to thy face¹.
48 I doe returne againe !

and craves
leave to fight
Norfolk.

“& therefore, if it please your grace
to grant me grace,” quoth hee,
“to combatt with my knowen foe
52 *that* hath accused mee,

“I doe not doubt but plainlye proue,
that like a periured knight
hee hath most falslye sought my shame
56 against all truth & right.”

The King
grants it,
and fixes
Coventry as
the place.

the King did grant their iust request,
& did therto agree,
att Couentry in August next
60 this combatt fought shold bee.

The Dukes
appear
armed,

the Dukes in barbed steeds full stout,
in coates of steele most bright,
with speares in brest did enter list,
64 the combatt feirce to flight

¹ There is a stroke between the c and e in the MS.—F.

the King then cast his warder downe,
 commanding them to stay ;
 & with his Lords some counsell tooke
 66 to stint *that* Mortall fraye.

but the King
 stops the
 combat,

att lenght vnto the Noble Duke[s]
 the King of Herald's came,
 & vnto them with loftye speech
 72 this sentence did proclaime :

and a Herald

proclaime
 his judg-
 ment.

"with Henery Bullenbrooke this day,
 the Duke of Hereford here,
 & Thomas Mawbray, Norfolkes Duke,
 76 see valyant did apeare,

" & haue in honourable sorte
 repayred to this place.
 our noble King for specyall cause
 80 hath altered thus the case :

"first, Henery Duke of Hereford,
 Ere 15 dayes were past
 shall part this realme, on payne of death,
 84 while 10 yeeres space doth last.

Hereford

is banished
 for ten
 years ;

" & Thomas, duke of Norfolke, thou
 that hast begun this striffe,—
 & therefore noe good proue can bring,
 88 I say,—for terme of liffe,

Norfolk

for life ;

" by iudgment of our souerraine Lord
 which now in place doth stand,
 for euermore I banish thee
 92 out off thy Native Land,

" charging thee on payne of death,
 when 15 dayes are past,
 thou neuer treade on English ground
 96 see long as liffe doth last."

and both
 must go in
 fifteen days.

Each swears

not to go
where the
other is.

thus were thé sworne before the *King*
ere they did further passe,
the one shold neuer come in place
100 wheras the other was.

then both the dukes with heainy hart
were parted presentlye,
the vncoth streames of froward chance
104 in forraine lands to trye.

[page:

Norfolk,
before
sailing off,laments his
lot.

the duke of Norfolke cominge then
where [he] shold shipping take,
the bitter teares fell from his cheekes,
108 & thus his moane did make :

“ May grief
burst my
heart !

“ now let me sob & sigh my fill
ere I from hence depart,
that inward panges with speed may burst
112 my sore afflicted hart !

“ accursed man, whose lothed liffe
is held soe much in scorne,
whose companye ¹ is cleane despised,
116 & left as one forlorne,

I bid adieu
to my loved
land.

“ Now take thy leaue & last adew
of this thy country deare,
which neuer more thou must behold,
120 nor yett approache itt neere !

Would I were
dead, that I
might be
buried here,

“ how happy shold I count my selfe,
if death my hart had torne,
that I might haue my bones entombed
124 where I was bredd and borne ;

¹ In the MS. there is only one stroke for the n.—F.

“or *that* by Neptunes rathfull rage,
 I might be prest to dye,
 while *that* sweet Englands pleasant bankes
 128 did stand before mine eye.

or that I
 might die
 now!

“how sweete a sent hath Englands ground
 within my sences now!
 how fayre vnto my outward sight
 132 seemes enery branch & bowe!

How sweet
 smells Eng-
 land's
 ground!

“the ffeelds, the flowers, the trees & stones,
 seeme such vnto my minde,
that in all other countreys sure,
 136 the like I shall not finde.

There are no
 such fields
 abroad.

“oh *that* the sun¹ his shining face
 wold stay his steeds by strenght!
that this same day might streched bee
 140 to 20 yeeres of lenght;

Oh that this
 night could

“& *that* they true performed tyde
 their hasty course wold stay,
that Æolus wold neuer yeeld
 144 to bring me hence away!

last twenty
 years,

“*that* by the fountaine of mine eyes
 the ffeeldes might wattered bee,
that I might graue my greevous plaints
 148 vpon eche springing tree!

and that I
 could grave
 my plaints
 on the trees!

“but time, I see, with Egles wings,
 I see, doth flee away,
 & dusty clouds begin to dimm
 152 the brightnesse of the day;

But Time
 flies,

¹ MS. or *that* the shining.—F.

- the sailors
call me.
- 156 “ the ffatall hower draweth on,
 the winds & tydes agree ;
 & now, sweet England, ouer soone
 I must depart from thee !
- Farewell,
sweet Eng-
land,
- 160 “ the Mariners haue hoysed sayle,
 & call to catch me in,
 & in [my] woefull hart doe ¹ feele
 my torments to begin.
- 164 “ wherfore, farwell for euermore,
 Sweet England, vnto thee !
 & farewell all my freinds which I
 againne shall neuer see !
- I kiss thy
soil
- to show how
I loved
thee.”
- 168 “ & England, heere I kisse the ground
 vpon my bended knee,
 herby to shew to all they world
 how deere I loued thee.”
- Hereford
goes,
- and dies in
Venice.
- 172 this being ² sayd, away he went
 As fortune did him guide ;
 and att the lenght, with greefe of hart,
 in Venis ³ there he dyed.
- Norfolk
- lives in
France,
- is promoted,
- 176 the other duke in dolefull sort
 did lead his liffe in ffrance,
 & at the last the mightye Lord
 did him ffull hiye advance.
- recalled to
England
- while
Richard II.
wars in
Ireland,
- 180 the Lords of England afterwards
 did send for him againe,
 while *that* King Richard ⁴ in the warres
 in Ireland did remaine ;

[page 21]

¹ I.—F.² A *de* follows in the MS., but is crossed out.—F.³ or Veins, MS.—F.⁴ The *d* has a curl like *s* to it.—F.

HEREFORD AND NORFOLK.

who thro' the vile and great abuse
 which through his deeds did springe,
 deposed was, & then the duke
 184 was truly crowned Kinge.

and is
 crowned
 King.

ffins.

l. tho. "The vile and great
 is dwelt on in the curious in-
 is alliterative poem on the Depo-
 of Richard II., edited by Mr.
 Wright for the Camden Society
 from the Cambridge MS. Ll.
 Take, among other passages, lines
 pp. 4, 5:

Richard the redeles, reweth on
 self,
 welesse laddyn youre lyf and
 peple bothe;
 were the wyles and wronge and
 in youre tyme,
 lyghelich y-lyste from that you
 bouste,
 was youre willfall werkis, youre
 was chaungid,
 he was youre riott, and rest, for
 daies;
 wikkid thow youre currid coun-
 youre karis weren newed,

And covetise hath cranid youre crowne
 for evere.
 Of a-legeaunce now lerneth a lesson
 other tweyne
 Wherby it standith and stablishe moste,
 By drede, or be dyntis, or domes untrews,
 Or by creauce of coynes for castes of
 gils;
 By pillage of youre peple youre prynces
 to please,
 Or that youre wylle were wrongis, thou;
 wisdom it nolde,
 Or be tallage of youre townes without
 any werre,
 By rewthles routs that ryffled evere,
 Be preyning of polaxis that no pete
 hadde,
 Or be dette for thi doon, deme as the
 syndist,
 Or be ledinge of lawe with love well
 y-temprid.—F.

Ladys : fall.¹

THIS ballad is given in the *Reliques* “(with corrections²) from the Editor’s ancient folio MS. collated with two printed copies in black letter: one in the British Museum, the other in the Pepys Collection. Its old title is ‘A lamentable ballad of the Lady’s fall,’ to the tune of ‘In Peascod Time,’” (to which air “Chevy Chace,” as Mr. Chappell informs us, was sometimes sung). There is also a copy of it in the Douce Collection. It appears in the 1727 Collection of Old Ballads, and many later Collections.

It is evidently of very much the same date as *The Children in the Wood* (which is certainly as old as 1595, as its name is entered in the Stationers’ Registers of that year), and may possibly be by the same author. The same facility of language and of rhyme, the same power of pathos, the same extreme simplicity characterise both ballads.

The story is who can say how old? Who was the first frail woman? who the first false man? It touchingly illustrates Goldsmith’s pathetic lines:

When lovely woman stoops to folly
And finds too late that men betray,
What charm can soothe her melancholy?
What art can wash her guilt away?

The only art her guilt to cover,
To hide her shame from every eye,
To give repentance to her lover
And wring his bosom, is—to die.

The poor weak betrayed lady had looked in vain for the fulfilment of her lover’s promises :

¹ In y^e printed Collection of Old Ballads, 1727, Vol. i. p. 244. N. xxxiv.—P.

² Noticed in the 4th edition only.—F.

If any person she had spied
 Come riding o'er the plain,
 She thought it was her own true love ;
 But all her hopes were vain.

She gives birth to a child,

And with one sigh which brake her heart
 This gallant dame did die.

Then, at last, repentance is given to her lover, and his bosom is wrung. He kills himself. And so the ballad ends with a word of admonition and warning to "dainty damsels all."

MARKE: well my heany dolefull tale,
 you loyall louers all,
 & heedfully beare in your brest
 4 a gallant Ladyes fall.

Hear the end
 tale of a
 lady's fall :

long was shee wooed ere shee was woone
 to lead a wedded liffe,
 but folly rought her ouerthrowe
 8 before shee was a wiffe ;

Long was
 she wooed,

to soone, alas ! she gaue consent,
 & yeeled to his will,
 tho he protested to be true
 12 & faithfull to her still.

but con-
 sented too
 soon.

shee felt her body altered quite,
 her bright hue waxed pale,
 her faire red cheekes changed color quite,¹
 16 her strenght began to fayle.

Her shape
 changed,

& soe² with many a sorrowfull sighe,
 this bewtious Ladye Mildo
 with greened hart perceined her selfe
 20 to be³ conceined with chyld.

and she
 found her-
 self with
 child.

¹ Here lovely cheekes chang'd color
 where — *Red.* 1st ed. (only partly collated).
 —F ;

² For that. — *Red.*
³ have. — *Red.*

She hid it
from her
parents,

shee kept it from her parents sight
as close as close might bee,
& soe put on her silken gowne
24 none shold her swelling see.

but told her
lover,

vnto her loue secretly
her greefe shee did bewray,
& walking with him, hand in hand,
28 these words to him did say :

“ behold,” quoth shee, “ a Ladyes distresse
by loue brought to your bowe ;
see how I goe with chyld with thee,
32 tho none thereof doth knowe !

prayed him
not to let
her babe be
a bastard,

“ my litle babe springs in my wombe
to heare it ¹ fathers voyce ;
o lett itt not be a bastard called,
36 sith I make thee my choyce ! ²

to remember
his promises,

“ thinke on thy former promises,
thy words & vowes eche one !
remember with what bitter teares
40 to mee thou madest thy Moane !

and marry
her
or kill her.

“ conuay me to some secrett place,
& marry me with speede,
or with thy rapyer end my liffe,
44 lest further shame proceede ! ”

Her lover
makes ex-
cuses :

“ alacke, my derest loue ! ” quoth hee,
“ my greatest Ioy on earthe !
which way shold I conuay you hence
48 to scape ³ a sudden death ?

¹ It preceded *its* as the gen. neuter of
he.—F. *its*.—*Rel*.

² *Rel*. inserts four lines here.—F.
³ without.—*Rel*.

“your freinds are all of hye degree,
 & I of meane estate;
 full hard itt is to gett you forthe
 52 out of your ffathers gate.”

how can he
 get her away
 from her
 home?

[page 269]

“dread not your liffe to saue your fame!
 for if you taken bee,
 my selfe will step betweene the sword
 56 to take the harme of thee;

She says

she will save
 him from
 harm,

“soe may you¹ scape dishonor quite.
 if soe you² shold be slaine,
 what cold they say, but *that* true loue
 60 had wrought a Ladyes paine³?

“but feare not any further harme;
 my selfe will soe devise,
 I will safelye ryd⁴ with thee
 6 vnknown of Morttall Eyes.

and will
 come to him

disguised like some pretty page
 Ile meete thee in the darke,
 & all alone Ile come to thee
 68 hard by my ffathers parke.”

disguised as
 a page.

“& there,” quoth hee, “Ile meete my deere—
 if god doe lend me liffe—
 on this day month without all fayle;
 72 Ile make thee then my wiffe.”

He agrees to
 meet her
 that day
 month.

& with a sweet & louing kisse
 they parted presentlye,
 & att their partinge brinish⁵ teares
 76 stooke in eche others eye.

They kiss
 and part.

¹ shall I. - *Red.*

² ? I F. and if I. - *Red.*

³ lano -- P and *Red.*

⁴ ryde away. - *Red.*

⁵ ? MS.; perhaps it is *brinish*. — P.

On the day
fixed
the lady is
ready,

att lenght the wished day was come
wherin ¹ this lonely Mayd
with longing eyes & strange attire
80 for her true loue ² stayd.

but her lover
never comes.

if any person shee had spyed ³
came ryding ore the plaine,
shee thought ⁴ itt was her owne true loue ;
84 but all her hopes was vaine !

She weeps,

then did shee weepe, & soer bewayle
her most vnhappy fate ;
then did shee speake these wofull words
88 when succourles shee sate :

reproaches
her false
lover,

“ O ffalse, fforsworne, ffaitheslesse man !
disloyall in thy loue !
hast thou fforgott thy promise past,
92 & wilt thou periured prooue ?

“ & hast thou now fforsaken mee
in this my greate distresse,
to end my dayes in heauinesse ⁵
96 which well thou might ⁶ redresse ?

and wishes
she had
never
trusted him.

“ woe worth ⁷ the time I did beleene ⁸
that fflattering tounge of thine !
wold god *that* I had neuer seene
100 the teares of thy false eyen ! ”

Grieving, she
goes home,

soe *that* with many a grienous groane ⁹
homewards shee went amaine.
noe rest came in her waterye eyes,
104 shee found ¹⁰ such priny payne.

¹ On which.—*Rel.*

² ? MS. loves.—*F.*

³ When any person she espyed.—*Rel.*

⁴ hoped.—*Rel.*

⁵ open shame.—*Rel.*

⁶ thou mightst well.—*Rel.*

⁷ be to ; A.-S. *weorthan*, to become, be
—*F.*

⁸ I e'er believ'd.—*Rel.*

⁹ sorrowful sigh.—*Rel.*

¹⁰ felt.—*Rel.*

- in trauell strong shee fell *that* night
 with many a bitter thraw ¹:—
 what woefull paines shee felt *that* night ²
 108 doth eche good woman knowe!—
- shee called vp her waiting mayds
 who lay att her bedds feete,³
 and musing at her great ⁴ woe
 112 began full fast to weepe.
- “weepe nott,” shee sayth, “but shutt the dores
 & windowes all about;
 let none bewray my wretched state,
 116 but keepe all persons out!”
- “O Mistrus! call your mother here;
 of women you haue neede;
 & to some skilfull midwiffe helpe
 120 the better may you speed.”
- “call not my mother for thy life,
 nor fetch noe woman here!
 The midwiffes helpe comes all to late;
 124 my death I doe not feare.” [page 270]
- with *that* the babe sprang from her wombe,
 noe creature being by,⁵
 & with one sighe which brake her hart
 128 this gallant dame did dye.
- the litle louely infant younge,
 the pretty smiling babe,⁶
 resigned itt new receiued berath
 132 to him *that* had it made.

is taken with
 childbirth
 pangs,

calls up her
 maids,

has the
 doors shut,

and bids
 them keep
 out every
 one.

The maids
 urge her to

have a mid-
 wife.

She refuses.

gives birth
 to a babe,

and dies.

Her babe
 dies too.

¹ *thence* — *Rel.*

² *then did feel* — *Rel.*

³ A curl at the end like another *c.* — *F.*

⁴ Who musing at her mistress. — *Rel.*

⁵ *new* — *Rel.*

⁶ The mother being dead. — *Rel.*

Her lover
comes, and

kills himself.

next morning came her owne true loue
affrighted with this newes,
& he for sorrow slew himselfe,
136 whom eche one did accuse.

Mother and
babe are
buried
together.

the Mother with her new borne babe
were laide both in one graue;
their parents, ouerworne¹ with woe,
140 noe Ioy *that* they² cold haue.

Damsels!
ware flat-
tering
words!

take [heed] you daynty damsells all;
of flattering words beware;
& to the honor of *your* name
144 haue you a specyall care.³

ffins.

¹ overcome.—*Rel.*

² joy thenceforth.—*Rel.*

³ The *Reliques* add:

Too true, alas! this story is,
As many one can tell.

By others harmes learne to be wise,
And you shall do full well.

Buckingham betrayed : by Banister.¹

IN the late autumn of 1483, the nobles who had previously determined to put an end to the usurpation of Richard the Third, and who had lately heard of the murder of the young Princes, fixed on Henry of Richmond for their king. About the middle of October the Marquess of Dorset proclaimed him at Exeter. Men declared for him in Wiltshire, in Kent, in Berkshire. The Duke of Buckingham made a rising at Brecon. But the conspiracy failed. Richard was on the alert; Henry could not land; the insurgents could not combine. From Brecon the Duke "marched through the forest of Deane to the Severn; but the bridges were broken down, and the river was so swoln that the fords had become impassable. He turned back to Weobley, the seat of the lord Ferrers; but the Welshmen who had followed him disbanded; and the news of their desertion induced the other bodies of insurgents to provide for their own safety. Thus the King triumphed without drawing the sword. Weobley was narrowly watched on the one side by Sir Humphrey Stafford, on the other by the clan of the Vaughans, who for their reward had received a promise of the plunder of Brecon. Morton effected his escape in disguise to the isle of Ely, and thence passed to the coast of Flanders; *the Duke, in a similar dress, reached the hut of Banister, one of his servants in Shropshire, where he was betrayed by the perfidy of his host. If he hoped for pardon on the merit of his former services, he had*

¹ There is another Song on this Subject in the printed Collection 12^{mo} 1738, Vol. 3^d p. 78. N. 3. P.

mistaken the character of Richard. That prince had already reached Salisbury with his army: he refused to see the prisoner, and ordered his head to be immediately struck off in the market-place." (Lingard.)

There is another ballad on this same subject given in the *Collection of Old Ballads*, vol. iii. 1727, entitled "The Life and Death of the Great Duke of Buckingham, who came to an untimely End, for consenting to the deposing of the two gallant young Princes, King Edward the Fourth's children. To the tune of *Shore's Wife*." In point of style this is of much the same date with that here given from the Folio. It is the production of a thorough-bred ballad-writer, viz. Robert Johnson, and included in his *Crown Garland of Golden Roses*. It administers political justice in the same uncompromising manner:

Thus Banister was forc'd to beg
And crave for Food with Cap and Leg;
But none on him would Bread bestow,
That to his Master prov'd a Foe.

Thus wandring in this poor Estate,
Repenting his misdeeds too late,
Till starved he gave up his Breath,
By no man pitied at his Death.

To woful End his Children came,
Sore punish'd for their Father's shame;
Within a channel one was drown'd
Where water scarce could hide the ground.

Another by the Powers divine
Was strangely eaten up of swine;
The last a woful ending makes
By strangling in an empty Jakes.

A third ballad, entitled "A most sorrowful Song, setting forth the miserable end of Banister, who betrayed the Duke of Buckingham, his Lord and Master," is in the Pepys Collection, vol. i. p. 64, and reprinted in Evans's *Old Ballads*, vol. iii. p. 23, 8vo, 1810. It begins thus:—

If ever wight had cause to rue
 A wretched deed, vile and untrue,
 Then Banister with shame may sing,
 Who sold his life that loved him.

Perhaps all three ballads are founded on some common older original.

-
- YOU: Barons bold, ma[r]ke¹ and behold
 the thinge *that* I will rite²;
 a story strange & yett most true
 4 I purpose to Endite.³
- For the Noble Peere while he lived heere,
 the duke of Buckingham,
 he flourisht in King Edwards time,
 8 the 4th King of *that* name.
- in his service there he kept a man
 of meane & low degree,
 whom he brought vp then of a chyld
 12 from basenesse to dignitye ;
- he gaue him lands & linings good
 wherto he was noe heyre,
 & then⁴ mached him to a gallant dame
 16 as rich as shee was fayre.
- it came to passe in tract of time
 his wealth did ~~soe~~ excell,
 his riches did surpasse them all
 20 *that* in *that* shire did dwell.
- who was ~~soe~~ braue as Banister ?
 or who durst with him contend ?
 which⁵ wold not be desirous still
 24 to be his daylye freind ?

A strange
 true tale I
 tell.

The Duke of
 Buckingham

has a servant

whom he
 enriches,

and marries
 to a gallant
 dame,

so that the
 man is
 very
 wealthy ;

none darre
 strive with
 Banister.

¹ mark.—P.

² write.—P.

³ Only half the *n* in the MS.—F.

⁴ This and 19 other words in different

places are marked in red brackets, for
 omission.—F.

⁵ who.—P.

for then ¹ it came to passe; more woe, alas!
 for ² sorrowes then began;
 for why, the *Master* was constrained ³
 28 to seeke succour of his man.

Richard III.

then Richard the 3^d. swaying the sword,
 cryed himselfe a kinge,⁴

murders
the princes;

32

murthered 2 princes in their bedds,
 which deede great striffe did bringe.

Buckingham
raises a host
to avenge
them;

36

& then the duke of Buckingham,
 hating this bloody deede,
 against the tyrant raysed an Oaste
 of armed men indeed.

40

& when King Richard of this hard tell,
 a mightye Ost he sent
 against the duke of Buckingham,
 his purpose to prevent.

but his men
flee from
Richard's
army,

44

& when the dukes people of this heard tell,
 ffearre filled their hearts eche one;
 many of his souldiers fiedd by night,
 and left him one by one.

and he flees

to Banister

48

in extreme need the Duke tooke a steede,⁵ [page 27
 & posted night and day
 towards Banister his man,
 in secrett there to stay.

to hide him.

52

“O Banister, Sweet Banister!
 pittie thow my cause,” sayes hee,
 “& hyde me from mine⁶ Enemyes
 that here accuseth⁷ mee.”

¹ Now it.—P.² such.—P.³ The M^r. was constrained to seek.
—P.⁴ Himself proclaimed king.—P.⁵ Part of the line pared off the M
—F.⁶ One stroke too few in the MS.—F.
⁷ persueth (in red ink: by Percy
his late hand.—F.)

- 56 "O, you be welcome, my Lord!" hee sayes,
 "your grace is welcome here!
 & as my liffe Ile keepe you safe,
 although it cost me deere!"
- 60 "be true, sweete Banister!" sayes hee,
 O sweete Banister, be true!"
 "christa curse," he sayd, "on me & mine
 if euer I proue ffalse to you!"
- 64 then the Duke cast of his veluett sute,
 his chaine of gold likewise,
 & soe he did his veluett capp,
 to blind the peoples eyes;
- 68 a lethern Ierkyn¹ on his backe,
 & lethern slopps² alsoe,
 a heidging bill vpon his backe,
 & soe into the woods did goe!
- 72 an old felt hat vppon his head,
 with 20 holes therin;
 & soe in labor he spent the time,
 as tho some drudge he had beene.
- 76 & there he liued long vnknownen,
 & still vnknowne might bee,
 till Banister for hope of gaine
 betrayd him Iudaslye.
- 80 for a proclamation there was made,
 'whosoener then cold bringe
 newes of the Duke of Buckingham
 to Richard then our Kinge,

Banister

vows to keep
him safe,"Christ's
curse on
me if I be
fals!"Buckingham
takes off his
velvet
clothes,dresses as a
woodman,and works
away

in safety.

But Richard

¹ Langewor *Jergaon*, an over-coat;
Fr *Jergot*, *Jergot*, a kind of coarse
garment worn by country people. Cot-

grave; in Wedgwood.—F.

² slopps, A kind of open breeches,
trousers. Johnson.—P.

offers 1000
marks

and knight-
hood, for
news of
Bucking-
ham.

‘ a 1000 markes shalbe his ffee
of gold & silver bright,
& then be preferred by his grace,
84 & made a worthy knight.’

Banister
betrays his
master.

& when Banister of *that* heard tell,
straight to the court sent hee,
& soe betrayd his Master good
88 for lucre of *that* ffee.

Buckingham
is seized.

a herald of armes there was sent,
& men with weapons good,
who did attach this noble Duke
92 where he was labouring in the wood.

He re-
proaches
Banister,

“ Ah, ffalse Banister ! a, wreched man !
Ah, Caitiffe ! ” then sayes hee ;
“ haue I maintained thy poore estate
96 to deale thus Iudaslye ?

“ alas *that* euer I beleened
that flattering tounge of thine !
woe worth the time *that* euer I see
100 *that* false Bodye of thine ! ”

but is be-
headed at
Salisbury.

then ffraught with feare & many a teare,
with sorrowes almost dead,
this noble Duke of Buckingham
104 att Salsbury ¹ lost his head.

Banister

is cast into
prison,

then Banister went to the court,
hoping this gold to haue,
but straight in prison hee was cast,
108 & hard his life to ² saue.

¹ query Shrewsbury.—P.

² hard his life could.—P.

small freinds he found in his distresse,
 nor any comfort in his need,
 but euery man reuiled him
 112 [for] this ¹ his trecherous deede.

reviled by
 all,

& then, according to his wishe,
 gods Iudgments did on him fall ;
 his children were consumed quite,
 116 his goods were wasted all ;

and Christ's
 curse falls
 on him :

[page 272]

ffor one of his sones for greeffe Starke madd did fall ; ²
 the other ffor sorrow drowned was
 within a shallow runing streame
 120 where euery man might passe.

one son
 turns mad,
 the other is
 drowned.

his daugter right of bewtye bright,
 to such lewde liffe did fall
 that shée dyed in great miserye ;
 124 & thus they were wasted all.

His daugh-
 ter becomes
 a strumpet.

Old Banister liued long in shame,
 & att the lenght did dye ;
 & thus they Lord did plague them all
 128 ffor this his trecherye.

He liues in
 shame and
 dies.

now god blesse our king & councell graue, ³
 in goodnesse still to proceed ;
 & send euery ⁴ distressed man
 132 a better freind att need !

God send

all in need
 a better
 friend !

ffins.

¹ for this Qu.—P.

² stark mad did fall.—P. This line is
 made two in the MS. Starke begins
 ; 272 —P.

³ Our k^e G^d bless And grant his
 grace —P.

⁴ to each.—P.

Earle Bothwell.¹

THIS ballad is printed in the *Reliques*, vol. ii. pp. 198–200, under the title of “The Murder of the King of Scots.” Percy’s Introduction, p. 197, is as follows:—“The catastrophe of Henry Stewart, lord Darnley, the unfortunate husband of Mary Q. of Scots, is the subject of this ballad. It is here related in that partial imperfect manner, in which such an event would naturally strike the subjects of another kingdom; of which he was a native. Henry appears to have been a vain capricious worthless young man, of weak understanding, and dissolute morals. But the beauty of his person, and the inexperience of his youth, would dispose mankind to treat him with an indulgence, which the cruelty of his murder would afterwards convert into the most tender pity and regret: and then imagination would not fail to adorn his memory with all those virtues, he ought to have possessed. This will account for the extravagant elogium bestowed upon him in the first stanza, &c.

“Henry lord Darnley, was eldest son of the earl of Lennox, by the lady Margaret Douglas, niece of Henry VIII. and daughter of Margaret queen of Scotland by the earl of Angus, whom that princess married after the death of James IV.—Darnley, who had been born and educated in England, was but in his 21st year, when he was married, Feb. 9, 1567–8. This crime was perpetrated by the E. of Bothwell, not out of respect to the memory of David Riccio, but in order to pave the way for his own marriage with the queen.

¹ On the Murther of David Riccio and of *the king of Scotts*. Written while the Queen of Scotts was in England.—P.

"This ballad (printed¹ from the Editor's folio MS.) seems to have been written soon after Mary's escape into England in 1568, see v. 65.—It will be remembered at v. 5, that this princess was Q. dowager of France, having been first married to Francis II, who died Dec. 4, 1560."

WOE: worth thee, woe worth thee, false Scottlande!
 for thou hast euer wrought by a² sleight;
 for³ the worthyest Prince *that* euer was borne,
 4 you hanged vnder a cloud by night!

Woe to you,
 Scotland,
 you've
 hanged the
 best of
 Princes!

the queene of france a letter wrote,
 & sealed itt⁵ with hart and ringe;
 & bade him come Scotland within,
 8 & shee wold marry him⁶ & crowne him King:

Queen Mary
 bade him
 come and
 marry her;

to be a King, itt⁷ is a pleasant thing;
 to bee⁸ a Prince vnto a Peere;
 but you haue heard, & so haue I too,⁹
 12 a man may well by¹⁰ gold to deere.

there was an Italyan in that place,
 was as welbeloved as euer was hee;
 Lord David¹¹ was his name,
 16 chamberlaine¹² vnto the Queene was hee.

but she had
 an insolent
 Chamber-
 laine, Rizzio,

for¹³ if the King had risen forth¹⁴ of his place,
 he wold haue sitt¹⁵ him downe in the cheare,¹⁶
 & tho itt¹⁷ beseeemed him not soe well,
 20 altho the King had beene¹⁸ present there.

¹ S. in 2nd and 3rd editions too:
 "printed with a few corrections," 4th ed.
 - F

² *Rel.* omits these.—F. 4th and 2nd
 and 3rd editions restore too, l. 11.

³ it.—*Rel.* itt. 4th ed.

⁴ he.—*Rel.* bee.—4th ed.

⁵ by P.

⁶ And David Rizzio qu. David Rizzio.
 - P.

⁷ Lord Chamberlaine.—P.

⁸ from. P.

⁹ sate. *Rel.*

¹⁰ i' th' chaire.—*Rel.* in the cheare. -
 4th ed.

¹¹ although it.—*Rel.* And tho itt.—
 4th ed.

¹² And tho . . . were.—P. *Rel.*
 Although . . . had biene.—4th ed.

¹³ And David Rizzio.—*Rel.* Lord David. 4th ed.

and some
Scotch lords

some lords in Scotland waxed wonderous ¹ wroth,
& quarrelld with him for the nonce ² :

I shall you tell ³ how itt beffell ;

stabbed him. 24

12 daggers were in him all ¹ att once.

The Queen
was wroth,

when this queene see the ⁴ Chamberlaine was ¹ slaine,
for him her ⁵ cheeks shee did weete,
& made a vow for a 12 month & a day ⁶

28 the King & shee ⁷ wold not come in one sheete.

and other
Lords

then some of the Lords of Scotland ⁸ waxed wrothe,
& made their vow ⁹ vehementlye,

vowed to
kill the
King.

32 ' for death of the queenes ¹⁰ Chamberlaine ¹¹
the King himselfe he shall dye.' ¹²

they strowed his chamber ouer with gunpowder, ¹³
& layd greene rushes in his way ;

ffor the traitors thought *that* ¹⁴ night

36 the ¹⁵ worthy king for to betray. ¹⁶

to bedd the worthy King made ¹⁷ him bowne ; ¹⁸
to take his rest, *that* ¹⁹ was his desire ;

They set
fire to his
bedroom,

40 he was noe sooner cast on sleepee, ²⁰
but his chamber was on a blasing fyer. ²¹

he jumped
out of
window,

vp he lope, & a glasse ²² window broke ;
he ²³ had 30 foote for to ffall.

¹ *Rel.* omits these.—F.

² ? MS. *noncett*, with *tt* blotted out.—
F. nonce.—*Rel.*

³ And I shall tell.—*Rel.* 4th ed.
omits *And*.

⁴ the queen she saw her.—*Rel.* 4th
ed. omits *she*, and restores *was*.

⁵ [her] fair.—P.

⁶ year & a day.—P.

⁷ shee'd ne'er.—P.

⁸ lords they.—*Rel.*

⁹ [vow] now.—P.

¹⁰ That for the death of the.—*Rel.*
For the death of the queenes.—4th ed.

¹¹ Queen's Lo. Ch^o.—P.

¹² How he, the king himself sh^d dye.
—P. and.—*Rel.* The king himselfe
how he shall dye.—4th ed.

¹³ with Gunpowd^r they strew^d his
room.—P.

¹⁴ very.—P.

¹⁵ this.—*Rel.*

¹⁶ betraye.—*Rel.* betray.—4th ed.

¹⁷ the k^g he made —P.

¹⁸ ready, *paratus*. Lye.—P.

¹⁹ omitted.—*Rel.*

²⁰ sleepe.—*Rel.*

²¹ it was all on fire.—P.

²² and the.—*Rel.*

²³ And.—P.

Lord Bodwell kept a priny wach

44 vnderneath ¹ his castle wall.

"who haue wee ² heere?" sayd Lord Bodwell;

"answer me, now I doe call."³

and was
caught by
Lord
Bothwell,

"King Henery the 8th my vnckle was;

48 some pittie show for his sweet sake!⁴

"Ah, Lord Bodwell! I know thee well;

some pittie on me I pray thee take!"

whom he
prayed for
mercy.

"Ile ⁵ pittie thee as much," he sayd,

52 "& as much favor ⁶ Ile show to thee

But Both-
well would
have none,

As thou had on the Queenes Chamberlaine

[page 273]

that day thou deemedst ⁷ him to dye.⁸"

through halls & towers this ⁹ King they Ledd,

56 through castles & towers ¹⁰ that were hye,¹¹

through an arbor into an orchard,

& there hanged him in a peare tree.¹²

and hanged
him on a
pear-tree.

when the gouernor of Scotland he ¹³ heard tell ¹³

60 that ¹⁴ the worthye king he ¹³ was slaine,

he hath banished ¹⁵ the Queene soe bitterlye

that in Scotland shee dare not remaine;

The Go-
vernor
curst Mary,

¹ all und' &c. P. All underneath.

Rel. Underneath his -- 4th ed.

² we. Rel. wee -- 4th ed.

³ Now answer me that I may know.

Rel.

⁴ For his sweete sake some pittie
etc. w. Rel.

The next two lines Percy has altered

Who haue we here? Lord Bodwell sayd.
Now answer me when I doe speake.—F.

⁵ I. I. Rel.

⁶ fauour. Rel. fauor.—4th ed.

⁷ i. e. doomedst—deem, est opinari,
censere, judicare. Jun.—P. l. 51 is
partly pared off the MS.—F.

⁸ dye.—Rel. die,—with the note
"Pronounced after the northern manner
dee" in ed^s 2, 3, 4.

⁹ the.—P.

¹⁰ thro' towers & castles, &c.—P.

¹¹ hye.—Rel.

¹² There on a pear-tree hangd him
hye.—Rel.

¹³ omitted.—Rel. ¹⁴ how that.—P.

¹⁵ He persued.—Rel. ? banish—ban,
curse.—F.

and she fled
to England,

where she
now is.

64

but shee is fled into Merry England,
& Scotland to aside hath laine ;¹
& through the Queene of Englands good² grace
now in England shee doth remaine.³

ffins.

¹ And here her residence hath tane.
—*Rel.* A change not for the better.
—*F.*

² omitted.—*Rel.*
³ In Engl^d now shee doth remain.
—*P.*

[Those readers (if any) who have looked at the notes will have noticed that the fourth edition of the *Reliques* has restored the reading of the MS. in several places where the first has altered it,—though in others it leaves the changes of the first edition untouched:—thus in lines

First three editions.	Fourth edition and MS.
6. it	<i>is changed into itt</i>
15. And David Riccio	„ Lord David
18. i' th' chaire	„ in the cheare
19. Although it	„ And tho itt
20. And though	„ Altho
23. And I	„ I
25. queene shee	„ queene
25. slaine	„ was slaine
29. wroth	„ wrothe
36. betraye	„ betray
44. All underneath	„ Underneath his
45. we	„ wee
51. hee	„ he
52. favour	„ favor

while in lines 31–32 the manuscript

“for death of the queenes Chamberlaine,
the King himselfe he shall dye,”

which Percy altered in his first edition to
That for the death of the chamberlaine,
How hee, the king himselfe sholde dye,
he changed back in the fourth to,
For the death of the queenes chamber-
laine,
The king himselfe, how he shall die.”

I write *he* changed back, for Mr. David Laing says that a friend of Percy's and his assured him that Percy himself edited the fourth edition of the *Reliques*, and that with great care, though he let his nephew, in the Advertisement to that edition, take the responsibility of it off his own episcopal shoulders, supposed to be burdened with “more important” matters. It is, indeed, evident that the many changes made in the text of the fourth edition must have been carefully considered by Percy, for they are changes of lines sometimes as well as of words.
—*F.*]

Bishophe & Browne.¹

SEE Introduction to *King James & Brown*, vol. i. p. 135.

This piece is printed in the *Reliques*. "The original copy," says Percy, "(preserved in the archives of the Antiquarian Society, London) is entitled, 'A new Ballad, declaring the great treason conspired against the young King of Scots, and how one Andrew Browne, an Englishman, which was the King's Chamberlaine, prevented the same. To the tune of Milfield, or els to Green-sleeves.' At the end is subjoined the name of the author 'W. Elderton.' 'Imprinted at London for Yarathe James, dwelling in Newgate Market, over against Ch. Church,' in black-letter folio."

It is the work of the professional ballad-writer who could "rhyme you so eight years together, dinners and suppers and sleeping-hours excepted"; and it is well-executed work of its sort. The image is fairly well shaped; but there is scarcely a spark of Heaven's fire in it—no breath of life breathed into its nostrils.

It was written, no doubt, rather to give information than entertainment. At a time when there were no newspapers circulating through the country, the ballad was an ordinary vehicle of news. "Marry, they say that *the running stationers of London*, I mean *such as use to sing ballads*, and those that cry malignant pamphlets, &c." (*Knaves are honest men, or More Knaves yet*, apud Collier's *Book of Roxburghe Ballads*.)

¹ N.B. This Copy is very imperfect. See Page 58 & 59 [of MS.]. Stanza the last in that Page [vol. i. p. 141, l. 108-9] is printed, where the subject of this ballad is alluded to.—P.

liques, vol. ii. p. 204, first edition, is the "King of Scots and Andrew Browne." The version there printed contains 15 stanzas, while the present one has only 10, and two of these are incomplete. F.

How sad
that subjects
can't be
true!

IESUS god ! what ¹ greeffe is this
that Princes subiects cannot be true !
but still the devill & ² some of his
4 doth play his part, as plaine is in shew.³

In Scotland

in Scotland dwelles a bony king,
as proper a youth as any can bee ;
hee is giuen to euery happy ⁴ thing
8 that can be in a Prince to see.⁵

King
James's
nurse heard
that he was
to be
poisoned.

on whitsontyde, as itt befell,
a possett was made to giue the King ;
& that his Ladye Nurse heard tell
12 that itt was made a poysoned thing.

She called
for help.

shee cryed, & called pittiouslye,
"helpe ! or else the King must dye !"

Browne
sprang
forward,

& Browne being ⁶ an Englishman,
16 he did heare ⁷ that Ladyes pityous crye ;
but with his sword he besturred him then ;
forth att the dore he thought to flee,

leapt out of
a window,

but euery dore was made full fast ;
20 forth of a window hee lope at last.⁸

met the
Bishop with
the

he mett the Bishopp att the dore,
& with the possett in his hand.
the sight of Browne made the Bishopp agast ;

¹ Out alas ! what a.—*Rel.*

² hath.—*Rel.*

³ Will play their parts, whatsoever
ensue :

Forgetting what a grievous thing
It is to offend the anointed kinge ?
Alas for woe, why should it be so,
This makes a sorrowful heigh ho.

—*Rel.*

The collation after this is not com-
plete.—*F.*

⁴ The *y* is made over an *h* in the MS.
—*F.*

⁵ *Rel.* adds:—

Yet that unluckie countrie still
Hath people given to craftie will,
Alas for woe, &c.

⁶ One Browne that was.—*Rel.*

⁷ And hard.—*Rel.*

⁸ MS. at last lope hee.—*F.* Out of a
window he got at last.—*Rel.*

24 he bade him soe boldleye stay & stand.
 with him were 2 *that* ran awaye
 for feare lest browne shold make a fray.

“Bishopp,” said Browne, “what hast thou there?”

28 “nothing at all, my ffreinde,¹” Quoth hee,
 “but a possett to make the King good cheere.”

poisoned
posset,

“is itt soe?” sayd Browne, “*that* will I see;
 before thou goe any further inn,
 32 of this possett thou shalt begin.”

“Browne,” said the Bishopp, “I know thee well;

thou art a yong man both pore & bare;
 & liuings² of³ thee I shall bestowe;

36 goe thou thy way, & take noe care.”

rejected his
bribes to be
quiet,

“noe!” said Browne, “*that* shall not bee!

Ile not be a traitor for all christentye!

for be itt for wayle,⁴ or for woe be itt,

40 drinke thou off this sorrowfull possett.”

and made

the Bishopp dranke; then by & by

his belly burst, & he ffell downe:

a iust reward for his traitorye.

the Bishop
drink the
posset.
The Bishop
burst and
died.

44 “marry, this was a possett indeed!” sayd Browne.

he searched the Bishopp, & found they Kayes

to goe to the King when he did please.

& when the Kinge heard tell of this,

50 he meekelye fell downe on his knee,

King James
thanked
God,

& thanked god *that* he did misse

then of this false trecherye;

& then he did perceiue & know

52 *that* his clergye wold haue him betraid [so.⁵]

¹ The last *e* is made over an *s* in the

written for weal, welfare, good: written
by the Scots weil, wele.—P.

² Only half the *s* in the MS. — F.

³ *Re!*

⁴ *Re!* inserts another stanza here,
and adds four after the next. — F.

⁵ *Re!* unless it be corruptly

he called the nurse befor his grace,
 & gaue vnto her 20^{tye} pounds [a yeere.]
 doughtye Browne, [i'] the like case,
 he dubbd him *Knight* with gallant cheere,
 bestowed vpon him linings great
 [For dooing such a manly feat.¹]

rewarded
 the nurse,

and knighted 56
 Browne.

ffins.

¹ Last line cut away in the MS.;
 supplied here from the *Rel.*, which adds:
 As he did shoue, to the bishop's woe,
 Which made &c.

and then four more stanzas about a fresh
 attempt to make away with the King.
 —F.

Child Waters.¹

[page 274]

THIS ballad was printed in the *Reliques* from the Folio, with a few "corrections." These amount to the insertion of six new lines, and numerous minor changes. The copy is indeed somewhat mutilated, and needed a little patching to make it presentable to the general reader.

"Several traditional versions," says Professor Child in his *English and Scotch Ballads*, "have since been printed, of which we gave *Burd Ellen* from Jamieson's, and in the Appendix *Lady Margaret* from Kinloch's Collection. Jamieson also furnishes a fragment, and Buchan² (*Ballads of the North of Scotland*, ii. 30) a complete copy of another version of *Burd Ellen*; and Chambers (*Scottish Ballads*, 193) makes up an edition from all the copies, which we mention here because he has taken some lines from a manuscript supplied by Mr. Kinloch."

The love and fidelity of a woman are here tried to the utmost limit. Worse sufferings than are even mentioned in the *Nut-brown Maid*, and in that feeble reflection of it, *A Jigge*, are here verily endured. Certainly "*Burd Ellen*" is the better, more expressive title for the ballad. She is the one centre of interest in it—the one living glory and delight. Child Waters appears but to introduce her—to "bring her out"—to furnish her with an opportunity for displaying her splendid trust and adherence. He must be regarded as, or he is intolerable. This part he performs excellently. He brings Ellen's faithfulness into glorious

¹ A Tread of female Affection not
unlike the Nut-brown Maid—showing
how Child Waters really was Mr. Andrew
Burd's Husbands, & afterwards married
her. It was not necessary to correct
this note for the Press.—P

² This Buchan (whom I once re-
discovered to assist in the printing of
poems for the same work, was
a most daring forger, scarcely anything
that he has published can be trusted to as
genuine.—A. Dyer.

relief. Let this and kindred ballads, then, be accepted as atonements for the light doubting talk men sometimes hold about women.

Be it true or wrong
 These men among
 On women do complaine
 Affermynge this
 How that it is
 A labour spent in vaine
 To love them wele
 For never a dele
 They love a man agayne.
 For lete a man
 Do what he can
 Ther favour to attayne
 Yet yf a newe
 To them pursue
 Ther furst trew lover than
 Laboureth for nought
 And from her thought
 He is a bannished man.

I say not nay
 But that all day
 It is both writ & sayde
 That woman's fayth
 Is as who sayth
 All utterly decayed.

This and kindred ballads show how, in spite of many sad scandals, in spite of suspicions and sneers, the heart of men still nursed and cherished a precious fond belief in the truth of women. Much frivolity there might be,¹ much hypocrisy, much falseness; but ever here and there was one to be found—one who, through good report and through evil, through all extreme distresses and neglects and cruelties, would never withdraw her trust from him to whom once she had given it—would never falsify the vows she had once uttered—would never fail from her true-love's side—*una de multis face nuptiali*

¹ See the ballad in the metre of the Notbrowne Mayd in Mr. Skeat's Preface to *Partenay*, p. ii, (E. E. T. Soc. 1866)

beginning,

masteres anne,
 I am your man.—F.

digna. Such an one is Ellen in this ballad. She illustrates how “many waters cannot quench love, neither can the floods drown it.” She cares nothing for gold and fee; had rather have one kiss of her love’s mouth or one twinkling of his eye than “Cheshire and Lancashire both”; will lay aside her woman’s dress, sacrifice her long yellow locks, endure strange hardships—running barefoot through the broom and struggling through the water—invoke generous blessings on the head of her supposed rival, obey the most trying orders, that she may accompany and please the master of her heart. Her love never hesitates. When, after much ill usage, she gives birth to a child in the stable whither she has gone in the early morning to feed the Child’s horse, she lets no murmur against the author of her miseries escape her.

She said, “Lullaby, my own dear child,
Lullaby, dear child dear!
*I would thy father were a king,
Thy mother laid on a bier.”*

In the end her trust wins its reward.

“Peace now,” he said, “good fair Ellen,
And be of good cheer, I thee pray;
And the bridal and the churking both
They shall be upon one day.”

CHILDE: watters in his stable stoode,
 & stroaket his milke white steede:

to him came a faire young Ladye

as ere did weare ¹ womans wee[de ²];

says, “christ you saue, good Chyld waters!”

sayes, “christ you saue and see!

my girdle of gold which was too longe

is now to short flor mee;

To Childe
Waters

comes fair
Ellen.

says.

¹ ware. P. over ware.—*Red.*

² weed. P

"I am with
child by
you."

" & all is with one¹ chyld of yours,
I feele sturre att my side.
my gowne of greene, it is to strayght ;
12 before it was to wide."

"If so.

take
(Cheshire and
Lancashire, 16

" if the child be mine,² faire Ellen," he sayd,
" be mine, as you tell mee,
take³ you Cheshire & Lancashire both,
take them your owne to bee.

and make
the child
your heir." 20

" if the child be mine, faire Ellen," he said,
" be mine, as you doe sweare,
take you Cheshire & Lancashire both,
& make *that* child your heyre."

" I'd rather
have a kisse

shee saies, " I had rather haue one kisse,
child waters, of thy mouth,
then I wold haue Cheshire & lancashire both,
24 *that* lyes⁴ by north & south.

and a look
from you,
than your
counties."

" & I had rather haue a twinkling,
Child waters, of *your* eye,⁵
then I wold haue Cheshire & Lancashire both,
28 to take them mine oune to bee ! "

He says
he must take
the fairest
lady north
with him.

" to-morrow, Ellen, I must forth ryde
soe ffarr into⁶ the North countrye ;
the fairest Lady *that* I can ffind,
32 Ellen, must goe with mee." ⁷

Ellen asks
to be his
footpage.

" & euer I pray you, Child watters,
your ffootpage let me bee ! "

¹ a.—P.

² Only one stroke for the *m*.—F. be
mine.—P.

³ Then take.—*Rel*.

⁴ lye.—P.

⁵ thine ee.—*Rel*.

⁶ far into.—P.

⁷ The *Reliques* inserts:

Though I am not that ladye fayre,
Yet let me go with thee.—F.

Tho' I am not that fayre Lady,
Yet let me go with thee.—P.

“if you will my ffootpage be, Ellen,
 36 as you doe tell itt mee,
 then you must cutt your gownne of greene
 an inche aboue your knee ;

He agrees,

if she'll cut
her gown

“soe must you doe your yellow lockes,
 40 another inch ¹ aboue your eye ;
 you must tell noe man what is my name ;
 my ffootpage then you shall bee.”

and hair.

all this ² long day Child waters rode,
 44 shee ran bare ffoote ³ by his side ;
 yett was he neuer soe curteous a Knight,
 to say, “Ellen, will you ryde ?”

She runs
barefoot by
his side

but all this day Child waters rode,
 48 shee ran ⁴ barffoote thorow the broome !
 yett he was ⁵ neuer soe curteous a Knight
 as to say, “put on your shoone.”

all day thro'
the broom.

“ride softlye,” shee said,⁶ “Child watters ;
 52 why doe you ryde soe ffast ?
 the child, which is no mans but yours,⁷
 my bodye itt will burst.⁸”

Ride softly,
she says.

he sayes,⁹ “sees thou yonder ¹⁰ water, Ellen,
 56 that fflowes from banke to brim ?”
 “I trust to god, Child waters,” shee said,¹¹
 “you will neuer ¹² see mee swime.”

but when shee came to the waters side,
 60 shee sayled to the Chinne :
 “except the ¹³ Lord of heauen be my speed,
 now must I ¹⁴ learne to swime.”

He makes
her¹ an inch.—P.² Shee all the — *Red.* and omits ‘shee’
in the next line — P.³ Shee all the long day (that) Ch. Wat.
ran barefoot. — P.⁴ Shee all the long day Ch. W. rode.
Ran — P.⁵ was he.—P.⁷ thine.—P.⁹ Hee sayth.—*Red.*¹¹ I trust in God O Child Waters.
—*Red.* ¹² you'll never.—P. not.—P.¹³ but the.—P. Now the.—*Red.* and P.¹⁴ For I must.—*Red.*⁶ O.—P.⁸ burst.—P.¹⁰ yond.—P.

swim thro'
the water.

the salt waters bare vp Ellens ¹ clothes ;
64 our Ladye bare vpp he[r] chinne ;
& Child waters was a woe man,² good Lord,³
to ssee faire Ellen swime.

He shows
her

& when shee ouer the water was,
68 Shee then came to his knee :
he said, "come hither, faire Ellen,
loe yonder what I see !

[page 275]

a hall.

"seest thou not yonder hall, Ellen ?
72 of redd gold shine the yates⁴ ;
theres 24 ffayre ladyes,⁵
the fairest is my wordlye make.⁶

The fairest
girl there is
his bride,

"Seest thou not yonder hall, Ellen ?
76 of redd gold shineth the tower ;
there is ⁷ 24 faire Ladyes,⁸
the fairest is my paramoure."

his para-
mour.

Ellen

"I doe see the hall now, Child waters,
80 *that* of redd gold shineth the yates.⁹
god giue ¹⁰ good then of your selfe,
& of your wordlye make ¹¹ !

wishes him
and his bride
God speed.

"I doe see the hall now, Child waters,
84 *that* of redd gold shineth the tower.
god giue ¹² good then of your selfe
and of your paramoure !"

¹ her.—*Rel.*

² i. e. a woeful man.—*P.*

³ Ch. W. was a woo man good Lord.
—*P.*

⁴ shines [the] gate.—*P.*

⁵ Of twenty foure fayre ladyes there.
—*Rel.* of.—*P.*

⁶ mate : so the rhyme seems to require,
but Make signifies also a Mate, match, or
equal, a familiar companion. from A.-S.

maca, gemaca, par, socius, conjux. Vid.
Jun. Gloss. Sax. Voc.—*P.* *Rel.* omits
'wordlye.'—*F.*

⁷ There are . . . there.—*P.*

⁸ *Rel.* adds 'there.'—*F.*

⁹ yate.—*P.*

¹⁰ [insert] you.—*P.*

¹¹ worthy mate.—*P.*

¹² [insert] you.—*P.*

there were 24 Ladyes,¹
 88 were² playing at the ball;
 & Ellen was³ the fairest Ladye,⁴
 must bring his steed to the stall.

She stables
 his steed,

there were 24 faire Ladyes⁵
 92 was⁶ playing att the Chesse;
 & Ellen shee was⁷ the fairest Ladye,⁸
 must bring his horse to grasse.

and takes it
 to grass.

& then bespake Child waters sister,
 96 &⁹ these were the words said shee;
 "you haue the prettyest footpage, brother,
 that euer I saw¹⁰ with mine eye,

His sister

says that
 his footpage

"but *that* his belly it is soe bigg,
 100 his girdle goes¹¹ wonderous hye;
 & euer I pray you, Child waters,
 let him goe into the Chamber with mee.¹²"

may go to
 her room
 with her.

¹³"it is more meete for a litle footpage
 104 *that* has run through mosse and mire,
 to take his supper vpon his knee
 & sitt downe¹⁴ by the kitchin fyer,
 then to goe into the chamber with any Ladye
 108 that weares soe [rich] attyre.¹⁵"

Childe
 Waters says
 the page had

better sup
 by the
 kitchen fire.

¹ 'were playing' follows and is crossed out. — P. There were 24 faire Ladies there. P. There twenty four ladyes were. *Rel.*

² A. — *Rel.* A. — P.

³ that was, Qu. — P.

⁴ the fayrest ladye there. — *Rel.*

⁵ P. has written *there* at the end.

⁶ *Rel.* omits 'were.'

⁷ P.

⁸ that was, Qu. — P.

⁹ the fayrest ladye there. — *Rel.*

¹⁰ *Rel.* omits &. — P.

¹¹ I did see. — P. I did see. — *Rel.*

¹² is. — P.

¹³ in my chamber lie. — P.

¹⁴ Percy turns the last two lines into another stanza, and prefixes it to the first four: —

It is not fit for a little foot page
 That has run through mosse and
 myre,
 To lye in the chamber of any lady
 That weares soe riche attyre.

¹⁵ And lye. — *Rel.*

¹⁶ rich attyre, Qu. — P.

He sends but when the had supped euery one,
 to bedd they tooke they ¹ way ;
 Ellen he sayd, " come hither, my litle footpage,
 112 hearken what I doe say !

• to hire a prostitute for him " & goe thy downe into ² yonder towne,
 & low into the street ;
 the ffarest Ladye *that* thou can find,
 116 hyer her in mine armes to sleepe,
 and carry her up to him. & take her vp in thine armes ² ³
 for filinge ⁴ of her ffete."

Ellen Ellen is gone into the towne,
 120 & low into the streete :
 hires the woman the fairest Ladye *that* shee cold find,
 shee hyred in his armes to sleepe,
 and carries her up, & tooke her in her armes ²
 124 for filing of her ffete.

and asks to lie at his bed-foot. " I pray you now, good Child waters,
 that I may creepe in att your bedds feete ; ⁵
 for there is noe place about this house
 128 where I may say ⁶ a sleepe."

At daybreak ⁷ this, & itt droue now affterward ⁸
 till itt was neere the day :
 Childe Waters he sayd, " rise vp, my litle ffoote page,
 orders Ellen 132 & giue my steed corne & hay ;
 to feed his steed. & soe doe thou ⁹ the good blacke oates,
 that he may carry me the ¹⁰ better away."

¹ their.—P. they = the.—F.

² thee into.—P. thee downe into.
 —*Rel.*

³ twaino.—*Rel.*

⁴ i. e. for fear of defiling.—P.

⁵ Let me lie at your feet.—P. Let me lye at your feete.—*Rel.*

⁶ Vido Liffe & Death. Pag. 384, lin. 36 ; pag. 390, lin. 453 [of MS.]—P.
 say = essay, try.—F.

⁷ In the *Reliques* a stanza is made of the next two lines :—

Ho gavo her leave, and faire Ellen

Down at his beds feet laye :

This done the nighte drove on a pace,

And when it was neare the daye.—F.

⁸ This done, the night drove on apace.
 —P.

⁹ And give him nowe.—*Rel.*

¹⁰ To carry mee.—*Rel.*

- And vp then rose ¹ faire Ellen, [page 276]
 136 & gane ² his steed corne & hay, She does it,
 & soe shee did on ³ the good blacke oates,
 that he might carry him the better ⁴ away.
 shee layned ⁵ her backe to the Manger side,
 140 & greinouslye did groane ; ⁶ but groans,
 & that beheard his mother deere, for her pains
 and ⁷ heard her make her moane. come on.
 shee said, " rise vp, thou Child waters ! Childe
 144 I thinke thou art a ⁸ cursed man ; Waters's
 for yonder is a ghost in thy ⁹ stable mother
 that greinouslye doth groane, tells him to
 or else some woman laboures of ¹⁰ child, get up,
 148 shee is soe woe begone ! " there's a
 but vp then rose Child waters, ¹¹ ghost in his
 & did on his shirt of silke, stable,
 then he put on his ¹² other clothes or a woman
 152 on his body as white as milke. in labour.
 & when he came to the stable dore, He dresses,
 full still that hee did ¹³ stand, goes to the
 that hee might heare now faire Ellen, stable,
 156 how shee made her monand ¹⁴ : and heare
 shee said, " lullabye, my ¹⁵ owne deere child ! Ellen
 lullabye, deere child, deere ! sing to her
 I wold thy father were a king, child :
 160 thy mother layd on a beere ! would that
 his father
 were a king,
 she dead !

¹ [insert] the.—P. ² to give.—P.

³ *Rel.* omits on.—F.

⁴ to carry him th' bet.—P.

⁵ leaned.—P.

⁶ The *Reliques* inserts and alters thus :

She leaned her back to the manger side

And there shee made her moane,

And that beheard his mother deere,

Shee heard her 'woeful war ;'

Shee sayd, Rise up, thou Childe Waters,

And into thy stable gor.—P.

⁷ she.—P.

⁸ thro a.—P.

⁹ the.—P.

¹⁰ with.—*Rel.*

¹¹ 'soon' is written at the end by P.
F.

¹² and so he did his.—P.

¹³ there did he.—P.

¹⁴ monand, is moaning, i. e. moan. Lyr.

—P.

¹⁵ mine.—*Rel.*

Childe
Waters
promises

to marry
her.

“peace now,” he said, “good faire Ellen !
& be of good cheere, I thee pray ;
& the Bridall, & the churching both,
164 they ¹ shall bee vpon one day.”²
ffins.

¹ *Rel.* omits they.—F.

² In the admiration bestowed on fair Ellen, Enid, and patient Grisild, it is doubtful whether disgust and indignation at their friends' conduct have been suf-

ficiently expressed or felt. Anything more deliberately brutal, I find it hard to conceive. “Cursed man” is surely an epithet well deserved here.—F.

Perhaps the most poetical and finest version of this poem is to be found in Bürger's melodious German ballad, entitled *Graf Walter*, which he professes to have made *nach dem Alt-englischen*, and which follows Percy's edition pretty closely. He has made it into a very pleasing poem, having paraphrased it after his own fashion with great artistic skill.

Bürger concludes thus :

“Sammt deinem Vater schreibe Gott
Dich in sein Segensbuch !
Werd' ihm und dir ein Purpurkleid,
Und mir ein Leichentuch !”

“O nun, O nun, süß, süsse Maid,
Süß, süsse Maid, halt ein !
Mein Busen ist ja nicht von Eis,
Und nicht von Marmelstein.

“O nun, O nun, süß, süsse Maid,
Süß, süsse Maid, halt ein !
Es soll ja Tauf' und Hochzeit nun
In einer Stunde sein.”

He has also translated “King John and the Abbot of Canterbury” as *Der Kaiser und der Abt*, and “The Child of Elle” as *Die Entführung*.—Skeat.

Bessie : off Bednall : ¹

THERE are copies of this ballad in the Roxburghe and the Bagford collections, and in the Collection of Old Ballads. It is printed in the *Reliques* chiefly from the Folio MS. “compared with two ancient printed copies.” It appears in numberless recent collections, as Professor Child’s, Mr. Bell’s *Ballads of the Peasantry*, Mr. Dixon’s *Ancient Poems, Ballads and Songs of the Peasantry of England*. The Folio copy, differing slightly from the current ones, is here printed faithfully for the first time; for the editor of the *Reliques* seems to have thought that to him too, as to painters and poets,

Quidlibet audendi semper fuit æqua potestas,

and freely used his license in the case of this ballad. He was offended by the “absurdities and inconsistencies” of the old version, “which so remarkably prevailed” in that part of the song where the Beggar discovers himself. These were, we suppose, that a Montfort should be spoken of as serving in the wars,

When first our King his fame did advance
And fought for his title in delicate France,

and then that the blinded soldier, when at last he got back to his country, should resign himself to a beggar’s life instead of at once declaring himself and appealing to the royal bounty, if he was possessed of no estate to support him. There seemed no hope of curing such grievous deformities as these; so the whole limb was lopped off, and a new one substituted, manufactured by Robert Dodsley, author of *The Economy of Human Life*. Eight new stanzas were substituted. “By the alteration of a

¹ In the printed collection of Old Ballads, 1726. Vol. 2, p. 202, N. 35.—P.

few lines," says Percy, "the story is rendered much more affecting, and is reconciled to probability and true history." Let those who think it profitable or possible to bring about such a reconciliation be thankful. The copy as now at last reproduced gives one stanza (vv. 228-32) not found in the ordinary versions.

The ballad was certainly not written later than Queen Elizabeth's reign; for, as Percy points out, *Mary Ambree* was sung to the tune of it. One reason for which Percy attributes it to that reign seems odd—because the "Queen's Arms" are mentioned in v. 23!

It was an extremely popular ballad, and no wonder. "This very house," writes Pepys in his Diary, June 25, 1663, of Sir W. Rider's place at Bethnal Green, "was built by the blind Beggar of Bednall Green, so much talked of and sang in ballads; but they say it was only some outhouses of it." (*apud* Mr. Chappell's *Popular Music of the Olden Time*, where the tune is given.) The story is pretty, and is told unaffectedly. Each part has its own surprise: the one revealing the wealth, the other the high birth of the Beggar. These *dénouements* are not supremely noble; but they are such as please the crowd. Such sudden reverses are always delightful. But what a bathos it would seem if, in the ballad of King Cophetua, the Beggar-maid should turn out to be a disguised Princess, or the village maiden, whom the Lord of Burleigh in Mr. Tennyson's poem leads home, a Lady of title! The present ballad is not satisfied to represent Bessie as "pleasant and bright," "of favours most fair," "courteous." It crowns her with vulgarer honours—showers riches on her, and proves her of high lineage.

Regium certe genus et penates
Mæret iniquos.
Crede non illam tibi de scelestâ
Plobe dilectam.

ITT was a blind beggar *that* long lost his sight,
 he had a faire daughter both pleasant & bright,
 & many a gallant braue sutor had shee,
 4 for none was soe comelye as pretty Bessye.

A blind
 beggar had
 a fair
 daughter.

And tho shee was of flavor most faire,
 yett seeing shee was but a beggars heyre,
 of ancyent houskeepers despised was shee,
 8 whose sonnes came as sutors to prettye Bessye.

House-
 holders
 despised her,

Wherefore in great sorrow faire Bessy did say,
 "good ffather & mother, let me goe away
 to seeke out my fortune, where euer itt be."
 12 this suto then they granted to pretty Bessye.

so she

Then Bessye *that* was of bewtye soe bright,
 they cladd in gray russett, & late in the night
 with teares shee lamented her destinye ;
 16 soe sadd & soe heauy was pretty Bessye.

left her
 parents,

Shee went till shee came to Stratford the bow,
 then knew shee not whither nor *which* way to goe ;
 ffrom ffather & mother alone parted shee,
 20 who sighed & sobbed for pretty Bessye.

walkt to
 Stratford,

Shee kept on her Iourney till it was day,
 & went vnto Rumford along the hye way,
 & att the Queenes armes entertained was shee,
 24 soe faire & wellfavoured was pretty Bessye.

stopt at the
 Queen's
 Arma,
 Rumford,

Shee had not beene there a month to an End,
 but Master & Mistress, and all, were her ffreind ;
 & euery braue gallant *that* once did her see,
 28 was straight-way in loue with pretty Bessye.

and all the
 gallants fell
 in love with
 her,

Great gifts they did giue her of siluer & gold,
 & in their songs daylye her loue was extold ;
 her bewtye was blessed in euery degree,
 32 soe faire & soe comlye was pretty Bessye.

sang of her
 beauty,

- The young men of Rumford in her had their Ioy,
 shee showed herseffe curteous, & neuer to coye ;
 and att her commandement wold they [ever] bee,
 36 soe ffayre and soe comly was pretty Bessye.
- Four suitors
 sue her :
 ffowre sutors att once thé vnto her did goe, [page 277]
 thé craved her ffavor, but still shee sayd noe ;
 “ I wold not wish gentlemen marry with mee : ”
 40 yett euer thé honored pretty Bessye.
1. a rich
 London
 Merchant,
 2. a Gentle-
 man,
 44 A merchant of London, whose wealth was not small,
 was there the ffirst sutor, & proper with-all ;
 the 2^d. a genteleman of good degree,
 who wooed & sued ffor pretty Bessye ;
3. a Knight,
 4. the Land-
 lady's son,
 who will die
 for her.
 48 The 3^d. of them was a gallant young Knight,
 & he came vnto her disguised in the night ;
 her Mistress owne sonne the 4. man must bee,
 who swore he wold dye ffor pretty Bessye.
- The Knight
 will make
 her a lady ;
 52 “ And if thou wilt wedd with me,” quoth the Knight,
 “ Ile make thee a Ladye with Ioy [and] delight ;
 my hart is inthralld by thy bowtye !
 then grant me thy ffavor, my pretty Bessye ! ”
- the Gentle-
 man will
 clothe her in
 velvet ;
 56 The gentleman sayd, “ marry with mee ;
 in silke & in veluett my bessye shalbee ;
 my hart lyes distressed ; O helpe me ! ” quoth hee,
 “ & grant me thy Loue, thou pretty Bessye ! ”
- the
 Merchant
 will give her
 jewels.
 60 “ Let me bee thy husband ! ” the Merchant cold say,
 “ thou shalt liue in London both gallant & gay ;
 my shippes shall bring home rych Iewells for thee ;
 & I will ffor euer loue pretty Bessye.”
- Bessy refers
 them to her
 father.
 64 Then Bessye shee sighed, & thus shee did say,
 “ my ffather & mother I meane to obey ;
 ffirst gett their good will, & be ffaithfull to me,
 & you shall enioye your prottye Bessye.”

- To euery one this answer shee made,
 wherfore vnto her they Ioyfullye sayd,
 " this thing to ffulfill wee doe all agree ;
 68 & where dwells thy ffather, my pretty Bessy ? "
- " My ffather," shee said, " is soone to be seene ;
 he is the blind beggar of Bednall greene,
 that daylye sits begging ffor charitye ;
 72 he is the good ffather of pretty Bessye ;
- " his markes & his tokens are knowen ffull well,
 he alwayes is led with a dogg and a bell ;
 a silly blind man, god knoweth, is hee,
 76 yett hee is the good ffather of pretty Bessye."
- " Nay then," quoth the Merchant, " thou art not for
 mee ! " The
Merchant,
- " nor," quoth the Inholder, " my Wiffe thou shalt bee ! " Innkeeper,
 " I lothe," sayd the gentleman, " a beggars degree ;
 80 therffore, ffarwell, my pretty Bessye ! " and Gentle-
man cry off.
- " Why then," quoth the knight, " hap better or worasse,
 I way not true loue by the waight of my pursse,
 & bewtye is bewtye in euery degree,
 84 then welcome to me, my pretty Bessye ! " But the
Knight says

he'll have
Bessy.
- " With thee to thy ffather fforth will I goe."
 " nay sofft," quoth his kinsman, " itt must not be soe ;
 a beggars daughter noe Ladye shalbe ;
 88 therfore take thy due [leauce] of pretty Bessye."
- But soone after this, by breake of the day,
 the knight ffrom Rumfford stole Bessye away.
 the younge men of Rumfford, as thicke as might bee,
 92 rode after to ffetich againe pretty Bessye ; but he
carries off
Bessy.

The Rum-
ford men
- As swift as they winde to ryd they were scene
 vntill they came to Bednall greene ;
 & as the knight lighted most curteouslye,
 96 the ffought against him for pretty Bessye ; overtake
him ;

but he is
rescued.

But rescue speedily came on the plaine,
or else the young knight for his love had beene slaine.
this fray being ended, then straight he did see
100 his kinsman came rayling against pretty Bessye.

The Blind
Beggar

offers to
give his girl
as much
gold as the
Knight's
kin will.

Then spake the blind Beggar, "althoe I be poore,
yett rayle not against my child at my dore;
thoe shee be not decked in veluett & pearle,
104 yett will I dropp angells with you for my girle;
" And then if my gold may better her birthe,
& equall the gold you lay on the earth,
then neyther rayle, nor grudge you to see
108 the blind beggars daughter a Lady to bee.

[page 278]

Agreed.

"Butt first I will heare, & haue itt well Knowen,
the gold *that* you drop shall all be your owne."
with *that* they replied, "contented wee bee."
112 "then here is," quoth the Beggar, "for pretty Bessye."

The Beggar
lays down
angels
against the
Knight's

With *that* an angell he dropped on the ground,
& dropped in angells 500^l
& oftentimes itt was proued most plaine,
116 for the gentlemans one the beggar dropt twayne,

till the
latter's store
is gone,

Soe *that* the place wherin the did sitt,
with gold was couered euery whitt.
the gentleman hauing dropped all his store,
120 said, "Beggar, hold! for wee haue noe more.

and then
gives 100^l.
more.

"Thou hast fulfilled thy promise arright."
"then marry," quoth hee, "my girle to this Knight;
& heere," quoth hee, "Ile throw you downe
124 a 100^l, more to buy her a gowne."

The gentleman *that* all this treasure had seene,
admired the beggar of Bednall greene,
& those *that* were her sutors before,
128 their flesh for verry anger they tore.

Then was faire Bessye mached to the knight,
 & made a Ladye in others despite;
 a ffairer Ladye was neuer scene
 132 then the Beggars daughter of Bednall gree[ne].

So fair Bessy
 is made a
 Lady,

But of their sumptuos marriage & feast,
 & what braue Lords & Knights thither we[r]e prest,
 the 2^d. fitt shall sett to sight,
 136 with marueilous pleasure & wished delight.

and I'll
 tell you all
 about the
 Marriage in
 Fit II.

[Part II.]

140 { Off a blind beggars daughter most bright,
 that late was betrothed vnto a younge Knight,
 all the discourse ther-of you did see :
 but now comes the wedding of pretty Bes[sye].
 2^d parte { within a gallant pallace most braue,
 adorned with all the cost thé cold haue,
 this wedding was kept most sumptuously,
 144 & all ffor the creditt of pretty Bessye.

The wedding

is held in
 a palace,

All kind of daintyes & delicates sweete
 was brought ffor the banquet, as it most mee[t],
 Partridge, plouer, & venison most ffree,
 148 against the braue wedding of pretty Bessye.

and a grand
 banquet is
 made.

This marryage through England was sp[r]ead by
 repor[t],
 soe that a grent number therto did resort
 of nobles & gentles in euery degree ;
 152 & all was ffor the ffame of pretty Bessye.

Nobles and
 gentles come
 to it.

To church then went this gallant younge knight ;
 h[is]s bride ffollowed, an angell most bright,
 with troopes of Ladyes, the like were neuer scene
 156 as went with Sweet Bessye of Bednall greene.

Ladies
 follow
 Bessy to
 church.

After the
marriage,

comes the
feast,

This marryage being solempnized then
with musicke perfourmed by the skillfullest men,
the Nobles & gentles sate downe at *that* tyde,
160 each one beholding the beautifull bryde.

But after the sumptuous dinner was done,
to talke & to reason a number begunn
of the blind Beggars daughter most bright,
164 & what with his daughter he gaue to the Knight.

and then
the Beggar
is asked
for.

Then spake the Nobles, "most marueill haue wee,
this Iolly blind beggar wee cannott here see."
"my Lord," said the Bride, "my father is soe base,
168 he is loth by his presence these states¹ to disgrace;

Bessy's
beauty puts
away his
basenesse.

"The prayse of a woman in questyon to bringe'
before her fface heere, were a flattering thing."
"wee thinke thy ffathers basenesse," quoth they,
172 "might by thy bewtye be cleane put awaye."

So the
Beggar
comes in

They had noe sooner these pleasant words spoke,
but in comes the beggar cladd in a silke cote,
a velluett capp and a ffether had hee,
176 & now a Musityan fforsooth hee wold bee;

with a lute,

And being led in, ffor catching of harme [page 279]
he had a daintye Lute vnder his arme,
saies, "please you to heare any Musicke of mee?
180 Ile sing you [a] song of pretty Bessye."

and sings a
song of

With *that* his lute he twanged straight-way,
& there begann most sweetlye to play,
& after a lesson was playd 2 or 3 :
184 he strayned on this song most delicatelye:

¹ Nobles.—F.

- “ A Beggars daughter did dwell on [a] greene,
 who ffor her faire might well be a queene;
 a blithe bonny Lasse, & dainty, was shee,
 188 & many a one called her pretty Bessye.”
- “ Her ffather hee had noe goods nor noe Lands,
 but begd ¹ for a penny all day with his hand[s];
 yett to her marriage hee gaue thousands 3 :
 192 & still he hath somewatt for pretty Bessye ;
- “ And if any one her birth doe disdaine,
 her ffather is ready with might & with maine
 to proove shee is come of a Noble degree ;
 196 therfore neuer flout att pretty Bessye.”
- With *that* the Lords & the companye round
 with harty Laughter were like to sound.
 att last said the Lords, “ full well wee may see,
 200 the Bride & the Beggar is behouldinge to thee.”
- With that the Bride all blushing did rise
 with the salt water within her faire eyes :
 “ O pardon my ffather, graue Nobles,” quoth shee,
 204 “ *that* thorow blind affection thus doteth on mee.”
- “ If this be thy ffather,” the ² noble[s] did say,
 “ well may he be proud of this happy day ;
 yett by his countenance well may wee see,
 208 his birth & his ffortune did neuer agree ;
- “ And therfor, blind man, I pray thee bewray,
 & looke *that* the truth thou to vs doe say,
 thy birth & thy parentage, what itt may bee,
 212 euen for the loue thou bearest to pretty Bessye.”

the Beggar's
daughter,

Pretty
Bessy,

whose father
gave her
3,000*l.*,

and can
prove she's
of noble
birth.

The Lords
laugh.

Bessy begs
them to
excuse her
father's
praise of her.

The Lords
ask

the Blind
Beggar to
confess who
he really is.

¹ The *g* is made over a *d* in the MS.
—F.

² The *e* is made over a *g* in the MS.
—F.

He tells
them.

“Then giue me leaue, you Gengells¹ eche one,
a song more to sing, then will I goe on ;
& if *that* itt may not winn good report,
216 then doe not giue me a groat for my sport.

With King
Henry.

“When first our King his ffame did Advance,
& fought for his title in delicate ffrance,
in many a place many perills past hee :
220 then was not borne my pretty Bessye.

went to
France
young
Mountford.

“And then in those warres went over to fight
many a braue duke, a Lord, & a Knight,
& with them younge Mountford, his courage most free :
224 but then was not borne my pretty Bessye.

At Blois he
was
wounded,

“Att Bloyes there chanced a terrible day,
where many braue ffrenchmen vpon the ground Lay ;
amonge them Lay Mountford for companye :
228 but then was not borne my pretty Bessye.

lost both
his eyes,
and nearly
his life,
but for a
young
woman

“But there did younge Mountford, by blow on the
face,
loose both his eyes in a very short space ;
& alsoe his liffe had beene gone with his sight,
232 had not a younge woman come forth in the night

who saved
him.

“Amongst the slaine men, as fancy did moue,
to search & to seeke for her owne true loue ;
& seeing young Mountford there gasping to bee,
236 shee saued his liffe through charitye.

Together
they begged ;

came to
Bednall
Greene,

“And then all our vittalls, in Beggars attire [page 290]
att hands of good people wee then did require.
att last into England, as now it is scene,
240 wee came, & remained att Bednall greene ;

¹ Gentles.—F.

“ And thus wee haue liued in ffortunes despite,
 tho¹ poore, yett contented with humble delight ;
 & in my young² yeeres, a comfort to bee,
 244 god sent mee my daughter, pretty Bessye.

and begot
 Pretty
 Bessy.

“ And thus, noble Lords, my song I doe end,
 hoping the same noe man doth offend ;
 full 40 winters thus I haue beene,
 248 a silly blind beggar of Bednall greene.”

That's the
 Beggar's
 tale.

Now when the companye euerye one
 did heare the strange tale in the song he had show[n],
 they were all amazed, as well thó might bee,
 252 both at the blind beggar & pretty Bessye.

The Lords
 wonder.

with *that* he did the sayre bride imbrace,
 saying, “ thou art come of an honourable race ;
 thy ffather likewise of a highe degree,
 256 & thou art well worthy a lady to bee ! ”

The Beggar
 embraces
 Bessy,

Thus was the ffest ended with Ioy & delight ;
 a br[i]degrome [blissful] was the young knight,
 who liued in Ioy & felicitye
 260 with his ffaire Ladye, pretty Bessye.
 ffins.

and she and
 her Knight
 live happily.

¹ MS. the. - F.

² ? old.—F.

Hugh : Spencer : ¹

[His great atchievements on an Embassy to france.—P.]

THIS piece is now printed from the Folio for the first time. It is no very considerable addition to English literature. It gives, with average dulness, a ridiculously bragging account of the achievements of one Sir Hugh Spencer at the court of France, whither he was dispatched as ambassador—a truly Philistine piece, such as might have been told at Gath or published at Askalon. There does not seem to be any historical ground for it. Not even the most triumphant English history of England contains any account of the terrifying a French king into promises of peace by the prowess of an English ambassador, as here happens when Spencer, with four others, manages to kill “about two or three score” of the King’s guards (p. 295, l. 134), after having slain “13 or 14 score on a previous occasion (p. 294, l. 122). The piece is, indeed, nothing better than a tissue of coarse English braggadocio. An English “old hackney” outvalues any one of a French knight’s war-steeds. An English staff is as stout as three French spears bound together. And as for an English man, why he is good for a French host. What a vulgar Philistine was this ballad-monger!

The King tells Sir H. Spencer	4	<p style="text-align: center;">THE: Court is kept att leene London, & euermore shall be itt; the <i>King</i> sent for a bold Embassador, & Sir Hugh Spencer <i>that</i> he hight.</p>
-------------------------------------	---	--

¹ The subject of this Ballad seems to be all-together fabulous.—P.

"come hither, Spencer," saith our Kinge,

"& come thou hither vnto mee,

I must make thee an Embassadour

8 betweene the King of ffraunce & mee.

to go to the
King of
France,

"thou must comend me to the King of ffraunce,

& tell him thus & now ffrom mee,

'I wold know whether there shold be peace in his land,

12 or open warr kept still must bee.'

and ask him
whether he's
for peace or
war.

"thoust haue thy shipp at thy comande,

thoust neither want for gold nor ffee,

thoust haue a 100 armed men

16 all att thy bidding ffor to bee."

they ¹ wind itt serued, & they sayled,

& towards ffraunce thus they be gone ;

they ¹ wind did bring them safe to shore,

20 & safelye Landed euerye one.

Spencer and
his men

land in
France.

the ffrenchmen lay on the castle wall ²

the English souldiers to be-hold :

"you are welcome, traitors, out of England ;

24 the heads of you are bought and sold !"

count on
their heads.

with *that* spake proud Spencer,

"my leege, soe itt may not bee !

I am sent an Embassador

28 ffrom our English King to yee.

Spencer says
he

comes from
the English
King

"the King of England greetes you well,

& hath sent this word by mee ;

he wold know whether there shold be peace in your

Land,

32 or open warres kept still must bee."

to ask
whether it's
to be peace
or war.

¹ the. — P. ² There is a tag at the end of this word in the MS. — P.

War, says
the French
King ;

“ Comend me to the English Kinge,
& tell this now ffrom mee ;
There shall neuer peace be kept in my Land [page 291]
36 while open warres kept there may bee.”

and his
Queen

sneers at
him for
talking to
English
traitors.

with *that* came downe the Queene of ffrance,
and an angry woman then was shee ;
saies, “ itt had beene as ffit now for a King
40 to be in his chamber with his ladye,
then to be pleading with traitors out of England
kneeling low vppon their knee.”

Spencer

calls her a
liar.

But then bespake him proud Spencer,
44 for noe man else durst speake but hee :
“ you haue not wiped your mouth, Madam,
since I heard you tell a lye.”

She dares
him to fight
her knight.

“ O hold thy tounge, Spencer ! ” shee said,
48 “ I doe not come to plead with thee ;
darest thou ryde a course of warr
with a knight *that* I shall put to thee ? ”

Spencer says
he has

neither
armour nor
steed.

“ but euer alacke ! ” then Spencer sayd,
52 “ I thinke I haue deserued gods cursse ;
ffor I haue not any armour heere,
nor yett I haue noe lusting horsse.”

The Queen
tells him he's
too spindle-
shanked,

“ thy shankes,” quoth shee, “ beneath the knee
56 are verry small aboue the shinne
ffor to doe any such honourablle deeds
as the Englishmen say thou has done.

and too
small-
thighed

for a
jouster.

“ thy shankes beene small aboue thy shoone,
60 & soe thé beene aboue thy knee ;
thou art to slender euery way,
any good luster ffor to bee.”

“but euer alacke,” said Spencer then,
 64 “for one steed of the English countrye!”
 with *that* bespake & one ffrench knight,
 “this day thoust haue the Choyce of 3:”

the first steed he ffeiched out,
 68 I-wis he was milke white.
 the ffirst ffoot Spencer in stirropp sett,¹
 his backe did from his belly type.²

the 2^d steed *that* he ffeicht out,
 72 I-wis³ *that* hee was verry Browne;
 the 2^d ffoot Spencer in stirropp settt,
that horsse & man and all fell downe.

the 3^d steed *that* hee ffeichted out,
 76 I-wis *that* he was verry blacke;
 the 3^d ffoote Spencer into the stirropp sett,
 he leaped on to the geldings backe.

“but euer alacke,” said Spencer then,
 80 “for one good steed of the English countrye!”
 goe ffeitch me hither my old hacneye
that I brought with me hither beyond the sea.”

A French knight offers him one of three steeds:

1. a white

(whose back breaks?),

2. a brown

(who tumbles down),

3. a black

which Spencer jumps on,

but soon calls for his old English hack,

and hopes to win the fight with him.

but when his hackney there was brought,
 84 Spencer a merry man there was hee;
 saies, “with the grace of god & St. George of England,
 the ffield this day shall goe with mee!”

“I haue not fforgotten,” Spencer sayd,
 88 “since there was ffield foughten att walsingam,
 when the horsse did heare the trumpetts sound,
 he did beare ore both horsse & man.”

¹ There is a curl between the *e* and *t* in the MS.—F.

² ? MS. *type*, with the *t* crossed at top no doubt for *type*, quickly, or Sc. *type* to snatch, draw suddenly, Du. *tijden*

to draw, goe.—F.

³ As the *I wis* is followed by *that*, it may mean here ‘I know,’ and not be the adverb ‘certainly.’—F.

The ioust
begins;

the day was sett, & togetther they mett
92 with great mirth & melodye,
with minstrells playing & trampetts soundinge,
with drumes striking loud & hye.

Spencer
breaks his
French spear
on his
opponent;

the ffirst race that spencer run,
96 I-wis hee run itt wonderous sore;
he [hit] the knight vpon his brest,
but his speare itt burst, & wold touch noe more.

asks for an
English one,

“but ener alacke,” said Spencer then,
100 “for one staffe of the English cuntrye!
without youle bind me 3 together,”
quoth hee, “theyle be to weake ffor mee.”

[page 282]

with *that* bespake him the ffrench Knight,
104 sayes, “bind him together the whole 30^{we},
for I haue more strenght in my to hands
then is in all Spencers bodye.”

and bets the
Frenchman
five to four
he'll beat
him.

“but proue att parting,” spencer sayes,
108 “ffrench Knight, here I tell itt thee,
for I will lay thee 5 to 4
the bigger man I proue to bee.”

So they ioust
again,

but the day was sett, & together they mett
112 with great mirth & melodye,
with minstrells playing & trumpetts soundinge,
with drummes strikeing loud & hye.

and Spencer

the 2^d race *that* Spencer run,
116 I-wis hee ridd itt in much pride,
& he hitt the Knight vpon the brest,
& draue him ore his horsse beside.

unhorsas the
French
knight,

but he run thorrow the ffrench campe;
120 such a race was neuer run beffore;
he killed of *King* Charles his men
att hand of 13 or 14 score.

kills about
280 men,

but he came backe againe to the K[ing]

- 124 & kneeled him downe vpon his knee,
saies, "a knight I haue slaine, & a steed I haue woone,
the best *that* is in this countrie."

and tells
King
Charles of
it.

- "but nay, by my faith," said the King,
128 "Spencer, soe itt shall not bee;
He haue *that* traitors head of thine
to enter plea att my lollye."

Charles says
he'll haue
his head.

- but Spencer looket him once about;
132 he had true bretheren left but 4:
he killed ther of ¹ the Kings gard
about 2 or 3 score.

Spencer
and his men
kill fifty of
the King's
Guard.

- "but hold thy hands," the King doth say,
136 "Spencer! now I doe pray thee;
& I will goe into litle England,
vnto *that* cruell Kinge with thee."

Charles
prays him
to stop,

and offers
to go to
England.

- "Nay, by my faith," Spencer sayd,
140 "my leege, for soe itt shall not bee;
for on² you sett³ ffoot on English ground,
you shall be hanged vpon a tree."

Spencer
refuses this.

- "why then, comend [me] to *that* English Kinge,
144 & tell him thus now ffrom mee,
that there shall neuer be open warres kept in my Land
whilst peace kept *that* there may bee."
flins.

Then
Charles
promises
peace.

¹ MS. therof.—F. ² on = an, if.—F. ³ ? MS. scitt or settt.—F.

Kinge : Adler : ¹

THIS Adler may be the same with that one who appears in the ballad of *King Estmere*. As that ballad narrates the marriage of the elder brother Estmere, and how the younger Adler assisted to bring it about, so here the younger brother's wooing and winning are described, and how Estmere promoted them. Perhaps the lost second line made mention of Estmere. There seems to be an error in the eleventh verse: Estmere there should be Ardine. Both brothers are somewhat fastidious in their conjugal tastes. "I know not," says Estmere in the ballad dedicated to him in the *Reliques*,

"I know not that ladye in any lande
That is able to marry with mee."

And here Adler insists on a wife silk-soft, milk-white, lithe and lissome.

In this ballad the comic element predominates. The narrative is humorous, and so is the narration. The piece reads like a nursery tale, as Mr. Furnivall suggests in the note.

King Adler

KINGE: Adler, as hee in his window Lay,

[unto a stranger knight he did say,]

"I wold my lands they were as broada

4 as the red rose is in my garden :

describes the
wife he
wants.

there were not that woman this day aline,

I kept to bee my wedded wiffe,

without thé ² were as white as any milke

8 or as soft as any silke,

¹ Poor stuff.—P. No doubt meant for a nursery tale.—F.

² she.—F.

- & they royall rich wine ran downe her brest bone,
 & lord ! shee were & a leath ¹ maiden."
- "but Estmere our *King* has a daughter soe younge ;
- 12 god Lord ! shees as soft as any silke,
 & as white as any milke,
 the royall rich wine runes downe her brest bone,
 & lord ! shee is a leath maiden."
- 16 "but will you goe vnto *King* Ardine,
 & will *that* faire Lady *that* shee wilbe mine ? "
- Hee tooke the flood, & the winde was good, [page 283]
 vntill hee came vnto *that* Kings hall.
- 20 he grett them well both great & small :
 "Kinge Adler hath sent me hither to thee,
 & wills thy fayre daughter, shee will his bee."
 he sayes, "if *King* Adler will my daughter winne,
- 24 of another manner he must begin :
 ifaith he shall bring Lords to the Mold,
 100 Shippes of good red gold,
 100 Shippes of Ladyes on the moure,
 28 100 Shippes of wheat bouted flower,
 100 Shippes of Ladyes bright,
 100 Shippes of new dubbed knights.
 yett he shall doe *that* is more pine,
- 32 he shall take the salt sea & turne itt to red wine ;
 when hee has done all these deeds,
 then my faire daughter shalbe his ;
 but I haue sett her on such a pinn,²
- 36 *King* Adler shall her neuer winne."
 he tooke the flood, & they wind was good,
 & neuer stayd in noe stead
 vntill he came to Kinge Adlers hall.
- 40 he greeted them well both great & small,

A stranger
says his
king has the
daughter to
suit Adler.

"Will you
go and ask
for her, for
me ? "

The man
goes and
asks.

King
Estmere or
Ardine

recounts
what ship-
loads of
things Adler
must first
bring him,

and then
turn the sea
to red wine.

Adler's
messenger
returns

¹ *Leath*, soft, supple, limber, pliant,
 Denbighshire, in Halliwell's Gloss
 Leath = F.

² ? high point, station, or 'fancy.

humour,' as in 'Each sett on a mery
 pin,' *Fryar & Boye*, l. 484, Lo. and Hum.
 Songs, p. 28.—F.

- and gives
him
- saies " I haue beene att yonder Kings place
to speake with his daughter fayre of face ;
he sayes, if you will his daughter winne,
44 of another manner you must begin :
you must bring lords to the mold,
100 Shippes of good redd gold,
100 Shippes of Ladyes of the moure,
48 100 Shippes of wheat boulted flower,
100 Shippes of Ladyes bright,
100 Shippes of new dubdd knights ;
and then
turn the sea
into wine.
- 52 & yett you must doe *that* is more pine,
take the salt sea & turne it to red wine ;
but he hath sett her on such a pinne
that you can her neuer winne."
- Adler says
- 56 " some thing you must doe for mee,
I tell you all in veretye ;
in Ladyes [clothes ¹] will yee mee bowne,
& bring mee to *that* Ladyes towne,
& boaird me there one yeere or towe
60 amongst those Ladyes for to ² goe,
& board ³ me there yeeres 2 or 3 :
amongst those faire Ladyes for to bee."
- His
messenger
takes him,
- 64 he tooke the fflood, & the wind was good,
& he neuer stayd nor stooode
vntill he came to *that* Ladyes hall :
he greeted them well both great & small,
sayes, " heere I haue brought a fayre Ladye ;
68 from her owne ffreinds shee is comen to bee ;
I must board her a yeere or tow
amongst your Ladyes for to goe."
these Ladyes sate all on a rowe ;
72 some began to cut silke, some for to sowe ;
- and tells
Estmere he
has brought
a lady to
board among
his ladies.

¹ clothes, qu.—P.

² a *K*, seemingly marked out, stands
between *to* and *goe*.—F.

³ Mr. Gee, in his *Vocabulary of 1*
Words, gives *board* v. n. lodge, as early as
1390 A.D.—F.

the Kings daughter sayes, "your ffingars are too
 great,
 or else your eyes beene out of seat,—
 I tell you full soone anon,—
 76 to sowe silke or Lay gold on."
 but ere the 12 moneth was come & gone
 he wan the farrest Ladye of euerye one.
 the cast the lot, & one by one,
 80 & all the Ladyes euerye one
 they cast it ouer 2 or 3:
 King Adler fell with the Kings daughter to lye.
 but when they were in bedd Laid,
 84 these words vnto her then heo said;
 saies, "Lady, were *that* man this day aline
 that you wold be his wedded wiffe,
 & were *that* man soe highlye borne
 88 that you wold be his hend lemman?"
 "there is noe man this day aline
 I kept to be his wedded wiffe,
 without itt were King Adler, hee,
 92 the noblest Knight in Christentye.
 my father hath sett me on such a pinne,¹
 King Adler must me neuer winne."
 "but, Ladye, how & ² soe betyde
 96 King Adler were in your bed hidd?
 wold you not call them all att a stowre,
 none of the Ladyes within your bower?
 nor wold you not call them all at a call,
 100 none of the Lords in your fathers hall?
 nor wold you not call them all by-deene,
 your ffather the King, nor your mother the queene?
 but soe quickly you wold gett you bowne,
 104 to goe with King Adler out of the towne?"
 saies shee, "if itt wold soe betyde
 King Adler were in my bed hidd,

The Princess
tells Adler
his fingers
are too big.

One night
they cast
lots for bed-
fellows,

[page 284]

and Adler
wins the
Princess.

He asks her
whom she'd
like to
marry.

"King
Adler."

"Suppose he
were in your
bed,

would you
wake up
your ladies

and the
King and
Queen, or
elope with
Adler?"

¹ MS. pine.—F.

² an, if.—F.

she would
go off with
Adler.

I wold not call them all in stowre,
108 none of the Ladyes in my bower;
nor I wold not call them all att a call,
none of the Lords in my fathers hall;
nor I wold not call them all by-deenee,
112 my ffather the King, nor my mother the Queene;
but see quicklȳe I wold gett me bowne
to goe with King Adler out of the towne."

but would
go off with
Adler.

Adler
discovers
himself,

"but turne thee, Ladye, hither to mee!
116 for I am the K^{ing} that speakes to thee!"
"alacke! King Adler! I shall catch cold,
for I can neuer tread on the mold,
but vpon rich cloth of gold
120 that is 5 thousand fold."

carries his
love off
under his
arm, and
siles away
home.

"peace, faire Lady! youst catch noe harme,¹
for I will carry you vnder mine arme."
he tooke the fflood, & the winde was good,
124 & he neuer stinted nor stood
vntill he came to his owne hall;
he greeted them well both great & small.
god send vs all to be well, & none to be woe,
May we all
prosper till
men wed so! 128 vntill they wine their true loue soe!

ffins.

¹ harme in MS.—F.

Down the left margin of this p. 284
of the MS. is written:

*my sweet brother sweet Cous Edward
Revell Booke Elizabeth Revell.*

And in the same hand are written on the
right of verse 3 of "Boy and Mantle"
the sam and f kenerey.—F.

Boy and Mantle.¹

THIS ballad was printed by Professor Child as the first in his *English and Scottish Ballads*, under the title of "The Boy and the Mantle," with the following Introduction:—

No incident is more common in romantic fiction, than the employment of some magical contrivance as a test of conjugal fidelity, or of constancy in love. In some romances of the Round Table, and tales founded upon them, this experiment is performed by means either of an enchanted horn, of such properties that no dishonoured husband or unfaithful wife can drink from it without spilling, or of a mantle which will fit none but chaste women. The earliest known instances of the use of these ordeals are afforded by the *Lai du Corn*, by Robert Bikez, a French minstrel of the twelfth or thirteenth century, and the *Fabliau du Mantel Mautailé*, which, in the opinion of a competent critic, dates from the second half of the thirteenth century, and is only the older lay worked up into a new shape. (Wolf, *Ueber die Lais*, 327, sq., 342, sq.) We are not to suppose, however, that either of these pieces presents us with the primitive form of this humorous invention. Robert Bikez tells us that he learned his story from an abbot, and that "noble ecclesiast" stood but one further back in a line of tradition which curiosity will never follow to its source. We shall content ourselves with noticing the most remarkable cases of the use of these and similar talismans in imaginative literature.

In the *Roman de Tristan*, a composition of unknown anti-

¹ This seems to have furnished the
Hint of Florimel's Girdle to Spenser.

Lib. 4. Cant. 2. St. 25 seq. Lib. 5.
Cant. 5.—P.

quity, the frailty of nearly all the ladies at the court of King Marc is exposed by their essaying a draught from the marvellous horn, (see the English *Morte Arthur*, Southey's ed. i. 297). In the *Roman de Perceval*, the knights, as well as the ladies, undergo this probation. From some one of the chivalrous romances Ariosto adopted the wonderful vessel into his *Orlando*, (xlii. 102, sq., xliii. 31, sq.,) and upon his narrative La Fontaine founded the tale and the comedy of *La Coupe Enchantée*. In German, we have two versions of the same story,—one, an episode in the *Krone* of Heinrich vom Türlein, thought to have been borrowed from the *Perceval* of Chrétien de Troyes, (*Die Sage vom Zauberbecher*, in Wolf, *Ueber die Lais*, 378,) and another, which we have not seen, in Bruns, *Beiträge zur kritischen Bearbeitung alter Handschriften*, ii. 139; while in English, it is represented by the highly amusing “bowrd,” which we are about to print, and which we have called *The Horn of King Arthur*.¹ The forms of the tale of the mantle are not so numerous. The *fabliau* already mentioned was reduced to prose in the sixteenth century, and published at Lyons, (in 1577,) as *Le Manteau mal taillé*, (Legrand's *Fabliaux*, 3rd ed. i. 126,) and under this title, or that of *Le Court Mantel*, is very well known. An old fragment (*Der Mantel*) is given in Haupt and Hoffmann's *Altdutsche Blätter*, ii. 217, and the story is also in Bruns' *Beiträge*. Lastly, we find the legends of the horn and the mantle united, as in the German ballad *Die Ausgleichung*, (*Des Knaben Wunderhorn*, i. 389,) and in the English ballad of *The Boy and the Mantle*, where a magical knife is added to the other curiosities. All three of these, by the way, are claimed by the Welsh as a part of the *insignia* of Ancient Britain, and the special property of Tegau Eurvron, the wife of Caradog with the strong arm. (Jones, *Bardic Museum*, p. 49.)

In other departments of romance, many other objects are

¹ Child's Ballads, i. 17–27, from MS. Ashmole 61, fol. 59–62.

endowed with the same or an analogous virtue. In Indian and Persian story, the test of innocence is a red lotus-flower; in *Amelia*, a garland, which fades on the brow of the unfaithful; in *Perceforest*, a rose. The *Lady of the Rose* in *Perceforest* is the original (according to Schmidt) of the much-praised tale of Seneci, *Camille, ou la Manière de gler le parfait Amour*, (1695),—in which a magician presents a jealous husband with a portrait in wax, that will indicate by change of colour the infidelity of his wife, and suggested the same device in the twenty-first novel of Bandello, (Part First,) on the translation of which in Painter's *Palace of Pleasure*, (vol. iv. No. 28,) Massinger founded his play of *The Picture*. Again, in the tale of Zeyn Alnasir and the King of the Geni, in the *Arabian Nights*, the means of proof is a mirror, that reflects only the image of a spotless maiden; in that of the carpenter and the king's daughter, in the *Gesta Romanorum*, (c. 69,) a shirt, which remains clean and whole as long as both parties are true; in *Palmerin of England*, a cup of tears, which becomes dark in the hands of an inconstant lover; in the *Fairy Queen*, the famous girdle of Florisel; in *Horn and Renard* (Ritson, *Miscell. Romances*, iii. 301,) as well as in one or two ballads in this collection [ed. Child], the stem of a ring; in a German ballad, *Die Krone der Königin von Anou*, Erlach, *Volkslieder, &c. Deutschland*, i. 132,) a golden crown, that will fit the head of no inconstant husband. Without pretending to exhaust the subject, we may add three instances of a different kind: the Valley in the romance of *Lancelot*, which being entered by a faithless lover

[illegible]

The English will hold here
 And yet the English will
 The English will hold here
 And yet the English will
 The English will hold here
 And yet the English will
 The English will hold here
 And yet the English will

would hold him imprisoned forever; the Cave in *Amadis of Gaul*, from which the disloyal were driven by torrents of flame; and the Well in *Horn and Rimnild*, (*ibid.*) which was to show the shadow of Horn, if he proved false.

In conclusion, we will barely allude to the singular anecdote related by Herodotus, (ii. 111,) of Phero, the son of Sesostris, in which the experience of King Marc and King Arthur is so curiously anticipated. In the early ages, as Dunlop has remarked, some experiment for ascertaining the fidelity of women, in defect of evidence, seems really to have been resorted to. "By the Levitical law," (*Numbers v. 11-31*,) continues that accurate writer, "there was prescribed a mode of trial, which consisted in the suspected person drinking water in the tabernacle. The mythological fable of the trial by the Stygian fountain, which disgraced the guilty by the waters rising so as to cover the laurel wreath of the unchaste female who dared the examination, probably had its origin in some of the early institutions of Greece or Egypt. Hence the notion was adopted in the Greek romances, the heroines of which were invariably subjected to a magical test of this nature, which is one of the few particulars in which any similarity of incident can be traced between the Greek novels and the romances of chivalry." See DUNLOP, *History of Fiction*, London, 1814, i. 239, sq.; LEGRAND, *Fabliaux*, 3d ed., i. 149, sq., 161; SCHMIDT, *Jahrbücher der Literatur*, xxix. 121; WOLF, *Ueber die Lais*, 174-177; and, above all, GRAESSE'S *Sagenkreise des Mittelalters*, 185, sq.

The Boy and the Mantle was [said to be] "printed verbatim" from the Percy MS., in the *Reliques of Ancient English Poetry*, iii. 38.

A boy comes
to Carlisle

IN the third day of May,
to Carleile did come
a kind curteous child
4 that cold much of wisdome.

- a kirtle & a Mantle
 this Child had vppon,
 with brauches ¹ and ringes,
 8 full richelye bedone. richly
dressed and
jewelled.
- he had a sute of silke
 about his middle drawne ;
 without he cold ² of curtesye,
 12 he thought itt much shame.
- “god speed thee, *King* Arthur,
 sitting att thy meate!
 & the goodlye Queene Gueneuer!
 16 I canott her fforgett. He greets
Arthur

and
Guenevere, .
- “I tell you Lords in this hall,
 I hett you all heate,³ [page 305]
 except you be the more surer
 20 is you for to dread.”
- he plucked out of his potewer,⁴ and pulls
out of his
bag
 & longer wold not dwell,
 he pulled forth a pretty mantle a mantle
 24 betweene 2 nut-shells.
- “haue thou here *King* Arthure,
 haue thou heere of mee ;
 giue itt to thy comely queene
 28 shapen as itt is alreadye ; which he
tells Arthur

to give to
Guenevere.
- “itt shall neuer become *that* wiffe
that hath once done amisse.”
 then euery Knight in the *Kings* court
 32 began to care for his wiffe.⁵

¹ Branches.—P. ? MS. branches. F.

² know.—F.

³ heed, qu.—P. heede.—*Ed.* hee,
 premier.—F.

⁴ See pag. 352, ver. 98 [potewere in

Sir Degree.)]—P. potewer.—*Ed.* The
 first syllable must be *porte*, carry.—F.

⁵ began to care for his.—P. ? care in
 MS.—F

Guenevere forth came dame Gueneuer;
 takes it. to the mantle shee her biled ¹ :
 the Ladye shee was new fangle,²
 36 but yett shee was affrayd.

 when shee had taken the Mantle,
 shee stoode as she had beene madd :
 It tears in it was from the top to the toe
 two, 40 as sheeres had itt shread.³

 and changes one while was itt gaule,⁴
 colour. another while was itt greene,
 another while was itt wadded,—
 44 ill itt did her beseeme,—

 another while was it blacke
 & bore the worst hue.
 Arthur “by my troth,” quoth King Arthur,
 thinks she is 48 “I thinke thou be not true.”
 not true.

 Guenevere shee threw downe the mantle
 that bright was of blee.⁵
 rushes off fast with a rudd ⁶ redd
 blushing, 52 to her chamber can shee flee;

 curses the shee curst the weaner & the walker⁷
 mantle- that clothe *that* had wrought,
 maker & bade a vengeance on his crowne

 and the 56 that hither hath itt brought;
 child,

 and says “I had rather be in a wood
 she'd rather vnder a greene tree,
 be in a wood then in King Arthurs court
 than 60 shamed for to bee.”
 shamed.

¹ Query the *le* in the MS.—F. hied.
—*Rel.*

² *new fangle* is fond of a new thing,
catching at novelties, ab. A.-S. *fangan*,
apprehendere, capere, corripere, hinc
fang, Gloss. ad G. D.—P.

³ i. e. divided.—P.

⁴ gule, qu.—P. red.—F.

⁵ colour, complexion, *bleak*—ider
Saxon.—P.

⁶ Complexion.—P.

⁷ Fuller, Jun.—P. A.-S. *wealere*.—]

Kay called forth his ladye,
 & bade her come neere;
 saies, "madam, & thou be guiltye,
 64 I pray thee hold thee there."

Kay calls
 forth his
 wife.

forth came his Ladye
 shortlye & anon;
 boldlye to the Mantle
 68 then is shee gone.

She tries the
 mantle,

when she had tane the Mantle
 & cast it her about,
 then was shee bare
 72 all aboue the Buttocckes.¹

but it leaves
 her buttocks
 bare.

then euery Knight
 that was in the Kings court
 talked, laug[h]ed, & showted,
 76 full oft att that sport.

shee threw downe the mantle
 that bright was of blee:
 fast with a red rudd
 80 to her chamber can shee flee.

She runs off
 with a red
 face.

forth came an old Knight
 pattering² ore a crede,
 & he preferred to this litle boy
 84 20 markes to his meede,

An old
 knight offers
 the boy a
 reward

& all the time of the Christmase
 willingglye to fiede;
 for why this Mantle might
 88 doe his wiffe some need.

to try it on
 his wife.

¹ Before all the rest. *Id.*

² pattering, *obstruere murmur humilibus*
occurre hypocritarum iustar, coram
patre precalas funder.—Junius. They

say in Shropshire to *patter*, i. e. to make
 a noise, as when one rubs the feet
 against the ground, & scratches.—P.

- She takes it, When shee had tane the mantle [page
 of cloth *that* was made,
 and has only shee had no more left on her
 a tassell and 92 but a tassell & a threed.
 thread on then euery Knight in the Kings court
 her. bade "euill might shee speed."

 She rushes shee threw downe the Mantle
 off shamed. 96 *that* bright was of blee,
 & fast with a redd rudd
 to her chamber can shee flee.

 Craddock Craddocke called forth his Ladye,
 tells his wife 100 & bade her come in ;
 to try saith, "winne this mantle, Ladye,
 with a litle dinne :

 and win the "winne this mantle, Ladye,
 mantle. 104 & it shalbe thine
 if thou neuer did amisse
 since thou wast mine."

 She comes, forth came Craddockes Ladye
 108 shortlye & anon,
 but boldlye to the Mantle
 then is shee gone.

 puts it on ; when shee had tane the mantle
 112 & cast itt her about,
 it begins to vpp att her great toe
 crinkle up. itt began to crinkle¹ & crowt ;
 shee said "bowe downe, Mantle,
 116 & shame me not for nought ;

¹ to crinkle, to go in & out, to run in flexures ; from *krinckelen Belg.* Johnson. —P. *Crout*, a variant of *crowd*, to close together.—F.

- “once I did amisse,
 I tell you certainlye,
 when I kist Craddockes mouth
 120 Vnder a greene tree,
 when I kist Craddockes mouth
 before he marryed mee.”
 when shee had her shreeuen,¹
 124 & her sines shee had tolde,
 the mantle stoode about her
 right as shee wold,
 seemelye of coulour,
 128 glittering like gold.
 then euery Knight in Arthurs court
 did her behold.
 then spake dame Gueneuer
 132 to Arthur our King,
 “she hath tane yonder mantle,
 not with wright² but with wronge!
 “see you not yonder woman
 136 that maketh her selfe see cleare³?
 I haue scene tane out of her bedd
 of men fuetecene,
 “Priests, Clarkes, & wedded men
 140 from her by-deene!
 yett shee taketh the mantle
 & maketh her-selfe cleane!”
 then spake the litle boy
 144 that kept the mantle in hold;
 sayes “King! Chasten thy wiffe!
 of her words shee is to bold.
- She confesses
 that she
 kissed
 Craddock
 before he
 married her.
 The mantle
 uncrinkles.
 clothes her,
 and glitters
 like gold.
 Guenevere
 maligns
 Craddock's
 wife,
 says she has
 seen fifteen
 men taken
 out of her
 bed.
 The Boy
 tells Arthur
 to restrain
 his wife,

¹ i. e. confessed: shrive, sateri, confi-
 Hine shrovetide. Jun.—P.

² right.—P.
³ cleane.—P.

- who is a
whore,
and has
cuckolded
him.
- 148 “shee is a bitch & a witch,
& a whore bold!
King, in thine owne hall
thou art a Cuchold!”
- The Boy sees
a boar;
- 152 A litle boy¹ stoode
looking ouer a dore;
he was ware of a wyld bore²
wold hane werryed a man.
- runs out, cuts
off its head.
- 156 he pulld forth a wood kniffe;
fast thither *that* he ran;
he brought in the bores head,
& quitted him like a man.
- brings it
in,
- 160 he brought in the bores head,
and was wonderous bold:
He said, “there was neuer a Cucholds
kniffe
carue itt that cold.”
- and says no
cuckold
can cut it.
- Some
knights
- 164 some rubbed their k[n]iues
vppon a whetstone;
some threw them vnder the table,
& said they had none.
- throw their
knives
away;
- King Arthus & the Child
- 168 stood looking them vpon³;
all their k[n]iues edges
turned backe againe.
- others try,
but can't cut
it.
- Craddock
- 172 Craddoccke had a litle kniue
of Iron & of steele;
he birtled⁴ the bores head
- cuts up the
head.

¹ The little boy.—P.² And there as he was looking
He was ware of a wyld Bore.
Qu.—P.³ upon them, Qu.—P.⁴ birtled, or britled.—P. A.-S.
tian, to divide into fragments, distr
—F.

wonderous weele,
that enery Knight in the Kings court
 176 *had a morsell.*

the litle boy had a horne
 of red gold *that ronge* ;
 he said, "there was noe Cuckolde
 180 shall drinke of my horne,
 but he shold itt sheede
 Either behind or beforne."

The Boy
 says no
 cuckold can
 drink out of
 his horn
 without
 spilling.

some shedd on their shoulder,
 184 & some ¹ on their knee ;
 he *that* cold not hitt his mouth
 put it in his eye ;
 & he *that* was a Cuckold,
 188 enery man might him see.

Many try,

Craddoccke wan the horne
 & the bores head ;
 his ladye wan the mantlo
 192 vnto her meede.
 Euerye such a louely Ladye,
 God send her well to speede !

but
 Craddock
 alone can
 do it.

God bless
 ladies like
 Craddock's
 wife!

ffins.

¹ some in the MS.—F.

["*When as I doe recourd,*" printed in *Lo. and Hum. Songs*,
 p. 68-9, follows here in the MS.]

White rose & red :¹

[Page 288 of MS.]

THIS is but a pedestrian composition, being nothing more than a passage of a dull and not very accurate history of England turned into yet duller and as inaccurate verse. It was written, or perhaps was revised and added to, after 1619, as the Queen of James I., Anne of Denmark, is spoken of as dead and gone (v. 198), and she died in that year. The principal hero is Henry VII., who is pronounced a paragon of virtue, and *inter alia* a most faithful and affectionate husband. *De mortuis nil nisi bonum*, has been the poetaster's motto; or rather *De Tudore mortuo nil nisi optimum*. The piece may have had its use in aiding and abetting the memories of the common people. Books were not yet so cheap and plentiful but that artificial memory-helpers were welcome. The ballad form was in extreme requisition and popularity for all manners of subjects in the first half of the seventeenth century. Everything was be-balladed.

In the wars
of the Roses

WHEN yorke & Lancaster made warre
within this famous Land,
the lines of all our Noble men
4 did in great danger stand.

many
kings were
left heirless,

7 Kings in bloodye feilde
ffor Englands crowne did fight,
& yett their heyres were, all but twaine,
8 of liffe bercaued quite.

¹ In the printed Collection of Old Ballads, 1726, Vol. 2. p. 206, N. xv.—P.

Written or recast in James I.'s time: see lines 78, 149.—F.

ther 30000 Englishmen
 were in one battell slaine;
 yett all that English blood cold not
 12 one settled peace obtaine.

and 30,000
 lives

secured no
 peace.

father[s] killed their owne deare sonne,
 the sonnes the ffathers slew,
 & kinsmen fought against their King,
 16 & none eche other knew.

att Lenght, by Honeryes Lawfull claime,¹
 these wasting warres had end,
 for Englands peace he did restore,
 20 & did the same defend.

But Henry
 VII.

for tyrant Richard named the 3^d,
 the breeder of this woe,
 by him was slaine nere Leister towne,
 24 as chronicles doe shoe.

slew Richard
 III.

all ffear of warr was then Exiled,
 which loyed eche Englishman;
 & dayes of long desired peace
 28 within this Land began.

and brought
 peace

to the land.

he ruled this kingdome by true loue,
 to gaine his subiects liues;
 then men liued quietly att home
 32 with their children & their wiues.

King Henery tooke such princely care
 our ffurther peace to frame,
 tooke faire Elizabeth to wiffe,²
 36 that gallant yorkshire dame.

Henry

married

the stroke of the m is wanting in the MS.—F. ¹ See *Lady Bevis* in vol. iii.—F.

4 Edwardes daughter, blest of god,
 to scape king Edwards ¹ spight,
 was thus made Englands peereles *Queene*,
 40 & Heneryes hartes delight.

this Henery, first of Tnders name
 & last of Lancaster,
 with Yorkes right heyre a true lones knott
 44 did knitt & make ffast there.

York's
 heiress ;

renowned yorke, the white rose gaue ;
 braue Lancaster the redd ;
 by wedlocke both inoynd were
 48 to lye in one princely bed.

the White
 Rose bedded
 with the
 Red ;

these roses grew, & buded fayre,
 & with soe good a grace,
 that Kings of Engl[a]nd in their armes ²
 52 affords a worthy place.

and they are
 a badge in
 the Royal
 Arms.

& flourish may these roses still,
 that all they world may tell !
 the owners of these princely flowers
 56 in vertue to Excell !

May they
 flourish
 still !

To glorifye these roses more,
 king henerye & his *Queene*
 did place their pictures in red gold,
 60 most gorgeous to be seene.

[page 2]

the Kings owne guard doe weare them now
 vpon their backe & brest,
 where loue & loyaltye remaines,
 64 & euermore may rest.

The King's
 Guard wear

¹ That is, Richard's.—Adams.

² The Red and White Roses never
 were, strictly speaking, in the Royal

Arms, but were and are a badge
 with them.—G. E. Adams, *Rouge D*

- the red rose on the backe is placed,
 thereon a crowne of gold ;
 the wh[i]te rose on the brest as rich,
 68 and castlye¹ to behold,
- bedecked with siluer studdes,
 & coates of scarlett & redd,
 a blushing hew, which Englands fame
 72 this many yeeres hath spredd.
- this Tudor & Plantaginett
 these honors first devised
 to welcome home a settled peace
 76 by vs soe dearlye prized :
- which peace now maintained is
 by Iames our gracyous Kinge ;
 for peace brings plentye to this Land,
 80 with many a blessed thing.
- to speake of Heneryes praise againe :
 his princely liberall hand
 gaue giifts & graces many wayes
 84 vnto this famous Land.
- wherefore the Lord him blessing sent
 for to encrease his store,
 for that he left more welthe to vs
 88 then any King before.
- the first blessing was to his Queene,
 a giift aboue the rest,
 which brought him sonnes & daughters faire
 92 to make his Kingdome blest.
- the royall blood, which was att Ebbe,
 soe encreased by this Queene,
 that Englands heyre vnto this day
 96 doth flourish fresh & greene.

the Red Rose
on their
backs,

the White
on their
breasts,

on their
scarlet
coats,

in honour of
peace so
prized

(which
James
preserves).

Henry gave
liberally,

and the Lord
blest him,

with sons
and
daughters

(whose line
continues
now).

¹ castlye.—F.

His heir,
Arthur
prince of
Wales,
sailed to
Spain

the first blossome of this seed
was Arthur, Prince of wales,
whose vertue to the Spanish court
100 quite ore the Ocean sayles,

and married
Ferdinand's
daughter
Katherine,

where fferdinando, King of Spayne,
his daughter Katherine gaue
ffor wiffe vnto this English Prince
104 a thing which god wold haue.

but died
young,
(April 1502,)

yett Arthur, in his loftye youth
& blooming time of age,
resigned vp his sweetest liffe
108 to deathes imperyall rage.

to England's
grief.

who dying thus, noe Issue left,—
the sweet of natures Ioy,—
did compassse England round with greeffe,
112 & Spaine with sadd annoye.

But Henry
VII. had
another boy,
Henry VIII.,

yett Henery, to increase his Ioy,
a Henery of his name,
in ffollowing time 8 Henery called,¹
116 a king of worthy ffame;

who
conquered
French
towns,

he Conquered Bullein with his sword,
& many townes of ffrance;
his kinglye manhood & his fortitude
120 did Englands ffame advance.

put down
Papistry,

then Popish Abbyes he supprest,
& Pappistrye put downe,
& bound their Land by Parlaiment
124 vnto his royall crowne.

¹ The *d* is made over an *l* in the MS.—F.

- he had 3 Children by 3 Queenes,
 all Princes raigning here,
 Edward, Marry, & Elizabeth,
 128 A Queene beloued most deere. [page 230]
- yett these 3 branches bare noe fruite;
 noe such blessing god did send;
 wherby the King by Tudors name
 132 in England here hath end.
- Plantaginett first Tudor was
 named Elizabeth;
 Ellizabeth Last Tudor was,
 136 the greatest Queene on Earth.
- This Tudor & Plantaginett,
 by yeelding vnto death,
 haue made steward now the greates[t] King
 140 that is now vpon the earth.
- to speake of the 7 Henery I must,
 whose grace gaue free consent
 to haue his daughters marryed both
 144 to kings of his descent.
- his Eldest daughter Margaret
 was made great Scottlands Queene,
 as wise, as faire, as vertuous,
 148 as euer¹ was Ladye scene.
- of this faire Queene our royall King
 by Lincall course descended,
 which weareth now the Imperyall crowne,
 152 which god now still defendeth.

and had
three
children,
who all
reigned,

but left no
issue.

The first and
last Tudors
were
Elizabeths.

A Stewart
now reigns.

Henry VII.

married his
eldest
daughter to

the King of
Scotland,

and James
is her
descendant.

¹ Only one stroke for the u in the MS F

Henry's
second
daughter
first
married the
King of
France,

156

his second daughter, Marye called,
as Princelye by degree,
was by her ffather worthy thought
the Queene of ffance to bee ;

and then the
Duke of
Suffolk.

160

& after to the Duke of Suffollke
was made a Noble wiffe ;
& in this ffamous English court
shee led a virtuous liffe.

Henry VII.
and his
Queen
rejoiced ;

164

thus Henery & his lonely Queene
reioiced to see that day,
to hane their Children thus advancet
to honors enery way,

168

which purchased pleasure & content
with many a yeeres delight,
till sad mischance by cruell death
procured them both a spighte.

but the
Queen

proved with
child,

172

this worthy Queene, this gracyous dame,
this mother mecke and mild,
to add more number to their Ioyes,
againne proued bigg with child ;

went to the
Tower of
London,

176

wheratt the *King* reioiced much,
& against *that* carefull hower
he lodged his decre & louelye Queene
in Londons stately Tower.

and died
there

180

which Tower proued ffatall once
to Princes of degreo ;
itt proued ffatall to this Queene,
for therin died shee,

in childbed.

184

in Child bed [she] lost he[r] sweet liffe,
her liffe estemed soo decre,
which had beene Englands Lonely Queene
many a happy yeere.

therefore the King was greened sore,
 & many monthes did mourne,
 & wept & sighet, & said "like her
 188 he cold not find out one;

Henry
 mourned,

"nor none he wold in fancy chuse
 to make his wedded wiffe,
 but a widdower he wold remaine
 192 the remnant of his liffe."

and vowed

to remain a
 widower.

his latter dayes he spent in peace
 & quietnesse of mind.
 like King & Queene as these 2 were,
 196 the world can hardlye find!

Two like
 these can
 scarce be
 found.

yett such a King as now wee haue,
 & such a Queene wee had,
 who hath heauenly powers from aboue,
 200 & giuste¹ as the 2 hadd.

God saue our Prince, & King & Land,
 & send them long to raigine!
 in health, in welth, in quietnesse,
 204 amongst vs to remaine! flins.

God bless
 our King
 and land!

¹ ? ghosts, spirits; or miswritten for giufts.—P.

Bell my Wife.¹

THE Folio version of this song is here printed in its integrity for the first time; for in the copy given in the *Reliques*, “the corruptions” “are removed by the assistance of the Scottish edition”—that in Ramsay’s *Tea-Table Miscellany*. Our readers will not be sorry to see these “corruptions.” They give, indeed, a somewhat different turn to the piece. Whereas in the ordinary version, the temptation against which the good man is warned is vaguely “pride,” it takes in the Folio MS. a more definite shape. He is tempted to abandon his agricultural life and turn courtier. He vows :

I’ll go find the court within,
I’ll no longer lend nor borrow,
I’ll go find the court within,
For I’ll have a new cloak about me.

Bell, his wife, rejoins :

—good husband, follow my counsel now :
Forsake the court and follow the plough.
Man, take thy old coat about thee.

This definiteness inclines us to believe that this version is older than the current one. The poem naturally grew vaguer as it grew generally popular.

That it enjoyed an extensive popularity is shown by the appearance of one of its verses in *Othello*, and the delight with

¹ This Song is in Ramsay’s *Tea-table Miscellany*, p. 105, [1753]. The printed copy is much better than this, if it has not had some modern Improvements.

This seems to have been strip’d of its Scottisms by some English hand: which is observable of some other in this Collection.—P.

which Cassio hears Iago troll it out. "Fore God, an excellent song," says the lieutenant of "And let the canakin clink, clink;" and of "King Stephen was a worthy peer," "Why, this is a more exquisite song than the other."

The dialect in which it is written, and the general character of the piece—its scenery, its economy, its caniness—clearly imply a northern origin. As to the time at which it was written, all that can be said is, that it clearly reflects an age of social disturbance and alteration—an age growing "so piked that the toe of the peasant comes so near the heel of the courtier he galls his kibe." The piece is something more than a mere humorous domestic altercation as to the replenishing of a husband's wardrobe. It is, in fact, a controversy between the Spirits of Social Revolution and Social Conservatism. The man is anxious to better himself, no longer content to tend cows and drive the plough; his neighbours are rising and advancing around him; the clown is not now distinguishable from the gentleman. The old arrangements have had their day. Metaphorically, the old scarlet cloak, which some four-and-forty years ago was so satisfactory, and kept out so well the wind and rain, is now but a "sorry clout," looks right mean and shabby among the sprucer black, green, yellow, blue garments that flaunt around it, and must certainly be cast off for something new and fashionable. In answer to all these grumbings, the other reminds him how well their old life has suited them, how their employments (though humble) have been sufficient for their needs, how they have lived and loved together for many a long year and been blessed with many children and the happiness of seeing them grow up in the nurture and admonition of the Lord, how Royalty had contented itself with the smallest of tailor's bills and yet thought that excessive, and, generally, Low pride undermines a country. Her advice is, that he should not despoil himself with efforts to rise

in the world, but should rest content with the state wherein he is. The goodman, weary of controversy, lets his wife's counsel prevail. He sees, in the version now given (the ordinary form of the last verse is much less striking), what his wife cannot see—that is, how times have altered; but he consents to acquiesce in his present position—*θῆσαν τράπεζαν αἰνέσαι*—

O Bell my wife! why dost thou flyte?
 Now is now, and then was then;
 We will live now obedient life,
 Thou the woman and I the man.
 It's not for a man with a woman to threap
 Unless he first gives over the plea.
 We will live now as we began,
 And I'll have mine old cloak about me.

As to the author, nothing is known. Undoubtedly he was one who had noted the signs of his times. He would seem to have sympathised with those who regarded the social changes transpiring as dangerous and to be deprecated. To us he is a mere voice crying.

It freezes
hard,

and the
cattle are
likely to die.

My wife
Bell says
"Get up and
save the
cow's life.
Put your old
cloak on."

"Steady,
wife. My
cloak's very
old,

"THIS winters weather itt waxeth cold,
 & ffrost itt ffreeseth on euery hill,
 & Boreas blowes his blasts soe bold
 4 that all our cattell are like to spill.
 Bell ¹ my wiffe, shce ² loues noe strife,
 she sayd vnto my quietlye,³
 'rise vp, & saue Cow crumbockes liffe!
 8 man! put thine old cloake about thee!'

[page 231]

⁴ "O Bell my wiffe! why dost thou fflyte⁵?
 thou kens my cloake is verry thin;

¹ Then [Bell].—P.

² who.—P.

³ to me right hastily.—P.

⁴ This stanza not in print:—and yet

seems necessary to support the dialogue.—P.

⁵ A.-S. *flitan*, to strive, quarrel.—F.

- itt is soe sore ouer worne,
12 a cricke¹ theron cannott runn :
He goe ffind the court within,
He noe longer lend nor borrow ;
He goe ffind tho court² within,
16 for He haue a new cloake about me." I shall get a
new one."
- "Cow Crumbocke is a very good cowa,
shee has alwayes beene good to the pale,
shee has helpt vs to butter & cheese, I trow,
20 & other things shee will not fayle ;
for I wold be loth to see her pine ;
therefore, good husband, ffollow my counsell now,
forsake the court & follow the ploughe ;
24 man ! take thine old coate about thee ! " don't let he
die ;
put your
old coat on."
- ³ " My cloake itt was a verry good cloake,
it hath beene alwayes good to the weare,
itt hath cost mee many a groat,
28 I have had itt this 44 yeere ;
sometime itt was of the cloth in graine,⁴
itt is now but a sigh⁵ clout, as you may see ;
It will neither hold out winde nor raine ;
32 & He haue a new kloake⁶ about mee." and mean to
get a new
one."
- " It is 44 yecres agoe
since the one of vs the other did ken,
& wee haue had betwixt vs both,
36 children either nine or ten ;

¹ *Cricke*, most probably an old word for a house. Jamieson. Compare the description of Avarice in Langland's *Vision of Piers Ploughman*, Passus V. l. 107-113, p. 58, Vernon Text, ed. Skeat:

Heane com Couetyse . . .
In A town Talent of twelve Wynter Ago.
But of a lous coufe lege, I con hit not
I hit

Heo scholde wandre on pat walk, hit
was so pred-bare.—F.

² Only half the *s* in the MS.—F.

³ This Stanza is very different from
that in print.—F.

⁴ Fr. *Cramoisi*: m. crimson colour.
Sol en cramoisi. An Asse in graine.
Cotgrave.—F.

⁵ ? sorry, miserable.—F.

⁶ ? a *c* made over the first *k* in the
MS.—F.

and brought
ten children
up.

Don't be
proud ; put
your old
cloak on."

40

wee haue brought them vp to women & men
in the feare of god I trow they bee ;
& why wilt thou thy selfe misken ?
man ! take thine old cloake about thee ! "

" Old times
are old ; all
people dress
fine now,

44

" O Bell my wiffe ! why doest thou flyte ?
now is nowe, & then was then ;
seeke all the world now throughout,
thou kens not Clownes from gentlemen ;
they are cladd in blacke, greene, yellow, & blew,¹
soe ffarr aboue their owne degree ;
once in my liffe Ile take a vew,²
ffor Ile haue a new cloake about mee."

and I'll haue
a new cloak
too."

48

" King
Harry
thought his
breeches too
dear at 5s.

52

" King Harry was a verry good K[ing ;]
I trow his hose cost but a Crowne ;
he thought them 12^d. ouer to deere,
therfore he called the taylor Clowne.
he was King & wore the Crowne,
& thouse but of a low degree ;

Don't be
proud ; put
your old
cloak on."

56

itts pride *that* putts this cumtrye downe ;
man ! put thye old Cloake about thee !

" Well, it's
no good

60

³ " O Bell my wiffe ! why dost thou fflyte ?
now is now, & then was then ;
wee will liue now obedyent liffe,
thou the woman, & I the man.
itts not ffor a man with a woman to threape⁴
vnlesse he ffirst giue ouer the play ;
wee will liue noue⁵ as wee began,
and Ile haue mine old Cloake about me."
ffins.

for a man to
dispute with
his wife.

I will put my
old cloak
on."

64

¹ Some letter marked out following the *b* in the MS.—F.

² ? MS. *tcw*, a rope (or line): Nares. I'll give myself some rope, license.—F.

³ Different from the print: as indeed

is almost every Line of the whole.—F

⁴ A.-S. *þreapian*, to threap, repro afflict. Bosworth.—F.

⁵ ? MS. 'none' for 'on'.—F. But 'now'; compare l. 58, 59.—H.

I live where : I love :

the affected, strained style of this piece tells pretty clearly to what period it belongs. "True conceit be still my feeding," says the lover; so evidently says this author too. His is the *ostentantuli artem*.

WITH my hart my loue was nesled¹

(page 202)

into the sonne of happynesse ;²

ffrom my loue my liffe was rested³

4 into a world of heanynesse ;

O lett my loue my liffe remaine,⁴

since I loue not where I wold.⁵

I was happy
with my
love, and
then was
torn from
her.

Darksome distance doth devyde vs,

8 farr ffrom thee I must remaine ;

dismall planetts still doth⁶ guide vs,

fearing wee shold meete againe ;

but ffoward ffortune once remoued,⁷

12 then will I live where I wold."

We are apart
now,

Iff I send them, doe not suspect mee ;

but if I come, then am I scene ;

O let thy wisdome⁸ see direct mee

16 that I may blind Argus eye !

for my true hart shall neuer remou[e,]

tho I live not where I love.

but Fortune
may change,
and join us.

Do not
suspect me,

though I am
away from
you.

¹ Read *rested*, to rhyme with *rested*.
Rest.

² In a summe of happynesse.—P.

³ wrested.—P.

⁴ O let me soon from life remove.—P.

⁵ Since I live not where I love.—P.
Since I live not where I would
faine.—H.

⁶ do.—P.

⁷ love.—P.

⁸ remove.—P.

⁹ M.S. wisdome.—F.

What grief
have I
suffered!

20 Sweete! what greeffe haue I sustained
 in the accomplishing my desires! ¹
 my affections are not ffained,
 tho my wish be nere the nere.²
 if wishes wold substantiall prone,
24 then wold I liue where I loue.

With
bleeding
heart, I pray

to be with
thee again.

28 True conceit be still my feeding,
 & the ffood being soe³ conceipted,
 whilst my hart for thee lyes bleeding,
 sunne & heauens to be intreated;
 perhaps my orisons then may moue,
 that I may liue where I loue.

When
heaven
grants this,

32 Loue & ffaction still agreeing,
 by the consent of heauens electyon,
 where wee both may haue our being,
 vnderneath the heauens protectyon,
 & smiling att our sorrowes past,
we'll smile
at past
troubles. 36 wee shall enioyc⁴ our wishe att Last.

ffins.

¹ To accomplish my desire.—P.

² nigher.—P.

³ After this is written *contented*, with

the *tente* only marked out, then fo:
ccipted.—F.

⁴ may enjoy.—P.

Dounge : Andreu : ¹

THIS touching ballad is unhappily somewhat imperfect in parts ; and we have not met with any copy elsewhere, with which it might be collated.

The story would be too painful and disgusting to read, but for the extreme gentleness of the poor sadly abused lady. This, while it aggravates our loathing of the monster whose prey she became, and makes her wrongs the more hideous, yet renders the tale tolerable. That gleam of light reconciles our eyes to the Stygian darkness. Otherwise it would be too horrible. We could not endure even to read of such a fiend as he who appears in it.

This atrocious ruffian is apparently a Scotchman (so his name seems to imply, and vv. 69, 92), who concludes a moonlight meeting with a fond, weak, credulous woman by deliberately robbing her, not only of her father's gold which she had fetched at his request, but of every article of dress she had on, in spite of her piteous pleadings, and this with brutal declarations that the spoil is intended for his own lady who dwells in a far country, till at last remains to her only such covering as nature gave—her long flowing hair. Then he gives the poor wretched creature the choice of dying there and then on his sword's point, or going home as she was. She goes home, to be greeted by her father's curse, and die of a broken heart at his door. The story is too frightful to be told as a reality ; it is told as a dream.

¹ Showing his disloyalty to an Earl's daughter. This Song in some Places is imperfect.—P.

AS: I was cast in my first sleepe,
 a dreadfull draught ¹ in my mind I drew;
 ffor I was dreamed of one ² yong man,
 4 some men called him yonge Andrew.
 the moone shone bright, & itt cast a ffayre light;
 sayes shee, "welcome, my honey, my hart, & m.
 sweete!
 for I haue loued thee this 7 long yeere,
 8 & our chance itt was wee cold neuer meete."
 then he tooke her in his armes ²,
 & k[i]ssed her both checke & chin;
 & 2^o or 3^o he pleased this may ³
 12 before they tow did part in twinn;
 saies, "now, good Sir, you haue had your will,
 you can demand no more of mee;
 Good Sir, Remember what you said before,⁴
 16 & goe to the church & marry mee."
 "ffaire maid, I cannott doe as I wold;
 [Till I am got to my own country ⁵]
 goe homo & fett ⁶ thy fathers redd gold,
 20 & He goe to the church & marry thee."
 this Ladye is gone to her ffathers hall,
 & well she knew where his red gold Lay,
 7 and counted fforth 5 hundred pound
 24 besides all other Iuells & chaines,
 & brought itt all to younge Andrew;
 itt was well counted vpon his knee.
 then he tooke her by the Lillye white hand,
 28 & led her vp to one ⁸ hill soe hye;

I dreamt of
young
Andrew.

A lady tells
him she's
loved him
long.

He kisses
her.

She reminds
him of his
promise to
marry her.

He says he'll
do it
if she brings
him her
father's
gold.

She gets her

father's 500l.
and jewels,

and takes
them to
younge
Andrew.

¹ sketch, picture.—F.

² a.—P.

³ maid.—P.

⁴ you swore.—P.

⁵ Percy's line.—F.

⁶ fet. Vid. fol. 514. Note.—P.

⁷ sho.—P.

⁸ a.—P.

- shee had vpon ¹ a gowne of blacke veluett ;—
 a pittyfull sight after yee shall see ;—
 “ put of thy clothes, bonny wonche,” he sayes,
 32 “ for noe floote further thoust gang with mee.” He makes
her take off
- but then shee put of her gowne of veluett ² her velvet
gown,
³ with many a salt teare from her eye,
 And in a kirtle of fine ⁴ breaden silke [page 293]
 36 shee stood beffore young Andrews eye.
- saies, “ o put off ⁵ thy kirtle of silke ;
 ffor some & all shall goe with mee :
 & to my owne Lady I must itt beare,
 40 who ⁶ I must needs lone better then thee.”
- then shee put of her kirtle of silke her silken
kirtle,
 with ⁷ many a salt teare still ffrom her eye ;
 in a peticoate of scarlett redd her scarlet
 44 shee stood before young Andrewes eye.
- saies, “ o put of ⁸ thy peticoate ;
 for some & all of itt shall goe with mee ;
 & to my owne Lady I will itt beare,
 48 which dwells soe flarr in a strange countrie.”
- but then shee put of her peticoate petticoat,
 with many a salt teare still from her eye ;
 & in a smocke of brane white silke her white
silk smock
 52 shee stood before young Andrews eye.
- saies, “ o put of ⁹ thy smocke of silke ;
 for some & all shall goe with mee ;
 vnto my owne Ladye I will it beare,
 56 that dwells soe flarr in a strange countrie.”

¹ ep bracketted for omission by P.

braded.— F.

² velvet gown.— P.³ Put off, put off. P.⁴ while many . . . ran.— P.⁵ whom.— P.⁶ a fine kirtle.— P. ? breaden,⁷ while . . . ran from.— P.

(though she
prays to keep
it),

sayes,¹ “o remember, young Andrew !
once of a woman you were borne ;
& ffor *that* birth *that* Marye bore,
60 I pray you let my smocke be vpon ! ”

“yes, ffayre Ladye, I know itt well ;
once of a woman I was borne ;
yett ffor noe birth *that* Mary bore,
64 thy smocke shall not be left here vpon.”

and her head
dressed.

but then shee put of her head geere ffine ;
shee hadd billaments² worth a 100³ ;
the hayre *that* was vpon this bony wench head,³
68 couered her bodye downe to the ground.

Then he asks
her whether

she'll die on
his sword or
go naked
home.

then he pulled forth a scottish brand,
& held itt there in his owne right hand ;⁴
saies, “whether wilt thou dye vpon my swor
point, Ladye,
72 or thow wilt⁵ goe naked home againe ? ”

She chooses

“my liffe is sweet, then Sir,” said shee,
“therfore I pray you leane mee with mine ;
before I wold' dye on your swords point,
76 I had rather goe naked home againe.

walking
naked home,

but warns
young
Andrew that
her father
will hang
him if he
catches him,

“my ffather,” shee sayes, “is a right good Erle
as any remaines in his countrye ;
if euer he doe your body take,
80 your sure to fflower a gallow tree ;

and her
brothers will
take his life.

“& I haue 7 brethren,” shee sayes,⁶
“& they are all hardy men & bold ;
giff euer thé doe your body take,
84 you must neuer gang quicke ouer the mold.”

¹ she sayes.—P.

² habilliments, dress, cloaths.—P.

³ but . . . upon her head.—P.

⁴ And there he held it forth amain
—P.

⁵ wilt thou.—P.

⁶ And seven brethren I haue she say
—P.

- "if your ffather be a right good Erle
 as any remaines in his owne countrie,
 tush! he shall neuer my body take,
 88 Ile gang soe ffast ouer ¹ the sea!
- "if you haue 7 brethren," he sayes,
 "if they be neuer soe hardy or bold;
 tush! they shall neuer my body take;
 92 Ile gang soe ffast into the scottish mold!"
- Now this Ladye is gone to her fathers hall
 when euery body their rest did take;
 but the Erle which was her ffather [dear] ²
 96 lay waken for his deere daughters sake.
- "but who is *that*," her ffather can say,³
 "that soe priuilye knowes *that* pinn ⁴?"
 "its Hellen, your owne deere daughter, ffather ⁵!
 100 I pray you rise and lett me in."
- "noe, by my hood ⁷!" quoth her ffather then,
 "my [house] thoust ⁸ neuer come within,
 without I had my red gold againe."
- 104 "nay, your gold is gone, ffather!" said shee.⁹
 "then naked thou came into this world,
 and naked thou shalt returne againe."
- "nay! god fforgane his death, father!" shee sayes,
 109 "& soe I hope you will doe mee."
 "away, away, thou cursed woman!
 "I pray god an ill death thou may dye!" [page 294]

Young
Andrew says
he'll

sail from her
father,

and take
refuge in
Scotland
from her
brothers.

The lady
goes home,

her father
hears her,

but won't let
her in till
she brings
back his
gold.

She says it's
gone.

He curses
her.

¹ Hence o're. P.

² dear. P.

³ to say. — P.

⁴ pinn. (Compare vol. i. p. 249, l. 38.

He thirled upon a pinn. — P.

⁵ here. P.

⁶ O no, O no, I will not rise. — P.

⁷ Round. — P.

⁸ my House thou. — P.

⁹ O pardon, pardon me, she says.

For all your red gold it is tarn. P.

- Her heart
 bursts, and
 she falls
 dead.
- 112 shee stood soe long quacking on the ground
 till ¹ her hart itt burst ² in three,
 & then shee ffell dead downe in a swoond;
 & this was the end of this bonny Ladye.
- In the
 morning her
 father
- 116 ithe morning when her ffather gott ³ vpp,
 a pitttyfull sight there he might see ⁴;
 his owne deere daughter was dead ⁵ without ⁶ Clothes:
 they teares they trickeled fast ffrom his eye;
- He curses
 his love of
 gold,
- 120 sais, "fye of gold, and ffye of fee!"
 for I sett soe much by my red gold
 that now itt hath lost both my daughter and mee!"
- and fades as
 a flower in
 frost.
- 124 but after ⁸ this time he neere dought ⁹ good day,
 but as ¹⁰ flowers doth fade in the ffrost,
 soe he did wast & weare away.
- As to young
 Andrew,
- 128 but let vs leaue talking of this Ladye,
 & talke some more of young Andrew, ¹¹
 ffor ffalse he was to this bonny Ladye;
 more pittty that itt had ¹² not beene true.
- he hadn't
 gone half a
 mile into
 Wales
- 132 he was not gone a mile into the wild forrest, ¹³
 or halfe a mile into the hart of wales,
 but there they cought him by such a braue wyle
 that hee must come to tell noe more tales.

¹ until.—P.² truly.—P.³ rose.—P.⁴ might he see.—P.⁵ there lay dead.—P.⁶ any follows in the MS., and is crossed out. —P.⁷ O fye O fye now on my gold
O fye on gold & fye on fee.—P.⁸ Thus having lost his daughter fair,
He after &c.—P.⁹ dought—A.-S. *dugan*, valere, hinc
dohtig Sax. i. e. doughty, fortis, strenus,
Gloss. ad G. Doug? —P.¹⁰ [insert] the.—P.¹¹ And once more tell of young Andrew.—P.¹² he had.—P.¹³ He scarce was from this Lady gone,
or

As he did from this Lady go
 And thro' the forest past his way
 A furious wolf did him beset
 And there this perjured knight
 did slay.—P.
 And tow'rd the woods had gang'd
 away.—P.

full soone a wolfe did of him smell,
 & shee came roaring like a beare,
 & gaping like a ffeend of hell ;

before a
 wolf
 attacked
 him,

soe they ffight together like 2 Lyons [there],¹
 & fire betweene them 2 glashet out ;
 the raught eche other such a great rappe,
 that there young Andrew was slaine, well I wott. killed him.

but ² now young Andrew he is dead ;
 but he was neuer buryed vnder mold ;
 for ther as the wolfe devoured him,
 there ³ lyes all this great erles gold.

and eat him
 up.

ffins.

Perry has added *there*, and marked
 line as part of the verse above.—F.

¹ And.—P.
² And there &c.—P.

Perry has marked in red ink brackets,
 omission, the following words or parts
 here :

as, l. 142.
 u. of neuer, l. 141.
 father, l. 107.
 but, l. 97.
 down, l. 96.
 in of in'o, l. 92.
 with, l. 74

point, Ladye, l. 71.
 this bony wench, l. 67.
 vp of vpon, l. 64, 60, 29.

In line 8 he marks *cold neuer* to be
 transposed to *neuer cold*. In other poems
 I have not noticed these red ink marks.
 They would have swelled the notes too
 much, and there are plenty of Perry's
 alterations already.

A : Jigge :¹

“A JIG,” says Nares, “meant anciently not only a merry dance, but merriment and humour in writing, and particularly a ballad. Thus when Polonius objects to the Player’s speech, Hamlet sarcastically observes,

He’s for a *jigg* or a tale of bawdry or he sleeps.—(Hamlet. ii. 2.)

He does not mean a dance (which then players did not undertake), but ludicrous dialogue or a ballad. . . . In the Harleian collection of old ballads are many under the title of *jigs*; as ‘A Northern Jige, called Daintie, come thou to me,’ ‘A merry new Jigge or the pleasant Wooing between Kit and Pegge,’ &c. So in the *Fatal Contract* by Hemmings,

We’ll hear your *jigg*:
How is your ballad titled?—(Act iv. sc. 4.)

Thus :

A small matter! you’ll find it worth Meg of Westminster, although it be but a bare jig.—(Hog hath lost, &c. O. Pl. vi. 385.)

It appears that this jig was a ballad.”

The following specimen of the Jig Dialogical is a sort of vulgar reproduction of the *Nut-Brown Maid*. The mode and circumstances of life depicted in the original ballad had passed out of date; the old order had given place to a new. A new audience—new chronologically, new socially—demanded a new version—a “people’s edition,” so to speak. The lover who here tests his mistress is no knight, but a common soldier; the mistress is no highborn lady, but a common woman. And these personal changes are characteristic of the others which the old ballad has undergone, to take its present shape. No such transmutations

¹ Pepys, iv. 42. A Poetical Dialogue between a Soldier & his Mistress, not unlike the Nut-brown Maid.—P.

re likely to be, from a literary point of view, successful. This one is not. But the beauty of the original is too great to be altogether destroyed, however rude the hands that handle it. Something of the charm of the *Nut-Brown Maid* lingers around his *Jig*.

Other handlers of the old ballad turned it to a religious sense. See the *New Notbroune Mayd upon the Passion of Christ* in Mr. Hazlitt's *Early Popular Poetry of England*.

- | | |
|--|---|
| <p>“MARGRETT, my sweetest margett ! I must goe !
 most dere to mee <i>that</i> neuer ¹ may be soe ;
 as fortune willes, I cannott itt deny.”</p> | <p>Margaret,
I must leave
you.</p> |
| <p>4 “then know thy loue, thy Margaret, shee must dye.”</p> | <p>“Then I’ll
die.”</p> |
| <p>“Not ffor the gold <i>that</i> euer Cræssus hadd,
 wold I once ² see thy sweetest lookes soe fade ;
 nor ³ ffor all <i>that</i> my eyes did euer ⁴ see,
 8 wold I once part thy sweetest loue from mee ;</p> | <p>Not for the
world would
I make you
sad,</p> |
| <p>“The King comanda, & I must to the warres.”
 “theres ⁵ others more enow to end those cares.”
 “but I am one appointed ffor to goe,
 12 & I dare not ffor my liffe once say noe,”</p> | <p>but I must
to the warre.</p> |
| <p>“O marry mee, & you may stay att home !
 ffull 30 weekes you know <i>that</i> I am gone.⁶”
 “theres time enough ; another ffather take ;
 16 heele loue thee well, & not thy child forsake.”</p> | <p>“Marry me
and stay at
home!”

Get another
father for
your child.</p> |
| <p>“And haue I doted ouer thy sweetest fface ?
 & dost infringe the things I haue in chase,
 thy ffaith, I meane ? but I will wend with thee.”
 20 “itt is to ffar ffor Pegg to goe with mee.”</p> | <p>“No, I love
you

and will go
with you.</p> |

¹ i.e. never hereafter.—H.

² There is a mark like an s undotted
for the s.—F.

³ i.e. yet.—P.

⁴ Only half the word in the MS.—F.

⁵ There's.—P.

⁶ i.e. with Child.—P.

I'll carry
your sword,

"I will goe with thee, my loue, both night and day,
& I will beare thy sword like lakynney; Lead the way!"¹
"but wee must ryde, & will you ffollow then
24 amongst a troope of vs *thats* ² armed men?"

clean your
horse,

"He beare thy Lance, & grinde thy stirropp too,
He rub thy horsse, & more then *that* He doo."
"but Margretts ffingars, they be all to ffine
28 to stand & waite when shee shall see mee dine,"

wait on you,

"He see you dine, & wayte still att your backe,
He giue you wine or any thing you Lacke."
"but youle repine when you shall see mee haue
32 a dainty wench *that* is both ffine & braue."

love your
wench,

"He love thy wench, my sweetest loue, I vow, [page 23]
He watch the time when shee may pleasure you!"
"but you will greene to see vs lye in bedd;
36 & you must watch still in anothers steede."

see you sleep
with her,

"He watch my loue to see you take your rest;
& when you sleepe, then shall I thinke me blest."
"the time will come, deliuered you must bee;
40 then in the campe you will discreditt mee."

and leave
you before
my own
baby
comes."
You mustn't
go with me.

"He goe ffrom thee beffor *that* time shalbee;
when all his well, my loue againe He see."
"all will not serue, ffor Margaret may not goe;
44 then doe resolute, my loue, what else to doe."

"Then I'll
die, loving
you still."
No, I'll stop
with you,

"Must I not goe? why then, sweete loue, adew!
needs must I dye, but yet in dying trew!"
"a! stay ³ my loue! I loue my Margaret well,
48 & heere I vow ⁴ with Margaret still to dwell!"

¹ along the way.—P.

² all.—P.

³ Ah! stay.—P.

⁴ vow.—P.

“ Gine me thy hand ! thy Margaretts lines againe ! ”

“ heeres ¹ my hand ! He neuer breed thee paine !

and never
pain you.

I kisse my loue in token *that* is soe ;

52 wee will be wedd : come, Margaretts, let vs goe.”

We'll be
we

ffins.

¹ here is.—P.

and parting for a while, but at last shown futile and fatal—
of strange partings and yet stranger meetings.

Full true it is, by god in heaven,
That men meet at meet: seven.

Thrice old themes these : but in the hands of this romance-writer made juvenescent.

Such an union between mother and son as that which occurs in *Eglamore* is a very favourite arrangement with the old romance-writers. It immediately precedes and generally brings about the *ἀγνώρισις*. Thus the extremest alarm and horror immediately introduce the extremest delight. Fear and joy are brought into the closest juxtaposition. The romance-writer could conceive of no more terrible disturbance and overthrow of the order of nature than that fearful conversion of a mother into a wife, a son into a husband—that ruin of the most beautiful of the domestic relations. Though bold enough to describe it as possible, and, indeed, imminent, he never dares to let it actually come to pass. He never lets the ghastly shade become a living thing. The Greek poets too regarded this same connection as the culminating horror. In their eyes, too, conflicts between father and son, love other than pious between son and mother, appeared the most frightful of all possible frightfulnesses. But they went further than the old romance-writers. They were not content with the apprehension ; they did not shrink from the act. What in the romances is only threatened, is in the Greek legend perpetrated. Hideous possibilities become there yet more hideous realities. Eve in the one case only fingers the apple ; in the other she plucks and eats it. Medieval feeling was the more delicate and sensitive in this respect. Its poet ever averts the horrible catastrophe. As the storm is on the point of bursting, and the nymphs with wild frantic faces stand ready to “shriek on the mountain,” suddenly the sky clears, there are pious embracings, the domestic sanctities are preserved and ratified.

[Part I.]

[Eglamore loved Christabell, and undertook three Deeds of Arms to win her.]

1

- I**ESUS : christ, heauen king!
 grant vs all his deere blessinge,
 & builde vs [in] ¹ his bower ² !
 4 & giue them [ioye] ³ *that* will heare
 of Elders *that* before vs were,
that liued in great honor.⁴
 I will tell you of a Knight
 8 *that* was both ⁵ hardye & wight,
 & stiffe in euerye stower;
 & wher any deeds of armes were,
 hee wan the prize with sheeld & speare,
 12 & euer he was the fflowe.

Christ, bless
us,

and giue
joy to those
that love old
heroes!

I'll tell you
of a hardy
knight

who always
won the
prize.

2

- In Artoys the Knight was borne,
 & his ffather him beforne;
 listen; I will you say.⁶
 16 Sir Prinsamoure the Erle hight;
 & Eglamore the hight [the] Knight ⁷
that curteous was alway;
 & he was for a man ⁸ verament,
 20 with the Erle was he bent,⁹
 to none he wold say nay.¹⁰

He was born
in Artoys,

his name
was
Eglamore;

he was a
man,
and never
refused a
fight.

12. T. in.—P. builde, shelter, as
note p. 27, l. 11.—F.

16. P.

18. T. joye. P.

19. P.

20. P. hardy. T.

For y marks to come after this:

For that he was a man full bolde
 With the Erle was he holde
 a honorable nyght & day.

Thornton MS. has

To dedes of armes he ys wente.

Wyth the Erle of Artas he ys lente,

He saylyth hym not nyght nor daye.

⁷ Sir Eglam^r than hyght the knyght.

—P. Syr Egyllamowre men calle the
 knyght. T.

⁸ And for he was a man.—P.

⁹ lente. P. he ys lente. T.

¹⁰ To no man he wolde.—P. T. has:

Whylle the erle had him in holde,
 Of dedes of armes he was bolde,
 For no man seyde he nay.—F.

and prevailing for a while, but at last shown futile and fatal—of strange partings and yet stranger meetings.

Full true it is, by god in heaven,
That men meet at unset steven.

Thrice old themes these ; but in the hands of this romance-writer made juvenescent.

Such an union between mother and son as that which occurs in *Eglamore* is a very favourite arrangement with the old romance-writers. It immediately precedes and generally brings about the *ἀναγνώρισις*. Thus the extremest alarm and horror immediately introduce the extremest delight. Fear and joy are brought into the closest juxtaposition. The romance-writer could conceive of no more terrible disturbance and overthrow of the order of nature than that fearful conversion of a mother into a wife, a son into a husband—that ruin of the most beautiful of the domestic relations. Though bold enough to describe it as possible, and, indeed, imminent, he never dares to let it actually come to pass. He never lets the ghastly shade become a living thing. The Greek poets too regarded this same connection as the culminating horror. In their eyes, too, conflicts between father and son, love other than pious between son and mother, appeared the most frightful of all possible frightfulnesses. But they went further than the old romance-writers. They were not content with the apprehension ; they did not shrink from the act. What in the romances is only threatened, is in the Greek legend perpetrated. Hideous possibilities become there yet more hideous realities. Eve in the one case only fingers the apple ; in the other she plucks and eats it. Medieval feeling was the more delicate and sensitive in this respect. Its poet ever averts the horrible catastrophe. As the storm is on the point of bursting, and the nymphs with wild frantic faces stand ready to “shriek on the mountain,” suddenly the sky clears, there are pious embracings, the domestic sanctities are preserved and ratified.

[Part I.]

[How Eglamore loved Christabell, and undertook three Deeds of Arms to win her.]

1

- I**ESUS : christ, heauen king!
 grant vs all his deere blessinge,
 & builde vs [in] ¹ his bower ² !
 4 & giue them [ioye] ³ *that* will heare
 of Elders *that* before vs were,
that lined in great honor.⁴
 I will tell you of a Knight
 8 *that* was both ⁵ hardye & wight,
 & stiffe in euerye stower;
 & wher any deeds of armes were,
 hee wan the prize with sheeld & speare,
 12 & euer he was the fflowe.

Christ, bless
us,

and giue
joy to those
that love old
heroes!

I'll tell you
of a hardy
knight

who always
won the
prize.

2

- In Artoys the Knight was borne,
 & his flather him beforne;
 listen; I will you say.⁶
 16 Sir Prinsamoure the Erle hight;
 & Eglamore the hight [the] Knight ⁷
that curteous was alway;
 & he was for a man ⁸ verament,
 20 with the Erle was he bent,⁹
 to none he wold say nay.¹⁰

He was born
in Artoys,

his name
was
Eglamore;

he was a
man,
and never
refused a
fight.

¹ in. — P. builde, shelter, as
v. 11; 27, l. 11 — F.

² bower — P.

³ joye. — P.

⁴ that — P.

⁵ hardy — T.

⁶ For y marks to come after this:

For that he was a man full bolde

With the Erle was he holde

In the night & day.

Thornton MS. has

To dedes of armes he ys wente,

Wyth the Erle of Artas he ys lente,

He saylyth hym not nyght nor daye.

⁷ Sir Eglam^r than hyght the knyght.

⁸ P. Syr Egyllamowre men calle the
knytt. — T.

⁹ And for he was a man. — P.

¹⁰ lente. — P. he ys lente. — T.

¹¹ To no man he wold. — P. — T. has.

Whylle the erle had him in holde,

Of dedes of armes he was bolde,

For no man seyde he nay. — F.

The Earl of
Artoys
has a lovely
daughter,

Christabell,

Eglamore
loves her,

and she
loves him.

Strange
lords come
to woo her.

A tourney is
held,

and
Eglamore
unhorne all
her suitors.

He opens his
heart to his
chamber-
lain,

the Erle had noe Child but one,
a maiden as white as whalles bone,¹

24 *that* his right heyre shold bee;
Christabell was the Ladyes name;
a flairer maid then shee was ane
was none² in christentye.

28 Christabell soe well her bore;
the Erle loued nothing more
then his daughter ffree;
soe did *that* gentle knight
32 *that* was soe full of might;
it was the more pittye.

3

the knight was both hardy & snell,
& knew the ladye loued him well.

36 listen a while & dwell:
Lords came ffrom many a Land
her to haue, I vnderstand,
with fforce ffold³ and ffell.

40 Sir Prinsamoure then did crye
strong Iusting & turnamentrye⁴
for the loue of Christabell.

what man *that* did her craue,

44 such stroakes Eglamore him gaue,
that downe right he ffell.

4

to his chamberlaine⁵ then gan he saw,⁶
“ffrom thee I cann hyde nought away,”

48 (where they did together rest⁷;) “ffaire ffrand, nought to laine,

my counsell thou wold not saine;
On thee is all my trust.”

[p]

¹ ivory.—F. as faire.—T.

² not.—P. Ther was none soche.—T.

³ ferse folke.—T.

⁴ Syr Egyllamowre he dud to crye
Of dedes of armys utterly.—T.

⁵ squyer, (with altered line

See squier, st. 9. l. 111 below.—F

⁶ say.—P.

⁷ rest.—P. *Rest* altered into
the MS.—F.

- 52 "Master," hee said, "per ma fay,
 what-soeuer you to me say,
 I shall itt neuer out cast."
 "the Erles daughter, soe god me saue,
 56 the loue of her but *that* I haue,
 my liffe itt may not Last."

and says he
 shall die
 unless he
 can win
 Christabell's
 love.

5

- "Master," said the young man free,
 "you haue told me your priuitye ;
 60 I will giue you answers
 to this tale : I vnderstand
 you are a knight of litle Land,
 & much wold haue more ;
 64 If I shold to *that* Ladye goe
 & show your hart & loue,
 shee lightlye wold let me fare ;
 the man *that* heweth ouer hye,
 68 some chipp falleth on his eye ;
 thus doth it euer fare.

The cham-
 berlain

answers

that
 Egiamore is
 too poor,

the lady
 woukin't
 listen to
 him ;

those
 hewing too
 high get
 chips in
 their eye.

6

- "remember *Master*, of one thing,¹
that shee wold haue both Erle & King,
 72 & many a bold Barron alsoe ;
 the Ladye will haue none of those,
 but in her maidenhead hold ;²
 flor wist her ffather, by heauen King,
 76 *that* you were sett on such a thinge,
 right deere itt shold be bought.
 trow yee shee wold King fforsake,
 & such a simple knight take,
 80 but if you haue loued her of old ? "

But yet she
 refuses her
 rich suitor-.

and that
 must be for
 Egiamore's
 love.

177. than unke-thanks on this
 178. I
 179. wile she not haue of them,
 But in gardenes her buldyth so.

The which y trowe ye for thy love
 and so mo T.
 T. also transposes the next two
 triplets.—F.

7

the knight answerd ffull mild :

“ euer since I was a Child

thou hast beene loued of ¹ mee.

84 in any iusting or any stower,
saw you me haue any dishonor
in battell where I haue bee ? ”

Moreover,

“ Nay, Master, att all rights

88 you are one of the best knights
in all Christentye ;

in deeds of
arms
Eglamore is
worth any
five other
knights.

in deeds of armes, by god aliuie,
thy body is worth other 5.”

92 “ gramercy, Sir,” sayd hee :

8

Eglamore
goes to his
room,

Eglamore sighed, & said noe more,
but to his Chamber gan hee ffare,
that richelye was wrought.

and prays
God

96 to god his hands he held vp soone,
“ Lord ! ” he said, “ grant me a boone
as thou on roode me bought !

to give him
Christabell
as his wife.

the Erles daughter, ffaire & ffree,
100 *that* shee may my wiffe bee,
ffor shee is most in my thought ;
that I may wed her to my wiffe,
& in Ioy to lead our liffe ; ²

104 from care then were I brought.”

9

Next day he

on the morrow *that* maiden small
cate with her ffather in the hall,
that was soe faire & bright.

doesn't go
to dine in
Hall.
Christabell
asks where
he is.

108 all the knights were at meate saue hee ;
the Ladye said, “ for gods pittye!
where is Sir Eglamore my *Knight*?

¹ lente wyth.—T.

² and sethen reches in my life.—T.

his squier answerd with heanye cheere,
 112 "he is sicke, & dead ffull neere,
 he prayeth you of a sight;
 he is now cast in such a care,
 but if he mends not of his fare
 116 he liueth not to night."

"He is
 nearly dead,
 and prays to
 see you."

10

the Erle vnto his daughter spake,
 "damsell," he said, "for god sake
 listen vnto mee!
 120 after me, doe as I thee hend;¹
 to his chamber see thou wend,
 ffor hee was curteous & free;
 ffull trulye with his intent,
 124 with lusting & in Turnament,
 he said vs neuer nay;
 if any deeds of armes were,
 he wan the prize with turnay² cleere;
 128 our worshippe for euer and aye."

The Earl
 charges
 Christabell

to go and see
 Eglamore,

[page 297] who never
 refused a
 tourney,

and always
 won the
 prize.

11

then after meate *that* Ladye gent
 did after her fathers comandement,³
 shee busked her to wend.
 132 forth shee went withouten more,
 for nothing wold shee spare,
 but went there as hee Lay.⁴
 "Master," said the squier, "be of good cheere,
 136 heere cometh the Erles daughter deere,
 some words to you to say."

After Hall,

Christabell

goes to
 Eglamore.

¹ After meate doye as hymle. T. See
 after meate, st. 11. l. 129. But after
 may mean, by my direction, see l.
 as though I do not know head in the
 case of tail, but—F.

² journey.—T.

³ Only half the first s in the MS.—F.

⁴ T. puts in three lines in which Chri-
 stabell asks the squire how Eglamore is.
 —F.

12

and asks
how he is.

- & then said *that* Ladye bright,
 “how fareth Sir Eglamore my *Knight*,
 140 *that* is a man right faire ? ”
 “forsoothe, Ladye, as you may see,
 with woe I am bound for the loue of yee,
 in longing & in care.”
 144 “Sir,” shee said, “by gods pittye,
 if you be agrreened ¹ ffor mee,
 itt wold greene me full sore !”
 “damsell, if I might turne to liffe,
 148 I wold haue you to my wiffe,
 if itt your will were.”

“Dying for
love of you.”

“I’m very
sorry to
grieve you.”

“Then be
my wife.”

13

“You’re a
noble
knight,
and manful
in fight.

- “Sir,” shee said, “soe mote I thee,
 you are a Noble *Knight* and ffree,
 152 & come of gentle blood ;
 a manfull man you are in ffeild
 to win the gree with speare & sheeld
 nobly by the roode ;
 156 Sir, att my ffather read you witt,²
 & see what hee will say to itt ;
 or if his will bee good,
 & if *that* hee be att assent,
 160 as I am true Ladie & gent,
 my will it shalbe good.”

Ask my
father,

and if he
agrees,

I will.”

14

Eglamore is
in blisse,

- the *Knight* desired noe other ³ blisse
 when he had gotten his grantesse,⁴
 164 but made royall ⁵ cheere ;
 he comanded a Squier to goe

¹ The *rr* is much like *u* in the MS.—F.

² T. makes the lady take the ‘Ask Papa’ on herself, and when they are agreed, she’ll not fail Eglamore.—F.

³ kepte no more.—T.

⁴ geton graunt of thys.—T.

⁵ hur fulle gode.—T.

to fleitch gold, a 100¹ or towe,
 & gine the² Maidens cleere.
 168 Sir Eglamore said, "soe haue I blisse!
 to your marriage I gine you this,
 for yee neuer come heere yore."
 the Lady then thanked & kissed the Knight;
 172 shee tooke her leaue anon-right,
 "farwell, my true sonne deere."³

and gives
 Christabell's
 maidens
 100*l*.

Christabell
 kisses him,

15

then homeward shee tooke the way.⁴
 "welcome!" sayd the Erle, "in flay,
 176 tell mee how haue yee doone.
 say, my daughter as white as any flower,
 how fareth my knight Sir Eglamore?"
 & shee answered him soone:
 180 "forsooth, to mee he hartilye sware
 he was amended of his care,
 good comfort hath hee tane;
 he told me & my maidens hende,
 184 that hee vnto the riuer wold wend
 with hounds & hawkes right."

goes back to
 her father,

and tells him
 Sir
 Eglamore is
 quite well,

and is going
 out
 hawking.

16

the Erle said, "soe Mote I thee,
 with him will I ryde *that* sight to see,
 186 to make my hart more light."⁵
 on the morrow, when itt was day,
 Sir Eglamore tooke the way
 to the riuer full right.
 192 the Erle made him redye there,
 & both rode to they riuer

Next day
 Eglamore

and the Earl
 hawk

¹ And take an hundred pound.—T.

² Her.—T.

³ And cryde 'Farewelle my sere.'—T.

⁴ Crystabelle hath takyn her way.

—T.

⁵ For comforte of that knyght.—T.

and are
pleasant
together.

to see some faire flight.
all they day they made good cheere :
196 a wrath began, as you may heare,
long ere itt was night.¹

17

But coming
home,
Eglamore
asks if the
Earl will
hear him.
“Certainly,

I like to
hear you :

you're the
best knight
in the land.”

“When will
your
daughter be
betrothed ?”

as they rode homeward in the way,
Sir Eglamore to the Erle gan say,
200 “My lord, will you now² heare ?” [pa
“all ready, Eglamore ; in ffay,
whatsoener you to me say,
to me itt is ffull deere ;
204 ffor why, the doughtyest art thou
that dwelleth in this Land now,
for to beare sheeld & speare.³”
“my Lord,” he said, “of charitye,
208 Christabell your daughter ffree,
when shall shee haue a ffeere ?”

18

“I know no
one whom
she would
have.”

“Give her
to me.”

“I will, and
all Artois
too, if you'll
do 3 deeds of
arms for
her.”

“Thank
you !

the Erle said, “soe god me saue,
I know noe man *that* shee wold haue,
212 my daughter faire and cleere.”
“now, good Lord, I you pray,
for I haue serued you many a day,
to giue me her withouten nay.”
216 the Erle said, “by gods paine,
if thou her winne as I shall saine,
by deeds of armes three,
then shalt thou haue my daughter deere,
220 & all Artois ffarr & neere.”
“gramercy, Sir !” said hee.

¹ long ere night it were.—P.

² ye me.—T.

³ Awnturs ferre or nere.—T.

19

Sir Eglamore [sware ¹], "soe mote I thee,
att my iourney ² flaine wold I be!"

let me go to
work at
once."

224 right soone he made him yare.
the Erle said, "here by west
dwelleth a Gyant in a fforrest,—
ffowler neuer saw I ere;—

The Earl
sets
Eglamore
his first
feat:
to go to a
giant's
forest,
and fetch
him one of
three harts
running
about there.

228 therin be trees flaire & ³ long,
3 harts ⁴ run them ⁵ amonge,
the fairest *that* on ffoot gone.

Sir, might yee bring one away,
232 then durst I boldly say
that yee had beene there."

20

6 "fforsooth," said Eglamore then,
"if *that* hee be a Christyan man,
236 I shall him neuer fforsake."
the Erle said in good cheere,
"with him shalt thou ffight in feere;
his name is Sir Marroccke."

Eglamore
undertakes
to fetch the
hart,

240 the Knight thought on Christabell;
he swore by him *that* harrowed hell,
him wold he neuer fforsake.

and fight
the giant
Marroccke.

"Sir, keepe well my Lady & my Land!"
244 therto the Erle held vp his hand,
& trothes they did strike.

He commits
Christabell
to her
father's care,

21

then afterwards, as I you say.
Sir Eglamore tooke the way

¹ The knight sweryd. — T.
² The word looks like a in the MS. — F.
³ Caput trees there growe owte. — T.
⁴ The h is like an l in the MS. — F.
⁵ Three hertys there walke. — T.
⁶ I. has for this stanza:

He Jhesu swere the knyght than,
"Yf he be ony Crystyn-man,
Y schalle hym never forsake.
Hobbe well my lady and my londe."
"aye," sayde the erle, "here myn honde!"
Hys trowthe to hym he strake.

tells her he
has under-
taken three
deeds of
arms for
her.

Christabell

hopes God
will help
him.

248 to *that* Ladye soe ffree :

“damsell,” hee said to her anon,
“ffor your Loue I haue vndertane
deeds of Armes three.”

252 “good Sir,” shee said, “be merry & glad ;¹
ffor a worsse Iourney you neuer had
in noe christyan countrie.

if god grant ffrom his grace

256 *that* wee² may ffrom *that* Iourney apace,
god grant it may be soe³ !

22

She gives
him a grey-
hound

that'll pull
down any
stag,

and a sword

that'll cut
any helm in
two.

“Sir, if you be on hunting ffound,
I shall you giue a good greyhound
260 *that* is dun as a doe ;
ffor as I am a true gentle woman,
there was neuer deere *that* he att⁴ ran
that might scape him ffroe :

264 alsoe a sword I giue thee,
that was ffound in the sea⁵ ;
of such I know noe moe.
if you haue happ to keepe itt weelee,
268 there is no helme of Iron nor steele
but itt wold carue in 2.

[Part II.⁶]

[How Eglamore kills the giant Marrocke and a big Boar.]

23

Eglamore
bids Christa-
bell good-
bye,

Eglamore kissed *that* Lady gent ;
he tooke his leaue, & fforth hee went.

¹ T. has for the next five lines :
For an hardere fytt never ye had,
Be God, in no cuntre !
Or that yurney be over passyd,
For my love ye schalle sey fulle ofte
allas !
And so schalle y for thee.
² ye.—P.

³ so bec.—P.
⁴ beste that on fote.—T.
⁵ Seynt Poule fonde hyt in the
see.—T.
⁶ Part I. would end better with
28, l. 341, where the Thornton
ends its “furste fytt.”—F.

272 his way now hath hee tane ;

276 { The hye streetes held he west
 2^d Parte. { till he came to the fforrest ;
 { farrer saw he neuer none,
 { with trees of Cypresse lying out.
 { the wood was walled round about
 { with strong walles of stone ;
 { fforthe he rade, as I vnderstand,
 280 { till he came to a gate *that* he fand,
 { & therin is he gone.

[page 299] rides to the forest,

enters it by a gate,

24

his horne he blew in that tyde ;
 harts start vpp on euery side,
 284 & a noble deere ¹ full prest ;
 the hounds att the deere gan bay.
 with *that* heard the Gyant where he lay ;
 itt lett him of his rest ;
 288 “ methinketh, by hounds *that* I heare,
 that there is one hunting ² my deare ;
 it were better *that* he cease ³ !
 by him *that* wore the crowne of thorne,
 292 in a worse time he neuer blew a horne,
 ne dearer bought a messe ⁴ ! ”

blows his horn,

and his hounds bay at the deer. The giant Marrocke

swears it¹ be the worst blowing the man ever made,

25

Marrocke the Gyant tooke the way
 thorow the fforrest were itt Lay ;
 296 to the gate he sett his backe.
 Sir Eglamore hath done to dead,

and goes to his gate.

¹ Twety does not use the word *deer* in making out the Hert. Now wyl we take of the hert, and speke we of his yere. *that* is to say, the fyrst yere he is called, the secunde yere a broket, the thrid yere a spayer, the iij. yere a stagge, the iij. yere a greet stagge, the vj. yere a hart at the fyrst hed ; but that he is not in judgement of hunters, for

the gret dyversyte that is fownde of hem, for alleway we calle of the fyrst hed tyl that he be of x. of the lasse. *Reliq. Antiq.* i. 151.—F.

² Yondur is a thefe to stole.—T.

³ He were welle better to be at the see.—T.

⁴ Neythur hye bowe bende is no manys see.—T.

Eglamore
kills a stag,
cuts his head
off,

and asks
Marroche to
let him pass.

Marroche

slaine a hart, & smitten off his head;
the prize ¹ he blew ffull shrill;
300 & when he came where the gyant was,
“good Sir,” he sayd, “lett me passe,
if *that* itt be your will.”
“nay, traitor! thou art tane!
304 my principall ² hart thou hast slaine!
thou shalt itt like ffull ill.”

26

strikes at
him

the Gyant att the chase³,
a great clubb vp hee takes,
308 *that* villanous was and great ⁴;
such a stroke hee him gaue
that into the earth went his staffe,
a floote on euery side.

and says he'll
keep him
there.

312 “traitor!” he said, “what doest thou here
in my fforrest to slay my deere?
here shalt thou now abyde.”

Eglamore
hits the
giant in the
eye, and
blinds him.

Eglamore his sword out drew,
316 & in his sight made such a shew,⁵
& made him blind *that* tyde.

27

but he
fights on for
two days and
more;

how-be-itt he lost his sight,
he ffought with Sir Eglamore *that* Knight
320 2 dayes & some deale more;
till the 3^d ⁶ day att prime

then
Eglamore
kills him,

Sir Eglamore waited his time,
& to the hart him bare.

¹ And whan the hert is take, ye shal blowe iiii. motys . . . and the hed shal be brout hom to the lord, and the skyn . . . Than blow at the dore of halle the *pryse*. . . . And whan the buk is i-take, ye shal blowe *pryse*, and reward your houndes of the paunch and the lowellis. Twety, in *Reliq. Ant.* i. 153. Fr. *Prise* a taking . . . also, the death or

fall of a hunted beast. Cotgrave.-

² chefe.—T.

³ to the knyzt ys gon.—T.

⁴ mekyllle and fulle unweelde.—

⁵ And to the geant he gafe a —T. *Sough*, a stroke or blow. J son.—F.

⁶ Tylle on the todur.—T.

- 324 through gods might, & his kniffe,
there the Gyant lost his liffe;
fast he began to rore.
for certaine sooth, as I you say,
328 when he was meaten¹ there he Lay
he was 15 ffoote² & more.

and he
roars.

He measures
fifteen feet.

28³

- through the might of god, & his kniffe,
thus hath the Gyant Lost his liffe;
332 he may thanke god of his boone!
the Gyants head with him hee bare
the right way as hee ffound there,
till hee came to the castle of stone.
336 all the whole court came him againe;
"such a head," they gan saine,
"saw they neuer none."
before the Erle he itt bare,
340 "my Lord," he said, "I haue beene there,
in witnesse of you all⁴!"

Eglamore
takes the
giant's head

to the Earl
of Artoys,
and says he
has been to
the giant.

29

- the Erle said, "sith itt is done,
Another Iourney there shall come soone,— [page 300]
344 buske thee & make thee yare,—
to Sattin, that⁵ cuntrye,
for therin may noe man bee
for doubt⁶ of a bore;
348 his tuskes are a yard⁷ long;
what flesh that they doe come among,
itt couereth⁸ neuer more;

The Earl
sets him his
second deed
of arms:

to go to
Sattin

and kill a
big boar
there,

¹ meted, measured.—F.

² xl fete.—T.

³ Mr. Halliwell makes two stanzas of
28 the rhyme-lines varying.—F.

⁴ I.e. there, l. 339, compare l. 233.

⁵ Sattin (in italics):

*Make we mery, so have we hys,
Thys ys the furste fytt of thys
That we have undertane.*—F.

⁶ In Sydon, in that ryche.—T.

⁷ fear.—F. drede.—T.

⁸ fote.—T.

⁹ recovers.—F.

which kills
everything
it gets hold
of.

both man & beast itt slayeth,
352 all *that* euer hee ouer-taketh,
& giueth them wounds sore."

30

Eglamore
starts again,
journeys

Sir Eglamore wold not gaine-say,
he tooke his leaue & went his way,
356 to his Iourney went hee.
towards Sattin, I vnderstand,
a ffortnight he went on Land,
& alsoe soe long on sea.
360 itt ffell againe in the euen tyde,
in the fforrest he did ryde
wheras the bore shold bee ;
& tydings of the bore soone hee ffound ;
364 by him men Lay dead on many a Land,¹
that pittye itt was to see.

fourteen
days over
land and sea,

and then
comes on
traces of
the boar,

dead men all
about.

31

Next
morning

he hears the
boar's cry,

Sir Eglamore *that Knight* awoke,²
& priuilye lay vnder an oke ;
368 till morrow the sun shone bright,
in the fforrest ffast did hee lye ;
of the bore he hard a crye,³
& neerer he gan gone right.
372 ffaire helmes he ffound in fere
that men of armes had lefft there,
that the bore had slaine.
Eglamore to the cliffe went hee,
376 he saw the bore come from the sea,
his morne draught⁴ had he tane.

and sees it
come from
the sea.

¹ The Lawnd in woodes. *Saltus nemorum*. Baret. *Saltus*, woodland pasture.—F.

² The last words of these lines are interchanged. T. has :

Syr Egyllamowre restyd hym undur oke;

Tylle on the morowe that he can wake

³ on the see he harde a sowe.—T.

⁴ morne drynke.—T.

32

the bore saw where the Knight stood,
 his tuskes he whetted as he were ¹ wood,
 380 to him he drew *that* tyde.
 Sir Eglamore weened well what to doe,
 with a speare he rode him to
 as ffast as he might ryde.
 384 all if hee ² rode neuer soe ffast,
 the good speare assunder brast,
 it wold not in the hyde.
that bore did him woe enonghe,
 388 his good horse vnder him he slough ;
 on floote then must hee byde.

The boar

comes
towards
him ;
Eglamore
rides at it,but breaks
his spear,and the
boar kills
his horse.

33

Eglamore saw no boote *that* tyde,
 but to an oake he sett his side
 392 amongst the trees great ;
 his good sword he drew out then,
 & smote vpon ³ the wild swine
 2 dayes & some deale more ; ⁴
 396 till the 3^d day att noone
 Eglamore thought his liffe was doone
 for ffightting with that bore ;
 then Eglamore with Egar mood
 400 smote of the bores head ;
 his tuskes he smote of thore.

He puts his
side to an
oak,cuts at the
boar two
days,till he's
nearly dead,but then
kills it.

34

⁵ the King of Sattin on hunting fare
 with 15 armed men & more ;

The King of
Sattin

¹ T. The first e is made over an h in the
² F
³ Gylf be. T.
⁴ Eighty with. - T.
⁵ Five dayes and more. T.
⁶ The Thornton version makes Egar 'La-

mourr only break off the boar's tusks in
 the preceding stanza, omits lines 2, 6, 7,
 of this, and has here:
 He thankyd God that ylike stownde,
 And gaf the bore hys dethys wound,
 The luke of Rome thus can telle.—F.

hears the
boar yell,

and sends a
squire to see
who's in
danger.

The squire

sees Eglam-
more
fighting the
boar.

He tells the
King the
boar is
slain
by a knight

with a blue
shield

and black
spurs.

- 404 the bore loud hard he yell ;
he camanded a squier to ffare,
“ some man is in his perill there !
I trow to long wee dwell.”
408 no longer wold the squier tarry,
but rode fast thither, by S^t Marye,
he was therto ffull snell ¹ ;
vp to the cliffe rode hee thore ;
412 Sir Eglamore ffought ffast with the bore |
with stroakes ffierce & fell.

35

- the squier stood & beheld them 2,
hee went againe and told soe,
416 “ fforsooth the bore is slaine.”
“ Lord ! S^t Mary ! how may this bee ? ”
“ a *Knight* is yonder certainlye
that was the bores bane ;
420 “ of gold he beareth a seemly sight,
in a ffeeld of azure an armed *Knight*,
to battell as hee shold gone ;
& on the crest vpon the head is
424 a Ladye made in her likenesse ;
his spures are sable eche one.”

36

The King

finds
Eglamore
lying down,

- the King said, “ soe mote I thee,
those rich armers I will see : ”
428 & thither hee tooke the way.
by *that* time Sir Eglamore
had ouercome the sharp stoure,
& ouerthawrt the bore Lay.²
432 the King said, “ god rest with thee ! ”
“ my Lord,” said Eglamore, “ welcome be

¹ query MS. siell.—F.

² And to reste hym down he lay.—T.

of peace now I thee pray !
 I haue soo ffighten with the bore
 436 that certainlye I may noe more ;
 this is the 3^d day."

exhausted ;

37

they all said anon-right,
 "great sinn itt were with thee to ffight,
 440 or to doe thee any teene ;
 manffully thou hast slaine this bore
 that hath done hurt sore,
 & many a mans death hath beene ;
 444 thou hast manfully vnder sheeld
 slaine this bore in the feild,
 that all wee haue seene !
 this haue I wist, the sooth to say,
 448 he hath slaine 40¹ on a day
 of my armed knights keene !²

praises him
 for killing
 the bore

that had
 slain so
 many
 knights ;

38

meat & drinke they him brought,
 rich wine they spared nought,
 452 & white clothes they spread.
 the King said, "soe mote I thee,
 I will dine for loue of thee ;
 thou hast been hard bestead."
 456 "forsooth," then Sir Eglamore saies,
 "I haue ffight these 4 dayes,³
 and not a ffoote him fledd."
 then said the King, "I pray thee
 460 all night to dwell with mee,
 & rest thee on a bedd."

provides him
 meat and
 wine ;

dines with
 him,

and asks
 him home to
 sleep.

syxty. - T.

¹ While armyd men and elene.—T.

² The three days have grown to four.

"Ye," he seyde, "permafay.

Now hyt ys the fyrate day

That evyr oon fote y fledd."—F.

39

Eglamore
tells the
King
what his
name is,

- & after meate, the soothe to say,
the King Sir Eglamore did pray
464 "of what country hee was."
"my name," he said, "is Sir Eglamore¹:
I dwell alsoe with Sir Prinsamoure,
that Erle is of artoys."
468 then Lords to the King drew,
"this is hee *that* Sir Marroccke slew,
the gyants brother Mamasse.²
"Sir," said the King, "I pray thee
472 these 3 dayes to dwell with mee,
from mee thou shalt not passe;

and the
King tells
him of a

40

Giant near
who wants
to seize his
daughter,

- "there dwelleth a Gyant here beside;
my daughter *that* is of micklell pride,
476 he wold haue me ffroe;
I dare to no place goe out
but men of armes be me about,
for dread of my foe.³
480 the bore thou hast slaine here,
that hath liued here this 15 yeere⁴
christen men for to sloe,
Now is he gone with sorrow enough [page
484 to [berye⁶] his brother *that* thou slough."
[that evyrmore be hym woo!⁷]

and is
Marroccke's
brother.

41

No one can
cut up the
boar

- to break⁸ the bore they went ffull tyte;
there was noe kniffe *that* wold him bitte,⁹

¹ He said "My name is Syr Awntour."
—T.

² Yondur ys he that Arrokk slowee,
The yeauntys brodur Maras.—T.

³ Fulle soldome have y thus sene soo.
—T.

⁴ He hath fedd hym xv yere.—T.

⁵ There are two pages 301 in th
and no page 302.—F.

⁶ berye.—T.

⁷ From the Thornton MS.—F.

⁸ splatt.—T.

⁹ Query MS.; it may be *kith*
byte.—T.

498 soe hard of hyde was hee.

"Sir Eglamore,¹ thou him sloughe;
I trow thy sword² be good enough;
haue done, I pray thee."³

492 Eglamore to the bore gan gone,
& clane him by the ridge⁴ bone,
that ioy itt was to see;

but Eglamore,

"Lordinga," he said, "great & small,⁵
496 giue me the head, & take you all;
for why, *that* is my fee."

who claims
only his
head.

42

the King said, "soe god me saue!
the head thou shalt haue;

500 thou hast itt bought full deere!"⁶
all the countrie was ffaine,
for the wild⁷ bore was slaine,
they made ffull royall cheere.

The people
rejoice at the
bear's
death.

504 the Queene said, "god send⁸ vs from shame!
ffor when the Gyant cometh home,
new tydings shall be here."⁹

43

against euen the King did dight

509 a bath ffor *that* gentle Knight,

¹ Syr Awntour, seyde the kyng.—T.

² knyfe.—T.

³ Gif that thy wylle bee.—T.

⁴ A Sax. *hrycg*, *rycg*, the back.—F.

⁵ Lord, seyde the knyght, y dud hym
all.—T.

⁶ After carys can they sende;

Agyn none home with that they
wende.

The cyte was them nere.—T.

⁷ wylde.—T.

⁸ schalle.—T.

⁹ geue we wene.—T, and it adds, p. 142.

For he ys strange and stowte,

And therof y haue mykylle dowte

That he wylle do us grite dore or we
haue done.

XLV.

Syr Egyllamowre, that nobylle knyght,
Was sett with the kynges doghtyr
bryght,

For that he scholde be blythe.

The maydenys name was Organata
so fre;

Sche preyeth hym of gode chere to bee,
And beseehyd hym so many a sythe.

After mete sche can hym telle
How that grant wolde them qualle:

The knyght began to lagh anone;

"Damyelle," he seyde, "so mote y thee,
And he come whylle y here bee,

Y schalle hym assay sone!"

Eglamore
lies in a
bath all
night.

that was of Erbes¹ good.
Sir Eglamore therin Lay
till itt was light of the day,
512 that men to Mattins² yode.

[Part III.³]

[How Eglamore kills another Giant, and a Dragon near Rome, and begets a Boy on Christabell.]

Next
morning
the Giant
comes,

and demands
the King's
daughter
Arnada.

3^d Part.

516

By the time he had heard masse,
the Gyant to this place come was,
& cryed as hee were wood ;
" Sir King," he said, " send vnto mee
Arnada⁴ thy daughter ffree,
or I shall⁵ spill thy blood."

44

Eglamore

520

Sir Eglamore anon-right⁶
in good armour he him dight,
& vpon the walles he yode⁷ ;

tells a squire

to show the
Giant the
boar's head.

524

he camanded a squier to beare
the bores head vpon a speare,
that the Gyant might itt⁸ see.

The Giant

& when he looked on the head,
" alas ! " he said,⁹ " art thou dead ?
my trust was all in thee !

swears he'll
avenge its
death,

528

now by the Law that I lue in,¹⁰
my litle speckeled hoglin,¹¹
deare bought shall thy death bee ! "

¹ Sibes.—P. The MS. is indistinct, and the Bishop explains it. See the way to prepare a bath in Russel's Boke of Nurture, *Babees Boke* &c. E. E. Text Soc. 1868, p. 182–5.

² mete.—T.

³ T. ends its *seconde fytt* with stanza 52, l. 611 below.—F.

⁴ Organata.—T.

⁵ thou schalt.—T.

⁶ that nobylle knyght.—T.

⁷ for 'yode he.'—F. wendyth h

⁸ Maras myght hym.—T.

⁹ my bore.—T.

¹⁰ leve ynne.—T.

¹¹ spote hoglyn.—T. Fr. *coche* shote or shete pigge, a prettie l
—Cotgrave.

45

the Gyant on the walls donge ;
 532 att enery stroke fyer out spronge ;
 for nothing wold he spare.
 towards the castle gan he crye,
 “ false traitor ! thou shalt dye ¹
 536 for slaying of my bore !
 your strong walles I doe ² downe ding,
 & with my hands I shall the hange ³
 ere *that* I ffurther passe.⁴”
 540 but through the grace of god almight,
 the Gyant had his fill of fight,
 & therto some deale more.⁵

and
threatens to
kill Eglam-
more.

46⁶

Sir Eglamore was not agast ;
 544 on might-ffull god was all his trust,
 & on his sword soe good.
 to Eglamore said the King then,
 “ best is to arme vs enerye man ;
 548 this theefe, I hold him woode.”

Eglamore
trusts in
God and his
good sword,

47⁶

Sir Eglamore sware by the roode,
 “ I shall him assay if hee were wood ;
 mickle is gods might ! ”
 552 he rode a course to say his steed,
 he tooke his helme & forth hee yeede ;
 All men prayed for *that* Knight.

gives his
steed a
gallop,

[page 303]

48

Sir Eglamore into the ffeild taketh ;
 556 the Gyant see him,⁷ & to him goeth ;

takes the
field,

Theris, traytours, ye schalle aby.

1. T. 2 hynge T.

fare qu. — P. Or that y hene fare.

3. 4. maie. — P.

6 T. makes one stanza, XLIX. of these, p. 144 5, and alters the arrangement of the lines, &c. F.

7 *him* has a line through it. — F.

"welcome," he said, "my ffeere!
 thou art hee *that* slew ¹ my bore!
that shalt thou repent ffull sore,
 560 & buy itt wonderous deere!"
 Sir Eglamore weened well what to doe;
 with a speare he rode him to,
 as a man of armes cleere.
 564 against him the Gyant was redy bowne,
 but horsse & man he bare all downe,
that dead he was ffull nere.

and charges
the Giant,

who upsets
him and his
horse.

49

Sir Eglamore cold noe better read,
 568 but what time his horsse was dead,
 to his ffoote he hath him tane;
 & then Eglamore to him gan goe;
 the right arme he smote him free,
 572 euen by the sholder bone;
 & tho he ² had lost his hand,
 all day hee stood a flightand
 till the ssun to rest gan goe;
 576 ³ the sooth to say, withouten lye,
 he sobbed & was soe drye
that liffe him lasteth none.

Eglamore

attacks him
on foot,

and cuts off
the Giant's
right arm,

but he
fights on
till sun-
down,

and then
drops dead.

50

all *that* on the walles were,
 580 when they heard the Gyant rore,
 ffor ioy the bells thé ring.
 Edmond was the Kings ⁴ name,
 swore to Sir Eglamore, "by St. Iame,
 584 here shalt thou be King!

They ring
the bells;
King
Edward
promises
to crown
Eglamore

¹ Y trowe thou halpe to sle.—T.

² Thowe the lorelle.—T.

³ Then was he so wery he myzt not
stonde,

The blode ran so faste fro h
every honde,

That lyfe dayes hadd he nev
—T.

⁴ kynges.—T.

“ to-morrow thou shalt crowned bee,
 & thou shalt wed my daughter ffree
 with a curyous rich ringe ! ”

and marry
 him to his
 daughter.

588 Eglamore answered with words mild :
 “ god ¹ giue you ioy of your child !
 ffor here I may not abyde longe. ² ”

Eglamore
 declines the
 young lady,

51

“ Sir Eglamore, for thy doughtye deede
 592 thou shalt not be called lewd
 in noe place where thou goe ! ” ³
 then said Arnada, ⁴ *that* sweete thing,
 “ haue here of me a gold ring
 596 with a precyous stone ;
 where-soe you bee on water or Land,
 & this ring vpon your hand,
 nothing may you slone.”

though she
 gives him a
 charmed
 ring

52

600 “ gramercy ! ” sayd Eglamore ffree.
 “ this 15 yeeres will I abyde thee,
 soe *that* you will me wed ;
 this will I sweare, soe god me saue,
 604 King ne Prince nor none will haue,
 if they be comlye cladd ! ”
 “ damsell,” he said, “ by my ffay,
 by *that* time I will you say
 608 how *that* I haue spedd.”
 he tooke the Gyants head & the bore,
 & towards Artoys did he ffare,
 god helpe me att neede ! ⁵

and offers to
 wait fifteen
 years for
 him.

He puts her
 off,

and starts
 towards
 Artoys.

Syr.—T. ² may ye not lende.—T.
 Y schalle geve the a nobylle stede,
 Al so redd as ony roone ;
 Yn yustyng ne in turnement,
 Thou schalt never soffur dethys
 wound
 Whylle thou syttyst hym upon.
 —T.

Seyde Organata.—T.

⁵ The knyght takyth hys leve and
 farys,
 Wyth the geauntys hedd and the
 borys,
 The weyes owre Lord wylle hym
 lede.
Thys ys the seconde fytt of thys :
Make we mery, so have we blys,
For ferre have we to rede.—T.

53

In seven
weeks Eglam-
more reaches
Artoys,

- 612 by *that* 7 weekes were comen to end,
euen att Artoys he did lend,
wheras Prinsamoure was.
the Erle therof was greatly faine
616 *that* Eglamore was come againe;
soe was both more¹ and lesse.
when Christabell as white as swan,
heard tell how Eglamore was come,
620 to him shee went full yare;²

is greeted by
Christabell,

54

whom he
kisses,

the *Knight* kissed *that* Lady gent,
then into the hall hee went
the Erle for to teene.

but her
father says,
"Devil take
you, will
nothing kill
you?"

- 624 The Erle answered, & was ffull woe [p
"what devill! may nothing thee sloe?
forsooth, right as I weene,
thou art about, as I vnderstand,
628 for to winn Artoys & all my Land,
& alsoe my daughter cleane."

You want
my land and
my daughter
I suppose."

55

"I do," says
Eglamore.

Sir Eglamore said, "soe mote I thee,
not but if I worthy bee;

"Oh!
perhaps
you'll get
killed yet."

- 632 soe god giue me good read!"³
the Erle said, "such chance may ffall,
that one may come & quitt all,
be thou neuer so prest."

Eglamore
asks for
twelve weekes
rest;

- 636 "but good Lord, I you pray,
of 12 weekes to giue me day,

¹ One stroke too many in the MS. *m.*
—F.

² T. adds:
"Syr," sche
faryn?"

seyde, "how haue ye

"Damycele, wele, and in travelle!
To brynge us bothe owt of care."

³ Helpe God that ys beste.—T.

my weary body to rest.”
 12 weekes were granted then
 640 by prayer of many ¹ a gentleman.
 & comforted him with the best.

56

Sir Eglamore after supper
 went to Christabells chamber
 644 with torches burning bright.
 the Ladye was of soe great pride,²
 shee sett him on her bedside,
 & said, “ welcome, Sir Knight ! ”
 648 then Eglamore did her tell
 of adventures *that* him befell,
 but there he dwelled all night.
 “ damsell,” he said, “ soe god me speed,
 652 I hope in god you for to wedd ! ”
 & then their trothes they plight.³

after supper
 goes to
 Christabell's
 chamber,

stays there
 all night,
 and begets a
 son on her.

57

by *that* 12 weekes were come & gone,
 Christabbell *that* was as faire as sunn,⁴
 656 all wan waxed her hewe.
 shee said vnto her maidens ffree,
 “ in *that* yee know my priuitye,⁵
 looke *that* yee bee trew ! ”
 660 the Erle angerlye gan ffare,
 he said to Eglamore, “ make thee yare
 for thy Iourney a-new ! ”
 When Christabell therof heard tell,⁶
 664 shee mourned night & day,
that all men might her rue.

In twelve
 weeks
 Christabell

grows wan,
 and begs her
 maids to
 keep her
 secret.

The Earl
 orders Egla-
 more off,

and Christa-
 bell mourns.

Only half the *n* is in the MS.—F.
 was not for to hyde.—T.
 T. adds :
 So graciously he come hur tylle,
 Of poyntes of armys he schewyd
 hur hys fylle,
 That there they dwellyd alle nyȝt.

⁴ as whyte as fome.—T.

⁵ Sche prayed hur gentylle women so
 fre,
 That they would layne hur privyte.
 —T.

⁶ say.—P.

58

Eglamore's
Third Deed
of Arms is to
kill a strong
Dragon near
Rome.

the Erle said, "there is mee told long,
beside Roome there is a dragon strong;
668 forsooth as I you say,
the dragon is of such renowne
there dare noe man come neere the towne
by 5 miles and more;¹
672 arme thee well & thither wend;
looke *that* thou slay him with thy hand,
or else² say mee nay."

59

Eglamore
takes leave

Sir Eglamore to the chamber went,
676 & tooke his leane of the Ladye gent,
white as fflower on ffeelde³;
"damsell," he said, "I haue to doone;
I am to goe, & come againe right soone
680 through the might of Marry mild.
a gold ring I will giue thee;
keepe itt well for the loue of mee
if christ send me a child."
684 & then, in Romans as wee say,
to great roome he tooke his way,
and goes to
Rome. to seeke the dragon wild.⁴

of Christa-
bell,

gives her a
gold ring,

and goes to
Rome.

60

if he were neuer soe hardye a *Knight*,
688 when of the dragon he had a sight,
his hart began to be cold.⁵
anon the dragon waxed wrothe,
he smote Sir Eglamore & his steed bothe,
692 *that* both to ground they fell.⁶

The Dragon
throws down
him and his
horse.

¹ Be xv. myle of way.—T.

² ellys thou.—T. After *nay* T. adds
six lines not in our text.—F.

³ in may.—P.

⁴ The Thornton text adds :

Tokenynges sone of hym he fon
Slayne men on every honde;

Be hunderdes he them tolde.

⁵ to folde.—T.

⁶ To the grounde so colde.—T.

Eglamore rose, & to him sett,
 & on *that* flowle worme hee bett
 with stroakes many and bold ¹;

Eglamore
 attacks the
 Dragon,

[page 305]

61

696 the dragon shott fire with his mouth
 like the devill of hell;
 Sir Eglamore neere him gan goe,
 & smote his taile halfe him ffree ²;
 700 then he began to yell,
 & with the stumpe *that* yett was leane
 he smote Sir Eglamore on the head;
that stroake was ffeirce and fell.

cuts half its
 tail off,

is wounded
 himself in
 the head,

62

704 " Sir Eglamore neere him gan goe,
 the dragons head he smote of thoe,
 fforsooth as I you say,
 his wings he smote of alsoe,³
 708 he smote the ridge bone in 2,
 & wan the ffeild *that* day.
 the Emperour of Roome Lay ⁴ in his tower
 & fast beheld Sir Eglamore,
 712 & to his *Knights* gan say,
 " doe cry in Roome, the dragons slaine!
 a knigh[t] him slew with might & maine,
 manfully, by my flay!"
 716 through Roome they made a crye,
 euery officer in his baylye,
 " the dragon is slaine this day!"

but kills the
 Dragon.

The
 Emperour
 Constantine
 of Rome

orders the
 Dragon's
 death to be
 proclaimed,

63

& then the Emperour tooke the way
 720 to the place where Eglamore lay,

then goes to
 Eglamore,

With bytter dylte and felle.—T.
 Halfe the tonge he stroke away.—T.
 The knyght cryde, " Now am y
 rebute!"

Nere that wyekyd worme he went,
 Hys hedd he stroke away.—T.
 ' stode.—T.

beside *that* foule thing,
 with all *that* might ride or gone.
 Sir Eglamore they haue vp tane,
 brings him to Rome,
 and the people meet
 him in
 procession.
 724 & to the towne they can him bring;
 ffor ioy *that* they dragon was slaine,
 they came with procession him againe,
 and bells they did ringe.
 728 the Emperour of Roome brought him soone,
 Constantine, *that* was his name,
 a Lord of great Longinge.

64

¹ all *that* euer saw his head,
 732 *thé* said *that* Eglamore was but dead,
that Knight Sir Eglamore.
 the Emperour had a daughter bright,
 shee vndertooke to heale the Knight,
 Constantine's daughter
 Vyardus
 736 her name was vyardus.²
³ with good salues shee healed his head
 & saued him ffrom the dead,
that Lady of great valours :
 740 & there within a little stond
 shee made Sir Eglamore whole & sound ;
 god giue her honor ! ³

¹ T. omits the next three lines.—F.

² ys Dawntowre.—T.

³⁻³ The Thornton text has for these :
 Scho sauyys hym fro the dedd,
 And with hur handys sche helyth hys
 hedd
 A twelmonth in hur bowre.

It then adds two stanzas of text
 (LXVII, LXVIII, p. 153-4) telling
 the Emperor had the Dragon's
 fetched into Rome, and put in '
 Laurens kyrke.' As to this church
Stacions of Rome, p. 13; *Pol. Rel.*
Poems, p. 132. p. xxxv.—F.

[Part IV.]

[How Christabell's child is born, and a Griffin flies away with it.]

65

744 { Anon word came to Artois
 how *that* the dragon slaine was :
 a Knight *that* deede had done.
 soe long at the Lecche-craft he did dwell,
 1. parte { *that* a faire sonne¹ had Christabell
 748 { as white as whales bone.²
 then the Erle made his vow,
 “ daughter ! into the sea shalt thou
 in a shipp thy selfe alone !
 752 Thy younge sonne shall be thy fere,³
 christendome⁴ getteth itt none here ! ”
 her maidens wept eche one.

While Eglamore is under the doctor's hands, Christabell has a son.

Her father vows he'll send her and her brat out to sea alone.

66

756 ⁵ her mother in swoone did fall,
 right soe did her freinds all
 that wold her any good.
 “ good Lord,” she said, “ I you pray,
 let some prest a gospell say,
 760 for doubt of freendes in the flood.
 farwell,” shee said, “ my maidens free !
 greet well my Lord when you him see.”
 they wept as they were woode.
 764 Leave wee now Sir Eglamore,
 And speake wee more of *that* Ladye flower
 that vnknown wayes yeelde.⁶

Christabell prays that a priest may say a gospel for them,

and takes leave of her maidens.

[page 366]

¹ A man-childe. T.

² Some ancient writers imagined ivory, chiefly made from the teeth of the walrus to be formed from the bones of a whale. Halliwell's Gloss. F.

³ And that bastard that to the yo-

der. T.

⁴ christening.—F.

⁵ T. inserts a stanza and a quarter here, p. 154-5, but leaves out the mother's swimming. F.

⁶ yeelde.—P.

67

Her ship
comes to a
rock,

768

the shipp droue fforth night & day
vp to a rocke, the sooth to say,
where wild beasts did run.¹

she lands,

772

shee was ffull ffaine, I vnderstand,
shee wend shee had beene in some [known²] Land,
& vp then gan shee wend.

finds only
birds and
beasts there,

noe manner of men ffound shee there,
that ffoules & beasts *that* were there,
ffast. they fled ffrom Land.

and a griffin
carries her
boy off to a
strange
country,

776

there came a Griffon³ *that* rought her care;
her younge child away hee bare
Into a countrie vnknowne.⁴

68

the King of
Isarell's

780

the Ladye wept, & said " alas

that euer shee borne was !

my child is taken me ffroe ! "

the King of Isarell on huntinge went;
he saw where the ffoule lent;

784

towards him gan he goe.

land.

a griffon, the booke saith *that* he hight,
that in Isarell did light,

that wrought *that* Ladye woe.

788

the ffoule smote him with his bill,
the child cryed and liked ill;
the griffon then lefft him there.

69

A Gentle-
woman picks
up the boy.

792

a gentlewoman to *that* [child⁵] gan passe,
& lapp[t] itt in a mantle of Scarlett was,
& with a rich pane.⁶

¹ feede.—P.

² there had be a kende londe.—T.

³ a grype.—T. Fr. *griffon*, a grype or griffon.—Cotgrave. Grype, byrde, *vultur*; Promptorium: see Mr. Way's note to it, p. 212-13.—F.

⁴ unknowe.—P.

⁵ a squyer to the chylde.—T.

⁶ Pane of furre, *panne* (Palsgrave): *Panne* a skinne, fell or hide (Cotgrave); from L. *pannus*, Way. Cp. counterpane.—F.

the child was large of lim & lythe,
 a girdle of gold itt was bound with,
 796 with worsse cloth itt was cladd.
 the King swore by the rood,
 "the child is come of gentle blood,
 whersoener *that* hee was tane ;
 800 & for he ffreo the Griffon fell,
 they named the child degrabell,
that lost was in wilsome way.

The King

christens
him Degra-
bell,

70

the King wold hunt noe more *that* tyde,
 804 but with the child homeward gan ryde,
that ffrom the Griffon was hent.
 "Madam," he said to his Queene,
 "full oft I haue a hunting beene ;
 808 this day god hath me lent."
 of *that* Child he was blythe ;
 after nurses shee went beline ;
 the child was lonelye gent.
 812 leane wee now of this chylde,
 & talke wee of his mother mild,
 to what Land god her sent.

and takes
him home to
his wife,who gets
nurses for
him.Meantime,
Christabell

71

all *that* night on the rocke shee lay ;
 816 a wind rose vpon the ¹ day,
 & ffrom the Land her drineth.
 in *that* shipp was neither mast nor ore,
 but euery streame vpon other
 820 *that* flust vpon her drineth.
 & as the great booke of Roome saies,
 shee was without mente 5 dayes
 among the great cliffes.²

leaves her
ruck,is driven
about the
sea,fasts five
dayes,¹ ag ynyn. T² MS. cliffes. F.

and then
reaches
Egypt.

824 by *that* 5 dayes were gone,
god sent her succour soone ;
in ægipt ¹ shee arriued.

72

The King

the King of Ægipt ¹ lay in his tower,
828 & saw the Ladye as white as fflower
that came right neere the Land ;
he comanded a Squire ffree
to ' Looke what in *that* shipp might bee
832 *that* is vpon the sand.'

sends a
squire to her.

the Squier went thither ffull tite,
on the shipbord he did smite,
a Ladye vp then gan stand ;

Christabell
cannot speak
to the squire,

836 Shee might not speake to him a word, [page
but lay & looked ouer the bord,
& made signes with her hand.²

73

who goes
back to the
King,

the squier wist not what shee ment ;
840 againe to the King he went,
& kneeled on his knee :
" Lord, in the shipp nothing is,
sauiing one in a womans Likenesse
844 *that* ffast looked on mee.

and tells
him what a
lovely
foreign
woman he
has seen.

but on ³ shee be of fflesh & bone,
a ffairer saw I neuer none,
saue my Ladye soe ffree ! ⁴
848 shee maketh signes with her hand ;
shee seemeth of some ffarr Land ;
vnknownen shee is to mee.⁵

¹ The MS. may be either Æ or Æ in this and other cases.—F.

² The Thornton text adds :

Make we mery for Goddys est ;

Thys ys the thrydd fyttle of owre geste,

That dar y take an hande.—F.

³ an, if.—F.

⁴ But hyt were Mary free.—T.

⁵ Beyond the Grekys see.—T.

74

Sir Marmaduke ¹ highet the King,²
 852 he went to see *that* sweet thing,
 he went a good pace.
 to the Ladye he said in same,
 "speake, woman, on gods name!"
 856 against him shee rose.
 the Lady *that* was soe meeke & milde,
 shee had bewept sore her child,
 that almost gone shee was.³
 860 home to the court they her Ledd,
 with good meates they her fiedd;⁴
 with good will shee itt taketh.⁵

King Mar-
madukegoes to
Christabell,
speaks to
her,takes her
home to
Court,
feeds her
well,

75

"Now, good damsell," said the King,
 864 "where were you borne, my sweet thing?
 yee are soe bright of blee."
 "Lord, in Artois borne I was;
 Sir Prinsamoure my ffather was,
 868 *that* Lord is of *that* Countrye;
 I and my maidens went to play
 by an arme of the sea;
 Iocund wee were and Iollye:
 872 they wind was lithe, a bote there stood,
 I and my squier in yode,
 but vnchristened was hee.

and asks her
who she is.Christabell
tells him,

and says she

got into a
boat with
her boy,

76

"on land I lefft my maidens all,
 876 my younge squier on sleepe gan fall,
 my mantle al on him I threw;

wrapped him
in her
mantle,

Marmaduke seems to have been from
maluke — Pencil note.

Be thou owre that gentylle kyng.
 T. doesn't give "The kyng of

Egypt" a name.—F.

¹ She was wezyn alle horse.—T.

² Dylycyus metys they hur badd.—T.

³ sche them tase.—T.

and a griffin
flew away
with him.

880 a griffon there came *that* rought me care,
my younge squier away hee bare,
southeast with him hee drew.”

“ All right,
you shall be
my niece
then:”

884 “ damsell,” he said, “ be of good cheere,
thou art my brothers daughter deere.”
ffor Ioy of him shee lounge ;
1 & there shee did still dwell
till time *that* better beffell,
with ioy and mirth enoughe.¹

and Christa-
bell stays in
Egypt.

[Part V.]

[How Eglamore comes back to Artois, and goes to the Holy Land for
fifteen years ; and how Christabell marries her own son.]

77

As soon as
Eglamore
recovers,

888

he leaves
llome,

5.^d parte

892

to go home
to Christa-
bell.

896

He reaches
Artois,

Now is Eglamore whole & sound,
& well healed of his wound ;
homeward then wold hee flare.
of the Emperour he tooke leaue I-wis,
of the daughter, & of the Empresse,
& of all the meany *that* were there.
Christabell was most in his thought :
the dragons head hee home brought,
on his speare he itt bare.

by *that* 7 weekes were come to end,
in the land of Artoys can he Lend,
wheras the Erle gan flare.

78

900 in the court was told, as I vnderstand,
how *that* Eglamore was come to Land
with the dragons head.
his Squier rode againe him soone,
“ Sir, thus hath our Lord doone ;²
904 ffaire Christabell is dead !

and his
squire tells
him that
Christabell
is dead.

¹— Kepe we thys lady whyte as flowre,
And speke we of syr Egyllamowre ;

Now comyth to hym care y-nogh-
² Lo ! lorde, what the erle hath done !

a ffaire sonne shee had borne ;

¹ bothe they are now fforlorne
through his ffalse read ; ¹

908 In ² a shipp hee put them 2,
& with the wind let them goe."
then swooned ³ he where hee stood.

Her father
sent her and
her boy

[page 308] out to sea in
a ship.

Eglamore
swoons,

79

"alas !" then said the *Knight* soe ffree,
912 " Lord ! where may my maidens bee
that in her chamber was ? "

the Squier answered him ffull soonc,

" as soone as shee was doone,

916 ech one their way did passe."

Eglamore went into the hall
before the Squiers & knights all :

" & thou, Erle of Artoys !

920 take," he said, " the dragons head !
all his mine *that* here his lead !
what dost thou in this place ? " ⁴

asks after
Christabell's
maidens,

goes to the
Earl of
Artois,
gives him
the Dragon's
head,
claims all
his goods,
and asks him
what he's
doing there.

80

great dole itt was to heere

924 when he called Christabell his fere :

" what ! art thou drowned in the sea ?

god *that* dyed on the rood bitterlye, ⁵

on thy soule haue mercye,

928 and on *that* younge child soe ffree ! "

the Erle was soe feard of Eglamore

that he was ffaine to take his tower ; ⁶

Eglamore
laments over
Christabell
and her boy,

¹—¹ The erle hath hys lyfe forlorne,
He was bothe whyte and rede.—T.

² *Im* in MS.—P.

³ Swooning was the correct thing for
knight, and on very much less provo-
cation than this. See many instances
in *Seynt Graal*, &c. &c. It betokened

the possession of delicate feelings.—F.

⁴ Alle ys myn that here ys levydd.

Thou syttyst in my place.—T.

⁵ on crosse verye.—T.

⁶ The erle rose up and toke a towre.
—T.

that enermore woe him bee !

and calls on
all who want
knighthood
to go with
him.

- 932 Eglamore said, "soe god me saue,
all *that* the order of *Knight-hoode* will haue,
rise vp & goe with mee ! "

81

they were ffull faine to do his will ;

- 936 vp they rose, & came him till ;
he gaue them order soone.

the while *that* he in hall abode,

He dubs
thirty-two
knights,

- 32¹ knights he made,
940 ffrom morne till itt was noone.

² those *that* liuing had none,
he gaue them liuing to liue vpon,
ffor Christabell to pray soone.

- 944 then anon, I vnderstand,
he tooke the way to the holy Land,
where god on the rood was done.

starts for the
Holy Land,

82

Sir Eglamore, as you heare,

and lives
there fifteen
years,

- 948 he dwelled there 15 yeere

the heathen men amonge ;

fighting all
wrong-
livers.

ffull manffullye he there him bare,
where any deeds of armes were,

- 952 against him *that* liued wronge.

in battell or in turnament

there might no man withstand his dent,
but downe right he him thronge.

- 956 by *that* 15 yeeres were gone,
his sonne *that* the griffon had tane,
was waxen both stiffe and stronge.

His son
Degrabell
is now
grown big,

¹ V. and thretty.—T.

² And he that was the porest of them
alle,
He gaf for Crystyabellys soule
Londys to leue upon.

A thousand, as y undurstonde,
He toke with hym, and went
the Holy Londe,
There God on cros was done.

83

- now was degrabell waxen wight ;
 960 the *King* of Isarell dubbd him a *Knight* is dubbed
 and Prince with his hand. knight,
 Listen, Lords great and small,
 of what manner of armes he bare, and these are
 964 & yee will vnderstand : his arms :
 he bare in azure, a griffon of gold
 richlye portrayed in the mold, on a shield of
 on his clawes hanginge azure
 a golden
 griffin
 968 a man child in a mantle round
 & with a girdle of gold bound, carrying a
 without any Leasinge. boy with a
 girdle of
 gold.

84

- the *King* of Isarell, hee waxed old ;
 972 to degrabell his sonne he told, The *King* of
 “ I wold thou had a wiffe Isarell asks
 while *that* I live, my sonne deere ; Degrabell to
 when I am dead, thou hast noe ffere, marry.
 976 riches is soe riffe.” ¹
 a messenger stoode by the *King* :
 “ in *Ægipt* is a sweet thing, They are
 I know noe such on line ; told of
 Christabell
 in *Egypt* ;
 980 the *King*, fforsooth, this oath hath sworne,
 there shall none her haue *that* is borne
 But he winne her by striffe.” [page 309] but he who
 wins her
 must fight
 for her.
 the *King* said, “ by the rood,
 984 wee will not Lett if shee bee good ;
 haue done, & buske vs swythe.”
 anon-right they made them yare,
 & their armour to the shipp thé bare, They make
 ready,
 988 to passe the watter beline. sail off,

¹ When y am dedd, thou getyst no pere,
 Of ryches thou art so ryfe.—T.

85

land in
Egypt,

and
announce
their coming
to the King
of Egypt.

He welcomes
them,

- by tthat 7 dayes ¹ were comen to end,
in ægipt Land they gan Lend,
the vnconthe costes to see.²
992 messengers went before to tell,
“ here cometh the *King* of Isarell
with a ffaire Meany,
& the Prince with many a *Knight*,
996 ffor to hane your daughter bright,
if itt your wil be.”
the *King* said, “ I trow I shall
ffind Lodging³ ffor you all ;
1000 right welcome yee are to mee ! ”

86

leads the
King of
Isarell into
the hall,

- then trumpetts in the shipp⁴ rose,
& euery man to Land goes ;
the *Knights* were clothed in pall.
1004 the younge *Knight* of 15 yeere,
he rydeth, as yee may heere,
a ffoote aboue them all.
the *King* of Isarell on the Land,
1008 the *King* of Ægipt takes him by the hand
& Ledd him into the hall :
⁵ “ Sir,” said the *King*, “ ffor charitye,
will you lett mee your daughter see,⁵
1012 white as bone of whall ? ”

87

and lets him
see Christa-
bell.

Her son
Degrabell
desires her,

- the Lady ffrom the chamber was brought ;
with mans hands shee seemed wrought
& carned out of tree.
1016 her owne sonne stood & beheld :

¹ Be th[r]e wekys.—T.

² Ther forsus for to knowe swythe.
—T.

³ redy yustyng.—T.

⁴ Trumpus in the topp-castelle.

⁵ Y prey the thou gyf me a syg
Of Crystyabelle, yowre do
bryght.—T.

" well worthye him *that* might weld ! "
 thus to himselfe thought hee.
 the King of Isarell asked then
 1020 if that she ¹ might passe the streame,
 his sonnes wiffe ffor to bee.
 " Sir," said the King, " if *that* you may
 meete me a stroake to-morrowe,
 1024 thine asking grant I thee."

and may
have her if
he wins her

88

Lords in hall were sett,
 & waites blew to the meate.
 they made all royall cheere ;
 1028 the 2 Kings the desse began,²
 Sir Degrabell & his mother then,
 the 2 were sibb full neere.
 then Knights went to sitt I-wis,
 1032 & euery man to his office,
 to serue the Knights deere ;
 & after meate washed they,³
 & Clarkes grace gan say
 1036 in hall, as you may heere.

They dine.

and Degra-
bell and his
mother have
the high
seat.

89

then on the morrow when day sprong
 gentlemen in their armour ⁴ throng,
 Degrabell was dight ;
 1040 the King of Ægipt gan him say
 in a flaire ffeeld *that* day
 with many a noble Knight.
 what time the great Lord might him see,
 1044 they asked, " what Lord *that* might bee
 with the griffon see bright ? "

Next day

Degradell
arms,
and the
King of
Ægypt tries
him.

¹ M^s the Yf she. T. (with other
larger) — F.

² Had the chief seats on the dais. — F.

³ See the operation described in *The
24th of Carthage* &c. (F. E. Text Soc.

1867). F. T. has:

After mete, than seyde they

Deus paxis, clerkys canne seye.

⁴ to harula. — T.

67

Her ship
comes to a
rock,

768 the shipp droue fforth night & day
vp to a rocke, the sooth to say,
where wild beasts did run.¹

she lands,

772 shee was ffull ffaine, I vnderstand,
shee wend shee had becne in some [known²] Land,
& vp then gan shee wend.

finds only
birds and
beasts there,

noe manner of men ffound shee there,
that ffoules & beasts *that* were there,
ffast. they fled ffrom Land.

and a griffin
carries her
boy off to a
strange
country,

776 there came a Griffon³ *that* rought her care;
her younge child away hee bare
Into a countrie vnknowne.⁴

68

the King of
Isarell's

780 the Ladye wept, & said "alas
that euer shee borne was!
my child is taken me ffroe!"

land.

the King of Isarell on huntunge went;
he saw where the ffoule lent;
784 towards him gan he goe.
a griffon, the booke saith *that* he hight,
that in Isarell did light,
that wrought *that* Ladye woe.

788 the ffoule smote him with his bill,
the child cryed and liked ill;
the griffon then lefft him there.

69

A Gentle-
woman picks
up the boy.

792 a gentlewoman to *that* [child⁵] gan passe,
& lapp[t] itt in a mantle of Scarlott was,
& with a rich pane.⁶

¹ feede.—P.

² there had be a kende londe.—T.

³ a grype.—T. Fr. *griffon*, a grype or griffon.—Cotgrave. Grype, byrde, *vultur*; Promptorium: see Mr. Way's note to it, p. 212-13.—F.

⁴ unknowe.—P.

⁵ a squyer to the chylde.—T.

⁶ Pane of furre, *panne* (Palgrave); *Panne* a skinne, fell or hide (Cotgrave); from L. *pannus*, Way. Op. counterpane.—F.

the child was large of lim & lythe,
 a girdle of gold itt was bound with,
 796 with worasse cloth itt was cladd.
 the King swore by the rood,
 "the child is come of gentle blood,
 whersoener *that* hee was tane ;
 800 & for he firoe the Griffon fell,
 they named the child degrabell,
that lost was in wilsome way.

The King

christens
him Degra-
bell,

70

the King wold hunt noe more *that* tyde,
 804 but with the child homeward gan ryde,
that ffrom the Griffon was hent.
 "Madam," he said to his Queene,
 "full oft I haue a hunting beene ;
 808 this day god hath me lent."
 of *that* Child he was blythe ;
 after nurses shee went beline ;
 the child was louelye gent.
 812 leane wee now of this chylde,
 & talke wee of his mother mild,
 to what Land god her sent.

and takes
him home to
his wife,who gets
nurses for
him.Meantime,
Christabell

71

all *that* night on the rocke shee lay ;
 816 a wind rose vpon the ¹ day,
 & ffrom the Land her driueth.
 in *that* shipp was neither mast nor ore,
 but euery streame vpon other
 820 *that* fast vpon her driueth.
 & as the great booke of Roome saies,
 shee was without meate 5 dayes
 among the great cliffes.²

leaves her
rock,is driven
about the
sea,fasts five
days.¹ ag ynys. T.² MS. cliffes. F.

and then
reaches
Egypt.

824 by *that* 5 dayes were gone,
god sent her succour soone ;
in ægipt ¹ shee arriued.

72

The King

the King of Ægipt ¹ lay in his tower,
828 & saw the Ladye as white as fflower
that came right neere the Land ;
he comanded a Squire ffree
to ' Looke what in *that* shipp might bee
832 *that* is vpon the sand.'

sends a
squire to her.

Christabell
cannot speak
to the squire,

the Squier went thither ffull tite,
on the shipbord he did smite,
a Ladye vp then gan stand ;
836 Shee might not speake to him a word, [page
but lay & looked ouer the bord,
& made signes with her hand.²

73

who goes
back to the
King,

the squier wist not what shee ment ;
840 againe to the King he went,
& kneeled on his knee :
" Lord, in the shipp nothing is,
sauing one in a womans Likenesse
844 *that* ffast looked on mee.

and tells
him what a
lovely
foreign
woman he
has seen.

but on ³ shee be of fflesh & bone,
a ffairer saw I neuer none,
saue my Ladye soe ffree ! ⁴
848 shee maketh signes with her hand ;
shee seemeth of some ffarr Land ;
vnknownen shee is to mee.⁵

¹ The MS. may be either *CE* or *Æ* in this and other cases.—F.

² The Thornton text adds :

*Make we mery for Goddys est ;
Thys ys the thrydd fytt of owre geste,*

That dar y take an hande.—F.

³ an, if.—F.

⁴ But hyt were Mary free.—T.

⁵ Beyonde the Grekys sea.—T.

74

- Sir Marmaduke ¹ highet the King,²
 852 he went to see *that* sweet thing,
 he went a good pace.
 to the Ladye he said in same,
 “speake, woman, on gods name!”
 856 against him shee rose.
 the Lady *that* was soe meeke & milde,
 shee had bewept sore her child,
 that almost gone shee was.³
 860 home to the court they her Ledd,
 with good meates they her ffedd;⁴
 with good will shee itt taketh.⁵

King Mar-
madukegoes to
Christabell,
speaks to
her,takes her
home to
Court,
feeds her
well,

75

- “Now, good damsell,” said the King,
 864 “where were you borne, my sweet thing?
 yee are soe bright of blee.”
 “Lord, in Artois borne I was;
 Sir Prinsamoure my ffather was,
 868 *that* Lord is of *that* Countrye;
 I and my maidens went to play
 by an arme of the sea;
 Iocund wee were and Iollye:
 872 they wind was lithe, a bote there stood,
 I and my squier in yode,
 but vnchristened was hee.

and asks her
who she is.Christabell
tells him,

and says she

got into a
boat with
her boy,

76

- “on land I lefft my maidens all,
 876 my younge squier on sleepe gan ffall,
 my mantle al on him I threw;

wrapped him
in her
mantle,

¹ Marmaduke seems to have been from
armaluke — Pencil note.

² He thou owest that gentylle kyng.
T. T. doesn't give “The kyng of

Egypt” a name. — F.

³ She was wexyn alle horse. — T.

⁴ Dylcyus metys they hur badd. — T.

⁵ seche them tase. — T.

and a griffin
flew away
with him.

a griffin there came *that* rought me care,
my younge squier away hee bare,
880 southeast with him hee drew."

"All right,
yon shall be
my niece
then:"

"damsell," he said, "be of good cheere,
thou art my brothers daughter deere."
ffor Ioy of him shee lounge ;

and Christa-
bell stays in
Egypt.

884 ¹ & there shee did still dwell
till time *that* better beffell,
with ioy and mirth enoughe.¹

[Part V.]

[How Eglamore comes back to Artois, and goes to the Holy Land for fifteen years ; and how Christabell marries her own son.]

77

As soon as
Eglamore
recovers,

888

he leaves
home,

5.^d parte

892

to go home
to Christa-
bell.

Now is Eglamore whole & sound,
& well healed of his wound ;
homeward then wold hee fare.
of the Emperour he tooke leane I-wis,
of the daughter, & of the Empresse,
& of all the meany *that* were there.
Christabell was most in his thought :
the dragons head hee home brought,
on his speare he itt bare.

896 by *that* 7 weekes were come to end,
in the land of Artoys can he Lend,
wheras the Erle gan ffare.

He reaches
Artois,

78

in the court was told, as I vnderstand,
900 how *that* Eglamore was come to Land
with the dragons head.

and his
squire tells
him that
Christabell
is dead.

his Squier rode againe him soone,
"Sir, thus hath our Lord doone ;²
904 ffaire Christabell is dead !

¹⁻¹ Kepe we thys lady whyte as flowre,
And speke we of syr Egyllamowre ;

Now comyth to hym care y-nogh.—
² Lo ! lorde, what the erle hath done !—

- a faire sonne shee had borne ;
 'bothe they are now florlorne
 through his false read ;¹
 908 In² a shipp hee put them 2, (page 308) out to sea in
 & with the wind let them goe."
 then swooned³ he where hee stood. Eglamore
 swoons,

79

- "alas!" then said the Knight soe free,
 912 "Lord! where may my maidens bee
 that in her chamber was?"
 the Squier answered him full soone,
 "as soone as shee was doone,
 916 ech one their way did passe."
 Eglamore went into the hall
 before the Squiers & knights all:
 "& thou, Erle of Artoys!
 920 take," he said, "the dragons head!
 all his mine that here his lead!
 what dost thou in this place?"⁴

asks after
Christabell's
maidens,

goes to the
Earl of
Artois,
gives him
the Dragon's
head,
claims all
his goods,
and asks him
what he's
doing there.

80

- great dole itt was to heere
 924 when he called Christabell his fere:
 "what! art thou drowned in the sea?
 god that dyed on the rood bitterlye,⁵
 on thy soule haue mercye,
 928 and on that younge child soe free!"
 the Erle was soe feard of Eglamore
 that he was faine to take his tower;⁶

Eglamore
laments over
Christabell
and her boy.

¹ The erle hath his lyfe forlorne.
 He was lath whyte and rede.—T.
² In in MS.—P.
³ Swooning was the correct thing for
 a knight, and on very much less provo-
 cation than this. See many instances
 in *Syrtis Great*, &c. &c. It betokened

the possession of delicate feelings.—F.
⁴ Alle ys myn that here ys leuyd.
 Thou syttyst in my place.—T.
⁵ on crosse verye.—T.
⁶ The erle rose up and toke a towre.
 —T.

that enermore woe him bee !

and calls on
all who want
knighthood
to go with
him.

- 932 Eglamore said, "soe god me saue,
all *that* the order of Knight-hoode will haue,
rise vp & goe with mee ! "

81

they were ffull faine to do his will ;

- 936 vp they rose, & came him till ;

he gaue them order soone.

the while *that* he in hall abode,

He dubs
thirty-two
knights,

32 ¹ knights he made,

- 940 ffrom morne till itt was noone.

² those *that* liuing had none,

he gaue them liuing to line vpon,

ffor Christabell to pray soone.

- 944 then anon, I vnderstand,

starts for the
Holy Land,

he tooke the way to the holy Land,

where god on the rood was done.

82

Sir Eglamore, as you heare,

and lives
there fifteen
years,

- 948 he dwelled there 15 yeere

the heathen men amonge ;

ffull manffullye he there him bare,

fighting all
wrong-
livers.

where any deeds of armes were,

- 952 against him *that* liued wronge.

in battell or in turnament

there might no man withstand his dent,

but downe right he him thronge.

- 956 by *that* 15 yeeres were gone,

His son
Degrabell
is now
grown big,

his sonne *that* the griffon had tane,

was waxen both stiffe and stronge.

¹ V. and thretty.—T.

² And he that was the porest of them
alle,
He gaf for Crystyabellys soule
Londys to leue vpon.

A thousand, as y undurstonde,
He toke with hym, and went
the Holy Londe,
There God on cros was done.

83

now was degrabell waxen wight ;
 960 the King of Isarell dubbd him a Knight
 and Prince with his hand.

is dubbed
 knight,

Listen, Lords great and small,
 of what manner of armes he bare,
 964 & yee will vnderstand :

and these are
 his arms :

he bare in azure, a griffon of gold
 richlye portrayed in the mold,
 on his clawes hanginge

on a shield of
 azure
 a golden
 griffin

968 a man child in a mantle round
 & with a girdle of gold bound,
 without any Leasinge.

carrying a
 boy with a
 girdle of
 gold.

84

the King of Isarell, hee waxed old ;
 972 to degrabell his sonne he told,
 " I wold thou had a wiffe
 while *that* I live, my sonne deere ;
 when I am dead, thou hast noe fiere,
 976 riches is soe riffe." ¹

The King of
 Isarell asks
 Degrabell to
 marry.

a messenger stode by the King :
 " in Ægipt is a sweet thing,
 I know noe such on live ;

They are
 told of
 Christabell
 in Egypt ;

980 the King, fforsooth, this oath hath sworne,
 there shall none her haue *that* is borne

But he winne her by striffe."

(page 309)

but he who
 wins her
 must fight
 for her.

the King said, " by the rood,
 984 wee will not lett if shee bee good ;
 haue done, & buske vs swythe."

anon-right they made them yare,
 & their armour to the shipp the bare,

They make
 ready,

988 to passe the watter beline.

call off,

¹ When y am deidd, thou getyst no perr.
 Of ryches thou art so rylle. -- T.

85

land in
Egypt,

and
announce
their coming
to the King
of Egypt.

He welcomes
them,

by tthat 7 dayes ¹ were comen to end,
in ægipt Land they gan Lend,
the vnconthe costes to see.²
992 messengers went before to tell,
“ here cometh the *King* of Isarell
with a ffaire Meany,
& the Prince with many a *Knight*,
996 ffor to haue your daughter bright,
if itt your wil be.”
the *King* said, “ I trow I shall
ffind Lodging³ ffor you all ;
1000 right welcome yee are to mee ! ”

86

leads the
King of
Isarell into
the hall,

then trumpetts in the shipp⁴ rose,
& euery man to Land goes ;
the *Knights* were clothed in pall.
1004 the younge *Knight* of 15 yeere,
he rydeth, as yee may heere,
a ffoote aboue them all.
the *King* of Isarell on the Land,
1008 the *King* of Ægipt takes him by the hand
& Ledd him into the hall :
⁵ “ Sir,” said the *King*, “ ffor charitye,
will you lett mee your daughter see,⁶
1012 white as bone of whall ? ”

87

and lets him
see Christa-
bell.

Her son
Degrabell
desires her,

the Lady ffrom the chamber was brought ;
with mans hands shee seemed wrought
& carued out of tree.
1016 her owne sonne stood & beheld :

¹ Be th[r]o wekys.—T.

² Ther forsus for to knowe swythe.
—T.

³ redy yustyng.—T.

⁴ Trampus in the topp-castelle.—T.

⁵ Y prey the thou gyf me a syght
Of Crystyabelle, yowre doghty
bryght.—T.

" well worthye him *that* might wold ! "
 thus to himselfe thought hee.
 the King of Isarell asked then
 1020 if that she ¹ might passe the streame,
 his sonnes wiffe ffor to bee.
 " Sir," said the King, " if *that* you may
 meete me a stroake to-morrowe,
 1024 thine asking grant I thee."

and may
have her if
he wins her

88

Lords in hall were sett,
 & waites blew to the meate.
 they made all royall cheere ;
 1028 the 2 Kings the desse began,²
 Sir Degrabell & his mother then,
 the 2 were sibb ffull neere.
 then Knights went to sitt I-wis,
 1032 & euery man to his office,
 to serue the Knights deere ;
 & after meate washed they,³
 & Clarkes grace gan say
 1036 in hall, as you may heere.

They dine.

and Degra-
bell and his
mother have
the high
seat.

89

then on the morrow when day sprong
 gentlemen in their armour⁴ throng,
 Degrabell was dight ;
 1040 the King of Ægipt gan him say
 in a faire ffeeld *that* day
 with many a noble Knight.
 what time the great Lord might him see,
 1044 they asked, " what Lord *that* might bee
 with the griffon soe bright ? "

Next day

Degradell
arme,
and the
King of
Ægypt tries
him.

¹ MS the Yfabe. - T. (with other 1867). F. T. has:

Yfabe. - F.

² Had the chief seats on the dais. - F

³ See the operation described in *The*
Isle of Carthage &c. (E. E. Text Soc.

After mete, than acyde they

Deus pater, clerkys kunne seye.

⁴ to harula. - T.

- “ Sir, in your armes now I see
 a soule *that* [raſte] on a time ffrom mee
 a child *that* I deere bought,¹
 1076 *that* in a scarlett mantle was wound,
 & in a girdle of gold bound
that richely was wrought.”
 the King of Isarell ſaid full right,
 1080 “ in my fforreſt the ſoule gan Light ;
 a griffon to Land him brought.”

and tells him
 how a bird
 took her boy
 away,

in a mantle,
 and with a
 gold girdle
 on.

The King of
 Isarell ſays
 the Griffon
 alighted in
 his land,

93

- he ſent a ſquier full hend,
 & bade him ffor the mantle wende
 1084 *that* hee was in Layd.
 beffore him itt was brought full yare,
 the girdle & the mantle there,
that richlye were graued.
 1089 “ alas ! ” then ſaid *that* Lady free,
 “ this ſame the Griffon tooke ffrom mee.”
 in ſwoning downe ſhee braid.
 “ how long agoe ? ” the King gan ſay.
 1092 “ Sir, 15 yeere par ma flay.”
 they aſſented to *that* ſhee ſaid.

and the boy
 was brought
 to him.

Chriſtabell
 ſays the boy
 was here,

and it's
 fifteen years
 ago.

94

- “ fforſooth, my ſonne, I am afraid
that to² ſibb maryage wee haue made
 1096 *in* the beginninge of this moone.”
 “ damſell, looke,—ſee god me ſaue !—
 which of my Knights thou wilt haue.”
 then degrabell answered ſoone,
 1100 “ Sir, I hold you[r] Erles good,
 & ſee I doe my mother, by the roode,
that I wedded before they noone ;

ſhe tells her
 ſon-huſband
 that their
 marriage is
 void.

The King
 offers her
 any huſband
 ſhe'll chooſe.

No, ſays
 Degrabell,

¹ That ſometyme raſte a chyldre ffrom me,
 A knyght fulle dere hym lught.—T.

² When *to* ſtands for *too*, the *o* will be
 accented hereafter.—F.

the knights
must fight
for her.

1104 there shall none haue her certainlye
but if he winne her with maisterye
as I my-selfe haue doone."

95

All the lords
agree to
do so.

1108 then euery Lord to other gan say,
"ffor her I will make delay ¹
with a speare & sheeld in hand ;
who-soe may winne *that* Lady clere,
ffor to be his wedded ffere,
must wed her in that Land."

[Part VI.]

[How Eglamore won back his lost love Christabell, and married her.]

96

Eglamore,

1112

Sir Eglamore was homward bowne,
he hard tell of *that* great renowne,
& thither wold hee wend.²

many lords,

6^a Parte

great Lords *that* hard of *that* crye,
they rode thither hastilye,
as ffast as they might ffare.

and the
King of
Sattin, come
to the
tourney.

1120

the King of Sattin ³ was there alsoe,
& other great Lords many more
that royall armes ⁴ bare.

Lists are
prepared,

Then ringes were made in the ffeeld
that Lords might therin weld ;

and all the
lords make
ready.

1124

thé busked & made them yare.
Sir Eglamore, thoe he came Last,
he was not worthy out to be cast ;
that Knight was clothed in care.

¹ For hur love we wylle turnay.—T.

² By rhyme this triplet belongs to the last stanza. It is put there in the Thornton text, which adds after it the stanza about Eglamore's arms, given, in an altered state, as st. 97 in our print

below.—F.

³ "Sydon (Cotton M.)" marked in pencil on the margin of the MS.—F.
Sydone.—T.

⁴ yoly colourys.—T.

97

- for *that* Christabell was put to the sea,
 1128 new armes beareth hee,
 I will them descrye :
 he beareth in azure a shipp of gold,
 full richlye portrayed on the mold, [page 311]
 1132 full well & worthylye ;
 the sea was made both grim & bold ;
 a younge child of a night old,
 & a woman Lying there by ;
 1136 of siluer was the mast, of gold the ffane¹ ;
 sayle, ropes, & cables, eche one
 painted were worthylye.

Eglamore
 beares as
 armes, on a
 blue shield
 a gold ship,

with a child,
 and a
 woman lying
 by it.

98

- heralds of armes soone on hye,
 1140 euery Lords armes gan descrye
 in *that* ffeeld soe broade.²
 then Chr[i]stabell as white as fflower,
 she sate vpon a hye tower ;³
 1144 for her *that* crye was made.
 the younge knight of 15 yeere old
 that was both doughtye & bold,
 into the ffeeld he rode.
 1149 who-soe *that* Sir Degrabell did smite,
 with his dint they fell tyte,
 neuer a one his stroake abode.

Christabell
 sits in a high
 tower :

her son
 Degrabell

rides into
 the field,

and fells all
 who attacks
 him.

99

- Sir Eglamore houted⁴ & beheild
 1152 how the folke in the feild downe feld
 they Knights all by-deene.

Eglamore
 looks on.

¹ i. e. a Weather cock, which turns
 as the Wind changes, and shews
 in what Quarter it blows. Phillips.

² The three lines above are not in T.

—F.

³ Was brought to a corner of the
 walle.—T.

⁴ halted, stood still. The first three
 lines of this stanza are not in T.—F.

Degrabell
asks him
why he
stands still.

when Degrabell him see, he rode him till,¹
& said, "Sir, why are you soe still
amonge all these *Knights keene*?"

"Because I
am come out
of heathen
lands.

Eglamore said to him *Lewis*,²
"I am come out of heathenesse,
itt were sinne mee to meete."³

1160 Degrabell said, "soe mote I thee!
more worshipp itt had beene to thee,
vnarmed to haue beene."

100

Haven't you
jousting
enough?

the ffather on the sonne Lough;
1164 "haue yee not Iusting enoughe⁴
where euer *that* you bee?

that day ffall haue I seene,
with as bigg men haue I becne,

1168 & yett well gone my way.

I'll have a
turn with
you."

& yett, fforsooth," said he then,

"I will doe as well as I can,
with you once to play."

They charge.

1172 heard together they *knights* donge
with great speares sharpe and longe;
them beheld eche one.

Eglamore
gives his son
a rap,
grounds
him,

Sir Eglamore, as itt was his happ,⁵
1176 giue his sonne such a rappe⁶
that to the ground went hee.

101

"alas!" then said *that* Ladye ffree,

"my sonne is dead, by gods pittye!

1180 the keene *knight* hath him slaine!"

then men said wholly on mold,

and wins

"the *Knight that* beares the shipp of gold
hath wonne her on the plaine."

Christabell.

¹ He sende a knyght anon fulle styll.
—T.

² He seyde, Syr recreawntes.—T.

³ tene, T., which is better.—F.

⁴ T. alters this and the next nine
lines.—F.

⁵ turnyd hys swerde flatt.—T.

⁶ patte.—T.

102

1184 Herallds of armes cryed then,
 “is there now any manner of man
 will make his body good,
that will iust any more?

Heralds

ask if any
 one else will
 fight
 Eglamore.

1188 say now while wee be here ! ”
 then a while they still stoode.
 Degrabell said, “by god almight !
 methinkes *that* I durst with him ffight,

None
answer

1192 if he were neuer soe wood.”
 Lords together made a vow,
 “fforssooth,” they said, “best worthy art thou
 to haue thy ffreelye ffood ! ”

so Christa-
 bell is
 adjudged to
 him.

103

1196 ffor to vnarme him Lords gan goe ;
¹ clothes of gold on him they doe,
 & then to meate thé wende.

Eglamore
 is clad in
 cloth of gold,

Sir Eglamore then wan the gree,
 1200 beside the Lady sett was hee :
 shee frened him as her ffreind,¹
 “ffor what cause *that* he bore
 a shipp of gold with mast & ore.”

and sits in
 the chief
 place with
 Christabell.
 She asks
 him why
 his arms
 are a ship.

1204 he said with words hende,
 “damsell, into the sea was done
 my Lady & my younge ² sonne ;
 & there they made an ende.”

“Because
 my lady and
 son were
 put to sea,
 and died.”

104

1208 ³ knowledge to him tooke shee thoe ;
 “now, good Sir, tell me soe,
 where they were brought to ground ? ”

[page 312] Where were
 they buried ?

¹—¹ In cortyls, sorcatys, and schorte
 clothys,
 That doghty weryn of dede.
 Two kyngys the deyse began,

Syr Egyllamowre and Crystyabelle
 than ;
 Ihesu us alle spede !—T.
² lemman and my yongest.—T.
³ T. omits the next six lines.—F

" I was
 away.
 Her father
 sent her to
 sea to
 drown."
 1212 " while I was in ffarr countrye
 her ffather put her into the sea,
 with the waues to confounde."
 with honest mirth & game
 of him shee asked the name ;
 1216 & he answered that stond,
 " men call mee, where I was bore,
 of Artoys Sir Eglamore,
 that with a worme was wound."
 " Sir Eglam-
 more of
 Artois."

105

Christabell
 swoons,
 then
 welcomes
 Eglamore,
 and tells
 what she has
 suffered.
 1220 in swooning fell *that* Lady ffree ;
 " welcome, Sir Eglamore, to mee !
 thy Loue I haue bought full deere ! "
 then shee sate, & told full soone
 1224 how into the sea shce was doone ;
 then wept both lesse and more.
¹ minstrills had their giffts ffree,
 wherby thé might the better bee ;
 1228 to spend they wold not spare.²
 ffull true itt is, by god in heauen,
 that men meete att vnsett steven,³
 & soc itt beffell there.
 (People
 meet when
 they least
 expect it.)

106

The King of
 Isarell tells
 how he
 found
 Degrabell,
 1232 the King of Isarell gan tell
 how *that* hee found Sir Degrabell ;
 Lordings, Listen t'en : ⁴

¹ This gentle reminder to the hearers of their duty to the singers of the Romance is repeated with some variation at the end.—F.

² For the former part of this st. 105, T. has, st. cxi. p. 174:

There was many a robe of palle;
 The chyldo servyd in the halle

At the fyrste mete that day.

Prevely scho to hym spake,

" 3ondur ys thy fadur that the gate ! "

A grete yoye hyt was to see ay

When he knelyd downe on hys kne,
 Ther was mony an herte sore,

Be God that dyed on a tree!—F.

³ unfixed time, time not appoint
 Compare Chaucer, in *The Knightes T.*
 l. 666, v. ii. p. 47, ed. Morris:

It is ful fair a man to bere him evene
For al day meteth men atte unset steven
 Ful litel woot Arcite of his felawe,
 That was so neih to herken of his sa
 —F.

⁴ Knyghtys lystenyd ther-to th
 —T.

- Sir Eglamore kneeled on his knee,
 1236 "my Lord!" he said, "god yeeld itt thee!
 yee haue made him a May.¹"
 the King of Isarell said, "I will the[e] giue
 halfe my kindome while I doe liue,
 1240 my deere sonne as white as swan."
 "thou shalt haue my daughter Arnada,"
 the King of Sattin sayd alsoe,
 "I remember, since thou her wan."

and gives
him half his
kingdom.

The King of
Sattin
also gives
his daughter
Arnada to
Degrabell.

107

- 1244 ² Eglamore prayed the Kings ³
 att his wedding ffor to bee,
 if *that* they wold vouch[s]afe.
 all granted him *that* there were,
 1248 litle, lesse, & more;
 Lord Iesus christ them haue!
 Kings, Erles, I vnde[r]stand,
 with many dukes of other Lands,
 1252 with Ioy & mirth enoughe.
 the trumpetts in the shipp blowes,
that euery man to shipp goes,
 the winde them ouer blew.

Eglamore
invites every
one to his
wedding.

All accept,

sail off,

108

- 1256 through gods might, all his meany
 in good liking passed the sea;
 in Artois they did arrine.
 the Erle then in the tower stoode,
 1260 he saw men passe the ffood,
 & ffast ³ to his horsse gan driue.

and reach
Artois
safely.
The old Earl

an.—T. *May* generally means
n; but *maue*, *maze*, is a kinsman;
i. *mæg*, a son, kinsman.—F.
shortens and alters this stanza

and part of the next.—F.

³ So in printed copy, but very different
in the Cotton MS.—Pencil note in MS.

when he heard of Eglamore,
 he fell out of his tower
 & broke his necke beline.
 the messenger went againe to tell
 of that case, how itt beffell:
 with god may no man strue.

109

1268 ¹ thus in Artois the Lords thé Lent;
 after the Emperour ² soone thé sent,
 to come to *that* Marryage;
 in all they land they mad crye,
 1272 who-soe wold come to *that* ffeast worthy,
 right welcome shold they bee;
 Sir Eglamore to the church is gone,
 deyrabell & Arnada they haue tane,
 1276 and his Lady bright of blee.
 the King of Isarell said, "He giue
 halfe my land while I line;
 brooke well [all³] after my day."

110

1280 with mickle mirth the feast was made,
 40 dayes itt abode
 amonge all the Lords hend;
 and then forsooth, as I you say,
 1284 euery man tooke his way [p^a
 wherin him liked to dwell.

¹ T. alters these concluding stanzas a good deal.—F.

² An Emperor was thought necessary to give the proper éclat to a wedding:

Ther com tyl hir weddyng
 An *emperoure* and a kyng.
 Erchebyschopbz with ryng
 Mo then fyftene!

The mayster of hospitalle
 Come over with a cardinale,
 The gret kyng of Portyngalle
 With knyȝthus ful kene.

Sir Degreant, p. 252-3, *The Romances*.—F.

³ all. p.c.—Pencil note. T. 1 the line. *Brooke* is A.-S. *bruc* enjoy.—F.

minstrells had good great plentye,
that euer they better may thé bee,
 1286 and bolder ffor to spend.
 in Romans this Chronickle is.
 dere Iesus! bring vs to thy blisse
 that lasteth without end! ¹
 ffins.

Minstrels
 get plenty of
 money.

Christ bless
 us all!

[The work ends up with "Amen. Here endyth syr Eyllamowre of Artas, and begyn
 syr Tryamowre."—F.]

"When Scorching Phobus," printed in Lo. and Hum. Songs,
 pp. 70-3, follows here in the MS.]

The Emperour & the Child.¹

THE following piece is here printed for the first time. Percy describes it as an old poem "in a wretched corrupt state, unworthy the press." Selecting from it "such particulars as could be adopted," he composed himself a poem on the subject of it, — a poem in Two Parts, altogether some 400 lines long, beginning in this wise:

When Flora 'gins to decke the fields
With colours fresh and fine,
The holy clerkes their mattins sing
To good Saint Valentine! &c.

Is this style so very much worthier of the press than that of

Within the Grecian land some time did dwell
An Emperour, whose name did far excell, &c.?

We doubt whether either piece is particularly worthy of the press. But that which suited best the taste of the eighteenth century is certainly the less worthy of the two. That century could see the mote in the eye of a preceding age, but not the beam in its own eye.

This piece is evidently of very late origin, written at a time when the period of professional ballad-makers had well set in.

The story was, in prose, extremely popular. This prose version was a translation from the French. Of the old French romance an analysis is given in the *Bibliothèque des Romans*, which ranks it among *Romans Historiques*:¹—

¹ The Old song of Valentine & Ursin or Orsin.

This song or Poem seems to be quite modern by the Language & versification.

N.B. This Poem only suggested the subject of that I printed on Valentine and Ursin.—P.

* Histoire des deux nobles et vaillans

Chevaliers Valentin et Orson, fils de l'Empereur de Grèce et neveux du très chrétien Roi de France Pépin, contenant 74 chapitres, lesquels parlent de plusieurs et diverses matières très-plaisantes et récréatives. Lyon, 1495. in-folio. 1590 in-octavo. et depuis à Troyes, chez Oudot, in-quarto.

us avons annoncé dans notre avant-dernier volume que nous s encore à parler d'un roman singulier et intéressant concernant 1, Roi de France, premier de la seconde race et père de Charle- 10 ; c'est celui dont on vient de lire le titre. Il est bien constam- historique, quoique l'histoire y soit défigurée ; que Pépin y re dans des pays dont il n'a jamais approché, tels que Constan- le et Jérusalem, qu'on l'y fasse prisonnier d'un Roi des Indes, que les douze pairs de France ; qu'on ajoute à cette prétendue vité les circonstances les plus ridicules ; qu'on suppose à Pépin fils, une sœur et deux neveux, qui n'ont jamais existé ; enfin, que les commencements de l'histoire de Charlemagne que l'on e dans ce roman-ci soient aussi éloignés de la vérité que ce qui t du règne de Pépin, tout cela, cependant, se fait lire avec plaisir ; us croyons que nos lecteurs ne trouveront point trop long ait très-détaillé que nous allons en faire, chapitre par chapitre, rien changer à sa marche, et respectant presque également lo qui n'est pas si gaulois que celui des autres romans de che- ie que nous avons extraits jusqu'à présent, car celui-ci peut être é dans la même classe : on peut aussi, si l'on veut, le compter i les romans d'amour, car malgré les ridiculités dont il est rempli, arche en est très-régulière. L'histoire des deux frères qui en les héros y est conduite depuis l'instant de leur naissance à leur mort ; tous deux sont amoureux et épousent enfin leurs vases. Rien ne nous prouve que ce roman soit fort ancien. n'en connaissons aucuns manuscrits ; et ne pouvant parler d'après mêmes de la première édition (in-folio), qui est très-rare, nous ne ons rien dans la seconde (qui est celle de 1590) qui porte une ine marque d'ancienneté, non-seulement dans le style, mais même les détails, et nous ne croyons pas qu'on puisse en faire remonter ue plus haut que le règne de Charles VIII, temps où beaucoup mans de ce genre virent le jour, les uns étant tirés de quelques crits plus anciens, les autres étant tout à fait nouveaux. Ne ons pas plus loin nos recherches et nos observations préliminaires Valentin et Orson, et commençons notre extrait en suppliant nos rs d'avoir de l'indulgence pour la simplicité et la bonhomie lesquelles cet ouvrage a été composé. On y trouvera bien des curieux et des situations très-intéressantes, mêlés avec mille stances ridicules. La singularité de tout cela pourra, du moins,

uteur raconte, d'abord, en peu de mots, la touchante histoire rthe au grand pied, qui a fait la matière d'un roman entier,

ap. XI.—Comme Hauffroi et Henri eurent envie sur Valentin
le grand amour que lui portait le roi.

ap. XII.—Comme Valentin conquit Orson son frère dans la forêt
d'Orléans.

ap. XIII.—Comme après que Valentin eut conquis Orson, il
partit de la forêt pour retourner à Orléans vers le roi Pépin.

ap. XIV.—Comme Hauffroi et Henri, par envie, résolurent de tuer
Valentin en la chambre de la belle Eglantine.

ap. XV.—Comme le duc de Savary envoya vers le roi Pépin pour
avoir aide contre le vert chevalier qui voulait avoir sa fille Fezonne
pour épouse.

ap. XVI.—Comme plusieurs chevaliers vinrent en Aquitaine
pour avoir la belle Fezonne.

ap. XVII.—Comme Hauffroi et Henri firent guetter Valentin et
l'arrêtèrent sur le chemin pour le faire mourir.

ap. XVIII.—Comme le roi Pépin commanda que devant son
palais fût appareillé le champ pour voir Orson et Grigard combattre
ensemble.

• • • • •

ap. LVI.—Comme Valentin fit la pénitence qui lui avait été
ordonnée pour expier le meurtre de son père.

ap. LVII.—Comme le roi Hugon fit demander Escharmonde pour
épouse, et comme il trahit Orson et le vert chevalier.

ap. LVIII.—Comme Bellisant et Escharmonde surent la trahison
de leur père entreprise du roi Hugon.

ap. LIX.—Comme Orson et le vert chevalier furent délivrés des
mains du roi de Syrie, et comme le roi Hugon, pour éviter la guerre,
consentit à eux.

ap. LX.—Comme, au bout de sept ans, Valentin, finit ses jours
dans son palais de Constantinople, et écrivit une lettre par laquelle il
se recommanda.

WITHIN the Greeyan land some time did dwell
an Emperour, whose name did far excell;
he took to wife the Lady Bellefaunt,
the only sister to the Kinge of France,
with whome he lived in pleasure & delight
untill that fortune came to worke them spight.

A Greek
Emperour
once married
a French
Princess,
Lady Belle-
faunt.

They lived
happily till

a lustful
Bishop

ffor within the court a bishoppe ¹ there did rest
8 the which the Emperour held in great request;
his enuious hart itt was soe sore enfflamed

tried to
seduce the
Empress,

vpon the Empresse, *that* gallant dame,
² *that* he wold perswade her many ³ a wile
12 her husbands marriage bed for to defile.

and on her
refusal

but shee denyed *that* vnchast request,
as to her honor did beseeme her best ;
which when the Bishopp saw, away he went

accused her
falsely to the
Emperor.

16 vnton the Emperour with a fell intent,
& then most ffalselye her he did accuse,
how *that* shee wold his marryage bed abuse ;
& thervpon he swore the same to prone,

20 which made her husbands loue in wrath to proue
then the Emperour went to her with speed,
ffor to accuse her of this shamefull deede.
and when shee saw how shee was betrayd,

24 her inocency shee began to pleade ;

The
Emperor
wouldn't
hear her,
but banished
her at once ;

but then her husband wold not heare her speak
which made her hart with sorrow like to break
but straight the Emperour he gaue command
28 *that* shee shold be banished ⁴ out of his land.

and she
started with
one squire
for France.

but when *that* shee ffrom them did goe,
before them all shee did reccount ⁵ her woe,
& said *that* shee was banished wrongffullye ;

32 & soe shee went with sorrow like to dye.
now is shee gone, but with one Squier alone,
vnto her brother in ffrance to make her Mone.

And being come within the realme of ffrance, (re

36 O there beffell a very heauy chance !

On her way

ffor ⁶ as shee trauelled through a wild fforrest,
the labor of Childhood did her sore oppresse,

¹ An Archpriest, says the Story Book.
—P.

² That her he would persuade with.
—P.

³ with many, qu.—P.

⁴ banish'd be.—P.

⁵ recount.—P.

⁶ *all* follows in the MS., marked
—F.

- & more & more her paines increased still
 40 *that* shee was fforced to rest against her will.
 now att the lenght her trauell came to end,
 ffor the Lord 2 children did her send,
 the which were faire & proper boyes indeed,
 44 which made her hart with Ioy for to exceede.
 but now behold how ffortune gan to Lower,¹
 & turned her Ioy to greefe within an hower!
 ffor why, shee saw an vgly beare as then,
 48 the which was come fforthe of some lothesome den;
 & when the beare did see her in *that* place,
 he made towards her with an Egar pace,
 & ffrom her tooke one of her children small,
 52 a sight to greeue the mothers hart with-all.
 but when shee saw her child soe borne away,
 shee Laid the other downe, & did not stay,
 & ffollowed itt as ffast as euer shee might;
 56 but all in vaine! of itt shee lost the sight.
 but soe itt chanced, att *that* verry tyde
 the King of france did there a hunting ryde;
 & in the fforrest as he rode vp and downe,
 60 the other child he ffound vpon the ground.
 & when he saw the child to be soe faire,
 to take itt vp he bade his men take care,
 & keepe itt well as tho itt were his owne,
 64 vntill the ffather of the child where² knowne.
 the Empresse returned there backe againe,
 when as shee saw the beare within his den;
 but when shee saw her other sonne was lost,
 68 her hart with sorrow then was like to burst.
 then downe shee sate her with a heauy hart,
 & wishes³ death to ease her of her smart;
 shee wrong her hands with many a sigh full deepe
 72 *that* wold haue made a fflynty hart to weepe.

she was
taken in
labour,

and bore
two boys.

A bear

carried off
one of them.

She laid the
other down,
and ran
after the
lost one,
but couldn't
find it.

The King of
France finds
the boy laid
down,

and has him
carried off.

The Empress
comes back
for him,

but finds him
gone.

Her heart
nearly
breaks.

¹ lour.—P.

² were.—P.

³ wish'd for.—P.

She leaves
the place,

then shee departed from *that* woefull place,
& fforth of ffranco shee went away apace ;
ffor why, as yett shee wold not there be knowen
76 vntill some newes of her young sonnes were shone.
but shee beheld a Castle ffaire & stronge,—²
shee had not trauelled ffrom *that* place not Long,—
wheratt shee knocket, some succour for to find.

and goes to
a castle
for help.

80 but itt fell out contrary to her mind ;
ffor why, with-in *that* castle dwelt as then
a monstrous gyant, ffearred of all men,
who tooke this Ladye into his prison strong,
and puts her
84 in prison,
but when he saw her lookes to be soe sadd,
& hauing knowen what sorrowes she had had,
he kept her close, but he hurt her not ;

But a giant
lives there

and puts her
in prison,

but doesn't
hurt her.

88 & soe shee liued in prison long, god wotte.
the child the *which* the beare had borne away,
amongst her younge ones was brought vp alway,
& soe brought vp vntill att length as then

The boy the
bear took
grows up

a huge wild
man,

92 he there became a monstrous huge wild man,
& [d]aylye ranged about the fforrest wilde,
& did destroy man, woman, beast and child,
& all things else *which* by his den did passe,
96 *which* to the country great annoyance was.

who kills all
that passe by
his den.

The other
boy is
christened
Valentine,

the other child *which* they King ³ had ffound,⁴
he christened was, & valentine was his name ;
& when he grew to be of ripe yeeres,
100 he was beloued both of King and peeres ;
in ffates off armes he did himselfe advance,
that none like him there cold be ffond in ffrance ;

is knighted,
and is
valliant.

& ffor *that* same, the King did dub him Knight ;
104 he allwaies was soe vallyant in his fight.

Poor men
complain of
the Wild
Man.

then to the court did many pore men come
to show what hurt the wild man there had done ;

¹ shown. - P.

² The *o* and *n* are squeezed together
in the MS. - F.

³ the *which* the King.—P.

⁴ tane; qu.—P.

- but when the *King* did heare the moane they made,¹
 08 he sent fforth men the monster to inuade ;
 but all in vaine ; ffor why, hee crusht them soe
that none of them with-in his reach durst goe.
 Then valentine vnto the *King* did sue [page 316]
 12 *that* he might goe the Monster to subdue.
 then fforthe he went the Monster ffor to see,
 whom he saw come bearing a younge oke tree ;
 & when the wild man of him had a sight,
 16 he went vnto him & cast him downe right.
 & when he saw his strenght cold not prevaile,
 he praid to god his purpose might not ffayle ;
 then a poinard presently he drew out,
 20 & peirct his side, wherwith the blood gusht out.
 but when the wild man did behold his blood,
 he ² quicklye brought him ffrom his ffuryous mood ;
 then ffrom the fforrest both together went
 24 towards the Emperour,³ & with ffull intent
 of [him] desired leaue by sea to sayle
 into an Ile *that* Lyeth in Portingall,
 wheras thé hard ⁴ with-in a Castle was
 28 a Ladye ffaire *that* kept a head of brasse,
 the *which* cold tell of any questyon asket.
 & thither came braue valentine att Last ;
 & when *that* they to ⁵ the castle came,
 32 they thought ffor to haue entered the same ;
 but itt fell out not vnto their mind,
 because the porters there were much vnkind ;
 ffor why, thé ffound 2 gyants att the gate,
 36 with [w]home ⁶ they ffought or they cold in theratt.
 then went they vpp wheras they head did stand ;
 & by itt sate the bewtyous Claramande,

The King
sends men to
kill him,

but he kills
them.

Valentine
goes to
subdue him ;

the Wild
Man knocks
him down
with an oak,

but gets
stabbed in
return.

Then they
make it up,
and ask the
Emperor
leave to go
to an
island in
Portingall,

to consult a
brass head.

They go
there,

fight two
giants to
get in,

see the head
and fair
Claramande,

The *m* has one stroke too many in
MS.—F.
It.—P.
King of Fraunce, qu.—P.

¹ heard.—P.
² unto.—P.
³ whom.—P.

who asks
the head
whose son
Valentine is,
and who
the Wild
Man is.
The head
says,
"You are
brothers,
sons of the
Greek
Emperor,

and your
mother is in
King
Ferragus's
prison.
Cut the
string under
Ursin's
tongue, and
he'll speak."

This is done:

Valentine
marries
Clara-
mande;

and the
two sons

kill
Ferragus,
and free
their
mother.

Then they
all go to
Greece,

- whom, when the noble valentine did see,
140 he swore his hart ffor euer there shold bee.
then did shee speake vnto the head of brasse,
& bade itt tell whose sonne valentine was,
& whom the wild man there shold bee.
144 to whom the head gaue answer presentlye :
"flirst be it knowen, he is thy brother deere,
& you are both sonnes to the Greccyan peere ;
& your mother wrongfullye banished was,
148 & you were both borne in a wild fforrest ;
& *that*¹ by a beare vrsin was nurst vpp,
& valentine by² his vnckles court ;
& your mother lyeth in prison stronge
152 with King fferagus,³ where shee hath beene long.
alsoe I say, looke vnder vrsines tounge ;
there shall you ffind a string both bigg & stronge ;
cut *that* in tow, & then his speech shall breake ;
156 & this is all ; & I noe more can speake."
then vrsin to his speeche restored was hee,
& valentine had CLAREMONDE soe ffree.
soe al together⁴ on their Iourney went
160 towards their mother being in prison pent ;
& soe they came vnto the place att Last
wheras their mother was in prison ffast ;
& him they slew *that* did their mother keepe,
164 & soe they brought her out of prison deepe.
& when *that* they were al together come,
vnto their mother they then made them knowne ;
which when shee saw her owne sonnes sett her ffree,
168 no ioye to her there might compared bee.
then presentlye they purpose to take read,⁵
into the Land of greece to hye with speed.
& when *that* they had many a storme ore past,
172 they did arrine with-in *that* Land att last ;

¹ there.—P.

² in. — P.

³ This is the name of one of the

Charlemagne heroes.—F.

⁴ MS. *altogether*, and in l. 165.—F.

⁵ counsel.—P.

then on their Iourney towards they court they went, to the Court.
 & to the Emperour a messenger they sent,
 to tell him ffreinds of his were comen vpon land,
 '6 & did intreat some ffayor att his hand.
 when the Emperour was come vnto them there,
 & knew the woman to be his wiffe most deere,
 & *that* the other 2 were his owne deare sonnes,
 10 he then bewailed their happ with bitter moanes,
 ffirst *that* because his wiffe was wronge exilde,
 & ffor the greeffe when as shee traueled with child.
 & soe att lenght, in spight of ffortunes happ,
 14 they lined in ioy, & ffeard noe after clappe.
 ffins.

When the
 Emperour
 finds his
 wife
 and sons,

he bewails
 their past
 sufferings;

and they
 live happily
 thereafter.

Sittinge : Late : ¹

THIS piece declares that women will have their own way, and further, that that way will frequently be wanton. It attempts to reconcile husbands to the loss of their supremacy, and their other consequent troubles. The argument is not always thoroughly satisfactory; as, when we are taught that because Paris of Troy got into such trouble for running away with another man's wife, therefore we cannot expect to enjoy any immunity from trouble in respect of our own wives. We cannot, if we would, says the poem, exercise a sufficiently sharp surveillance over them. In all ranks of life they "have their own will;" beggars' wives, and the wives of better men, all elude and mock their husbands. The only place where this is not the rule is Rome, and it is not so there simply because a woman-pope would not let it be so. Thus woman's will reigns supreme everywhere.

But perhaps the only interest this sorry composition possesses is its illustrating *Hudibras* (Part I. canto ii. vv. 545–552):—

Some cried the Covenant, instead
Of pudding-pies and ginger-bread;
And some or brooms, old boots, and shoes,
Bawl'd out to purge the Commons' House;
Instead of kitchen-stuff, some cry
A Gospel-preaching Ministry;
And some for old suits, coats, or cloak,
No surplices, nor Service-book:—

and Falstaff's remark on the worthy Justice Shallow, that "came ever in the rearward of the fashion, and *sung those tunes* to the overscutched huswives *that he heard the carmen whistle* and swear they were his fancies or his good-nights." Man

¹ A Satire on the Women.—P.

other references to the sibilant powers of the sixteenth and seventeenth century carmen are given by Mr. Chappell, in his *Popular Music of Olden Time*, à propos of the air called "The Carmen's Whistle."

SITTINGE: late, my selfe alone,

[page 317]

to heare the birds sweete harmonye,

one sighed sore with many a grone,

4 "my wiffe will still my master bee!"

his sig[h]es ecclipsed bright Phebus beames,

his hart did burne like ætna hill,

his teares like Nilus fflowing streames,¹

8 his cryes did peirce the Eccho shrill.

with *that* I drew my eare aside

to heare him thus complaine of ill;

his greefe & mind were both a-like,

12 *that* ginnye ² his filly wold haue her owne will.

I heard a
man
bewailing
that his
wife would
be his
master;

he wept, and
cried shrilly,

and said his
filly would
have her
will.

The King of Sirya mad a law,

that euery ³ man with-in his land,

that he shold lordlye keepe in awe

16 his wiffe, & those *that* did with-stand.

which acte is cleane gone out of mind

of all degrees, & will be still;

pore silly husbands are soe kind,

20 they let their wines haue their owne will.

Men won't
keep the
King of
Syria's law,
that men
shall keep
their wives
in order.

When Princely Paris, pride of Troye,

had stolen away King Menelaus wiffe,

10 yeeres of warr was all his Ioy,

24 & afterwards bereaued of liffe.

by this wee see *that* Kings are tyed,

as well as subiects, to much ill;.

why shold wee poore men thinke itt scorne

28 to let our wines haue their owne will?

Paris got

ten years
war and his
death for
stealing his
wife.
If then kings
get into
trouble,

¹ *streams* in the MS.—F.

² MS. may be *grimye*.—F.

³ for every.—P.

- All *that* lookes blacke, diggs not ffor coles ;
 how shold our chymneys then be swept ?
 & he *that* thinkes to Iumpe ore Powles,¹
 32 may once a yeare be well out leapte ;
 ffor vulcan wore a head of horne ²
 when least misprision was of ill.
 lett no man liuing thinke itt scorne
 36 to let his wiffe haue her owne will !
- But shee *that* liues by nille³ & tape,
 & with her bagge & lucett⁴ beggs,
 oft makes her husband many a scape⁵
 40 although shee goes in simple raggs ;
 ffor hungry doggs will alwayes range,
 & vnsanory meate will staunch their fill ;
 & they *that* take delight in change
 44 will, Nolens Volens, haue their owne will.
- But he *that* goes ffrom dore to dore,
 & cryes " old buskins ffor new broome ; "
 althoe his liuing be but poore,
 48 another must supply his roome.
 " old bootes & buskins ffor new broome !
 come buy, ffaire maids, & take your fill !
 there are no Cucholds made att Roome ;
 52 Pope Ione hath sett itt downe by will."
- and Gods do
 so too,
 don't let us
 mind about
 letting our
 wives have
 their own
 way.
- Even
 beggar-
 women
 get their
 husbands
 into scrapes ;
- and if a man
 goes out,
 his place
 must be
 supplid.
- (But there
 are no
 cuckolds in
 Rome.)

¹ Powles, *i. e.* St. Paul's.—P.

² Note ² in *Brand's Popular Antiquities*, ed. 1841, vol. ii. p. 126, col. 1, says, "In 'Paradoxical Assertions and Philosophical Problems, by R. H. 8vo. Lond. 1664, p. 5, 'Why Cuckolds are said to wear Horns?' we read: 'Is not this monster said to wear the Horns because other Men with their two forefingers point and *make Horns* at him?' " "*Cuck-old*. Cuckolled, treated in the way that

"the cuckow (Lat. *cuculus*) serves other birds, viz. by laying an egg in their nest." Wedgwood.—F.

³ MS. *iulle*, but as the dot over the *i* is very often misplaced in the MS. and *nill* means *needle*, I print *nille*.—F.

⁴ perhaps budget.—P. Fr. *lucet* or *luchet* is a spade.—F.

⁵ 1. A misdemeanour . . . 3. A trick, shift, or evasion. Halliwell.—F.

The Carman whistles vp & downe ;
 another cryes " will you buy any blacke ¹ ? "
 the cuntryman is held a clowne,
 56 when better men haue greater lacke.
 thus whiles they cards are shuffled about,
 the knaue will in the decke ² lye still ;
 & if all secretts were found out,
 60 I doubt a number wold want their will.

It's well
 that all
 wives'
 secrets
 are not
 known.

ffins.

¹ ? Fr. *noir*, blacking, or *pierre noire*,
 Black Oaker, or the blacke marking-
 stone.—Cutgrave. It can't mean soot

or mourning.—F.

² A pack of cards. Halliwell.—F.

Libius : Disconius : ¹

[In nine Parts.—P.]

PERCY thought so well of the plot of this Romance that he put it for analysis in his *Reliques* (v. iii. p. xii.—xvi. ed. 1816). Speaking of “these old poetical Legends,” he says, “it will be proper to give at least one specimen of their skill [that is skill of the writers of them], in distributing and conducting fable, by which it will be seen that nature and common sense supplied in these old simple bards the want of critical art taught them some of the most essential rules of Epic Poetry shall select the Romance of LIBIUS DISCONIUS, as being one of those mentioned by Chaucer, and either shorter or more intelligible than the others he has quoted.² If an Epic Poem may be defined, ‘³ A fable related by a poet, to excite admiration and inspire virtue, by representing the action of some one favoured by heaven, who executes a great design, spite of all obstacles that oppose him :’ I know not why we should withdraw the name of EPIC POEM from the piece which I am about to analyse.”

¹ This Piece may be considered perhaps as one of the first rude Attempts towards the Epic or Narrative Poem in Europe since the Roman Times. [See v. i. p. 417, l. 4.] Nor is it defective [so] in the most essential Parts of Epic Poetry. The Hero is one. The great action to which every thing tends is one: there is little interruption of episode; & it [b]egins nearer the [E]vent than most of that age.—P.

This appears to be more ancient than the Time of Chaucer. See The Rhyme of Sir Thopas quoted below,

St. 22^d.—P.

N.B. The Rhyme of Sir Thopas to be intended in Imitation of the Piece. N.B. This is a translation of the French. Vid. p. 327, st. 15 p. 441, l. 706 here].—P

² Men spoken of Romaunces of
Of Horne-Child and Ipotis,
Of Bevis and Sir Guy,
Of Sir Libeaux and Blandamour
But Sir Thopas bereth the flower
Of riall chevallrie.—*Rel.* iii.

³ Vide “Discours sur la Poësie Epique,” prefixed to *Télémaque*

The Bishop then gives a sketch of each of the nine Parts of the Romance, and winds up with, "Such is the fable of this ancient piece: which the reader may observe, is as regular in its conduct as any of the finest poems of classical antiquity. If the execution, particularly as to the diction and sentiments, were but equal to the plan, it would be a capital performance: but this is such as might be expected in rude and ignorant times, and in a barbarous impolished language." Poor times! Why hadn't you a bishop with a blacking-brush to make you shine?

The subject of the story is one that, told in the language and clothed with the feelings of each successive age, can never fail to interest that age at least, — the adventures of a young unknown man on his dangerous road from poverty to success in life, from nameless obscurity to rank and fame, from the consciousness of power existing only in the youth's own brain, to the full manifestation of that power, in the sight and with the applause of all beholders, who require to see it receive its fitting reward.

In the present instance, Lybais comes from his mother's apron-strings, not knowing his father: he is Gawain's bastard¹, to Arthur's court. He asks for knighthood, and the first adventure that comes in. He gets both; and his task is to free the Lady of Shalott from prison. Though scorned for his youth by her messengers, he conquers, one after another, thirteen formidable opponents, of whom the first nine are Sir William de la Braunch, his three brothers, two giants, Sir Giffert, Sir Otis de Lisle, and the Giant Mangye. A more malicious foe is behind, the sorceress of the Golden Isle, whom our hero has rescued from Mangye. For a year she keeps him from fulfilling his task; but at last he breaks

[illegible][illegible]

away from her, and goes to Sinadowne. There he conquers one knight, Sir Lambers, and then two necromancers who have turned the Lady of Sinadowne into a serpent. The serpent kisses him, and at the kiss turns into a lovely princess, who offers him herself and her lands. He accepts both, marries the Lady, and carries her off to King Arthur's court.

The English Romance was first printed by Ritson from the Cotton MS. Caligula A. ii. This text refers several times to its original, "the Frenssch tale" (l. 2122, *Ritson*, ii. 90; l. 222, *ib.* 10, &c.). On this, Ritson remarked, "The French original is unknown," ii. 253. The same statement continued true for many a year. Like the original of *Sir Generides* (which I edited from Mr. Tollemache's MS. for Mr. Gibbs as his gift-book to the Roxburghe Club in 1865, and the French of which is still to seek), the original of *Lybeaus Disconus* could not be found. But a lucky purchase by one of our subscribers, the Duc d'Aumale, of a MS. volume of French poems, and a luckier placing by him of it in the hands of Professor Hippeau of Caen in 1855, led to the discovery of the long-hidden French Romance, *Li Biaus Desconneus*, and also the name of its writer, RENALS DE BIAUJE, or,—as M. Hippeau modernises it,—RENAULD DE BEAUJEU. In 1860 M. Hippeau published the poem as *Le Bel Inconnu*, dating its writer as of the thirteenth century. It is not certain that De Biauju's text is the one that the English translators or adapters worked from; for in the two passages above referred to, where the English text refers to the French tale as the authority for its statements, De Biauju's text contains no such statements. But that is not conclusive, for we know that our English versifiers were seldom translators only: like our modern playwrights, they treated their French (or French-writing) originals with great freedom, cut out what they didn't want, altered what they didn't like, and put in incidents at discretion. As one instance, take Robert of Brunne's treatment of William of

Waddington's *Manuel des Pechiez*, detailed in my preface to the *Handlyng Synne*. De Beauju's text may have given rise to some last later version which the English adapters handled; but I see no reason why the early French text which M. Hippau has printed may not have been before our early men. The motive is the same in both stories, and the chief incidents are the same, though in one the way in which the Fairy of the Golden Isle, or *La Damaïelle as Blanches Mains*, is represented, and the latter part of the story told—they differ markedly. And as in this part of the French poem M. Hippau finds the original of part of the story of Tasso's *Gerusalemme Liberata*, it may be as well to give M. Hippau's abstract, remembering that the English version makes the lady a mere sorceress who detains Lybans twelve months from pursuing the task that he had vowed to accomplish, and then appears no more in the story. The French text makes her keep him only a day before he has freed the Lady of Smaflowne; but after he has done this, and she has offered him half her lands to him, De Beauju introduces the Fairy again—the English text saying nothing of her—and makes Lybans halt at the Lady of Smaflowne's offer thus:

The offer is tempting, but the laws of chivalry are opposed to his plighting his troth without having received the authentication of King Arthur. At the barons of the *jeu de la cour* arrive at the *Cité de la Cour*—bishops and abbots also come to justify by their presence the king's power over the places over which the evil spirits have cast a spell—and, before all her barons go, *La Dame Blanche* declares that she has decided on taking to him as her spouse. A deposition of lords goes to him, and the knight still answers to the king's request addressed to him, that he can do nothing without the consent of King Arthur. It is the king who, in granting the princess in marriage to one of his knights, has the right to all his great deeds. She begs of them to go to his court, with all her barons, to thank him.

The queen prepares to set out, in the secret anticipation that the marriage knight will accompany her on her journey. But woody forest for ages now round the *Fort de la Cour*. He cannot drive from his heart the recollection of the beautiful fairy of the *Île d'Or*.

The description of this unconquerable passion occupies a large space in the story of our trouvère. He finds happy expressions to describe those torments of love which he appears, from the frequent reference he makes to himself, to know only too well. Readers will be astonished to see with what pliancy the language of the thirteenth century lent itself to the developement of the most delicate shades of feeling. Giglain knows not at what point to stop. He dares not return to the *Ile d'Or*, which he left so abruptly ; he cannot, on the other hand, drive away the too seductive image which besieges him night and day. The advice of Robert, his faithful squire, decides him on letting the daughter of the king of *Galles* set out alone. She parts from him with the sadness of resignation, and he sets out for the *Ile d'Or*. But there his perplexities begin again. Shall he go and present himself to the woman whose love he has seemed to disdain ? He weeps, he laments, he is grievously distressed. But happily Robert is always at his side : he has much more confidence than his master in the kindly feelings of the fairy. She wanted to keep him, she was angry at his going, she will then see him again with joy.

At length the dreaded interview takes place. Having reached the magnificent fruit-garden (*verger*), which leads to the palace of the *Ile d'Or*, a delightful garden which contains all of most perfect that God has created upon earth, Giglain and his companion perceive the Fairy of the White Hands (*fée aux blanches mains*), and the former at once directs his steps towards her. The fairy receives him with an appearance of anger, which soon vanishes under the tender protestations of love with which Giglain accompanies the explanations that he gives her. She asks nothing better than to forgive him, and she conducts the happy knight into her castle.

If the passion of Giglain was violent when he was far from the Fairy of the Golden Isle, how can he resist it when he finds himself in the middle of her palace, where all the attendants, keeping discreetly at a distance, soon leave him alone with her ?

We are, you will perceive, in the midst of the palace of *Armida*. The situation of our knight in this charming abode, recalls, in fact, quite naturally, that which made *Rinaldo* forget, in the bosom of the delights in which an enchantress held him, his most sacred duties and the glory of combat. How, and by means of what changes, have the adventures of Giglain in the castle of the Golden Isle become one of the most interesting episodes of the *Gerusalemme Liberata* ?¹ It is

¹ On *La Dame d'Amore* of the Cotton text (and ours, p. 470, l. 1508), Ritson observes, v. ii. p. 263, " This lady bears a strong resemblance to the no less

a study which would require long unfoldings (*développemens*), and which we may try elsewhere when we have to occupy ourselves with the translations or imitations of which the poems of our trouvères have been the object among the different nations of Europe.

However that may be, we shall only follow with reserve the French poet in this part of his story, where he indulges a little too much, like his brethren of the same epoch, in the descriptive style. The fairy would not have been a woman if, notwithstanding her tenderness for *le Bel Isouard*, she had completely forgotten the insult done to her charms, however honourable might have been the cause which took her the first time from the Golden Isle. She forgives him, but only after having revenged herself slightly. It is not in vain that he inhabits an enchanted palace. During the night he is twice a prey to a frightful illusion. He wakes and starts up; he seems to be bearing on his head the whole roof of the hall; he calls to his help all the attendants of the fairy. They run to him and find him struggling with his pillow, which is over his head. The second time, he gets out of bed and arrives at a torrent, which he crosses on a narrow plank; terror seizes him: he thinks that the quivering waves draw him in; he clings to the plank with all his might, and then calls the whole house to his help. They find him grasping with his two hands a sparrow-hawk's perch.

The Lady of the Golden Isle thinks him sufficiently punished. We will then leave our author a second time to add, to his glory, that we find again in his poem the means employed by the Italian poet to snatch his hero from the seductions of Armida.

We left the daughter of the king of *Galles* journeying but joylessly towards King Arthur's court. She there experiences a reception worthy of her: all the knights share her grief when she informs them that the warrior to whom she owes her deliverance, has not accompanied her, and that she knows not whether he has directed his steps.

Arthur knows well how to bring back to him the most illustrious of the knights of the Round Table. He has a grand tournament proclaimed all over the country. One day two players (*champions*) present themselves at the castle of the Golden Isle, and penetrate even to *le Bel Isouard*. They announce to him the feast of arms prepared by King Arthur. At this news, Gaham hesitates not an instant; he forgets his love, to think only of glory. In vain does

the poet here describe the
 Gaham of Homer and the Agamemnon of
 the Iliad, and the Agamemnon of the
 Iliad, and the Agamemnon of the Iliad.

and Rago in the manner he uses
 of Homer here treats Lybena.

the beautiful fairy try to hold him back. She knows beforehand, in her double quality of woman and fairy, that the love of the handsome knight cannot be eternal. She has had to prepare herself long since to lose him. I like better, I declare, the jealous fury of Armida than the easy resignation of the Fairy of the White Hands.

At break of day, Giglain, who had gone to bed the night before in the palace of the Golden Isle, wakes and finds at his side his horse and his squire Robert, in the middle of a dark forest, whither the all-power of the fairy had transported him. Though he is a little surprised at what has happened, he takes his fate bravely, and sets forward without delay towards the place assigned as the rendezvous of the paladins (adventure-seeking heroes) who are to take part in the tourney.

Though the narratives which have as their subject these brilliant jousts are generally the parts treated by the authors of our poems with a partiality justified by the desire of pleasing the noble lords for whom they wrote, it would be difficult to find a tournament which could sustain comparison with that of *Valedon*. Walter Scott would seem¹ to have been inspired by it in his account of the famous passage of arms at Ashby. It is needless to say that all the honour of the day belongs to *le Bel Inconnu*. The heat of the battle has dissipated the last vestiges of his love for the Fairy of the White Hands. Having married the princess of *Galles*, he delays not to go and take possession of the crown which so many high deeds have rendered him worthy of.

All this tantalising of the Lady of Sinadowne, keeping her waiting for her lover after she had been so many years serpentised or wivernised by the two necromancers, the English adapter has thought unfair, and cut out. Must not we sympathise with him? What should we have said to Mr. Tennyson if he had kept *The Sleeping Beauty* waiting a year for her husband after she had been kissed? Voted him a hard-hearted Frenchman, clearly. But of course he has done nothing so wrong. Well, besides this, the adapter has, as remarked in the notes, cut out all about Renals de Biauju's own lady-love, for whom he composed the poem—had the poor Englishman no sweetheart?—all about

¹ As he died in 1832, and the French Romance was not published till 1860,

there is some difficulty in this *semblerait s'en être inspiré*.

Mr. Tom Hughes's books,—or some county near.¹ The infinitive in *y* also shows that the text is Southern²: *army*, arm, l. 216; *justy*, joust, l. 909, l. 951, but *juste*, l. 1542; *schewy*, show, l. 746; *spendly*, spend, l. 986, &c.

Grateful as I feel to M. Hippeau for his discovery and printing of the French text, I owe him a slight grudge for describing “l’auteur du *Canterbury Tales*” as “le poétique traducteur de nos trouvères,” and therefore note that his print of the Cotton MS. is full of those mistakes that “a remarkably intelligent foreigner” would naturally make, *u* for *n*, and *n* for *u*, &c.³; to say nothing of other forms like *pryue* for *þryue*, thrive; *kepte* for *lepte*, l. 2039; *be* for *he*, l. 1388; *thogh tyer* for *thoghtyer*, doughtier, l. 1091; *he* for *here*, *her*, l. 887; *gwyech* for *swych*, such, l. 712; *Sweyn* for *Eweyn*, l. 219; *lymest*, for *lyme* & *lime* and, l. 713.

It may look rather spiteful to print these things, but editors are bound to consider the language they study rather than other editors' feelings; and with the full conviction that I invite similar treatment for the French as well as the English texts I have edited and may edit, and that in all there are and will be mistakes,⁴ I hold it best to point out the misreadings in Early English that come across me, for the sake of the language and

l. 1705; *tho*, do, l. 531, &c., and in many other places. I just copy the few that I noted years ago on a blank leaf, when reading part of M. Hippeau's edition.

¹ Probably Dorsetshire. I heard *drow* for *throw* near Weymouth this autumn, and Mr. Barnes says in his *Grammar and Glossary of the Dorset Dialect*, 1863, p. 16, “*Th* of the English sometimes, and mostly before *r*, becomes *d*, as *drow* for *throw*. Conversely, *th* (ð) is substituted in Dorset for the English *d*, as *blaðer*, a bladder, *laðer*, a ladder.” Mr. Hughes says he does not remember hearing this *th* and *d* change in Berkshire.

² “In the Dorset the verb takes *y* only when it is absolute, and never with an accusative case. We may say, ‘Can ye

zewy?’ but never, ‘Wull ye zewy up theäse zēam?’”—*Barnes*, p. 28.

³ *deutes* for *dentes*, l. 1304; *fox* for *fon*, *foes*, l. 1530, l. 1950; *saungh* for *saunz*, Fr. *sans*, without l. 1860 [In *bat felde saunz fayle*. MS. leaf 55, back, col. 1, line 18. See the last lines of the pieces in note, p. 413]; *han* for *han*, *have*, l. 1263; *woueth* for *woneth*, *dwells*, l. 657; *gan* for *gan*, *did*, l. 343; *descryne* for *descryue*, *describe*, l. 1330, l. 1428; *honedc* for *houede*, *halted*, l. 1562; *keuere* for *keuere*, *recover*, l. 1983; *leuede* for *leuede*, *lived*, l. 2125.

⁴ Claude Platin's confession, “*mon ignorance, laquelle n'est pas petite*” (page 415 here), is the motto for many of us, adding carelessness.

its students. But to return from this digression; the Lambeth MS. is in "The Wright's Chaste Wife" volume, and seems to be a later copy of a text like the Cotton. Some readings from it are given in the notes from Mr. Warwick King's transcript of it for the Early English Text Society. By way of exhibiting some of the differences of the five English texts, I put beside the first bit of the Lincoln's Inn fragment the passages corresponding to it in the other MSS.,¹ and at the end of the Romance as

¹ *Lincoln's Inn MS. 150, Art. 1,*
faded, begins.

þan sir libeus ran
þar Manges scheld lay,
And vp he con hit fango:
fast he ran to him,
And smot him wip mayn,
And other gon a[n]n[ile.]
into þeo day was dyme ..
Bysyde þeo water
þeo kynges beold bataile.
Libeus was warryour wylt,
And gaf a strok of myht
þowu; gypoun (?) plate and maile,
þoru; his scholdur bon,
þat his ryt arm anon
fel in þeo feld saunsaile.

MS. Lambeth 306, leaf 94, back.
Than lybeus ranne aw-waye
There Mangis sheld laye,
And vp he gan hit fange,
And ran a-gayne to hym.
With strokys sharpe and gryme
Eythir oþer ganne assayle.
Till the day was dyme,
Vpon the water brym
By-twene hem was bataylle.
Lybeus was werroure wight,
And smote a stroke of myght
Throuȝ leȝoure, plate, and mayle,
Therouȝ the shulder bone,
That his Right Arme A-none (leaf 95)
Fell in the feld saunce fayle.

Ashmole MS. 61, leaf 52.

Than lybeus ranne A-wey
There mangis scheld ley,
And vp he gane it fonge;
And libeus ranne to hym A-gene, (leaf 52)
And smote hym with meyne;
Aȝther oþer gane A-syle.
Till þe day was dymme,
By-syde þe water brymme

Cot. Calig. A. ii. leaf 50, col. 1.

þanne lybeaus ran away
þere þat mangys scheld lay,
And vp he gan hyt fonge,
And Ran a-gayn to hym. (col. 2)
With strokes strout & grym
To-gydere þey gonne a-sayle.
Be-syde þat ryuere brym,
Tylle hyt derkede dym,
Be-twene hem was bataylo.
Lybeaus was werroure wylt,
And smot a strok of myht
þoru; gypelle, plate, & maylle,
Forþ with þe scholdere bon,
Mangys arm fylle of a-noon
In-to þe feld saun; fayle.

Percy Folio, p. 337.

then Sir Lybius rann away
thither were Mangis sheld Lay;
& vp he can itt gett,
& ran againe to him,
with strakes great and grim
together they did assayle;
there beside the watter brimne
till it waxed wonderous drimn,
betweene them lasted that battell.
Sir Lybius was warryour wight,
& smote a stroke of much might;
through hawberke, plate and maile,
hee smote of by the shoulder bone
his right arme soone and anon
into the ffield with-out faile.

The knyghtes held batayle.
Syr libeus was weryoure wylt,
And gaue strokes of myht
Throught plate and maile,
And throw his schulder bone,
That hys ryght Arme Anone
Fell in þe feld with-outen fyle.

printed here, p. 497, will be found the endings of the Lincoln's Inn, Cotton, Lambeth, and Ashmole texts, for further contrast with the language of the Percy folio. I have not had time to collate them throughout, and Mr. Brock, who began the collation with the Cotton MS., soon gave it up as involving too much time and trouble for an adequate result, the second volume of Ritson being easily accessible to all readers.

Ritson says that this Romance

was certainly printed before the year 1600, being mention'd by the name of "*Libbius*," in "Vertues common wealth : or The highway to honour," by Henry Crosse, publish'd in that year; and is even alluded to by Skelton, who dye'd in 1529 :

And of sir *Libius* named *Disconius*. . . .

A story similar to that which forms the principal subject of the present poem may be found in the "Voiage and travaile of sir John Maundeville" (London, 1725, 8vo. P. 28). It, likewise, by some means, has made its way into a pretendedly ancient Northumbrian ballad intitle'd "The laidly worm of Spindleston-heugh," writen, in reality, by Robert Lambe, vicar of Norham, authour of *The history of chess*, &c., who had, however, hear'd some old stanzas, of which he avail'd himself, sung by a maid-servant. The remote original of all these storys was, probably, much older than the time of Herodotus, by whom it is relateed (*Urania*).

In French there was a prose translation of a Spanish romance mixing up a Charlemagnian hero with our Arthurian Gynge layn, printed in 1530, which Brunet (ed. 1814) enters thus :

GIGLAN (l'histoire de), fils de messire Gauvain, qui fut roi de Galles; et de Geoffroy de Mayence, son compaignon : traduit d'espagnol en françois par Claude Platin, *Lyon, Cl. Nourry*, 1530, in-4. goth. fig.

This is, says M. Hippeau, a fairly correct reproduction of the French *Li Biaus Desconneus*, "sauf quelques additions peu heureuses." His extract from Claude Platin's prologue is so pretty that I give it here :

Pour éviter oysiveté, mère et nourrice des vices, et aussi pour complaire à tous ceulx qui prennent plaisir à lire et à ouyr lire les livres des anciens, qui ont vescu si vertueusement en leur temps,

que la renommée en sera jusques à la fin du siècle, lesquelles œuvres vertueuses doivent esmouvoir les cueurs des humains de les ensuyvir en vertus en haultz faitz, moi FRÈRE CLAUDE PLATIN, humble religieux de l'ordre monseigneur saint Anthoine, ung jour, en une petite librairie où j'estoye, trouvay un gros livre de parchemin bien vieil, escript en rime espaignole, assez difficile à entendre, auquel trouvay une petite hystoire laaquelle me sembla bien plaisante, qui parloit de deux nobles chevaliers qui furent du temps du noble roi Artus et des nobles chevaliers de la Table-Ronde. . . J'ay donc voulu translater la dicte hystoire de cette rime espaignole, en prose francoyse, au moins mal que j'ay peü, selon mon petit entendement, à celle fin que plus facilement peust estre entendue de ceulx qui prendront plaisir à la lire ou ouyr lire : ausquelz je prie que les fautes qui y seront trouvées, ils les vueillent corriger, et excuser mon ignorance, laquelle n'est pas petite ; et aussi de ne se arrester ausdictes fautes, mais s'il y a riens de bon, qu'ilz en facent leur prouffit.

With what better commendation to the reader can I close this rambling Introduction, or leave him to study the poem of "The Fayre Unknown"?

¹ IESUS christ, Christen Kinge, ²	Christ and
& his mother <i>that</i> sweete thing, ³	Mary
helpe them att their neede	help my
4 <i>that</i> will listen to my tale!	hearers!
of a knight I will you tell, ⁴	I'll tell you
a doughtye man of deede,	

¹ The Romance in the Cotton MS. Caligula A ii. begins thus:

INCIPIT LYBRAUS DISCONIUS.

¶ Ihesu cryst oure sauyoure,
And hys modyr þat swete flowre,
 Helpe hem at here nede
þat harkenþ of a conqueroure,
Wys of wytte, & whyȝt werrour,
And douȝty man yn dede.

Hys name was called Geynleyn;
Be-yete he was of syr Gaweyn
 Be a forest syde.
Of stouter knyȝt & profytable

With artoure of þe Rounde table,
Ne herde ye neuer Rede.

¶ þys Gynleyn was fayre of syȝt,
Gentylle of body, of face bryȝt,
 Alle bastard ȝef he were.
Hys modyr kepte hym yn clos
For douute of wykkede loos,
 As douȝty chyld & dere.—F.

² oure sauyoure.—C.

³ flowre.—C.

⁴ þat harkenþ of a conqueroure
wys of wytte & whyȝt werrour.—C.

of Ginglaine,
bastard son
of Sir
Gawaine.

his name was cleped ¹ Ginglaine ;
8 gotten he was of Sir Gawaine
vnder a fforrest side ;
a better ² knight without ffable,³
With Arthur att the round table,
12 yee heard neuer of read.

[page 31]

His mother
tried to
prevent him
seeing a
knight,

Gingglaine was ffaire & bright,⁴
an hardye man and a wight,⁵
bastard thoe hee were.
16 ⁶ his mother kept him with all her might,
ffor he shold not of noe armed Knight
haue a sight in noe mannere.

because he
was savage.

but he was soe sauage,
20 & lightlye wold doe outrage
to his ffellowes in ffere.⁶
his mother kept him close
ffor dread ⁷ of wicked losse,
24 as hend ⁸ child and deere.

His mother
called him
Beaufise
because he
was
handsome.

ffor ⁹ hee was soe ffaire & wise,¹⁰
his mother cleped him beufise,¹¹
& none other name ;
28 & himselfe was not soe wise ¹²
that hee asked not I-wis
what hee hight ¹³ of his dame.

One day

soe itt beffell vpon a day
32 Gingglaine ¹⁴ went to play,

¹ called.—C.

² stouter.—C.

³ & profytable.—C.

⁴ of syzt.—C.

⁵ Gentyll of body, of face bryzt.—C.

⁶⁻⁸ From his to ffere omitted in C.—F.

⁷ douute.—C.

⁸ douzty.—C.

⁹ [And] for, i.e. because.—P.

¹⁰ And fore loue of hys fayre vyys.
—C.

¹¹ Beau-vise.—P. bewfis.—C.

¹² was fulle nys.—C.

¹³ what he was called ; what his Nam
was. See St. 11.—P.

¹⁴ To wode be.—C.

wild deere to hunt ffor game ;
 & as he went ouer the Lay,
 he spyed a knight was stout & gay,
 36 *that soone he made ffull tame.*¹

he sees a
knight,
kills him,

then he did on ² *that Knights weede,*
 & himselfe therin yeede,³
 into *that* rich armoure ;
 40 & when he had done *that* deede,
 to Glasenbury swithe⁴ hee yeede,
 there Lay King Arthur.
 & when he came into the hall
 44 amonge the Lords and Ladyes all,
 he grett⁵ them with honore,
 And said, " King Arthur, my Lord !⁶
 suffer me to speake a word,
 48 I pray you *par* amoure⁷ :

puts on his
armour,
goes to
Glaston-
bury, to
King
Arthur,

and asks
Arthur

⁸ " I am a child vnconthe ;
 come I am out of the south,
 & wold be made a knight.
 52 14 yeere old I am,
 & of warre well I cann,
 therfore grant me my right."
 then said Arthur the King strong
 56 to the child *that* was soo younge,⁹

to knight
him, as he's
fourteen,
and can
fight.

Arthur

¹ The Cotton MS. reads :
 He found a knyght, where he lay,
 In armes þat were stout & gay,
 I-slayne & made fulle tame.—F.

² þat chyld dede of.—C.

³ And anon he gan hym schrede.—C.

⁴ prompte, Jun. P.

⁵ did greet. P.

⁶ Mais cil li dist : " Ains m'acoutés.

Arto, venus sui à ta cort,

Car n'i saura, comment qu'il cort,

Del premier don que je querrai :

Aurai-le je, u le j' saurai ?
 Donne-le moi et n'i penser
 Tant esprendre ; ne l' dois réer."
 " Je le vos dons : ce dist li rois."

Le Bel Inconnu, l. 82-9, p. 4.

⁷ par-amour, or perhaps pour amour ;
 it is not here a compound word, signi-
 fying *Mistress* ; but is a phrase equiva-
 lent to that [in] St. 14, lin. 3. P.

⁸ This stanza is omitted in C. The
 Lambeth MS. 306 has it. F.

⁹ A-mon withoute any dwellyng.—C.

of Ginglaine,
bastard son
of Sir
Gawaine.

his name was cleped ¹ Ginglaine ;
8 gotten he was of Sir Gawaine
vnder a fforrest side ;
a better ² knight without ffable,³
With Arthur att the round table,
12 yee heard neuer of read.

[page 318]

His mother
tried to
provent him
seeing a
knight,

Gingglaine was ffaire & bright,⁴
an hardye man and a wight,⁵
bastard thoo hoe were.
16 ⁶ his mother kept him with all her might,
ffor he shold not of noe armed Knight
haue a sight in noe mannere.

because he
was savage.

but he was soe sauage,
20 & lightlye wold doe outrage
to his ffellowes in ffere.⁶
his mother kept him close
ffor dread ⁷ of wicked losse,
24 as hend ⁸ child and deere.

His mother
called him
Beaufise
because he
was
handsome.

ffor ⁹ hee was soe ffaire & wise,¹⁰
his mother cleped him beufise,¹¹
& none other name ;
28 & himselfe was not soe wise ¹²
that hee asked not I-wis
what hee hight ¹³ of his dame.

One day

soe itt beffell vpon a day
32 Gingglaine ¹⁴ went to play,

¹ called.—C.

² stouter.—C.

³ & profytable.—C.

⁴ of syst.—C.

⁵ Gentyll of body, of face bryzt.—C.

⁶⁻⁶ From his to ffere omitted in C.—F.

⁷ douute.—C.

⁸ douzty.—C.

⁹ [And] for, i.e. because.—P.

¹⁰ And fore loue of hys fayre vyys.—C.

¹¹ Beau-visc.—P. bewfis.—C.

¹² was full nys.—C.

¹³ what he was called ; what his Name was. See St. 11.—P.

¹⁴ To wode he.—C.

wild deere to hunt ffor game ;
 & as he went ouer the Lay,
 he spyed a knight was stout & gay,
 36 *that soone he made ffull tame.*¹

he sees a
knight,
kills him,

then he did on² *that Knights weede,*
 & himselfe therin yeede,³
 into *that* rich armoure ;
 40 & when he had done *that* deede,
 to Glasenbury swithe⁴ hee yeede,
 there Lay King Arthur.
 & when he came into the hall
 44 amonge the Lords and Ladyes all,
 he grett⁵ them with honore,
 And said, " King Arthur, my Lord !⁶
 suffer me to speake a word,
 48 I pray you *par* amoure⁷ :

puts on his
armour,
goes to
Glaston-
bury, to
King
Arthur,

and asks
Arthur

" I am a child vncouthe ;
 come I am out of the south,
 & wold be made a knight.
 52 14 yeere old I am,
 & of warre well I cann,
 therfore grant me my right."
 then said Arthur the King strong
 56 to the child *that* was soo younge,⁸

to knight
him, as he's
fourteen,
and can
fight.

Arthur

¹ The Cotton MS. reads :
 He found a knyght, where he lay,
 In armes þat were stout & gay,
 I-aclayne & made fülle tame.—F.

² þat chyld dede of. — C.

³ And anon he gan hym schrede.—C.

⁴ prompte, Jun. — P.

⁵ wel greet — P.

⁶ Mais cil li dist : " Ains m'acoutés.
 Arto, venus sui à ta cort ;
 Car n'i saura, comment qu'il cort,
 Del premier don que je querrai :

Aurai-le je, u le j'aurai ?
 Donne-le moi et n'i penser
 Tant esprendre ; ne l' dois vèer."
 " Je le vos dons : ce dist li rois."

Le Bel Inconnu, l. 82-9, p. 4.

⁷ par-amour, or perhaps pour amour ;
 it is not here a compound word, signi-
 fying *Mistress* ; but is a Phrase equiva-
 lent to that [in] St. 14, lin. 3. — P.

⁸ This stanza is omitted in C. The
 Lambeth MS. 306 has it. — F.

⁹ A-noon withoute any dwellyng.—C.

asks him his
name,

“tell me what thou hight¹;
for neuer sithe I was borne
sawe I neuer heere beforne²
60 noe child soe ffaire of sight.”

Ginglaine
says he
doesn't
know,

the child said, “by St. Iame,³
I wott not⁴ what is my name!
I am the more vnwise⁵;

but his
mother
calls him
Beaufiac.

64 but when I dwelled att home,⁶
my mother in her game
cleped mee beaufise.”

Arthur says
“by God it's
odd you

then said⁷ Arthur the King,
68 & said, “this is a wonderous thing,
by god & by S^t Denise,

don't know
your own
name!

that thou wold be a Knight,
& wott nott what thou hight,
72 & art soe ffaire and wise⁸!

I'll give you
one

“now I will giue thee a name
heere amonge all you in-same;
for thou art soe ffaire and free,—

that your
mother
never called
you,

76 I say, by god & by S^t Iame,
soe cleped thee neuer thy dame,
what woman *that* euer shee bee;—

and that is
Lybius
Disconius”
(the fair
unknown,
or handsome
stranger).

call yee him all thus,⁹

80 Lybius Disconius¹⁰;
ffor the loue of mee
looke yee call him this name;
both in earnest & in game,

84 certes, soe hight shall hee.¹¹”

¹ byn name aplyzt.—C.

² Ne fond y me be-fore.—C.

³ Cil li respont: “Certes ne sai,
Mais que tant dire vos en sai,
Que *hiel fil* m'apieloit ma mère;
No je ne sai se je oi pere.”

Le Bel Inconnu, l. 115–18, p. 5.

⁴ I not.—C.

⁵ hame, idem.—P.

⁶ fayre of vys.—C.

⁷ nys.—C.

⁸ spake.—F.

⁹ thus.—P.

¹⁰ lybeau desconus.—C. The French
has, p. 6:

“Et por ce qu'il ne se conuist,
I.i Blaus Desconus ait non!
Si l'nommeront tot mi baron.”

Le beaux Desconus, i.e. the fair un-
known.—P.

¹¹ þan may ye wete a rowe
þe fayre vnknewe
Sertes so hatte he.—C.

King Arthur anon-right
 with a sword faire & bright,¹
 trulye *that* same day
 88 dubbed *that* Child a knight,²
 And gaue him armes bright³;
 fforsooth as I you say,
 hee gaue to him in *that* ilke
 92 a rich sheeld all ouer gilte
 with a griffon soe gay,⁴
 & tooke him to Sir Gawaine⁵
 ffor to teach him on the plaine
 96 of euery princes⁶ play.⁷

Then Arthur
 knighte
 Lybina.

[page 319] gives him
 armes

and a shield,

and asks
 Gawaine to
 teach him.

when hee was made a knight,
 of the boone⁸ he asked right,⁹
 & said, "my Lord soe free,
 100 in my hart I wold be glad
 the first battell if I had
that men asked of thee."
 then said Arthur the King,
 104 "I grant thee thine askinge,
 whatt battell *that* euer itt bee;
 but euer methinke thou art to young
 ffor to doe a good¹⁰ fighting,
 108 by ought *that* I can see.

Lybina

asks Arthur

to let him
 haue the
 first fight
 that turne
 up.

Arthur
 grants this,

but thinks
 he's too
 young to
 fight well.

when he had him thus told,
 Dukes, Erles, and Barons bold,¹¹

¹ Made hym to a knyght.—C.

² And yaf hym armes bryght.—C.

³ Hym gerte with swerde of myght.

(

⁴ gryffon of may.—C.

⁵ And hym he-took hys ladyr gaweyn.

(

⁶ the knyghtes.—C.

⁷ As a seems to have been blotted out

after the y in the MS.—F.

⁸ Other boone, or another boone, or
 One other D. P.

⁹ Anon a tyme per he had.—C.

¹⁰ thing, which follows, has been
 marked out in the MS. F.

¹¹ With oute more reason
 Duk, Erl & baroun.—C.

Then all
dine off wild
fowl and
venison.

washed & went to meate ;
112 of wild ffoule¹ and venison,²
as lords of great renowne,
inoughe they had to eate.
they had not sitten not a stoure,
116 well the space of halfe an hower,
talking att their meate,³
there came a damsell att *that* tyde,⁴
& a dwarffe⁵ by her side,
120 all sweating⁶ ffor heate ;

come in hot
haste a
damsell and
a dwarf.

Her name is
Hellen ;
she brings a
message
from a lady,

the Maidens name was Hellen ;
sent shee was vnto the King,⁷
a Ladyes messenger.
124 the maiden was ware & wise,
& cold doe her message att device,⁸
shee was not to ffere⁹ ;
the maid was ffaire & sheene,
128 shee was cladd all in greene¹⁰ ;
& ffurred¹¹ with Blaundemere¹² ;

and is clad
in green.

¹ take y^e heddes of [=off] all felde byrdes and wood byrdes, as fesande, pe-cocke, partryche, woodcocke, and curlewe, forthey ete in theyrdegrees foule thynges, as wormes, todes, and other suche. *Boke of Keruyng* in Babees Book &c., E. E. T. Soc. p. 279. See the capital bit about venison from Andrew Borde, *ib.* p. 210-11.—F.

² Of alle manere fusoun.—C.

³ Ne hadde artoure bote a whyle be mountaunce of a myle At hys table y-sete.—C.

⁴ a mayde Ryde.—C.

⁵ dwerk.—C.

⁶ be-swette.—C.

⁷ Gentyll bryzt & schene.—C.

⁸ i.e. Will, Pleasure. See Chau^r Gloss.—P.

⁹ per nas contesse ne quene So semelyche on to sene pat myzte be here pere.—C.

¹⁰ Sche was clodeþ in tars Rowme & nodyng skars.—C.

¹¹ pelured.—C.

¹² *Blaunchmer*, a kind of fur.

He ware a cyrcote that was grene ;
With *blaunchmer* it was furred, I wene.
Syr Degoré, 701 in Halliwell's Glossary.

This word comes in so oddly that I could almost be tempted to think that Chaucer in his burlesque *Romance of Sir Thopas* might allude to it sportively, as thus :

Sir Libeaux and the* Blaundemere
Scil^t the Blaundemere Furr mentioned
in his *Romance* &c. But after all per-
haps this construction is too forced.

N.B. It might be the other Version which Chaucer alludes to.

See Chaucer's *Rhyme of Sir Thopas*, where this word seems to be mistaken, viz.:

Men speken of Romaunces of Pris,
Of Hornechild and of Ipotis
Of Bevis & Sir Gie
Of Sir Libeaux and Blaindamoure
But Sir Thopas bereth the flowre
Of rich Chivalrie.—P.

her saddle was ouergiltc,
 & well bordered with silke,¹
 132 & white² was her distere.³

the dwarfe was cladd with scarlett ffine,
 & ffured well with good ⁴Ermine; ⁵
 stout he was & keene ⁶;
 136 amonge all christen kind
 such another might no man find ⁷;
 his cercott ⁸ was of greene ⁹;
 his haire was yellow as fflower on mold,¹⁰
 140 to his girdle hang ¹¹ shining as gold,¹²
 the sooth to tell in veretye;
 all ¹³ his shoone with gold were dight,
 all as gay as any ¹⁴ knight,
 144 there sseemed no pouertye.

The dwarf
wears
scarlet,
is stout,

has long
yellow hair,

Teddelyne was his name,¹⁵
 wide sprang of him the fame,¹⁶
 East, west, North & south;
 148 much he cold of game & glee,

is named
Teddelyne,

¹ Here sadelle & here brydelle yn fere
 Fulle of dyamandys were.—C.

The author of the French Romance gives
 a fuller description of Maid Hellen, or
Hélie as he calls her. Doubtless it is
 his own love, for whom he composed the
 Romance, whom he sketches.

Gente de cors et de vis bièle :
 D'un samit estoit bien vestuo ;
 Si bièle riens ne fu veüe.
 Face ot blanche com flors d'esté,
 Come rose ot vis coloré,
 Le iouls ot vairs, bouce riant,
 Les mains blanches, cors avenant ;
 Bel cief avoit, si estoit blonde :
 N'ot plus biel cief feme del monde !
 En son cief ot un cercle d'or ;
 Ses perles valent un trésor
 Sor un palefroi cevaüoit. (p. 6.)—F.

² Melk.—C.

³ apud Chauc. *Destrer*, a War-horse, or

Led Horse. Vid. Gloss.—P.

⁴ One stroke too few in this word in
 the MS.—F.

⁵ þe dwerke was clodeþ yn ynde
 Be-fore & ek be-hynde.—C.

⁶ pert.—C.

⁷ find in the MS.—F.

⁸ Surcoat—A gown & hood *the* same,
 an upper coat, Ch. Gloss.—P.

⁹ was ouert.—C.

¹⁰ as ony wax.—C. Not in the French.
 —F.

¹¹ hung.—P. ¹² henge þe plex.—C.

¹³ als, also.—P.

¹⁴ And kopeþ as a.—C.

¹⁵ The French Romance doesn't name
 him till he and Hellen leave the court,
 and it calls him *Tidogolains*, l. 256,
 p. 10.—F. Teaudelayn.—C.

¹⁶ MS. same.—F. fame.—P. welle
 swyde sprong hys name.—C.

is a good
fiddler,

fiddle, crowde,¹ and sowtrye,

he was a merry man of mouth ² ;

harpe, ribble ³ & sautrye,

minstrel
and jester

152 he cold much of Minstrelsy,

he was a good Iestoure,

there was none such in noe country ;

a jolly man
with ladies.

a Iolly man fforsooth was hee

156 with Ladyes in their bower.

Hellen gives
Arthur her
message :

then he bade maid Hellen

ffor to tell her tale by-deene,

& kneele before the King.

160 the maid kneeled in the hall

among the Lords & Ladyes all,

& said, " my Lord ! without Leasing

" There is a strong case toward ;

[page 320]

164 there [is] none such, nor soe hard,

nor of soe much dolour.

her lady, of
Sinadone,
is in distress,

my⁴ Lady of Sinadone

is brought to strong prison,

168 that was of great valoure ;

and begs for
a knight to
fight for her.

shee prayes you of⁵ a Knight

ffor to win her in ffight

with ioy & much honor."⁶

Lyblus at
once

172 vp rose that younge Knight,

¹ A kind of fiddle.—F.

² Myche he coupe of game,
with sytole sautyre yn same
harpe fydele & croupe.—C.

³ There is none of this in the French.
—F. Al can they play on gitterne and
rubible. *Cook's Tale*. The giterne was
a small guitar, and the ribible a small
fiddle played by a bow, and not by hand
as the giterne was. Jerome of Moravia
says of the ribble, Ribible, or Ribibe:
—" Est autem *rubelha* musicum instru-
mentum habens solum duas cordas sono
distantes a se per diapente, quod quidem,

sicut et viella, cum arcu tangitur."—W. C.
ribble, a fiddle or gittern, Gl. Ch.—P.

⁴ MS. ny.—F.

⁵ of you.—P.

⁶ The French adds some lines about
the kiss, on which so much turns at the
end:

" Certes moult auroit grant honnor
Icil qui de mal l'estordroit,
Et qui le fîere Baisier feroit.
Mais pros que il li a mestier !
Onques n'ot tel à chevalier.
Jà mauvais hom le don ne quière ;
Tot en giroit en vers en bière !" (p. 8.)

- in his hart he was full light,
 & said, "my Lord Arthur,
- "my conenant is to haue *that* fight
 176 ffor to winne *that* Ladye bright,
 if thou be true of word."
- the King said without othe,
 "thereof thou saiest soothe,
 180 thereto I beare record;
- "god thee giue strenght & might
 ffor to winne *that* Ladye bright
 with sheeld & with speare dint!"
- 184 then began the maid to say,
 & said, "alas *that* ilke day
that I was hither sent!"
- shee said, "this word will spring wyde;
 188 Sir King, lost is all thy pride,
 and all thy deeds is shent,¹
 when thou sendest a child
that is wittleesse & wild,
 192 to deale doughtilie with dint!
 thou hast Knights of mickle maine,
 Sir Perciuall & Sir Gawaine,
 full wise in Turnament."
- 196 tho² the dwarffe with great error³
 went vnto King Arthur,
 & said, "Sir! verament
- "this child to be a warryour,
 200 or to doe such a Labor,
 itt is not worth one farthing!
 or⁴ hee *that* Ladye may see,
 hee shall haue battells 5 or three
 204 trulye without any Leasinge;

claims the
fight.

Arthur
assigns it
to him.

Maid Helen
grumbles,

and says it's
a disgrace to
Arthur

to send a
witless child
to fight,

when he has
knights like
Gawaine &c.

Dwarf
Tobryne

says the
child isn't

worth a
farthing.
He'll have to
fight five
battles
before
reaching
himself;

¹ are shent, i. e. disgraced.—P.

² then.—P.

³ *Errone* course, running.

⁴ i. e. before.—P.

Hallwell. F.

the first at
the Bridge
of Perils.

“att the bridge of perill
beside the aduenturous chappell,
there is the first begining.”

Lybius says
he's not
afraid;

208 Sir Lybius anon answered
& said, “I was neuer affeard
ffor no mans threatninge!

he can
fight,

212 “somewhat haue I lerd¹
ffor to play with a swerd
there men hath beene slowe.²
the man *that* fleethe ffor a threat
other³ by way or by streete,

and will
never give
in: such is
Arthur's
law.

216 I wold he were to-draw.
I will the battell vndertake;
I ne will neuer fforsake,
ffor such is Arthurs Lawe.”

Hellen
sneers at
Lybius,

220 the made⁴ answered alsoe snell,⁵
& said, “*that* beseemeth thee well!
who-soe looketh on thee may know

and Tollyne
tells
him

“thou ne durst for thy berde
224 abyid⁶ the wind of my⁷ swerde,
by ought *that* I can see!”
then said *that* dwarffe in *that* stond,
“dead men *that* lyen on the ground,

to go and
suck his
mammy.

228 of thee affrayd may bee;
but betweene earnest & game,
I counsell thee goe souke⁸ thy dame,
& winne there the degree.”

Arthur says
“By God
you shall
have nobody
else.”

232 the King answered anon-right,
and said, “thou gettest noe other Knight,
by god *that* sitteth in Trinytye!

¹ lered, i.e. learned. see Ch. Gl.—P.

² Where—have been slaw, Qu.—P.

³ i.e. either. So they still speak in Shropshire.—P. Or is the contraction of *other*.—F.

⁴ The Maid.—P.

⁵ snel, i.e. presently, immediately.

see Gl. ad Ch.—P. Al soe is alsoe i MS.—F.

⁶ abyde.—P.

⁷ perhaps any: or perhaps she taunt him, as not a Match for a Woman.—P.

⁸ souke, i.e. suck, Chauc.—P.

If thou thinke he bee not wight,
 236 Goo¹ and gett thee another Knight [page 221]
that is of more power."

the maid ffor ire still did thinke,²
 shee wold neither eate nor d[r]inke
 240 ffor all *that* there were;
 shee sate still, without ffable,
 till they had vncovered the table,
 she and the dwarffe in ffere.

Hellen gets
 angry.
 won't eat or
 drink
 anything,

244 King Arthur in *that* stond
 comanded of the table round,
 4 knights in ffere,

nor will the
 dwarf.
 Arthur
 orders

of the best *that* might be found
 243 in armes hole³ & sound,
 to arme *that* child ffull right;
 & said "through the might o Christ
that in ffome⁴ Iordan was baptiste,

his four best
 knights to

252 he shold doe *that* he hight,⁵
 & become a Champyon
 to the Lady of Sinadon,
 & ffell her ffloemen in flight."

as he'll do
 what he
 says,
 and be the
 Lady of
 Sinadone's
 champion.

256 to arme him they were ffaine,⁶
 Sir Percinall & Sir Gawaine,
 & arrayed him like a knight;

Lybius is
 armed by
 Percival,
 Gawaine,

the 3^d was Sir Agrauaine,⁷
 260 & the 4th was Sir Ewaine,⁸

Agravaïne,
 and Ewaine;

¹ The M^{ss} curl to the G is like u. — F.

² The French Romance makes her
 see the court at once in disgust, and
 follow after her and overtake her,
 10. 11. — F.

³ u. 11. — P.

⁴ u. 12. — P.

⁵ u. 13. — P.

⁶ u. 14. — P.

⁷ u. 15. — P.

⁸ u. 16. — P.

⁹ u. 17. — P.

a bad opinion of his mother: "'A,' sayd
 syr Uwayn, 'men saith that Merlyn was
 begoten of a deuylle, but I may saye an
 erthely deuylle bare me.'" This was
 when he stopt "my lady" his "moder"
 from killing "the kyng" Vryens, his
 "fader, slepyng in his bed." (Cotton's
Malour p. 107. The Cotton MS has:
 The byrth was syr Eweyn. [Oweyn,
 below]

The fforble was syr agrasfrayn.

No saye be Frensch tale. — F.

- in clai in
silke,
264 them right ffor to behold.
they cast on him right good silke,
a sercote as white as any ¹ milke
that was worth 20, of golde ;
- and has a
hauberk.
268 alsoe an hawberke ffaire & bright,
which was ffull richelye dight
with nayles good and ffine.
- Gawaine
268 Sir Gawaine, his owne ffather,
hange about his necke there
gives him a
shield
and helm.
272 a sheeld with a griffon,²
& a helme *that was ffull rich,*
in all the Land there was none such.
- Percival puts
on his
crown ;
Agravaïne
brings him
a spear,
276 Sir Perciuall sett on his crowne,
Sir Agrauaine brought him a speare
that was good euery where
& of a ffell ffashion.
- and Ewaine
a steed.
280 Sir Ewaine brought him a steede
that was good in enery neede,
& as ffeirce as any Lyon.³
- Lybius
mounts,
280 Sir Lybyus on his steede gan springe,
& rode fforth vnto the King,
asks
& said, “ Lord of renowne !
- Arthur's
blessing ;
284 “ giue me your blessinge
without any Letting !
my will is fforth me to wend.”
- Arthur
gives it him,
288 the King his hand vpp did lifft,
& his blessing to him gaue right
as a Knight curteour⁴ & hende,
and hopes
God
& said, “ god *that* is of might,
& his mother Marry bright,

¹ One stroke too few in the MS.—F.² griffyne, qu.—P.³ The French Romance only makes
Gawain order Lybius's armour to bebrought, and Gawain give him a squ
“Robers: moult esteit sages et aper
p. 11.—F.⁴ ?for curteous.—F.

that is flowre of all women,
 292 gine thee gracce ffor to gone
 ffor to gott the ouerhand of thy sone,
 & speed thee in thy iourney! Amen! "

will grant
 him grace to
 conquer his
 foes.

[The Second Part.]

296 Sir Lybins now rideth on his way,
 & soe did *that* faire may,
 the dwarffe alsoe rode them beside,
 till itt befell vpon the 3^d day
 2^d parte. vpon the Knight all the way
 300 fast they gan to chide,
 & said, "Lorell¹ and Caitine!
 tho thou were such fine,
 Lost is all thy pride!
 304 This way keepeth a Knight
 that with euery man will fight,
 his name springeth wyde;

Lybins
 starts with
 Helen and
 the dwarf.

They begin

abusing him,

and say that
 a knight
 near,

"his name is William de la Braunche,²
 308 his warres may noe man staunche,³
 he is a warryour of great pride;
 Both through hart & hanch
 swithe⁴ hee will thee launche,
 312 all *that* to him rides."⁵
 then said Sir Lybins,
 "I will not lett this nor thus
 to play with him a flitt!
 316 ffor any thing *that* may betide,
 I will against him ryde
 to looke if *that* he can sitt! "

Sir William
 de la
 Braunche,

[page 327]

will even
 spear him
 through.

Lybins says

whatever
 happens he'll
 ride at him.

¹ Low l base fellow, Homo perditus. (leaf 45, col. 1) Cotton MS. B. 1.
² stop, stay, resist. P.
³ William Celebraunche (leaf 44 b.)
⁴ soon. P.
⁵ and all *that*—ride, qu. — P.
 308 and wylliam celebraunche, l. 342.

thé rode on then all 3 :

320 vpon a ffaire Causye.

Near the
Adventurous
Chapel
they see a
knight
on the
Bridge of
Peril,

beside the aduenturous chappell ¹

a knight anon they can see

with armes bright of blee,

324 vpon the bridge ² of perrill.

he bare a sheeld all of greene

with 3 Lyons of gold sheene,

right rich and precyous.

well armed.

328 well armed ³ was *that Knight*

as he shold goe to ffight,

as itt was his vse.⁴

The knight
tells Lybius

when he saw Sir Lybius with sight,

332 anon he went to him arright,

& said to him there,

he must
fight or
leave his
harnesse
there.

“ who passeth here by day or night,
certes ⁵ with me must ffight,

336 or leaue his harnesse here.”

Lybius

then answered Sir Libyus

begs leave to
pass.

& said, “ ffor the loue of Iesus

lett vs passe now here !

340 wee be ffarr ffroe our ffreind,

& haue ffarr ffor to wend,

I and this mayden in fere.⁶ ”

Sir William
refuses, and
says

Sir William answered thee

344 & said, “ thou shalt not scape soe !

soe god giue me good rest,

he must
fight him.

thow & I will, or wee goe,

deale stroakes betweene vs tow

348 a litle here by west.”

¹ Ryght to chapell Auntours.—Lambeth MS. Be a castelle aunterous.—C.

² Fr. *le Gué Périlleux*.—F. Poynt perylous.—Lambeth MS. vale perylous.—C.

³ armed in the MS.—F.

⁴ The French adds, p. 13, l. 330—3
Maint chevalier l'ont trouvé dur
Que il avoit ocis al gué;
Moult étoit plains de cruauté,
BLIOBLIÉRIE avoit non.

⁵ certes.—P.

⁶ together.—

- Sir Libyus sayd, "now I see
that itt will none other bee;
 goe fforth and doe thy best;
 352 take thy course with thy shaft
 if thou can¹ well thy craft,
 for I ame here all prest.²"
- then noe longer they wold abyde,
 356 but the one to the other gan ryde
 with greatt randaun.³
 Sir Libyus there in⁴ that tyde
 smote Sir william on his side
 360 with a speare felon⁵;
 but Sir william sate soe ffast
that his stirroppe all to-brast,
 he leaned on his arsowne;
 364 Sir Lybius made him stoupe,
 he smote him over the horse croupe
 in the ffeeld a-downe;
 his horsse ran ffrom him away.
 368 Sir william not long lay,
 but start anon vpright,
 and said, "Sir, by my-in flay,
 neuer beffore this day
 372 I ffound none soe wight!
 now is my horsse gone away!
 flight on [foot],⁶ I thee pray,
 as thou art a Knight worthye."
 376 then sayd Sir Lybius,
 "by the leane of Sweete Iesus
 therto ffull ready I am.⁷"
- Lybius says
 Charge
 away!
 They
 charge;
 Lybius hits
 Sir William
 on the side,
 drives him
 over his
 saddle-back,
 and grounds
 him.
 Sir William
 starts up
 and asks
 Lybius to
 fight on foot.

¹ can. — P.² I am ready. — P.³ A p. G. Doug. randaun. The swift⁴ Flight or Motion of any thing.⁵ felon. — P. G. D. — P.⁶ MS. therein. — F.⁵ fel, felon, felon, wicked, also cruel,
 felon. — G. L. Chauc. — P.⁶ on [foot] I &c. — P. a fote. — C.
 on fote — Lam.⁷ am I. — P.

They do so

then together they went as tyte,¹
 380 & with their swords they gan smite;
 they fought wonderous Longe;
 stroakes together they lett flinge

[re

all the fire
that from
their helmes

that they flyer out gan springe
 384 ffrom of their helmes strong.

Sir William

but Sir william de² la braunche
 to Sir Lybius gan he launche,

came off a
corner of
Lybius's
shield.

& smote on his sheild soe ffast
 388 that one cantell³ ffell to the ground;
 & Sir Lybius att that sonde⁴
 in his hart was agast.

Lybius

then Sir Lybius with all his might
 392 defended him anon-right,

came off the
crest and
crest of Sir
William's
helme.

was⁵ warryour wight & slye;
 coyse⁶ & crest downe right,
 he made to fly with great might,
 396 of Sir Williams helme on hye;
 & with the point of his sword

and his
hand.

he cut of Sir williams berd,
 and touched him ffull nye.

Sir William's
sword breaks
in two;

400 Sir William smote Sir Lybius thoe
 as that his sword brast in tow
 that many men might see with eye.

he prays for
his life.

then Sir William began to crye
 404 & sayd, "ffor the Loue of Marrye,
 on line let mee weelde!
 itt were great villanye
 ffor to make a Knight dye
 408 weponlesse in the feeld."

¹ quickly.—F.² MS. do.—F.³ cantle, a Piece, a part. GL. Ch.—P.⁴ Perhaps stounde, time, moment,
space.—P. Sonde is message.—F.⁵ as, qu.—P. as.—C. and L.⁶ coif-de-fer, the hood of mail worn by
knights in the twelfth century. Fair-holt. The second seal of Henry
presents him without a helmet, the
of mail being drawn over a steel
called a coif-de-fer in contradistinction
to the chapelle-de-fer worn over the
Planché, i. 94.—F.⁷ That his, &c.—P.⁸ As men, &c.—P.

- then spake Sir Lybins
 & sayd, "by the leane of Iesus!
 of life gettest thou no space¹
- 412 but if thou wilt sweare anon,
 or thou out of the ffeild gone,
 here before my fface,
- "& on knees kneele downe,
 416 & swere by my sword browne
that thou shalt to Arthur wend,
 & say, 'Lord of great renowne!
 I am in battell ouerthrowne;
 420 a knight me hither doth send
that men cleped thus,
 Sir Lybins Disconius,
 vnknownen knight and hend.'"
- 424 Sir william mett² him on his knee;
 & the othe there made hee,
 & fforward gan he wend.
- thus departed all the rout.
- 428 Sir william to Arthurs court
 he tooke the ready way;³
 a sorry case there gan ffall:
 3 knights⁴ proude and tall
- 432 Sir william mett *that day;*
 the 3 Knights all in ffire
 where his cmes⁵ sonnes deere,
 stout they were and gay.

Lybins
grants it
him

on condition

that he
swears to go
to Arthur

and say that
Lybins sends
him.

Sir William
swears,

and starts
for Arthur's
court.

His three
cousins
meet him,

¹ For the next stanza and a half, the French has, p. 18:

"Eno a la cort Artu le roi,
 A lui en irés de par moi."

² ? met? -- F.

³ The French Romaner sends him home & untied, puts him to bed, and there he sees the three knights.-- F.

⁴ The French makes them only his

"compaignons," and him their "signor." Their names are:

Elius li blans, sires des Aies,
 Et li bons chevaliers de Graies
 Et Willaume de Salebrant.

⁵ cme, Uncle. See Jun. cme. See Gl. ad Chauc. &c. -- P. A. Sax. cdm, uncle.-- F.

- 436 when they saw Sir william bleed,
& alway hanged downe his head,
they rode to him with great array,
- and ask him
who has
wounded
him.
- & said, " Cozen will !
- 440 who hath done to you this shame ?
& why bledest thou soe long ? "
- hee said, " Sirs, by St. Iame !
one *that* is not to blame ;
- 444 a stout *Knight* & a stronge—
Sir Lybius disconius hee hight—
to ffell his enemyes in flight ;
he is not ffarr to Learne ;
- " Sir Lybius
Disconius,
- 448 a dwarfe rydeth with him in fere
as he was his Squier ;
they ride away ffull yarne.¹
- and he has
made me
swear
- 452 " but one thing grecueth me sore,
that he hath made me sweare
on his sord soe bright,
that I shold neuer more,
till I come to King Arthur,
- not to stop
till I get to
Arthur's
court,
- 456 Stint by day nor night ;
and alsoe to him I ame yeelde
as ouercome into the ffeelde
by power of his might ;
- and never to
bear arms
against
him."
- 460 nor against him ffor to beare
neither sheeld nor speare ;
thus I haue him hight."
- His consins
promise to
avenge him:
- then said the *Knights* 3 :
- 464 " well auenged shalt thou bee
certes without ffayle !
ffor hee one against vs 3,
hee is not worthe a fflee
- Lybius isn't
worth a flea;
- 468 ffor to hold battell ² !

[page

¹ yerne, inter al. nimble, Ch. Gl.—P.² battayle.—P.

goe forth & keepe thine othe
though thou be neuer soe wroth;
wee will him assayle.

472 or he this florrest passe,
wee will his armour vnlace,
tho itt were double maile."

they'll anon
unlace his
armour.

theroff wist nothing *that* wight
476 Sir Lybius, *that* gentle Knight,
but rode a well good pace;
he & that maiden bright
made together *that* night

Lybius
rides on
with Helen.

480 game & great solace.
shee cryed him mercye
for shee had spoken him villanye;
shee prayed him to forgiue her *that* tyde;
484 the dwarffe was their squier,
& serued them both in fiere
off all *that* they had need.

She begs his
pardon for
having
abused him.

on the morrow when itt was day,
488 forth the rode on their way
towards Sinadowne.

Next day

then they say¹ in their way
3 Knights stout and gay
492 came ryding from Caerleon;
to him they sayd anon-right,²
"Traitor, turne againe and flight!
thou shalt lose thy renoune!

the three
cruelle
most l. y. lous,
and call on
him to fight.

496 & *that* maide faire & bright,
wee will her lead att night
herby vnto a towne."

¹ P. ? Perhaps the MS. has a
verb before the y, or an e after it. F.
² The French puts the fight with these

three knights (p. 36) after that with the
two giants (p. 23). F.

Lybius is
 ready, 500 Sir Lybius to them gan crye,
 " ffor to ffight I am all readye
 against you all in-same.¹ "
 a² prince proude of pride,
 charges he rode against them *that* tyde
 504 with mirth sport and game.
 the eldest, the Eldest brother then beere
 to Sir Lybius with a Spere,
 Sir Baner, Sir Baner was his name.³
 508 Sir Lybius rode att him anon
 and breaks his thigh in
 two. & brake in tow his thigh bone,
 & lett him Lye there lame.⁴
 the Knight mercy gan crye
 512 when Sir Lybius certainly
 had smitten him downe.
 Dwarf
 Teddelyne
 rides Baner's
 horse the dwarffe *that* hight Teodline
 tooke his horsse by the raine,
 516 he lept into the arsoone⁵;
 he rode anon with that
 to Hellen, vnto the mayd where shee sate
 soe ffayre of ffashyon.
 and she says 520 then laughed *that* Maiden bright,
 Lybius is a
 good
 champion. & said, " fforsssooth this young Knight
 is a ffull good Champyon! ".

¹ i. e. all together; it seems a contraction of the Fr. *ensemble*. See G.D. Gl. *alsame*, sub. verb, same.—P.

² As, q.—Pencil note.

³ Willaumes vint à lui premiers, l. 1052, p. 38. The French Rom. remarks on the knights attacking singly, in the good old times, as contrasted with the cowardice of the then modern ones:

Et à cel tens, costume estoit
 Que quant i hom se combatoit,
 N'avait garde que de celui
 Qui faisoit la bataille à lui.
 Or va li tens en febloiant
 Et cis usages decaans,
 Que XX et V en prennent un!
 Cis affaires est si commun.

Que tuit le tient desormès;
 La force fait le plus adies,
 Tos est mués en autre guise,
 Mais dont estoit fois et francise,
 Pitiés, proesse et cortoisie,
 Et largesse sans vilonnie.
 Or fait cascuns tot son pooir,
 Tos entendent au decevoir. (p. 3)

⁴ The French makes Lybius Willaume (or Sir Baner):
 Mort le trebuce del cheval.
 Il ne li fera huimais mal! (p. 4)
 Then Helin de Graies attacks Ly
 and gets his right arm broken.—F.

⁵ Fr. Arçon, a *saddle bow*, Per M *Saddle*.—P.

- ¹ the 2^d brother, he beheld
 524 how is brother lay in the ffeild
 & had lost strenght & might ;
 he smote Sir Lybius in *that* tyde
 on the sheeld with much pride,
 528 with his speare ffull right.
 Sir Lybius away gan beare [page 325]
 with his good speare
 the helme of *that* knight.
 532 the youngest brother ² then gan ride,
 & hitt Sir Lybius in *that* tyde
 as a man of much might,

 & said to him then anon,
 536 "Sir, thou art by St. Iohn
 a ffell Champyowne ;
 by god *that* sitteth in trinitye,
 ffight I will with thee,
 540 I hope to beare thee downe." ¹
 as warryour out of witt,
 on Sir Lybius then hee hitt
 with a ffell ffauchyon ;
 544 soe stifflye his stroakes hee sett,
that through helme ³ & basenett ⁴
 he carued Sir Lybius crowne.
- Sir Lybius was served in *that* stead
 548 when hee ffelled ⁵ on his head
 that the sword had drawen blood ;

The second
cousincharges
Lybius.Lybius
unhelms
him.The third
cousinsays he
shouldlike to fight
Lybius,and cuts
throughhis helm and
bascinet
into his
head.

Lybius

¹ be myddelle broþer com 3erne
 Vp-on a stede sterne
 Egge as lyoun.
 Hym þoʒte hys body wolde berne
 But he myȝt al so 3erne
 Felle lybeaus a-doun.—C.
 Sir Gramadone, the French calls
 1, l. 1122, p. 40.—F.
 helmet or head-piece, Fr. D^e Galea.

⁴ Bascinet, a light helmet, shaped
 like a skull-cap, worn with or without a
 moveable front. *Fairholt*.—F.

⁵ felt.—P. The Lambeth MS. reads :
 Tho wax Lybeous a-greued
 When he felt on his hed.
 The Cotton has :
 Tho was ly-beaus agreeede
 Whan he felde on hedde.—F.

waves his
sword,

about his head the sword he waned,—
all *that* hee hitt, fforsoothe hee cleened,

552 as warryour wight and good ;—

Sir Lybius said swithe thoe,

“ one to ffight against 2

is nothing good.”

556 ffast they hewed then on him

with stroakes great and grim ;

against ¹ them he stifflye stood,

says two
against one
isn't fair
(the second
cousin
having
joined in
again ?),

and cuts off
the second
cousin's
right arm.

² & through gods grace

560 he smote the eldest in *that* place

vpon the right arme thoe ;

hee hitt him soe in *that* place,—

to see itt was a wonderous case,—

564 his right arme ffell him ffroe.³

the youngest saw *that* sight.

& thought hee had noe might

to ffight against his ffoe ;

The third
cousin

yields to
Lybius,

568 to Sir Lybius hee did vp-yeeld

his good Speare & sheeld ;

and cries
for mercy.

mercy he cryed him thoe.³

Lybius
grants it

anon Sir Lybius said, “ nay,

572 thou shalt not passe this away—

by him *that* bought mankind—

but thou & thy brethren twayne

plight your trothes without Layine

on condition
that he and
his two
brothers
go to Arthur,

576 *that* yee will to King Arthur wende,

& say, ‘ Lord of great renowne !

in battaill wee be ouercome ;

¹ 'gainst.—P.

²⁻³ The Cotton text omits these lines, and in the next ones makes both brothers yield to Lybius.—F.

³ The French makes the battle with

the third knight last all night til day ; then the horse of Sir Gramado Aies slips and falls, Lybius seiz prostrate rider, and he is obliq yield, p. 41-2.—F.

- a Knight vs hither hath send
 580 ffor to yeeld thee tower & towne,
 & to bee att thy bandowne ¹
 euermore withouten end.'
- and give up
 their all to
 him.
- " & but if you will doe soe,
 584 certes I will you sloe
 as I am true Knight."
 anon they sware to him thoe ;
 that they wold to Arthur goe,
 588 their trothes anon thé plight.
 Sir Lybius & that ffaire May
 rode fforth on the way
 thither as they had hight ;
 592 till itt befell on the 3^d day
 thé fell together in game & pley,
 hee and *that* Maiden bright.
- They swear
 to do this,
- and Lybius
 rides on with
 Hellen.
- On the third
 day
- they rode fforthe on west
 596 into a wyde fforrest,
 & might come to noe towne ;
 thé ne wist what way best,
 ffor there they must needs rest,
 600 & there they light a-downe.
 amonge the greene eues ²
 they made a lodge with bower & leaues,
 with swords bright and browne.
- they are
 benighted in
 a forest
- and camp
 out.
- 604 Sir Lybius & that maiden bright [page 326]
 dwelled there all night,³
 that was soe ffaire of ffashyon.

Fr. bandon, "A son bandon," i. e. at
 will and Pleasure. Gl. G. Doug.—P.
 eaves. Metaph. from a house build-
 —P.
 The French picture is prettier:

Li Desconnéus se dormoit
 Sur l'erbe fresce ù reposoit ;
 Dalés lui gist la damoisèle,
 Deseur son brac gist la pucèle ;
 Li uns dalés l'autre dormoit,
 Li lousignols sor els cantoit. (p. 23.)

The swart
dwarf waken.

610 then the dwarffe began to wake,
for noe thercas shold take
away their horses with guile;
then for feare he began to quake;
611 a great flyer hee saw make
from them but a mile.

was a great
fox.

waken
Lybans,
and saye
they must be
off.

“ arise,” he said, “ worthy Knight!
to horsse that wee were dight
for doubt of more perill!
612 certes I heare a great host¹;
aloue I smell a savor of rost,
by god & by S^t Gyle!”

as he would
trust none.

[The Third Part.]

Lybans

620

Sir Lybans was stout & gay,
& leape vpon his palfrey,
& tooke his sheeld & speare
621 & rode forth full fast.

was off.

3^d part.

and thus
two
grants.

624

2 grants hee found at Last,
[that]² strong & stout were.

The one was blacke as any sole,³
the other as red as fyerye cole,
& foule bothe they were.

a blacke man
drinking a
mud by the
barme.

628

the blacke Gyant held in his⁴ arme
a faire mayd by the barme,⁵
bright as rose on bryar⁶:

¹ burst. report. like the discharge of a gun: It is still called *host* in Shropsh.—F.

² Who.—P.

³ A.S. *swil*. soil. *flith*. mire. dirt. Bosworth. Fr. *saillier*. to soyle. *slumie*. dirty. *smutted*. berry. *begrimed*. Cocker. The Cotton stanza is:

but on was Red & loflyche.

And but ofter swart as pyche.

Gysly boke of chere.

but on heide yn hys barme

A mayde y-ciepte yn hys arme.

As bryd as bloke on brere.—F.

⁴ *has* in the MS. with a *do*. The French is:

Car uns gians moult la pressoit

A force baisier le voloit.

Mais cele ne l'pooit souffrir.

Mais se voloit laisser morir.

⁵ Sinus. gremium.—P. A.S. *the womb*. *lap*. bosom. Bosworth A mayde i-clypped in his barme.—

⁶ *brere*, so in Chauc.—P. By one of the words entered under a Levin's Manipulus or Rhyming Dictionary, p. 209, col. 1. ed. 1867.—F.

- the red Gyant ffull yarne
 632 swythe about can turne
 a wild bore on a spitt ;
 ffaire the ffyer gan berne.
 the maid cryed ffull yerne,
 636 for men shold itt witt ;
 shee said, "alas & euer away
 that euer I abode this day
 with 2 devills for to sitt !
 640 helpe, Mary *that* is soe mild,
 for the lone of the¹ child,
 that I be not fforgett ! "
- Sir Lybius said, "by S^t Iame !
 644 ffor² to bring *that* maid ffrom shame
 itt were ffull great price ;
 but ffor to fight with both in shame³
 it is no childs game,
 648 they be soe grim and grise.⁴ "
 he tooke his course with his shaft
 as a man *that* cold his crafft,
 & he rode by right assise :
 652 the blacke he smote all soe smart
 through the liuer, long⁵ & hart
 that he might neuer rise.
- then fled *that* maiden sheene,
 656 & thanked⁶ Marye, heauens queene,
 that succour had her sent.
 then came mayd Ellen
 & the dwarffe by-dene,⁷
 660 & by the hand her hent,
- a red one
 roasting a
 boar on a
 spit.
 The maid
 cries out
 for help.
 Lybius says
 it's no child's
 play to fight
 both giants,
 but he
 charges the
 black one,
 and runs
 him right
 through the
 heart.
 The maid
 flees ;
 Hellen takes
 her

¹ perhaps thy.—P.² for.—P. qu. MS. ffea.—F.³ in same, i. e. together, ensemble, Fr. P.⁴ id. ac grisly, horrid, horrible.—P.⁵ lung.—P.⁶ d added by Percy.—F.⁷ MS. "& by the dwarffe dene," but the tmesis must be a copier's mistake.—F. And the Dwarf by-dene.—P. Sche & here dwerk y-mene.—Cot.

into the
forest,

& went into the greaues,¹
& lodged them vnder the leaues
in a good entent ;

and she
prays for
Lybius's
safety.

664 & shee besought Iesus,
ffor to helpe Sir Lybius
that hee was not shent.

The red
giant
hits at
Lybius with
the boar,

the red Gyant smote thore²
668 att Sir Lybius with the bore
as a wolfe *that* were woode ;
his Dints he sett soe sore,

and knocks
his horse
down.

that Sir Lybius horsse therfore
672 downe to the ground yode.³
then Sir Lybius with ffeirce hart,
out of his saddle swythe he start
as spartle⁴ doth out of fyer ;

Lybius
fights with
his sword.

676 feir[c]ely as any Lyon
he ffought with his ffawchyon
to quitt the Gyant his hyer.

The giant
lays on
Lybius with
his spit,

⁵ the Gyants spitt sickerlye
680 was more then a cowle tree⁶
that he rosted on the bore ;
He laid on Sir Lybius ffast,
all the while the spitt did last,
684 euer more and more.

covers him
with boar's
grease,

the bore was soe hott then,
that on Sir Lybius the grease ran

¹ i.e. Groves, Bushes. So in Chauc.
—P.

² i.e. there, *metri gratiâ*. so in Chauc.
—P.

³ went.—P. The French makes Lybius
kill the other giant first :

Il . . fiert celui premieremant

Qui esforçoit la damoiséle.

Si la féru lès la mamiéle.

Le fer li fist el cuer serrer ;

Les ioils del cief li fist torbler ;

Mort le trebuce el feu ardant. (p. 27.)

The Cotton text (leaf 46 back, col. 2)

follows the French :

pe blake geaunt he smote sme

borgh the lyucre, longe, & he

but neuer he myzte aryse.—

⁴ sparkle.—P. sparkyll.—L
—C.

⁵ This stanza is not in C. or

⁶ ? Phillipps's *coul-staff*: "a
kind of Tub, or Vessel with two
be carry'd between two Person
Coul-staff." See Lambarde's I
lation, p. 367, and Strutt, ii. :
Halliwell, under *Cowlstaff*.—F.

right fast thore.¹

688 the gyant was stiffe & stronge,
15 ffoote he was Longe ;
hee smote Sir Lybius full sore.

and batters
him till

Euer still the gyant smote
692 att Sir Lybius, well I wott,
till the spitt brast in towe.
then as man *that* was wrath,
ffor a Trunchyon fforth he goth

the spit
breaks.
Then he gets
a truncheon,

696 to fight aga[i]nst his foe,
& with the End of *that* spitt
Sir Lybius sword² in 3 he hitt.
then was Sir Lybius wonderous woe.

and splits
Lybius's
shield with
it,

700 or he againe his staffe vp caught,
Sir Lybius a stroke him rought
that his right arme fell him ffoe.

but drops
his staff.
Lybius cuts
off his right
arm,

the Gyant fell to the ground,
704 & Sir Lybius in *that* stond
smote of his head thoe:
in a french booke itt is ffound.³
to the other he went in *that* stond,⁴

then his
head.

708 & serued him right soe.
he tooke vp the heads then
& bare them to *that* faire maiden
that he had woone in flight.

and gives
both heads
to the
maiden.

712 the maid was glad & blythe,
& thanked god often sithe
that euer he was made a Knight.

she

Sir Lybius said, "gentle dame,
716 tell me now what is your name

¹ There is nothing of this phrase in the French and Cotton texts. ² The French has not the passage.—P.

³ *Romans de Bauduin's* text has the cutting off of the right arm and makes Lybius split the giant's head to the teeth. P.

⁴ *stond*.—P.

- tells him
that her
father is
 an earl,
 Sir Arthore,
 and her
name is
Violet.
- & where *that* you were borne."
 "Sir," she said, "by S^t Iame,
 my ffather is of rich ffame,
 720 & dwelleth here beforne ;
 he is a Lord of much might,
 an Erle & a Noble Knight ;
 his name is S[ir] Arthore,
 724 & my name is Vylett,¹
that the Gyant had besett
 for the Castle ore.
- She was out
walking
- 728 "as I went on my demeaning"²
 to-night in the eueni[n]ge,
 none euill then I thought ;
 the gyant, with-out leasing,
 out of bush he gan spring,
 732 & to the ffyer me brought.
 of him I had beene shent,
 but *that* god me succour sent
that all this world hath wrought.
 736 Sir Knight ! god yeeld thee thy meed,
 ffor vs *that* on the roode did bleed,
 & with his blood vs bought ! "³
- They all ride
to
- without any more talking
 740 to their horsses they gan spring,³

¹ Vilett, Violette.—P. Vyolette.—Cot.
The French gives the name and story
differently :

. . . nommée sui Clarie . . .

Et Saigremors si est mes frère,

Li jaians me prist cés mon père.

En un vergier hui mais entrai

Et por moi déduire i alai.

Li jaians ert desous l'entrée,

Trova la porte desfremée ;

Pluec me prist, si m'enporta,

Ici son compaignon trova. (p. 32.)—F.

² probably *going a walking*, demener,

the same as promener, qu.—P.

Yesterday yn the mornynge

Y wente on my playnge.

Cot. MS. in R

³ The French text makes th
have a grand feast on the grass
giants' food. Squire *Roberts* distir
himself as cook, seneschal, butl
shal, chamberlain, and squire, he
the dwarf, p. 32–34. *Roberts* is
useful personage all through the
story.—F.

& rode fforth all in-same,
 & told the Erle in euery thing ¹
 how he wan in ffighting
 744 his Daughter ffrom woe & shame.
 then were these heads sent
 vnto King Arthur ffor a present
 with much mirth & game,
 748 *that* in Arthurs court arose
 of Sir Lybius great Losse ²
 & a right good name.

Sir
 Arthore's,

and Lybius
 sends the
 giants' heads
 to King
 Arthur.

³ the Erle, ffor *that* good deede,
 752 gaue Sir Lybius for his meede
 sheeld and armour bright,
 & alsoe a noble steede
that was good in euerye need,
 756 in tranayle & in ffight.

Sir Arthore
 gives Lybius

armour

and a noble
 steed.

[The Fourth Part.]

now Sir Lybius and his May
 tooke their leaue, & rode their way
 thither as they had hight.⁴

Lybius rides
 on towards
 the Waste
 Land,

4^d parte. { 760 Then they saw in a parke [page 328]
 a Castle stiffe & starke,⁵
that was ffull maruelouslye dight;
 wrought itt was with lime & stone,—
 764 such a one saw he neuer none,—
 with towers stiffe & stout.

and sees a
 castle

tydynges.—Cot.
 e, praise.—F.

The Cotton text has an extra stanza
 in which Sir Arthore offers Lybius
 his daughter Vyolette to wife, but she
 has declined, leaf 47 b. MS., p. 30,
 . The French has neither of the
 s.—F.

by Ryde forþ alle þre

Toward þe fayre cyte,
 Kardeuyle fore soþ hyt hyt.—C.

Here follow in the French a page and
 a quarter of what M. Hippeau terms
 "Digression de l'Auteur: Il sera fidèle
 à celle qu'il ne peut encore nommer
s'amie, mais qu'il appelle *la moult aimée*."
 The next adventure with Sir Gefferon,
 or Part IV, is omitted.—F.

⁵ i. e. strong.—P.

which he
thinks very
strong.

Hellen tells
him that a
brave knight
lives there :

whoever
brings him
a lady

fairer than
his own,
gets a white
falcon ;

but if she is
not so fair,
Sir Gefferon

cuts his head
off.

Lybius
declares he'll
fight
Gefferon,

and produce
Hellen as
his love.

Sir Lybius said, "soe haue I blis!
worthy dwelling here itt is

768 to them *that* stood in doubt!"
then laughed *that* Maiden bright,
& sayd, "here dwelleth a *Knight*,
the best *that* here is about.

772 who-soe will with him ffight,—
be he Baron or be he knight,—
he maketh him to loute.

"soe well he loueth his Leman
776 *that* is soe ffaire a woman,
& a worthy in weede,

who-soe bringeth a ffairer then,
a ioly ffawcon as white as swan
780 he shall haue to his meede.

& if shee be not soe bright,
with Sir Gefferon he must ffight;
& if he may not speed,

784 ¹ his [head] shall be ffrom him take,
& sett full hye vpon a stake,
trulye withouten dread.

"the sooth you may see and heere;
788 there is on euery corner²
a head or tow full right."

Sir Lybius sayd al soe soone,
"by god & by S^t Iohn!
792 with Sir Gefferon will I ffight,
& challenge the Iolly ffawcon,
& say *that* I haue one in the towne,
a lemman al soe³ bright;

796 & if hee will her see,
then I will bring⁴ thee,
be itt day or by night."⁵

¹ his [head] shall.—P.

² Percy has added an *e* at the end.
—F.

³ MS. alsoe, and in line 790.—F. al

soe.—P

⁴ Only half the *n* in the MS.

⁵ by day or night, or *dele* by.

- the dwarffe sayd, "by Sweete Iesus !
 800 gentle Sir Lybyus ¹ Disconiya,
 thou putttest thee in great perill.
 Sir Giffon La fraudens, ²
 in fighting he hath an vse
 804 Knights flor to beguile."
 Sir Lybius answered and sware,
 & said, "therof I haue no care !
 by god & by S^t Gyle,
 808 I will see him in the fface
 or I passe out of this place,
 flor all his subtulle wile ! "
- without any more questyon
 812 the ³ dwelled still in the towne
 all night there in peace.
 on the morrow he made him readie
 flor to winne him the Masterye
 816 certes ⁴ withouten Lease.
 he armed him full sure
 in the sayd Armor
 that King Arthurs ⁵ was,
 820 & his horsse began he to stryde ;
 the dwarffe rod by his syde
 to that strong palace.
- Sir Giffon la fraudens
 824 rose vp, as itt was his vse,
 in the morrow tyde
 flor to honor sweete Iesus.
 then he was ware of Sir Lybius ;
 828 as a prince of much pryde

The dwarf
warns him

of Gefferon's
wile.

Lybius
doesn't care
for 'em ; he
will fight.

Next day
Lybius

arms

and rides to

Gefferon's
castle.

Gefferon

sees him.

There is a stroke too many after the
 1. MS. F.
 2. Giffon la fraudens. - Cot.
 3. Lybyus F.

4 MS. certes. - F.
 5 ori autoren. Cot., which must be
 right. - F. Sir Arthores, or Knight Ar-
 thores. - P.

ffast he rode into *that* place.

Sir Ieffron maruailed att *that* case,
& loud to him did crye

832 with voyce loud and shrill :

and asks why
he comes.

“ comest thou ffor good or ill ?
tell me now on hye.”

Sir Lybius said al soe ¹ tyte,

836 “ certes I haue greate delight
with thee ffor to ffight !

“ To fight
you,” says
Lybius ;

thou hast [said] great despite ; ²

“ you have
no such fair
maiden as I
have ;

thou hast a Leman, ³ none so whyte

840 by day or by night

as I haue one in the towne,

ffairer of ffashyon

for to see with sight.

give me
your falcon
for King
Arthur.

844 therfore thy lolly ffawcowne,
to King Arthur with the crowne
bring I will by right.”

Sir Geffron said al soe right,

848 “ where shall wee see *that* sight,
whether the ffairer bee ? ”

My lady is in
Cardigan ;

Sir Lybius said, “ wee will ffull right
in Cardigan see *that* sight, ⁴

852 there all men may itt see ;

in the middes of *that* Markett,

there shall they both be sett

to looke on them soe ffree ⁵ ;

we'll set
yours and
mine in the
market,
and see
which is
the fairer.”

856 & if my Leman be browne,

ffor thy lolly ffawcowne

iust I will with thee.”

¹ MS. alsoe, and in l. 847.—F.

² Thou seyste a foule dispite.—Lam.

³ Lennan in the MS.—F.

⁴ In Cardenyle cyte ry;t.—C.

⁵ bothe bond & fre.—Cot.

Sir Geffron said alsoe then,
 860 "I wold ffaine as any man
 to-day att yondertyde.¹
 all this I grant thee well,
 & out of this Castell
 864 to Cardigan ² I will ryde."
 their gloues were there vp yold,
 that fforward ³ to hold,
 as princes proud in pryde.
 868 Sir Lybins wold no longer blinn,⁴
 but rode againe to his inn
 & wold no longer abydo.

Geffron
agrees.

Lybins rides
back, and

he said to maid Ellen
 872 that was soe bright & sheene,
 "looke thou make thee bowne!
 I thee say, by S^t Quintin,
 Sir Gefferons Leman I will winn:
 876 to-day shee will come to towne,
 in the midds of this cytye,
 that men may you see,
 & of you bothe the flashyon;
 880 & if thou be not soe bright,
 with Sir Geffron I shall flight
 to winne the lollye ffawcowne."

tells Helen
to get ready,

as she is to
be shown
against
Geffron's
love.

the dwarffe answered, "for-thy ⁵
 884 that thou dost a deed hardye ⁶
 ffor any man borne.
 thou wilt doe by no mans read

The dwarf
tells him it's
a fowhardy
business;

¹ yondertyde. - P. bys day at
the tyde. - C. This daye at ynder-
I.

Kerbol. Col. Carlyle. - Lam.

A. S. Concord, agreement. - F.

nam in the MS. - F.

for thy, therefore, according to Gl.

A. G. D. here it should seem to be

such - P. Col. omits this stanza

The Lambeth MS. has:

The Dwarf answerd and said,

"Thou dost a savage dede!

ffor any man borne

Thou wilt not do by Hede,

But faryet with the markl hede

As hede that will be lorne"

⁵ hardye, qu. P. MS. not clear V

- for thou fforest in thy child head
 888 as a man *that* wold be lorne!
 & therfore I thee pray
 to wend fforth on thy way,
 & come not him beforne.”
- he'd better
go on his
way.
- Lybius won't
hear of this.
- 892 Sir Lybius said, “*that* were great shame!
 I had leuer with great grame¹
 with wild horsses to be torne.”
- Hellen
decks herself
- 896 maid Ellen, ffaire and free,
 made hast sickerlye
 her ffor to attyre
 in Keicheys² *that* were white,
 for to doe all his delight,
 900 with good³ gold wyer.
 a vyolett mantle, the sooth to say,
 ffurred well with gryse gay,⁴
 shee cast about her Lyer⁵;
- with a violet
mantle,
- and precious
stones,
- 904 the stones shee had about her mold
 were precyous & sett with gold,⁶
 the best in *that* shire.
- and rides on
a palfrey
- 908 Sir Lybius sett *that* ffaire May
 on⁷ a right good⁸ Palffrey,
 & rode fforth all three.
 euery man to other gan say,
 “heere cometh a ffaire May,
 912 And louelye ffor to see!”
- to Cardigan
market.
- into the Markett hee rode,
 & boldly there abode

[page

¹ i.e. grief, sorrow; vexation, anger; madness: trouble, affliction, Gl. ad Chauc.—P.

² Kercheffs, qu.—P. keuechers.—C. kerchevys.—L.

³ arayde wyth.—Cot.

⁴ Pelured with gryns & gray.—Cot.

⁵ swyre (neck).—Cot.

⁶ A sercle vp-on here molde, Of stones & of golde.—Cot.

Mold, the suture of the skull; 1 fashion, appearance.—Halliwell.

⁷ om, or ? one, in the MS.—F.

⁸ Vp-on a pomely.—Cot.

in the middes ¹ of *that* cite.

916 anon the saw Geffron come ryde,
& 2 squiers by his side,
& na more meanye ²:

To them
comes
Geffron,

he bare a sheelde of greene,
920 richelye itt was to be seene ³;
of gold was the bordure,
dight itt was with fflowres
& alsoe with rich colours,
924 like as itt ⁴ were an Emperour.
the ⁵ squiers did with him ryde;
the one bare by his side
3 shafts good & stoure,⁶
928 the other bare, his head vpon,
a gentle lolly ffawcon ⁷
that was laid to wager;

with two
squires

(one bearing
a falcon)

& after did a Lady ryde,
932 faire & bright, of Much pryde,
cladd in purple pall.
the people came ffarr & wyde
to see *that* Ladye in *that* tyde,⁸
936 how gentle ⁹ shee was and small;
her mantle was of purple fine,
well ffurred with good Armine,
itt was rich and royall;

and his fair
lady,

cladd in

purple,

940 a sercotte sett about her necke soe sweete
with dymond & with Margarett,
& many a rich Emerall;

her surcoat
set with
diamonds,
pearls,
and
emeralds;

¹ a. lles in the MS. F.

² vncolante P.

³ He bare þe sheelde of gowles,
off syluer thre whyte oules. C.

He bare the sheelde gowlys,
off syluer thre white oulys — L.

⁴ lles P.

⁵ two P.

⁶ Idem ac *sture*, *ingens*, *crassus*, Lye.
P.

⁷ I would read *ler-falcon*, see a. 37
[l. 977] below. P. *gerfalcone* C.

⁸ To se here *lak* & *cyde* Cot.
(which has many variations in the follow-
ing lines). F.

⁹ *forte*, *gimp*. — P.

- her hue
rose-red,
her hair
golden,

her brows
like silk,

her eyes
grey.

The lookers-
on

put two
chairs for
the ladies,

and decide
that
Gefferon's
is the fairer.

Hellen is
only fit to be
her laundry-
maid.

Lybius then
challenges
Gefferon to
fight.
- her colour was as the rose red ;
944 her haire *that* was on her head,
as gold wyer itt shone bright ;
her browes were al soe ¹ silke spread,
ffaire bent in lenght & bread ;
948 her nose was ffaire and right ;
her eyen gray as any glasse ;
milke white was her fface.
thé said *that* sawe *that* sight,
952 her body gentle and small,
'her beautye ffor to tell all,
noe man with tounge might.'

unto the Markett men gan bring
956 2 Chaires ffor to sitt in,
their bewtye ffor to descrye.
then said both old & younge,—
fforssooth without Leasing
960 betweene them was partye,—²
Geffrons Leman was ffaire & cleere
as euer was any rose on bryer,³
fforsooth without Lye.
964 Maid Ellen, the Messenger,
seemed to her but a Launderer ⁴
in her nurserye.

then said Sir Geffron la ffraudeus,⁵
968 " Sir Knight, by Sweet Iesus,
thy head thou hast fforlore ⁶ ! "
" nay ! " said Sir Lybius,
" *that* was neuer my vse !
972 iust I will therfore ;

¹ MS. alsoe.—F.² This Line in a Parenthesis.—P.³ brere.—P. There is no short stroke to the y in the MS.—F.⁴ i. e. Launderess, Laundress.—P.⁵ le fludous.—Cot.⁶ lost.—P. The Cotton MS. reads Syr lybeaus Desconus, bys hauk þou hast for-lore.

" & if thou beare me downe,
 take my head on thy ffawchyon,
 & home with thee itt lead ;
 976 & if I beare downe thee,
 the Ierffaucon shall goe with mee
 maugre thy head indeed.

" what needeth vs more to chyde ?
 980 but into the saddle let vs glyde,
 to prone our mastery."
 either smote on others sheeld the while
 with crownackles ¹ *that* were of steele,
 984 with great envye.
 then their speares brake assunder ;
 the dints ffared as the thunder
that cometh out of the skye.

They charge

and their
spears break.

988 trumpetta & tabours,
 herawdyes & good desoures,²
 Their stroakes flor to ³ descrye. (page 231)

Geffron then began to speake :

992 "bring me a spere *that* will not breke,
 a shaft with one crownall !
 ffor this young ffley ffreke
 sitteth in his saddle steke ⁴
 996 as stone in Castle wall.
 I shall make him to stoopo
 swithe ouer his saddle croope,
 & giue him a great ffall,
 1000 tho he were as wight a warryour
 as Alexander or Arthur,
 Sir Lancelott or Sir Percinall."

Geffron
calls for a
spear that
won't break.and he'll
soon unhorse
Lybina !

¹ crownalls — C.A. *Corneal*, the upper part of a jousting-lance, constructed to unhorse, but not to wound, a knight. *Parthia*, p. 426 (with a cut of one).

² This seems to be the same as *Crownall*, st. 40 [of MS., l. 993 here]. Both

seem to signify the heads of the spears. — P.

³ discours, tellers, narrators. — P.

⁴ gone. — C.A.

⁵ steke for stuck, *rhithmi gratia*. — P.

- then the *Knights* both tow
 They charge again. 1004 rode together swithe thoe
 with great ren[d]owne¹ :
 Sir Lybius smote Sir Geffron soe
 Geffron loses his shield. *that* his sheild ffell him ffroe
 1008 into the ffeeld againe.²
 then laughed all *that* was there,
 & said without more,
 Duke, Erle, or Barron,
 1012 *that* "thé saw neuer a *Knight*,
 ne noe man abide might
 a course of Sir Geffron."

 The third course, Geffron does nothing. another course gan thé ryde :
 1016 Sir Geffron was aggreened *that* tyde
 ffor hee might not speede.
 The fourth, he rode againe al soe³ tyte,
 & Sir Lybius he gan⁴ smite
 1020 as a doughtye man of deed.

 Lybius Sir Lybius smote him soe ffast
that Sir Geffron soone he cast
 him and his horsse a-downe ;
 1024 Sir Ieffrons backe bone he brake
 breaks Geffron's back, *that* the ffolkes hard itt cracke ;
 lost was his renowne.
 then they all said, lesse & more,
 1028 *that* Sir Geffrons had Lore
 and wins his falcon. the white Gerffawcon.⁵
 the people came Sir Lybius before,
 & went with him, lesse & more,
 1032 anon into the towne ;

¹ With welle greet Raundoun.—Cot.² MS. alsoe.—F.³ I would read *adowne*. see below, st. 45.—P. a-doun.—Cot. a-downe.—L.⁴ MS. gam.—F.⁵ Only half the *w* in the MS.—F.

- & Sir Geffron ffrom the ffeeld
 was borne home on his sheild
 with care and rueffull mone.
- 1036 the Gerffawcon sent was,
 by a knight *that* hight Chaudas,¹
 to bring to Arthur with the crowne ;
- & rote ² to him all *that* dead,³
- 1040 & with him he gan to leade
 the ffawcon *that* Sir Lybius wan.
 when the King had heard itt read,
 he said to his *knights* in *that* stead,
- 1044 “ Sir Lybius well warr can !
 he hath me sent with honor
that he hath done battells 4
 since *that* he began ;
- 1048 I will him send of my treasure,
 ffor to spend to his honor,
 as ffalleth ⁴ ffor such a man.”
- a 100¹¹ ready ⁵ prest
- 1052 of fflooryins to spend with the best,
 he sent to Cardigan towne.
 then Sir Lybius held a feast
that lasted 40 dayes att Least
- 1056 with Lords of renowne.⁶
 & att the 6: weeke end
 hee tooke his leaue, ffor to wend,
 of duke, Erle, and Barron.

Geffron is
 carried
 home.

The falcon
 is sent by
 Chaudas

to King
 Arthur,

who praises
 Lybius,

and sends
 him to
 Cardigan
 £100 of
 florins,
 with which
 Lybius
 makes a
 forty days'
 feast,

and then
 takes his
 leave.

There was one Chandos a herald,
 se book is preserved in Worcester
 ege Library, Oxon.—P.

He wrote, sic legerim.—P.

deed.—P.

fitteth, qu.—P.

ready, speedy.—P.

⁶ The Cotton text sends the falcon
 by a knyght that hyght Gludas, to King
 Arthur; and Arthur sends Lybius back
 a hundred pound of florins to Cardelof,
 where Lybius holds feast forty days.
 (MS. leaf 49, col. 2 ; ed. Ritson, p. 42).
 —F.

[The Fifth Part.]

[The Adventure of the Hound, and the Fight with Sir Otes de Lile.]

Lybius rides on	1060	{	Sir Lybius and his ffaire May
towards Sinadon.			rode fforth on their way
He hears a horn,	1064		towards Sinadon.
and the dwarf says it's			then as they rod in a throwe, ¹
	1068	{	hornes heard they lowd blowe,
			& hoinds ² of great game.
			the dwarffe said in <i>that</i> throwe, ³
			" <i>that</i> horne I well know
			many yeeres agone ;

Sir Otes de
Lile's.

"Thatt horne bloweth Sir Ortes de lile,
That serued ⁴ my Ladye a while
seemlye in her hall ;
1072 & when shce was taken with guile,
he fled from *that* perill
west into worrall.⁵"

[page 332]

Then they
see a
beautiful
hound

but as they rode talking,
1076 they saw a ratch ⁶ runinge
ouerthwart the way.
then said both old & young,
"ffrom the ffirst begining
1080 they saw neuer none soo gay."

¹ a short space, sed vid. infra, perhaps
in a row.—P. A.-S. *brah*, a space, time.
—F.

² hounds.—P.

³ a cast, a stroke. It. short space,
Chauc. Gl.—P.

⁴ seruede.—Cot.

⁵ Wyrhale.—Cot.

⁶ Ratches. Genus Canum: Braccones,
Lye. Jun.—P. A.-S. *raece*, a rach, a
setting dog? Lye, in Bosworth. ? a dog
hunting by scent.—F.

- hee was of all coulours
 that men may see on flowers
 betweene Midsummer & May.
- 1084 the Mayd sayd al soe¹ soone,
 "soe faire a ratch I neuer saw none,
 nor pleasanter to my pay²!"
- 1088 "wold to God *that* I him ought³!"
 Sir Lybius anon him caught,
 & gaue him to maid Elen.⁴
 they rode fforth all rightes,
 & told of fighting with Knights
 1092 ffor ladyes bright & sheene.
 they had rydden but a while,
 not the space of [a] Mile
 into *that* fforrest greene;
 1096 then they saw a hind sterke,⁵
 & 2 grayhounds *that* were like
 the ratch *that* I of meane.
- the hunted⁶ still vnder the Lind⁷
 1100 to see the course of *that* hind
 vnder the fforrest side.
 there beside dwelled *that* Knight
 that Sir Otes de lile hight,
 1104 a man of much pride;
 he was cladd all in Inde,⁸
 & fast pursued after the hind

of all sorts
 of colours.

Hellen
 wishes sh^e
 to hit.

So Lybius
 catches it
 and gives it
 her.

So as they

saw a stag
 followed by
 two grey-
 hounds,

and stop to
 watch her.

Sir Otes de
 Lile

¹ M^S. alone.—P.

² satisfaction, liking.—P.

³ would, power.—P.

⁴ The French text makes the hound
 stop with a thorn in its foot. Hellen
 takes it out, rides off with the dog, and
 a huntsman sees it under her cloak.
 She refuses to give it up to him or his
 master, and so Sir Otes, or *L'Orgueilleux*
de la Lande, rides off for his armour, and

lights Lybius.—F.

⁵ stout Hind.—P.

⁶ horede (stop).—Cot.

⁷ Properly a Teal or Lime tree, but
 in these ballads it seems to be used for
 Trees in general.—P.

⁸ i.e. azure or blue as used by Lydg.
 —black according to Sp. Gl. and Ch.
 —P.

- rides by on a
bay,
- 1108 vpon a bay distere ;
loude he gan his horne blow,
for the hunters shold itt know,
& know where he were.
- sees Lybius
and Hellen,
- 1112 as he rode by *that* woode right,
there he saw *that* younge Knight
& alsoe *that* faire May ;
they dwarffe rode by his side.
Sir Otes bade they shold abyde,
1116 they Ledd ¹ his ratch away :
“ffreinds,” he said, “why doe you soe ?
let my ratch ffrom you goe ;
good for you itt were.
- and
remonstrates
with them
for taking
his hound.
- 1120 I say to you without Lye,
this ratch has beene my
all out this 7 yeere.”
- Lybius says
he means to
keep it.
- 1124 Sir Lybius said anon tho,
“I tooke him with my hands 2,
& with me shall he abyde ;
I gaue him to this maid hend ²
that with me dothe wend
1128 riding by my side.”
then said Sir Otes de lile,
“thou putttest thee in great perill
to be slaine, if thou abide.”
- Sir Otes
warns him
to look out
for his life.
- 1132 Sir Lybius said in *that* while,
“I giue right nought of thy wile,
churle ! tho thou chyde.”
- Lybius calls
him a churl.
- Sir Otes
rebukes him ;
- 1136 then spake Sir Otes de lile,
& said, “thy words be vile !
churle was neuer my name !
I say to thee without ffayle,
the countesse of Carlile
1140 certes was my dame ;

¹ The last *d* has a tag to it.—F.² ntle, kind.—P.

- “ & if I were armed now
as well as art thou,
wee wold ffight in-same.
- 1144 or thou my ratch ffrom me reue,¹
we wold play, ere itt were eue,
a wonderous strong game.”
Sir Lybins said al soe ² prest,
1148 “goe fforth & doe thy best;
Thy ratch with mee shall wend.” [page 333]
they rode on right ³ west
througe a deepe fforrest,
1152 then as the dwarffe them kend.⁴
- Sir Otes de lile in *that* stower
rode home into his Tower,
& ffor his ffreinds sent,
1156 & told them anon-rights
how one of Arthurs *Knights*
shamely had him shent,
& had his rathe away Inome.⁵
1160 then thé sayd all and some,⁶
that “theese shall soone be tane;
& neuer home shall hee come
tho he were as grim a groome
1164 as euer was Sir Gawaine.”⁷
- they dight them to armes
with gleaues ⁸ and gysarmes,⁹
as they wold warr on take;
1168 Knights and squiers

if he were
armed, he
would fight
him.

Lybins says
“Do your
best,”

and rides on.

Sir Otes

tells his
friends

how badly
Lybins has
treated him.

They say
they'll soon
take Lybins.

They and
their friends
arm,

¹ bereave, take away.—P.
² alsoe, MS.—F.
³ *th* is crossed out between *t* and *w*.
—F.
⁴ taught, made known. Gl. Ch.—P.
⁵ y-nome, taken. Sax. *niman*, to take,
hinc *nim*. ⁶ Lye.—P.
⁶ sone in MS.—F.

⁷ þau; he were þo;tyere gome
Than Launcelot du lake.—Cot.
M. Hippeau prints “thogh tyer,” which
doesn't look much like “doughtier” at first.
MS. is clear, leaf 50, col. 2, l. 5.—F.
⁸ gleave, a sword, cutlace, Fr. *glaiue*.
—P. swerdes.—Cot.
⁹ gysarme, a halbert or Bill. Sk.—P.

- mount, leapt on their disteres
 ffor their Lords sake.
- vpon a hill trulye
- see Lybius, 1172 Sir Lybius they can espye,
 ryding a well good pace.
and say to him gan they loud crye,
they'll kill & said, "thou shalt dye
him. 1176 ffor thy great trespass ! "
- Lybius Sir Lybius againe beheld
 how ffull was the feild,
 for many people there was ;
- advices 1180 he said to Maid Ellen,
Hellen " ffor this ratch I weene
 to vs commeth a carefull case.
- to hide in " I rede *that* yee withdraw
the forest. 1184 yonder into the woods wawe,¹
 your heads for to hyde ;
 ffor here vpon this plaine,
He will tho I shold be slaine,
abide the 1188 the battell I will abyde."
battle. into the fforrest thé rode ;
Lybius's foes and Sir Lybius there abode
 of him what may betyde.
- fire at him 1192 then thé smote at him with crossebowes,
with bows with speare, & with bowes turkoys,²
and wound *that* made him wounds wyde.
him.
- He rides Sir Lybius with his horsse ran,
down men 1196 & bare downe horsse and man ;
and horses,

¹ wode schawe.—Cot. *wawe* is used in Chaucer for a *wave*, but that can hardly be the sense here.—P. ? *Waw*, wall. Jamieson.—F.

² i. e. longbowes. Fr. *Turquois*,

Turkish, such as the Turks use. G. G.D.—P. See Strutt, p. 66, ed. 1 —F.

With bowe and with arblaste
To hym they schote faste.—Cot.

- for nothing wold he spare.
 euery man said then
that hee was the ffeend Sathan like Satan,
 1200 *that wold mankind fforfare* ¹ ;
- for he *that* Sir Lybins raught,
 his death wound there he caught,
 & smote them downe by-deene.
 1204 but anon he was besett, but is beset
 as a fish in a nett,
 with groomes ² fell and keene ;
- for 12 Knights verelye by twelve
 1208 he saw come ryding redyllye knights
 in armes faire & bright ;
 all the day they had rest, who have
 for the thought in the fforrest waited for
 1212 to see Sir Lybins *that* Knight. him,
 in a sweate they were all 12,—
 one was the Lord himselve
 in they ³ ryme to read right :—
 1216 they smote att him all att once, and all
 for they thought to breake his bones attack him
 & fell him downe in flight. at once.
- fast together can the ding ;
 1220 & round they stroakes he gan flinge Lybins
 among them all in fere ;
 forsooth without Leasing
 the sparkells out gan springe
 1224 of sheeld and harnessse ⁴ cleere.
 Sir Lybins slew of them 3,
 & 4 away gan flee kills three
of them ;
four see.

where. perire. A.-S. *forfaran*.

¹ the.—P. There is nothing of this incident in the French.—F.

² Only half the n in the MS.—F.

- And wold not come him nere ;
- Sir Otes and
his four sons 1228 the Lord abode in *that* stoure,
& soe did his sonnes 4,
to sell their lues deere.
- strike at
Lybia. 1232 then they gaue ¹ stroakes rive,²
he one against them 5,
& ffought as they were wood,
nye downe they gan him bring ;
as the water of a Spring
His blood
flows, 1236 of him ran the bloode ;
his sword
breaks, his sword brake by the hilde ;
then was he neere spilt ;
he was ffull madd of moode.
- Sir Otes cuts
into his
head, 1240 the Lord a stroake on him sett
through helme and Basnett,
in the skull itt stoode.
- and he
swoons ; 1244 then in a swoone he lowted lowe ;
he leaned on his saddle bow
as a man *that* was nye slake ;
his 4 sonnes were all a bowne ³
ffor to perish ⁴ his Acton,⁵
1248 double Maile and plate ;
but soon
he revives, but as he gan to smart,
again he plucked vp ⁶ his hart,
as the Kinde ⁷ of his estate ;
- seizes his
axe, 1252 & soone he hent in his ffist
an axe *that* hanged on his sadle crest,
almost itt was too late.
- and kills
three horses. 1256 then he ffought as a Knight ;
their horsses ffell downe right,

¹ gan.—P.² rive, To thrust, stab, to rend, &c.
Gl. ad Ch.—P. ? rife, all about.—F.³ ready.—P.⁴ perce.—Cot. persyne.—Lam. MS.⁵ Fr. Hocqueton.—P.⁶ Vp he pulled.—Cot. (leaf .
col. 2.) He pulled vp.—Lam.⁷ Four strokes for *ix* in the 1

- he slew att stroakes 3.
 & when the Lord saw the fight,
 of his horsse a-downe gan light,¹
 1260 away hee ffast gan flee.
 Sir Lybius noe longer abode,
 but after him ffast he rode,
 & vnder a chest of tree²
 1264 there he had him killed ;
 but the Lord him yeelded
 att his will ffor to bee,
 & ffor to yeeld him his stent,³
 1268 treasure, Land, and rent,
 Castle, hall, & tower.
 Sir Lybius consented therto
 in⁴ fforward *that* he wold goe
 1272 vnto King Arthur,
 & say, " Lord of great renowne !
 in battell I am ouerthrowne ;
 & sent thee to honor."
 1276 the Lord granted theretill,
 ffor to doe all his will.
 they went home to his tower,
 & anon Maiden Ellen
 1280 with knights ffineteene
 was ffeitchd into the Castle.
 shee & the dwarffe by-deene
 told of his deeds Keene,
 1284 & how *that* itt befell
 that hee had presents⁵ 4
 sent vnto King Arthur,

Sir Otes
flees;

Lybius
catches him,

and Sir Otes
yields up
himself

and all his
lands and
goods,

and agrees to
go to King
Arthur

and honour
him.

They go to
Sir Otes's
castle.
Hellen is
brought
there,

and tells Sir
Otes
that he is
Lybius's
fourth
present to
Arthur.

and on hys courser lyzt.—Cot.
 chessten tree, i.e. a Chesnut Tree.
 gerim. vid. Gl. ad Chauc.—P.
 m.—Cot. chesteyne.—Lam.
 1 stint, *apud Salopienses*, signifies

his measure, his quantity, his share.
 —P. be sertayne extante.—Cot.
⁴ MS. him.—F. in.—Cot.
⁵ presentes.—Cot. persones.—Lam.

- that he had woone ffull well.*
- 1288 the Lord was glad & blythe,
& thanked god often sithe,
& alsoe S^t Michall,¹
- that such a noble Knight*
- 1292 shold ffor that Ladye fight
that was soe faire and free.
in the towne dwelled a Knight:
att the ffull ffortnight
- Lybius 1296 Sir Lybyus² there gan bee,

recovers
from his
wounds & did heale him of his wounds
bothe hole and sound
by the 6 weekes end.
- and rides on
towards
Sinadon. 1300 then Sir Lybius and his May
rode fforthe on their way,
to Sinadon to wend ;
and alsoe the Lord of *that* tower
- Sir Otes goes
to Arthur, 1304 went vnto King Arthur,
& prisoner him did yeeld,
& told how a Knight younge
in fighting had him woone,
- 1308 & ouercome him in the ffeeld ;
- and tells him
how Lybius
beat him. & said, " Lord of great renowne !
I am in battell brought a-downe
with a Knight soe bolde."
- 1312 King Arthur had good game,
& soe had they all in-same
that heard that tale soe told.³

¹ The Cotton text omits the rest of this part. The French of the whole part is very different.—F.

² One stroke too many for *u* in the MS. *There* means, I suppose, the house of the knight of l. 1294. The Lambeth MS. has:

Lybeous a fourtenyght
Then with him came lende,

He did helen his wounde,
And made him hole and
Corresponding nearly with our

³ The French puts in here the Falcon or Sparrow-hawk, Hippeau summarises thus, p. :
L'Inconnu, Robert, Hélie, e
aperçoivent, en sortant du bu
Lybius has vanquished l'Org

[The Sixth Part.]

[Lybius's Adventure at the Ile Dore.]

- 1316 Now let vs rest awhile
 of Sir Otes de lile,
 & tell wee other tales.
- 6^e parte Sir Lybius rode many a mile,
 sawe ¹ aduentures many & vile
- 1320 in England ² & in Wales,
 till itt befell in the monthe of June,
 when the fienell ³ hangeth in the towne
 all greene in seemlye manner,⁴
- 1324 The midsummer⁵ day is faire & long;
 merry is the fhoules songe,
 the notes of birds on bryar⁶;
- Lybius and
adventures
- in England
and Wales.
- On Mid-
summer day

la Lande, our Sir Otes], un castel d'où devoient, pour venir à leur rencontre, une dame richement vêtue et d'une beauté ravissante. Elle leur apprend que celui qu'elle aimait a été tué par un chevalier redoutable qui habite le château. Là se trouve, dit-elle, un épervier perché sur un bâton d'or. La damoiselle qui pourra s'en emparer sera proclamée la plus belle; mais elle devra se faire accompagner par un chevalier assez hardi pour oser se mesurer avec le maître de l'épervier. La pauvre damoiselle, désireuse d'obtenir le prix de la beauté, avait conduit à ce château son ami qui avait succombé dans une lutte mortelle. "Je le vengerais, et vous serez reconnue comme la plus belle!" dit l'écuyer, qui trouve l'occasion d'un nouveau triomphe. Griffet, le fils d'O., est terrassé au combat; et, comme l'écuyer apprend que la jeune fille pour laquelle il vient de se battre est Marguerite, la fille du roi d'Espagne, Agulart, il l'a fait conduire chez son père par un chevalier dont la valeur et la bravoure sont éprouvées. Hélio reconnaît en elle sa cousine; elle lui fait de tendres adieux. "Je ne sais," dit-elle avec émotion, "si jamais je vous re-

verrai, mais je vous aimerai toujours!" —P.

¹ One stroke too many for the w in the MS.—P.

² Among adventures fyle
In Yrland.—Cot.

and sey aventure the while
and [in] Irland.—Lam.

Vile = fyle, numerous.—P.

³ cerfille and finale Chervil & fenel
f-la michtig twa Two very ⁴ mighty
(twice)

ja wyrtie geescop These wirts formed
witig drihten (The) wit-sult Lord
halig on heofenum Holy in heavens
ja he hangde sette Thum he set hung-
up;

and sende us vii. And sent to the 7
worulde worlde

carmum and cadi- For the poor & the
gum rich
callum to bid. For a remedy § for
all.

Iacchadoma, iii. 34-7, ed. Carkayne.

⁴ P. has added an e to the r P.
salse Cot. male.—Lam.

⁵ One stroke too few in the MS. P.

⁶ briere. P.

As notes of the nyctingales —Cot.

And notes of the nyghtyngale —Lam

° fair and.—Carkayne.

° Woe he and willy is. C.

§ he expounded. C.

§ Panacea.—C.

- Lybius
 1328 Sir Lybius then gan ryde
 along by a riuer side,
 & saw a ffaire Citye
 with pauillyons of much pride,
 & a castle ffaire & wyde,
 1332 and gates great plentye.
 he asked ffast what itt hight:
 the maid said anon-right,
 " Sir, I will tell thee ;
 1336 men clepeth itt Ile dore ;¹
 there hath beene slaine *Knights* more
 then beene in this countrye
- and that a
 lovely lady
 is kept there
 1340 " ffor a Ladye *that* is of price,
 her coulour is red as rose on rise.²
 all this cuntry is in doubt
 ffor a Gyant *that* hight Mangys,³
 there is noe more such theenes!⁴
 1344 *that* Ladye hee lyeth about ;
 he is heathen, as blacke as pitch ;
 now there be no more such
 of deeds strong & stout ;
- to whom
 every knight
 must bow,
 and lay down
 his armour.
 1348 what *Knight that* passeth this brigg,
 his armes he must downe ligg,
 & to the gyant Lout.⁵
- " he is 20⁶ ffoote of lenght,
 1352 & much more of strenght

¹ Isle Dor, Fr. Yledor.—Cot. Il-deore.—Lam. The French has a long description of the Castle, but nothing about the giant Mangys. It is a knight, *Malgiers li Gris* (p. 77), who there defends the entrance to the castle ; and if he conquers every comer for seven years (or nine according to M. Hippeau) he is to wed *La Dame aux blanches Mains*. The knight has killed 143 opponents,

and cut their heads off (p. 71, l. 19) when he is overcome by Lybius.—F.

² sprig, twig, shrub, Jun. Lye.—P.

³ Maungys.—Cot.

⁴ Nowhere hys pere ther nys.—Cot. Nowhere is non suche.—Lam.

⁵ MS. Cot. omits the next twelve li —F.

⁶ thirty.—Lam.

then other *Knights* ffinoc.

Sir Lybius! now ¹ bethinke thee,
hee is more grimmner ffor to see

She warns
Lybius not
to fight him.

1356 then any one aline; ²
he beareth haire on his brow
like the bristles of a sow;
his head is great & stout ³;
1360 eche arme is the lenght of an ell,
his ffists beene great & fell,
dints ffor to drine about."

Sir Lybius said, "maiden hend!

Lybius says

1364 on our way wee will wend
ffor all his stroakes ill.
if god will me grace send,
or this day come to an end
1368 I hope him ffor to spill.⁴
tho I be young & lite,⁵
I will him sore smyte,
& let god doe his will.
1372 I beseech god almight
that I may see with him flight,
that giant ⁶ ffor to kill."

that by
God's help
he'll kill
him before
the day ends.

then they rode fforth all 3

Near

1376 vnto that ffaire cytye,
men call itt Ile dore ⁷;
anon Mangy can they see
vpon a bridge of tree,
1380 as grimm as any bore;

Ile d'Ore
they see
Mangye

¹ well.—Lam.

² That thou with him no macched bee,
He is gryme to Discryue.—Lam.

³ grete as an hye.—Cot.

⁴ Cot. inserts here:

I have y-seyn grete okes
Falle fure wyndes strokes,

be smale han stonde styll,
and omits the last three lines of the
stanza. Lam. does the same, altering
the words a little.—F.

⁵ lite, little.—P.

⁶ MS. grant.—F. giant, qu.—P.

⁷ Ylledore.—Cot. Illedour.—Lam.

with a black
shield,

his sheild was blacke as ter ¹ ;

his paytrill, ² his crouper, ³

3 mammetts ⁴ there-in were ;

1384 thé were gaylye gilt with gold ;

a spear
and sword.

& a spere in his hand he did hold,

& alsoe his sword in ffere.

He cryed to him in despite,

[page 326]

Mangys asks
Lybius who
he is,

1388 & said, " ffellow, I thee quite ! ⁵

now what thou art, mee tell ;

and advices
him to turn
back.

& turne againe al soc ⁶ tyte

ffor thine owne proffitt,

1392 if thou loue thy selfe well."

Lybius

Sir Lybius said anon-right,

" King Arthur made me a Knight.

vnto him I made my vow

refused.

1396 that I shold neuer turne my backe

ffor noe such devill in blacke.

goe ! make thee readye now ! "

They charge

Now Sir Lybius & Mangys,

1400 Of horsses ⁷ proud of price

together they rode full right ;

(Lords and
ladies

both Lords & Ladyes there

Lay on pount tornere ⁸

1404 to see that seemlye sight,

¹ tar.—F. perhaps as *Aster*, *Haster*, or *Aster* is a word still used in Shropshire, signifying the back of the chimney. "As black as the Haster" is a common expression with them.—P. psych.—Cot. pyeche.—Lam. The French knight's shield is *Sinople*, greene colour (in Blazon).—Cotgrave :

Les escus à sinople estoit,
Et mains blanches parmi avoit (p. 73).—F.

² Poitrel, peytrel, *antilena*: The breast-armour for a horse. Jun.—P.

³ croupere.—P.

⁴ Mammet, a puppet, an Image, a

false-god. Jun.—P. One stroke too many in the MS.—F.

⁵ Say, *bou felaw yn whyt*.—Cot. & Lam.

⁶ MS. alsoe.—F.

⁷ On Horses.—P. On stedes.—Cot. & Lam.

⁸ ? *Pont Turners*, the name of the bridge.—F.

Leyn out yn pomet tours.—Cot.

Laynen in her toures.—Lam.

The French text brings them all out of the castle, except *La Dame aux blanches Mains*.—F.

- & prayed to god loud & still,
 " if *that* itt were his will,
 to helpe *that* cristyan Knight;
 1408 & the vile Gyaunt
that beleeneth in Termagant,
that he might dye in flight! "
- their speres brake assunder,
 1412 their stroakes flared as the thunder,¹
 the peeces gan out spring.
 euery man had great wonder
that Sir Lybius had not beene vnder
 1416 att the first begininge.
 anon they drew sords bothe;
 as men *that* were full wrothe,
 together gan they dinge:
 1420 Sir Lybius smote Mangyes thoe
that his sheild fell him froe,
 in the feild he gan itt fling.
- Mangyes gan smite in *that* stead
 1424 Sir Lybius horse on the head,
 & dashed out his braine;
 his horssse fell downe dyinge.
 Sir Lybius sayd nothing,
 1428 but start vp againe;
 an axe in his hand he hent anon
that hunge on his saddle arson,²
 & smote a stroake of maine
 1432 through Mangis horssse swire,³
 carued him throug long⁴ & liuer,⁵
 & quitt him well againe.
- pray that
 Lybius may
 kill
 Mangye).
 Their spears
 break;
 they draw
 their
 swords;
 Lybius cuts
 away
 Mangye's
 shield;
 Mangye kills
 Lybius's
 horse,
 and Lybius
 kills him.

¹ The first part of *thunder* is blotted in the MS. — F. *donder*. — Cot. *thunder*. — Lam

² arson. Fr. i.e. saddle bow. — P.

³ swire, swere, the neck. Gl. ad Ch. — P.

⁴ through lung. P.

⁵ P. has added an *e* to the end of *liuer*. — F.

sure-karf bon and lyre. — Cot.

furkarre bone and lyre. — Lam.

Then each descriue the stroakes cold no man
 1436 *that* were giuen betwene them then ;
 ¹ to bedd peace was no boote thoe ;
 wounds the deepe wounds there they caught,
 other badly, ffor they both sore ffought,
 1440 & either was others ffoe.
 and they ffro : the hower of prime
 fight from till it was euensong time,
 six to they ffought together thoe.
 evensong. 1444 *Sir* Lybius thirsted then sore,
 Lybius asks & sayd, “ Mangyes, thine ore ² !
 leave to get to drinke lett me goe ;
 some drink.

“ & I will grant to thee,
 1448 what loue ³ thou biddest mee,
 such happe if thee betyde.
 great shame itt wold bee
 a *Knight* ffor thirst shold dye,
 1452 & to thee litle pryde.”

Mangys
gives it him,

Mangies granted him his will,
 ffor to drinke his ffill
 without any more despite.

but as he
lies down
drinking

1456 as *Sir* Lybius lay ouer the banke,
 through his helme he dranke ;

Mangys
knocks him
into the
river.
Lybius gets
out,

Mangyes gan him smite
that into the riuer he goes.
 1460 but vp anon he rose ;
 wonderffull he was dight
 with his armour euery deale ;
 “ now by S^t Micaheel
 1464 I am twise as light !

¹ It was no boot then to bid (propose)
 peace.—P. Cot. and Lam. have differ-
 ent lines.—F.

² mercy.—F.

³ bone.—C. & Lam.

- what weenest thoust fleend fere ?
 that I vnchirstened were
 or thou saw itt with sight ?
 1468 I shall, for thy baptise, (page 337)
 well qu[i]tte thee thy service,
 by the grace of god almight."
 a new battell there began ;
 1472 either fast to other ran,
 & stroakes gaue with might.
 there was many a gentleman,
 and alsoe Ladyes as white as swan,
 1476 they prayed all for the Knight.
- but Mangis anon in the feild
 carued assunder Sir Lybins sheild
 with stroakes of armes great.
 1480 then Sir Lybins rann away
 thither were Mangis sheild lay ;
 & vp he can itt gett,
- & ran againe to him ¹ ;
 1484 with stroakes great and grim
 together they did assayle ;
 there beside the watter brimne
 till it waxed wonderous dimm,
 1488 betweene them lasted that battell.²
 Sir Lybins was warryour wight,
 & smote a stroke of much might ;
 through hawberke,³ plate and maile,
 1492 hee smote of by the shoolder bone
 his right arme soone and anon
 into the feild with-out faile.
- and tells
 Mangys
 he'll pay
 him out.
 They fight
 again ;
 Mangys
 cuts Lybins's
 sheild in
 two.
 Lybins gets
 Mangys's
 sheild ;
 and they
 fight on
 till Lybins
 cuts off
 Mangys's
 right arm.

¹ One stroke too many in MS.—P.² battayle.—P.³ coat of mail, thro' plate & mail, is used both by Milton & Spenser.—P.

Mangys^a

1496 ¹ when the gyant *that* gan see
that he shold slaine bee,

flee.

hee fled with much maine.

Lybius
pursues him,
and cuts his
back in two,

Sir Lybius after him gan hye,
& with strong stroakes mightye
1500 smote his backe in twaine.

thus was the Gyant dead :

and his head
off.

Sir Lybius smote of his head ;
then was the people ffaine.²

Lybius goes
into the
town,

1504 Sir Lybius bare the head to the towne ;
thé mett him with a ffaire procession,
the people came him againe.

and is
received by
the beautiful
Madam de
Armoroure,

a Ladye white as the Lyllye fflower,
1508 hight Madam de Armoroure,³
recciued *that* gentle Knight,
& thanked him in *that* stoure

¹ The Ashmole MS. 61 reads :

The gyante gane to se
That sleyn schuld [he] be :
He stole to fense A-zeine,
And at þe secound stroke
Syr lybeus to hym smote,
And brake his Arme in tweyne.
The gyante þer he leuyd,
lybeus smote of his hede,
There-of he was full feyne ;
He bore þe hed in-to þe toune.
With A feyre promessyoun
The folke com hym A-zeine.
That lady was whyte As flowre
That men callyd denamowre.
&c. &c.

² glad.—P. And of þe batayle was
fayn.—Cot.

³ The French text has a glowing description of the lady's beauty (p. 78-9):

Sa biauté tel clarté jeta,
Quant ele ens le palais entra,
Com la lune qu'ist de la nue . .
Plus estoit blanche d'une flor,
Et d'une vermelle color
Estoit sa face enluminee :
Moult estoit bele et colorée.
Les oels ot vair, boca riant,

Le cors bien faict et avenant ;

Les levres avoit vermettes,

[one Line wanting in the MS.]

Boca bien faite por baisier,

Et bras bien fais por embracer.

Mains ot blanches com flors de lis,

Et la gorges, desous le vis.

Cors ot bien fait, et le chief blont ;

Onques si bele n'ot el mont.

Ele estoit d'un samit vestue,

Onques si bele n'ot sous nue,

La pene en fu moult bien ouvrée

D'ormine tote eschekerée ;

Moult sont bien fait li eschekier,

Li orles fu mout a prisier ;

Et deriere ot ses crins jetés ;

D'un fil d'or les ot galonés.

De roses avoit i capel

Moult avenant et gent et bel ;

D'un afremail son col frema,

Quant ele ens el palais entra.

Molt i ot gente damoisele,

Onques nus hom ne vit tant bele.

La dame entre el palais riant,

Al Desconnéu vint devant . .

There is a further description of her
in her *chemise* at p. 84-5.—F.

⁴ la dame damore.—Cot.

la dame Amoure.—Lam.

- that hee wold her succour*
 1512 *against that feend to flight.*
into the chamber shee him ledd,
& in purple & pall shee him cledd,
 & in rich royall weede ;
 1516 *& proffered him with honor*
ffor to be lord of towne & tower,
 & her owne selfe to meede.

who clothes
him in
purple,

and offers
him her
lands and
herself.

- Sir Lybins ffrened ¹ her in hast,
 1520 *& lone to her anon he cast,*
 ffor shee was ffaire and sheene.
alas, that hee had not beene chast !
ffor afterwards att the Last
 1524 *shee did him betray & teene.²*
 12 monthes and more
 Sir Lybins tarryed thore,³
 & his mayden with renowne,
 1528 *that he might neuer out scape*
 ffor to helpe & ffor to wrake⁴
 the Ladye of Sinadone ;

He gives her
his love,

but she
betrays him
at last.
Lybins stays
twelve
months
there,

- ffor that ffaire Lady*
 1532 *told⁵ more of Sorcery*
 then such other ffine ;
 shee made him great melodye,
 of all manner of minstrelsye
 1536 *that any man cold discreene.*

leguiled by
the lady's
surrey.

¹ asked.—P. grātede.—Cot.

² outrage, vez, grievr. Gl. ad G.D.

N.B. This does not appear from anything which follows in this Ballad: unless it be her detaining him by her enchantments in these stanzas.—P.

³ there, as in Chauc. —P. The French Lemanee keeps Lybins only a night in the castle. The lady comes to him in her chamber, leans on his breast:

Se meisme et sa putrine

Furral blanche comme flore d'espine ;

Se li ot desus son pis mie. (p. 85-6)

She desires his love. He wants to kiss her, but she draws back, as that would be lechery till he had married her, and leaves his room. He has troubled dreams, thinking he holds her all night in his arms, and next morning he resolutely rides away, but returns after freeing the Lady of Sinadowne.—P.

⁴ wreak, i.e. revenge.—P.

⁵ for cold, knew.—P.

for, when
looking on
her,
he thinks
himself in
Paradise.

when he looked on her fface,
him thought certainlye *that* hee was
in paradise aline,
1540 with ffantasye and fayrye;
& shee bleared his eye
with ffalse sorcerye.

[The Seventh Part.]

At last,
Hellen meets
him,

and
reproaches
him
with his
faithlessness
to Arthur

1544 till itt beffell vpon a day
he mett with Ellen *that* may
betwene the Castle and the tower;

1548 { Then vnto him shee gan say,
7^d Parte. { "thou art ffalse of thy ffay¹
vnto King Arthur!
ffor the loue of that Ladye
that can soe much curtesye,
thou doest thee dishonor!

[page

and the Lady
of Sinadon.

1552 My Ladye of Sinadon
may long lye in prison,
& *that* is great dolour!"

Lybius is
touched to
the heart,

1556 Sir Lybius hard her speake,
him thought his hart wold breake
ffor sorrow & ffor shame.

and they
ride off that
night.

att a posterne there beside
by night they gan out ryde
1560 ffrom *that* gentle dame.

Lybius

hee tooke with him his good steede,
his sheeld & his best weede,
& rode fforth all in-same;

1564 & the² steward stout in ffere,
he made him his Squier,
Sir Geffelett³ was his name.

makes Sir
Geffelett his
steward,

¹ faith.—P.

² Her.—Cot. Hir.—Lam.

³ Gyfflet.—Cot. Gurflete.—I

- they rode fforth on their way,
 1568 but lightly on their Iourney,
 on bay horsses and browne ;
 till itt beffell vpon a day
 they saw a Citye ffaire and gay,
 1572 men call itt Sinadowne,¹
 with a Castle hye & wyde,
 and pauillyons of much pride
 that were of ffaire ffashyon.
- 1576 then said Sir Lybius
 "I haue ² great wonder of an vse
 that he saw ³ in the towne ;"
- they gathered dirt & mire ffull ffast :
 1580 which beffore was out cast,⁴
 they gathered in I-wis.
 Sir Lybius said in hast,
 "tell me now, mayd chast,
 1584 what betokeneth this ?
 they take in all their hore ⁵
 that was cast out beffore !
 methinke they doe amisse."
- 1588 then sayd Mayd Ellen,
 "Sir Lybius, without Leasing
 I will tell thee why itt is.
- "there is no King soe well arrayed,
 1592 tho he had before payd,
 that there shold take ostell,⁶
 ffor a dread of a steward
 that men call Sir Lamberd ;
 1596 he is the constable of the Castle.

and they
ride on

till they
see Sina-
downe.

Lybius asks
why they are

drawing into
the city the
dirt that
was before
cast out of
it :

What does
it mean ?

Hellen
answers

that no one
can lodge
there

for fear of
Sir Lamberd.

synadowne.—Cot. Lam. *La Cité*
ste is the French name of Sinadowne ;
 this preliminary castle is called
igans.—F.
 He had (or).
 I see.—P. The Cotton MS. reads :
 But lybeaus desconus

He hadde wondere of an vus
 bat he saw do yn toune.
⁴ For gore, and fen, and full wast,
 That there was out y-kast.—Cot.
⁵ Sax. *horh*, *fimus*, *scruta*, *phlegma*.
limus, Bens. Voc.—P.
⁶ Fr. *hostel*, *hospitium*, *Domus*.—P.

If Lybius
aske for
lodging,

but ride into the C
& aske thine inne
both ffaire and

1600 & or he bidd thee
Insting he will th
by god & by St

Lambert
will joust
with him ;

and if
Lambert
wins,

1604 " & if he beare the
his trumpetts¹ sh
their beaugles²

all the
people in the
town will
throw dirt
on Lybius ;

then ouer all this
both mayd & gars
1608 but dirt on thee

and unless
he fights,

& but thou thithe
vnto thy lines end

he'll be
called a
coward.

cowarde thou sh
1612 & soe may King A
losse all his great
for thy deeds sh

Lybius says
he'll fight
Lambert

1616 Sir Lybius sayd, '
thither I will goe
if I be man on

and free the
lady.

ffor to doe Arthur
& to make *that* La

1620 to him I will dr
Sir Geffelett, mak
& lett vs now goe
anon *that* wee v

He and his
squire ride
to the
Castle,

1624 they rode fforth on
till they came⁴ to
That was of gre

¹ Trumpetters.—P.

² bugles, hunting horns ; from bugle,
a wild bull, Lye.—P.

- & there they asked Ostell
 1628 in *that* faire Castell and ask for
 ffor a venturous knight. lodging.
 the porter faire & well
 lett them in ffull snell, The porter
 1632 & asked anon-right,
 "who is your gouernor?" asks who
 they sayd, "King Arthur, their
 a man of much might. Governor is.
 " King
 Arthur,
 1636 to be a king he is worthye,
 he is the fflower of Chinalrye,
 his ffone to ffell in ffight." the ffower of
 chivalry!"
 the porter went without ffable The porter
 1640 to his lord the Constable,
 & this tale him told : tells
 "Sir, without any ffable, Lamberd
 of Arthurs round table
 be comen 2 knights bold. that two of
 the one is armed ffull sure Arthurs
 with rich & royall armour, knights have
 with 3 Lyons of gold." come.
 1648 the Lord was gladd & blythe, Lamberd
 & said to them ffull swythe, says they
 Iust with them hee wold :
 "bidd them make them yare¹
 1652 into the ffeld ffor to ffare are to get
 without the Castle gate." ready to
 the porter wold not stent,² fight.
 but euen anon went The porter
 1656 to them lightlye att the yate,
 & sayd anon-rightes, tells them
 "yee aduenturous knights,

¹ ready. Sax. *Gower*. P. *as yare*, *Howorth*. — F.² stint, stop. — P.

- ffor nothing *that* yee Lett ;
 1660 Looke your sheelds be good & strong,
 & your speres good and long,
 sheild, plate, & Basnett,
- to ride into
 the field,
 and his
 lord will
 fight them.
 1664 “ & ryde you into the ffeild ;
 my Lord with speare and sheild
 anon with you will play.”
 Sir Lybins spake words bold,
 & said, “ this tale is well told,
 1668 & pleasant to my pay.¹ ”
 into the feld thé rode,
 & boldlye there abode
 in their best array.²
- They ride in,
 and wait for
 Lamberd,
 1672 S[ir] Lamberd armed ffull weelee
 both in Iron and in steele
that was both stout & gay ;
- whose shield
 is black,
 1676 his sheeld was sure & ffine,
 3 bores heads was therin
 as blacke as brond brent,³
 the bordure was of rich armin,—
 there was none soe quent⁴ a ginn⁵
 1680 ffrom Carlile into Kent,—
 & of the same paynture
 was his paytrell & his armoure.
 in lande where euer he went,
- his armour
 too.
 1684 2 squiers with him did ryde,
 & bare 3 speares by his side
 to deale with doughtye dint.
- Two squires
 attend him,
 1688 then *that* stout stewared
that hight Sir Lamberd

¹ liking.—P.² As best brozt to bay.—C.

As bestis brought to baye.—Lam.

³ i. e. burnt brand.—P.⁴ quent, queint.—P.⁵ ginne, trick, contrivance.—P.

- armed him ffull well & bright,
 & rode into the ffeild ward—
 ffeircely as any Libbard—
 1692 there abode him *that* knight.
 him tooke a speare of great shape; ¹
 he thought he came to Late.
 when he him saw with sight,
 1696 soone he ² rode to him *that* stond
 with a speare *that* was round,
 as a man of much might.
- Either smote on others sheeld
 1700 *that* the peeces ffell in the ffeild
 of theire speares long.
 enery man to other tolde
 “*that* younge Knight is ffull bold.”
 1704 to him with a speare he fflounge;
 Sir Lamberd did stifflye ssitt;
 he was wrath out of his witt
 ffor Ire and ffor teene,³ [page 340]
 1708 & sayd, “bring me a speare!
 ffor this Knight is not to Lere,
 soone itt shalbe seene.”⁴
- then they tooke shaftes round,
 1712 with crownalls sharpe ground,
 & ffast to-gether did run;
 either proued other in *that* stond
 to give either theire deaths wound,
 1716 with harts as ffeirce as any Lyon.
 Lamberd smote Sir Lybius thoe
that his sheeld ffell him ffroe
- and he rides
 into the
 field as fieros
 as a leopard.
- Lybius
 charges him,
- and both
 shatter their
 spears.
- They charge
 again with
 fresh spears.
- Lamberd
 knocks
 Lybius's

¹ He smote hys schaft yn grate.—C.
 He sette his shelde in grate.—Lam.

² Lybeaus.—C. Lybeous.—Lam.

³ anger, madness, vexation.—P.

⁴ He cryde, “Do come a strangere
 schaft!

3yf artours knyjt kan craft,

Now hyt schalle be sene.—Cot.

- into the fell a-downe ;
 1720 Sir Lamberd him see hit
 of a ventayle¹ hee might sett
 vpright in his arsoume,²
 his shaft brake with great power.
 1724 Sir Lybins hitt him on the visor
 that of went his helme bright :
 the pesanye.³ ventayle,⁴ & gorgere,⁵
 with the helme flew forth in fere,
 1725 & Sir Lamberd vpright
 sate rucking⁶ in his saddle
 as a chyld in a cradle
 without maine & might.
 1732 euery man tooke other by the lappe,
 & laughed and gan their hands clappe,
 barron, Burgesse, and Knight.
 Sir Lamberd, he thought to sitt bett ;
 1736 another helme he made to fett,⁷
 & a shaft ffull meete.
 & when they together mett,
 either other on their helmes sett
 1740 strokes grim & great.
 then Sir Lamberds speare brast,
 & Sir Lybins sate soe fast

¹ scarcely.—P.² saddle.—P. arsoune.—C.³ pysane.—C. pesanie.—Lam. In *The Anturs of Arthur*, st. xlv. ed. Robson, p. 21, is:

He girdus to Syr Gauano

Throzhe ventaylle and *pysane* ;
 on which Dr. Robson observes, p. 99,
 "This was either the Gorget or a substi-
 tute for it. In the Acts of Parliament
 of Scotland (anno 1429) vol. ii. p. 8,
 it is ordered that every one worth 20*l.*
 a year, or 100*l.* in moveable goods, 'be
 wele horsit and haill enarmyt as a gen-till man aucht to be. And uther sym-
 pillare of X lib. of rent, or L lib. in
 gudes haif hat, gorgeat or *pesanne*, with
 rerebrasares, vambrasares, and gluffes of
 plate, breast plate, and leg splentes at
 the lest, or better gif him likes."—F.⁴ auentayle.—C. ventail, The Part of
 the Helmet which lifts up. Johns.—P.⁵ Gorgere, id. ac Gorget. The Piece
 of Armour which defends the throat.
 Johns.—P.⁶ One stroke too many in this word in
 the MS.—F.⁷ fett, fetch.—P.

in the saddle there hee ¹ sett,
 1744 that they Constable Sir Lamberd
 fell of his horsse backward,
 soe sore they there mett.

unhorses
 Lamberd,

Sir Lamberd was ashamed sore.
 1748 Sir Lybius asked if he wold more.²
 he answered and said " nay !
 ffor sithe *that* ener I was bore,
 saw I neuer here beffore

and asks
 him if he
 wants any
 more.
 " No," says
 Lamberd,

1752 none ryde soe to my pay !
 by the faith *that* I am in,
 thou art come of Sir Gawaynes kin,
 thou³ art soe stout and gay.
 1756 if thou wilt ffight ffor my Ladye,
 welcome thou art to mee,
 by my troth I say ! "

"you must be
 of Gawaine's
 blood ;

will you
 fight for
 my lady ? "

Sir Lybius sayd, " sikerlyo
 1760 I will ffight for my Ladye ;⁴
 I promised soe to King Arthur ;
 but I ne wott how ne why
 who does her *that* villanye,

" Certainly I
 will.

1764 ne what is her dolor ;
 but this maid *that* is her mesenger,
 certes has brought me here
 her ffor to succour."

Hellen has
 brought me
 here to help
 her."

1768 Sir Lamberd said in *that* stond
 " welcome, Sir Knight of the table round,
 into my strong tower ! "

Lamberd
 welcomes
 him to his
 tower.

then mayd Ellen anon-rightes
 1772 was fleitched fforth with 5 Knights

¹ One stroke too many in this word in the MS. - F.

² The French omits this question ; where Lampere go to Lybius and say " sire, fait-il, " ça, descendes ; l'ar drout avés l'ostel conquies . Vos l'asorte a vu deris."

then embraces Hellen or *Hélène*, and ask her what she did (at Arthur's court) - F.

³ A letter is crossed out at the end of this word in the MS. - F.

⁴ *fluyte y schalle* for a lady. - C. *fluyt y shall* for thy ladye. - Lam.

- Hellen and
the Dwarf
are fetched
in,

and relate
Lybius's
adventures.
- beffore Sir Lamberd.
shee & the dwarffe by-deene
told of 6 battells ¹ keene
1776 *that* he had done thitherward :
thé sayd *that* Sir Lybius then
had ffought with strong men,
& beene in stowers hardye.
1780 then they were glad & blythe,
& thanked god alsoe sithe ²
that he were soe mightye.
- Lybius and
Lamberd
talk of old
heroes.
- they welcomed him with mild cheere,
1784 & sett them to supper
with much mirth and game.
Sir Lybius & Sir Lamberd in ffere
of ancycnts *that* beffore were
1788 talked both in³-same.
- Lybius asks
what knight
has im-
prisoned the
Lady of
Sinadowne.
- Sir Lybius sayd, "with-out ffable,⁴
tell me now, Sir Constable,
what is the *Knights* name
1792 *that* hath put in prison
my Ladye of Sinadon
that is soe gentle a dame ? "
- " No knight;
1796 Sir Lamberd said, " soe mote I gone,
Knights there beene none
that dare her away Lead ;
but two
clerks,
2 Clarkes beene her ffone,
ffull ffalse in body & in bone,
1800 *that* hath done this deed.
they be men of Masterye
sorcerers,
named
their artes ffor to reade of Sorcerye;
- [page 34

¹ Tolde seven dedes.—Cot.² *im* in the MS.—F.³ fele syde.—C. fele sythe.—Lam.
'Swithe' is quickly.—F.⁴ There is none of this in the Fren
—F.

- 1804 Mabam¹ thé hight one in deede,
 & Iron hight the other verelye,²
 cla[r]ckes³ of Nigromancye,
 of them wee haue great dread.
- 1808 " this Mabam & Irowne
 haue made in the towne
 a palace of quent gin⁴ ;
 there is no Erle ne barron
 that has hart as Lyon
 1812 that dare come therin ;
 itt is all of the ffaierye
 wrought by Nigromancye,
 that wonder it is to winne.
 1816 there they keepe in prison
 my Ladye of Sinadowne,
 that is of Knights kinn.⁵
- 1820 " oftentimes wee her crye ;
 ffor to see⁶ her with eye,
 therto we haue no might.
 this Mabam & Iron trulye
 had sworene to death trulye
 1824 her death ffor to dight,
 but if shee grant vntill
 ffor to do Mabams will,
 & giue him all her right
 1828 of all that Dukedome ffayre,
 therof is my ladye heyre
 that is soe much of might.
- " shee is soe meeke & soe ffair ;
 1832 therefore wee be in dispayre
- Mabam
 and Iron,
 necro-
 mancers,

 have made a
 curious
 palace that
 no one dare
 enter,

 as it's
 wrought by

 necromancy;
 and there
 they keep the
 Lady of
 Sinadowne,

 and will put
 her to death,

 unless she

 gives up her
 dukedom to
 Mabam.

¹ Syr Maloune.—C.² Syr Irayn hys brother.—C. Irayne.
—Lam³ Clarke. . P⁴ Curious contrivance.—P.⁵ The n is made over an e, or eue
erred, in the M.S. F.⁶ A or follows and is crossed out. . F.

- ffor the dolour *that* shees in.”
 then sayd Sir Lybius,
 “through the helpe of Iesus
 that Ladye I will winne;
 & Mabam & Iron,
 smite of there anon
 their heads in *that* stoure,
 & wine that Lady bright,
 & bring her to her right
 with ioy & much honor.”¹
- then there was no more tales to tell
 in *that* strong Castle.
 to supp & make good cheere,²
 the Barrons & Burgesse all
 came to *that* seemlye hall
 ffor to listen & heare
 how Sir Lybius had wrought;
 & if the *Knight* were ought,
 his talking for to harke.³
- they ffound them sitting in ffere
 talking, att their supper,
 of *Knights* stout and starke.

¹ C. omits the next twelve lines, (and alters many before).—F.

² Tho was no more tale

I the Castell grete and smale,
 But stouped and made hym blythe.
 —Lam.

³ His crafte for to kythe.—Lam.

[The Eighth Part.]

[Of Lybius's Adventures in Sinadowne, and how he conquers the Lady's Enchanters.]

- & after they went to rest,
 1856 & tooke their likeing¹ as them list²
 in *that* Castell all night.
- 1860 { On the morrow anon-right
 Sir Lybius was armed bright;
 ffreah he was to fight.
 Sir Lamberd led him algate³
 8th parte { right vnto the Castle gate;
 open they were ffull right;
 1864 { no man durst him neere bringe
 fforsooth, with-out Leasing,
 Barron, Burgess, ne Knight,
- But turned home againe.
- 1868 Sir Gefflet his owne swaine⁴
 wold with him ryde,
 but Sir Lybius ffor certaine
 Sayd he shold backe againe,¹ [page 342]
 1872 and att home abyde.
 Sir Gefflett againe gan ryde⁵
 with Sir Lamberd ffor to abyde;
 & to Iesu christ they⁶ cryed,
 1876 ffor to send them tydings gladd
 of them *that* long had
 destroyed their welthes wyde.

All go to bed.

Next
morningLamberd
takes
Lybius to
the castle
gates,but no man
dares go in
with him.His squire
wants to,but Lybius
forbids him.All pray for
the sorcerers'
deaths.¹ Only half the *s* in the MS.—F.² *he* take *they* have rest.

In lykyng as hem leste.—C.

The take they ear and Roste,

And lykynges of the beste. Lam.

³ at all events, by all means.—P.The French makes *Lampere* describeto Lybius what he will see, and what
he is to do, in *la Cité Gaute*, (p. 98-
100). F.⁴ youth, servant. Jun.—P.⁵ The Cotton text makes Gefflett stop
at the castle, l. 1764. F.⁶ *ac.* the People.—P.

Lybius rides into the palace,	880	Sir Lybius, Knight curteous, rode into <i>that</i> prond palace, ¹ & att the hall he light. trumpetts, hornes, & shaumes ² ywis he ffound beffore the hye dese, ³
sees horns, hears music, and sees a bright fire.	1884	he heard, & saw with sight. a ffayre ffyer there was stout & stowre in the midds of the flore, brening ffaire and bright. ⁴
Lybius rides farther in,	1888	then ffurther in hee yeed, & tooke with him his steede <i>that</i> helped him to ffight.
and can see	1892	ffurthermore he began to passe, & beheld then euerye place all about the hall; nothing of nothing, more ne lesse, he saw no body <i>that</i> there was,
but minstrels	1896	but minstrells cladde in pall, with harpe, ffidle & note, ⁵ & alsoe with Organ note,— great mirth they made all,—
with their harps, &c., all playing,	1900	& alsoe fiddle and sautrye ⁶ ; soe much of minstrelsy ne say ⁷ he neuer in hall.
and a torch before every man.	1904	before euery man stood a torch ffayre and good, brening ffull bright.
Lybius		Sir Lybius Euermore yode ⁸ ffor to witt ⁹ with Egar mood
can't find any one to fight,	1908	who shold with him ffight.

¹ The French text describes the palace, p. 101.—F.

² shaumes, a Psalter; a Musical Instrument like a Harp. Chau. Gl.—P.

³ Dese, Deis. The high table.—P.

⁴ Was lyzt & brende bryzt.—C.

That tente and brende bright.—Lan

⁵ rote.—C. lute and roote.—Lam.

⁶ a Psalter, vid. Supra.—P.

⁷ saw.—P.

⁸ went.—P.

⁹ know.—P.

- hee went into all the corners,
 & beheld the pillars
*that seemelye*¹ were to sight;
 1912 of Iasper fine & Cristall,
 all was flourish'd in the hall;
 itt was full faire & bright.
- the dores were all of brasse,
 1916 & the windowes of faire glasse,
that ymagrye itt was driue.
 the hall well painted was;
 noe fairer in noe place;
 1920 maruelous flor to describe.
 hee sett him on the hye dese:
 then the minstrells were in peace
that made the mirth soo gay,
 1924 the torches *that* were soo bright
 were quenched anon-right,
 & the minstrells were all away;
- the dores & the windowes all,
 1928 *thé* bett² together in the hall
 as it were strokes of thunder;
 the stones in the Castle wall
 about him downe gan fall;—
 1932 thereof he had great wonder;—
 the earth began to quake,
 & the dese flor to shake
*that was him there vnnder*³;
 1936 the hall began for to breake,
 & soe did the wall eke,
 as they shold fall assunder.
- as he sate thus dismayd,
 1940 he held himselfe betrayd.

but only sees
jasper
pillars,

brass doors,
&c.,

in the
decorated
hall.

He sits on
the dais,
and at once
the music
stops,

the torches
go out,

the
minstrels
vanish,

the doors
and windows
clash
together,

all the stones
of the wall
fall down,

the earth
quakes,

the hall and
walls begin
to crack.

¹ In line 1910 in the MS.—P.

² They beat.—P.

³ there under.—P.

Then he
hears horses
neigh. He
says there's
some one to
fight,
and sees

1944

then horses heard hee nay :
to himselfe then he sayd,
“now I am the better apayd,
for yett I hope to play.”
hee looked fforth into the ffeild,
saw there with speare and sheild ¹

two men of
arms

1948

well arrayed.

men of armes tway,²
in purple & pale armoure
well harnished in *that* stoure,
with great garlands gay.

One rides
into the
hall,
and tells
Lybius he
must fight
them.

1952

The one came ryding into the hall,
& to him thus gan call,

[page 343]

1956

“Sir Knight aduenturous !
such a case there is befall ;
tho thou bee proude in pall,
ffight thou must with vs.
I hold thee quent of ginne ³
if thou my Ladye winne ⁴
that is in prison.”

Lybius

1960

is quite
willing,

Sir Lybius sayd anon-right,
“all ffresh I am ffor to ffight,
with the helpe of goddes sonne.”

mounts,

1964

Sir Lybyus with good hart
ffast into the saddle he start ;
in his hand a speare he hent,
& ffeircly he rode him till,
his enemyes ffor to spill ;

1968

ffor *that* was his entent.

¹ There is a stroke between the *e* and *i* in the MS.—F.

² The French postpones the darkness, &c., and makes Lybius first see and fight a single knight (p. 103, *Eurains li fiers*, p. 119), and put him to flight ; then fight another (*Mabons*, p. 119), on a horse with a horn in his forehead, and fire shooting out of his nostrils, (p. 105–8). Then comes the darkness, and a horrible noise ;

Lybius thinks of *La Damoiselle aux blanches mains*, and commends himself to God ; the *Wivre* (Lat. *vipera*) appears, comes near him, and kisses him ; he is stupefied ; a voice tells him who he is ; he dreams ; and on waking sees the lovely *Esmerce*, who tells him her story.—F.

³ clover of contrivance.—P.

⁴ wime MS.—F.

- but when they had together mett,
 either on others helme sett
 with speares doughtye dent.
- 1972 Mabam his speare all to-brast ;
 then was Mabam euill agast,
 & held him shameffully shent.
- & with *that* stroke ffelowne ¹
- 1976 Sir Lybins bare him downe
 ouer his horsse taylor ;
 ffor Mabams saddle arsowne
 brake there-with, & fell downe
- 1980 into the ffeld without ffayle.
 well nye he had him alone ;
 but then came ryding Iron
 In a good hawberke of mayle ;
- 1984 all ffresh he was to ffight,
 & thought he wold anon-right
 Sir Lybins assayle.
- Sir Lybins was of him ware,
 1988 & speare vnto him bare,
 & left his brother still.
 such a stroke he gaue hime thoro
that his hawberke all to-tore ;
- 1992 *that* liked him ffull ill.
 their speares brake in 2 ;
 swords gan they draw tho
 with hart grim and grill,²
- 1996 & stifflye gan to other ffight ;
 either on Other proued their might,
 eche other ffir to spill.
- then together gan they hew.
- 2000 Mabam, the more shrew,³

and charges.

Mabam
shivers his
spear,and is cut
over his
horse's tail
by Lybins,and nearly
killed,
but that
Iron attacks
Lybins,who rides at
him,and rends
his hauberk.They draw
their swords,and hew at
one another.¹ felon stroke, i. e. a murderous stroke.
P.² utrum ac grialy. OL ad Ch. P.³ shrew, apud Chaucer est, a villain ;
here it seems to signify shrewd, cunning,
artful. P.

Mabam
gets up,

vp he rose againe ;
he heard & alsoe knew
Iron gaue strokes ffew ;

2004 therof he was not ffaine ;
but to him he went ffull right
ffor to helpe Iron to flight,
& auenge him on his enemye.

and attacks
Lybius too,

2008 tho he were neuer soe wroth,
Sir Lybius fought against them both
and kept himselfe manlye.

but he
defends
himself like
a man.

when Mabam saw Iron,¹

Mabam (t.i.
Iron)

2012 he ffought as a Lyon
the *knight* to slay with wreake.

chops off
Lybius's
steed's neck.

beffore his ffardar arsowne
soone he carued then downe

2016 Sir Lybius steeds necke.

Lybius cuts
Iron's thigh
in two,

Sir Lybius was a worthy warryour,
& smote a 2 his thye ² in *that* stoure,
skine,³ bone, and blood.

2020 then helped him not his clergye,
neither his ffalse Sorcerye,⁴
but downe he ffell with sorry moode.

dismounts,

Sir Lybius of his horsse alight,
2024 with Mabam ffor to flight.

and fights
Mabam.

in the ffeild both in ffere
strong stroakes they gaue with might,
that sprakeles ⁶ sprang out ffull bright

The sparks
fly.

2028 ffrom helme and harnesse cleere.
as either ffast on other bett,⁶
both their swords mett,

¹ Yrayn saw Mabonn.—Cot. Lam.

² There is the long part of another *h*
in the MS.—F.

³ ? skimo in the MS.—F.

⁴ þo halp hym noȝt hys armys,
Hys chauntement, ne hys charmys.
—Cot.

Ne halpe hym not his Armour,
His chauntements, ne his chambur.

—Lam.

⁵ ? MS. spaakeles.—F.

⁶ did beat.—P.

As yee may now heare.

[page 244]

2032 Mabam, *that* was the more shrew,
the sword of Sir Lybins he did hew
in 2 quite and cleare.

Mabam
cuts Lybins's
sword in
two.

then Sir Lybins was ashamed,
2036 & in his hart euil¹ agramed²
ffor he had Lost his sword,
& his steed was lamed,
& he shold be defamed

Lybins
gets angry,

2040 to King Arthur his lord.
to Iron lithelye³ he ran,
& hent vp his sword then
that sharpe edge⁴ had & hard,

catches up
Iron's sword,

2044 & ran to Mabam right
& fast on him gan flight,
& like a madman he ffared.

runs to
Mabam

but euer then ffought Mabam,
2048 as he had beene a wyld man,
Sir Lybins ffor to sloe.
but Sir Lybins carued downe
his sheild with *that* ffawchowne

and cuts off
his shield

2052 that he tooke Iron ffroe:
true tale ffor to be told,⁵
the left hand with the sheild
away he smote thoe.

and left
hand.

2056 then sayd Mabam him till
"Sir! thy stroakes beene ill!
gentle Knight, now hoe,⁶

Mabam

"& I will yeeld me to thee
2060 in loue and in Loyaltie

offers to
surrender
himself,

¹ for euil, or evil.—F. sore.—Lam.
² omits it. F.
³ agramed, displeased, grieved. Gl.
(Lam. rather (*agrieved*) angered.
S. *Gram. Furor. Lye.*—P.

⁴ lithely, gently, (nimble).—P.
⁵ The *d* has two bottomus in the MS.,
or the word is *culge*. F.
⁶ told, rhythmic gratia. P.
⁷ i.e. now stop.—P.

and to give
up the Lady
of Sina-
downe,

att thine owne will,
& alsoe *that* Lady ffree
that is in my posstee,¹
2064 take her I will thee till ;
ffror through *that* sh[r]need dint
my hand I haue tint² ;

for Iron's
sword was
poisoned,
and will kill
him.

the veinim will me spill ;
2068 fforsooth without othe
I venomed them both,
our enemyes ffor to kill."

Lybius
refuses,

Sir Lybius sayd, "by my thrifft
2072 I will not haue of thy gift
ffor all this world to w[i]nn !
therefore lay on stroakes swythe !
the one shall cut the other blythe
2076 the head of by the Chin³ ! "

calls on him
to fight
again,

then Sir Lybius and Mabam
ffought together ffast then,
& lett ffor nothing againe ;

and then

2080 *that* Sir Lybius *that* good Knight
carued his helme downe right,
& his head in twayne.⁴

splits his
head in two.

¹ posté, apud Chauc. est Power. Vid.
Gl.—P.

² lost.—P.

³ One stroke too many in the MS.—F.

⁴ The French adds (p. 108):
Del cors li saut i fumiere,
Qui molt estoit hideuse et fiere,
Qui li issoit parmi la boce, &c.—l

[The Ninth Part.]

[How Lybius disenchantes and weds the Lady of Sinadowne.]

- 2084 { Now is Mabam slaine ;
 & to Irom he went againe,
 with sword drawne to flight ;
 ffor to haue Clouen his braine,
 9th Parte { I tell you ffor certaine
 2088 { he went to him ffull right ;
 but when he came there,¹
 away he was bore,
 into what place he nist.²
 2092 he sought him ffor the nones³
 wyde in many woones⁴ ;
 to flight more him List.

 as he stood, & him bethought⁵
 2096 that itt wold be deere bought
 that he was ffrom him fare,
 ffor he wold with sorcerye
 doe much tormentrye,
 2100 & that was much care.
 he tooke his sword hastilye.
 & rode vpon a hill hye,
- Lybius goes
to his Irom,

 but he has
vanished,

 and can't be
found.

 Lybius

 thinks he
may give
him trouble.

 Lybius

there.—P.

MS. list. ? nist, knew not.—F.

he. Cot. muste. Lam.

the house, or house, on purpose; de
nista. Jun. purposely.—P.

was a house, habitation.—P.

Neither the French, nor Cot., nor
n. has the seeing and slaying of the
ght which follows here. Cot. reads
and whanne he ne food hym nyst,
he held hymself to-cant,

And gan to syke care,
ad ayde yn word and pryst,
he wyll be sore a-boust

but he ys thus from me y-fare."

• On kne hym sette þat gentylk knygt,
And prayde to marie bryst,

Keuere hym of hys care.

For the last three lines, Lam. substi-
tutes:

"He will with sorcerye

Do me tormentrye

That is my mooste care."

Sore he eat and sighte;

He muste whate do her myght;

He was of blyss all bare.

(l. 2122-7 here).—F.

He looked upon him

as a
man of
valour

2114 then he was ware of [a] valley :
thitherward he took the way
as a some Knight and soon

as he rode by a river side

2118 he was ware of him that rode
upon the river brim :

then he
saw him
come

He rode to him full hott,
& of his head he smote.

[page 443]

2122 that by the Chinn :

& when he had him slaine,

then he
saw

that hee took the way againe
for to haue that lady gent.

2126 as soon as he did thither come,
of his horsse he light downe,
and into the hall hee went

and then he
saw

& sought that lady faire and hend,

so he
looked for
the lady of
Sunderland

2130 but he cold her not find ;
therfor he sighed ffull sore.¹

He mouned
because he
can't find
her.

still he sate mourni[n]g
ffor that Ladye faire & young;

2124 for her was all his care ;
he ne wist what he doe might ;
but still he sate, & sore he sight,
of Ioy hee was ffull bare.

A window
opens,

2128 but as he sate in that hall,
he heard a window in the wall,
ffaire itt gan vnheld ;—
great [wonder²] there with-all
2132 in his hart gan ffall ;—
as he sate & beheld,

¹ sair. Scotice.—P.

² fear or dread.—P. wonder.—Cot. wondyr.—Lai

- a worme¹ out gan pace
with a womans fface
2136 *that* was younge & nothing old.
the wormes tayle² & her winges
shone ffayre in all thinges,
 & gay ffor to beholde.
- 2140 grislye great was her taile,
the clawes large without ffayle;
 Lothelye³ was her bodye.
Sir Lybius swett for heate,
2144 there sate in his seate
 as all had beene a ffire him by.⁴
then was Sir Lybius euill agast,
 & thought his body wold brast.
- 2148 then shee neighed him nere;
 & or Sir Lybius itt wist,
the worme with mouth him Kist,
 & colled about his lyre.⁵
- 2152 & after *that* kissing,
the wormes tayle & her wing

and out
creeps a
worm (or
serpent)
with a
young
woman's
face,
shining
wings,

big claws
and tail,

and a loathly
body.

It comes to
Lybius,

kisses him
on the
mouth,

its tail and
wings fall
off,

¹ Fr. *wivre*. Phillips gives "*Wyver*, the Name of a Creature little known otherwise than as it is painted in Coats of Arms and described by Herald: 'Tis represented by Gwillim as a kind of flying Serpent, and so may be deriv'd from *Vipera*, as it were a winged Viper or Serpent; but others will have it to be a sort of Ferret call'd *Viverra* in Latin." De Bianju's description of it may be compared with the English:

A tant vit i aumaire ouvrir
Et une WIVRE fors issir,
Qui jetoit une tel clarté
Com i cierge bien enbrasé.
Tot le palais enluminoit,
Une si grant clarté jetoit.
Hom ne vit onques sa parelle,
Que la bouce ot tot vermelle;
Parmi jetoit le feu ardent;
Moult par estoit hideus et grant;

Parmi le pis plus grosse estoit
Que i vaissaus d'un mui ne soit;
Les iols avoit gros et luisans,
Comme ii escarbocles grans;
Contreval l'aumaire descent,
Et vint parmi le pavement.
Quatre toises de lonc duroit,
En la queue iii neus avoit.
C'onques nus hom ne vit greignor,
Ains Dius ne fist cele color,
Qu'en li ne soit entremellée,
Dessous sambloit estre dorée.

(pp. 110-11).—F.

² Hyre body.—Cot. Lam.

³ i.e. loathsome.—P.

⁴ Maad as he were.—C.

As alle had ben in fyre.—Lam.

⁵ apud Scot. flesh. Apud Chauc. *lere* is the Complexion or Air of the face.—P. Swyre.—Cot. Lam. *Coll* is to embrace; Fr. *collée*, an imbracing about the necke. Cotgrave.

- 2155 a woman without Leasing ;
 fairer he saw neuer or thoe.¹
 shee stood vpp al soe² naked
 as christ had her shaped.
 2160 then was Sir Lybius woe.
 shee sayd, " god *that* on the rood gan bleed,
 Sir Knight, quitt thee thy meede,
 For thou my ffone wold sloe.³
 2164 " thou hast slaine now ffull right
 2 clarkes wicked of might
that wrought by the ffende.
 East, west, north and south,
 2168 they were masters of their mouth ;⁴
 many a man they haue shend.
 through their inchantment,
 to a worme the had me meant,⁵
 2172 ne woe to wrapp me in
 till I had k[i]ssed Sir Gawaine
that is a noble Knight certaine,
 or some man of his kinn.

¹ De Bianju sends her back into her cupboard after the kiss, stupifies Lybius, and reveals his name and parentage to him.—*Giglinus*, son of *Gauvain* (Gawaine), and *la fille des Blancs Mains*, then sends him to sleep, and on his waking shows him the lady at her toilet (p. 115), fairer than any one else in the world, except she of the *Blancs Mains* (who excels Paris's Elaine, Iseu la blonde, Biblis, Lavine de Lombardie, and Morge la fée, (p. 152). This all takes place in *L'ille de la Montbestee* (p. 116); and the lady declares herself as the daughter of *le bon roi Gringars*. She narrates how *Mabons* and *Eucains* enchanted the 5000 inhabitants and made them destroy the city, and then turned her into a worm. Of the town she says:

... ceste ville par droit non
 Est appelée Senaudon :

Por ce que Mabons l'a gastée,
 Est GASTECITÉE apelée. (p. 120.)

But as the story has been sketched in the Introduction, I only note here that the lady's name, BLONDE ESMEERÉ, is not given till p. 130, when she is starting for Arthur's court.—F.

² MS. alsoe.—F.

³ God yelde þe dy whyle,
 þat my fon þou woldest slo.—Cot.
 God yelde the thi wille,
 My foon thou woldest sloo.—Lam.

⁴ Be wordes of hare mouth.—Cot.
 With maystres of her mouth.—Lam.

⁵ this word signifies mingled, mixed, ap^d G. Doug. Chauc. &c.—P.

To warme me hadde þey y-went
 In wo to welde and wend.—Cot.
 To a worme they had me went,
 In wo to leven and lende.—Lam.

2176 ffor¹ thou hast saued my liffe,
 Castles 50 and ² ffine
 take to thee I will,
 & my selfe to be thy wiffe
 2180 right without striffe,
 if itt be your will."³

She promises
 Lybius
 fifty-five
 castles

and herself
 as his wife.

then was he glad & blythe,
 & thanked god often sythe⁴

Lybius is
 blithe,

2184 That him *that* grace had sent, [page 346]
 & sayd, "my Lord⁵ faire & ffree,
 all my loue I leane with thee,
 by god omnipotent!

2188 I will goe, my *Ladye* bright,
 to the castle gate ffull right,
 thither ffor to wend
 ffor to feitch your geere

and proposes
 to fetch the
 lady's
 clothes from
 the castle,

2192 *that* yee were wont to weare,
 & them I will you send.

"alsoe, if itt be your will,
 I pray you to abyde still

if she will
 stay till he
 comes back.

2196 till I come⁶ againe."

"Sir," shee said, "I you pray
 wend fforth on your way,⁷
 therof I am ffaine."

2200 Sir Lybius to the castle rode,
 there the people him abode;

Lybius rides
 to the castle

¹ because.—P. ² MS. amd.—F.

³ 3yf hyt ys artours wyll.—Cot.
 And hit be Arthures will.—Lam.

⁴ Time—also, since, afterwards. Gl.
 Chauc.—P. Cot. has for this and the
 next sixteen lines:

And lepte to horse swybe,
 And lefte þat lady styll.
 But euer he dradde prayn,
 For he was noȝt y-slayn,
 With speche he wolde hym spylle.

Lam. has nearly the same words, but
 omits the last line but one.—F.

⁵ Ladye.—P.

⁶ come in MS.—F.

⁷ "I you pray" the writer of the MS.
 was going to repeat, and got as far as
p: then he stopt, put in *on* after *I*,
 added *r* to *yo*", and *way* to the *p*, so
 that the words are "I on your pway."
 —F.

- to Iesu chr[i]st gan they crye
 ffor to send them tydings glad
 2204 of them *that* Long had
 done them tormentrye.
 Sir Lybius is to the Castle come,
 & to Sir Lamberd he told anon,
 2208 and alsoe the Barronye,¹
 how Sir Mabam was slaine
 & Sir Iron, both twayne,
 by the helpe of mild Marye.
- 2212 when *that* Knight soe keene
 had told how itt had beene
 to them all by-deene,
 a rich robe good & ffine,
 He sends a
 rich robe 2216 well ffurred with good Ermine,
 he sent *that* Ladye sheene ;
- and garlands
 to the lady,
 Kerchers and garlands rich
 he sent to her priuilege,²
 2220 *that* mayd ho wold home bring.³
 & when shee was readye dight,
 thither they went anon-right,
 both old and young,
- and all the
 people of
 Sinadowne
 go and
 fetch her
 home.
 2224 & all the ffolke of Sinadowne
 with a ffaire procession
 the Ladye home they flett.
 & when they were come to towne,
 They crown
 her,
 2228 of precyous gold a rich crowne
 there on her head thé sett.
- and thank
 God.
 they were glad and blythe,
 & thanked god often sithe

¹ i. e. The Barrons collectively.—P.² i. e. privily.—P.³ A-non with-out dwellynge.—Cot.
A byrd hit ganne hir bringe.—Lan

2232 that from woe them had brought.
all the Lords of dignitye
did him homage and fealtye,
as of right they ought.

2236 they dwelled 7 dayes in the tower
there Sir Lamberd was gouernor,
with mirth, Ioy, and game;
& then they rode with honor

Lybius and
the lady stay
seven dayes
there,
and then
ride off to
Arthur.

2240 vnto King Arthur,
the Knights all in-same.

ffins.¹

¹ It is so very wrong of the copier or translator to have broken off the story without giving the wedding between Lybius and his love, that I add it here from the three unprinted MSS. as well as the Cotton one. The Lincoln's Inn and Ashmole MSS. have more stanzas than the Cotton and Lambeth ones.

*Lincoln's Inn MS. Hale, No. 150, art. i.,
last leaf.*

þay þankyð god almyȝt,
Boþe Arthur and his knyȝt,
þat þeo [ne] hadde ⁊ schame.
Arthur þaf as blyue
Librus þat may to wyue
þat was so gent a dame.

þeo murthe of þeo brydale,
Nomon con wip tale
Telle hit in no geste.
In þat semly sale
Weore lordes monye and sale,
And ladyes wel honeste.

þer was ryche seruyse
Boþe to fool and wyse,
To leste and to meste.
þer wan þay yche ȝifþes, (back of leaf)
wile mynstral a ryȝtis,
And summe þat weore vnprest.

Sir Gawayn, knyȝt of renoun,
made to þeo lady of synaydoun,
"Madame, trouely,
be þat weddide þe wip pruyde,
ȝ þat him by a forrest syde
On a gentyl lady."

Ashmole MS. 61, leaf 58b.

They thankyd god of his myȝtes,
Kyng Arthur And hys knyȝtes,
That sche had no schame.
Arthur þane be-lyue (leaf 59)
Syr lybeus þat mey to wyue,
That was so jent: ll A dame.

The my[r]the of þat brydall
May no man tell wita tale
Ne sey in no geste:
Yn þat semly sale
Where brydes grete and smale,
And ladies full honeste;
There was many A mane,
And seruyse gode wone
Both to most and leste.
Fore with þe mynstralles Alle
That [were] with-in þat halle
And tȝylles of þe beste.

Syr lybeus moder so fre
Come to þat mangerre;
Hyre ruld was rede as ryse;
Sche knew lybeus wele be syȝt,
And wist wele A-dome ryȝt
That he was of mych pryse.
Sche went to ser gawene,
And seyde, "with-outen leye

• An s, blotted, stands here in the MS.—F.

† had.—F.

(*Lincoln's Inn MS. continued.*)

þanne þat lady blyþe was,
And ful ofte kyssed his fas,
And haylsel [*sic*] hym sykyrly.
Sir Libeus þan wold kype:
he wente to his fader swyþe,
And kyssed him tymes monye.

he kneoled in þat stounde,
And saide, kneoland on grounde,
"for godis loue al weldand,
þat made þeo world so round,
fayre fadir, or y fonde,
blesse me wiþ þyn hond."
þat hynde knyzt Gawayn
blessyd þeo child wiþ mayn,
And made him seoppe vp stande.
he comaundyd knyzt and sweyn
To clepe Libeus "Gengelayne,"
þat was lord of lond.

fourty dayes þay dwellyd,
And heore feste faire heold
wiþ Arthoure þeo kyng.
As þeo gest vs tolde,
Arthour wiþ knyztis bolde
hom gonno þay brynge.
twenty yere þay lyued in-same
wiþ muhe gleo and game,
he and þat swete þynge.
Ihesu Cryst oure saucour,
And his modir þat swete flour,
spede vs at our nede!

Explicit Libius do-sconius [? MS.]

(*Ashmole MS. continued.*)

Thys is owre chyld so fre."
Than was he glad *and* blyth,
And kyssed hym many A sythe,
And seyde, "þat lykes me."

Syre gawen, knyzt of renowne,
Seyd to þe lady of synadoun,
"Madame, treuly
He þat hath þe wedyd with pride,
Y gate hym vnd[er] A forest syde
Off a gentyll lady."
Than þat lady was blyth,
And thankyd hym many A syth,
And kyssed hym sykerly.
Than lybeus to hym wan,
And þer he kyssed þat man;
Fore soth treuly

He fell on kneys in þat stound,
lybeus knelyd on þe ground,
And seyde, "fore god All weldinge
That made þe world rownd,
Feyre fadir, wele be 3e fownd!
Blysse me with þour blyssynge!"

That hend knyzt gawene
Blyssed hys sone with mayne,
And made hym vp to stond,
And comandyd knyzt *and* sweyne
To calle hym gyngelyane,
That was lorde of lond.

Forty deys þer they duellyd, [leaf 59b.]
And grete fest þei held
With Arthour þe kyng.
As þe gest hath told,
Arthour with knyhtes bold
Home gane hym brynge.
X 3ere þei lyued in-same
With mokyll gle and game,
He *and* that suete thyng.
Ihesu cryst owre sauour,
And his moder þat suete floure,
To heuene blys vs brynge!

Here endes þe lyfe—
Y telle 3ow with-outen stryfe—
Off gentyll libeus disconus.
Fore his saule now byd 3e
A pater noster And An Ave,
Fore þe loue off Ihesus,
That he of hys sawle haue pyte,
And off owrys, iff hys wyll be,
When we schall wend þer-to.
And 3e þat haue herd þat talkynge,
3e schall haue þe blyssynge
Of Ihesu cryst All-so.

[*Finis.*]

Cotton, Calig. A. ii. fol. 57, col. 2.

And þonkede godes myȝtes,
 Artoure *and* hys knyȝtes,
 Ðat he ne hadde no schame.
 Artoure yaf here al so * blyue,
 Lybeanus to be hys wyfe,
 Ðat was so gentylle a dame.

De Ioye of þat bredale
 Nys not told yn tale,
 Ne rekened yn no gest.
 Barons *and* lordynges fale
 Come to þat semyly sale,
 And ladyes welle honeste.

Der was ryche seruyse
 Of alle þat men kouþ deuyse,
 To lest & ek to mest.
 De menstrales yn boure & halle
 Hadde ryche yftes with-alle,
 And þey þat weryn vnwrest.

Fourty dayes þey dwellede
 And hare feste helde
 With artoure þe kyng.
 As þe frenssche tale teld,
 Artoure with knyȝtes beld
 At hom gan hem brynge.

Fele ȝere þey leuede yn-same
 With moche gle & game,
 Lybeanus & þat swete þyng.
 Ihesu cryst oure sauoure,
 And hys modere þat swete floure,
 Graunte vs alle good endynge.
 Amen.

Explicit libeauns desconus.

Lambeth MS. 306, leaf 106.

They thanked god with al his myghtis,
 Arthur and alle his knyghtis,
 That he hade no shame.
 Arthur gave als blyve
 Lybeous that lady to wyfe,
 That was so gentille a dame.

The myrroure of that brydale
 No man myght telle with tale
 In Ryme nor in geste.
 In that semely Saale
 Were lordys many and fale,
 And ladies fulle honeste.

There was Riche Service
 Bothe to lorde and ladyes,
 To leste and eke to moste.
 Thare were gevyn riche giftis,
 Euche mynstrale her thriftis,
 And some that were vnbrest.

ffourty dayes thei dwelden,
 And ther here feste heldeñ
 With Arthur the kynge,
 As the ffrenssche tale vs tolde.
 Arthur kyng, with his knyghtis bolde,
 Home he gonne hem brynge.

Servyn yere they levid same
 With mekyllle Ioye and game,
 He and that swete thyng.
 Nowe Ihesu Criste oure Savioure,
 And his moder, that swete floure,
 Grawnte vs gode Endynge! Amen.

Explicit libious Disconyus.

* MS. also.

Childe Maurice :¹

THIS piece has been already printed from the Folio, just as it is by Jamieson in his *Popular Ballads and Songs* (1806).

The other versions of the old ballad are, *Gil Morice* given by Percy in the *Reliques* from a printed edition current in Scotland, *Child Noryce* and *Chield Morice* given by Motherwell from recitations, 3 stanzas of a traditional version given by Jamieson. The number of these versions shows how popular the ballad was. Another proof is its use by Langhorne, by Home, and others, as the basis of longer, more pretentious works. Of the said versions *Gil Morice* and *Chield Morice* closely resemble each other, and are infinitely less forcible than the other two. They are intolerably prolix. The fire is quenched with much water. They are the offspring of men who possessed the faculty of Midas with a difference—they turned everything they touched into dross. The other two versions are admirably terse and vigorous, and have a right to places in the first ranks of our ballad-poetry. Undoubtedly the less corrupted is the Folio version; but, unhappily, it is somewhat imperfect.

This is indeed a noble specimen of our ballad-poetry in all its strength. For the overpowering vigour of its objective style it may be compared with *Little Musgrave and Lady Bernard*. How vivid every picture it paints is! how effective every stroke! Not a word is wasted. The writer is too absorbed in the action of his piece to indulge in any comments, or moralisings, or superfluities of any sort.

Semper ad eventum festinat, et in medias res,
Non secus ac notas, auditorem rapit.

¹ vid. Scottish Edition which is evidently a modern Improvement.—P.

This abstinence from all reflections and sentimentalities is indescribably impressive. The ballad-writer of later times is too often like the guide who introduces the traveller to a fine cathedral, and disturbs the glorious effect of the sight with his intrusive conceited garrulity. This old writer presents us with a wonderful spectacle without putting in ever a word of his own. You forget the guide, and are given up wholly to the effect of the spectacle. If we could never consider the heavens without having suggested to us the names of the stars and their sizes and distances from the earth! This old writer is content to let his tale produce its own effect. He conceives it in all its tremendous force, too really to permit him to criticise or dally with it in any way. Feeling much, he says little. Hence the intensity of his narration.

What strange wild pictures he paints! The Child in the silver wood,

sitting on a block
With a silver comb in his hand,
Kembing his yellow lock.

—the foot-page hasting on his errand with the presents of the grass-green mantle and of the gold and precious stone rings—the husband and his wife's son drying on the grass or a sleeve their bright brown swords—the victor, his supposed rival's head cut off, how he

pricked it on his sword's point,
Went singing there beside,
And he rode till he came to the lady fair
Whereas this lady lied,
& says, "Dost thou know Child Maurice head
If that thou dost it see?
And lap it soft and kiss it oft,
For thou lovedst him better than me.

—the mother recognising in her slain lover her one only son. That terrible passage in the *Bacchæ* of Euripides, where the scales fall from Agave's eyes, naturally suggests itself as one looks at that last picture; though there, indeed, the horror of

the situation is deepened by the fact that her own hands have done the deed :



ἔα, τί λεύσσω ; τί φέρομαι τόδ' ἐν χεροῖν ;

Then answers Cadmus :

ἄθρησον αὐτὸ καὶ σαφέστερον μάθε.

ΑΓ. ὁρῶ μέγιστον ἄλγος ἢ τάλαιν' ἐγώ.

ΚΑ. μῶν σοιλέοντι φαίνεται προσεικέναι ;

ΑΓ. οὐκ· ἀλλὰ Πενθέως ἢ τάλαιν' ἔχω κῆρα.

Child
Maurice,
while
hunting,

CHILDE Maurice hunted ithe siluen ¹ wood,
he hunted itt round about,
& noebodye *that* he ffound therin,
4 nor none there was with-out.

tells his
footpage

² & he tooke his siluer combe in his hand,
to kembe his yellow lockes ;
he sayes, " come hither, thou litle ffoot page,
8 *that* runneth ³ lowlye by my knee ;
ffor thou shalt goe to Iohn stewards wiffe
& pray her speake with mee.

to go to John
Steward's
wife,

greet her as
many times
as there are
knots on a
net,

" & as itt ffalls out many times,
12 as knotts beene knitt on a kell,⁴
or Marchant men gone to Leeue London
either to buy ware or sell,

and ask her

" I, and greete thou doe *that* Ladye well,
16 euer soe well ffroe mee,—
And as itt ffalles out many times
as any hart can thinke,

[page 347]

¹ The downstroke of the *r* of *siluen* is made twice over.—F.

² Prof. Child dots two lines as missing, before lines 5, 15, & 21, and after line 64. *Ballads* ii. 313–16.—F.

³ MS. rumeth.—F.

⁴ Kelle, *reticulum*, *retiaculum* (Catholicon). *Reticula* a lytell nette or kalle. *Reticinellum*, a kalle (Ortus) . . . The fashion of confining the hair in an orna-

mental network, which occasionally was jewelled, seems to have obtained in England from the time of Henry III. until that of Elizabeth, and an endless variety of examples are afforded by illuminated MSS. and monumental effigies. It was termed *calle* or *kelle*, a term directly taken, perhaps, from the French *cale*, Latin *calantica* or *callus*. Way in *Promptorium*, p. 270, note ¹.—F.

20 “as schoole masters are in any schoole house
 writting with pen and linke,—
 ffor if I might, as well as shee may,
 this night I wold with her speake.

24 “& heere I send her a mantle of greene,
 as greene as any grasse,
 & bidd her come to the siluer wood
 to hunt with Child Maurice ;

to come and
hunt with
him.

28 “& there I send her a ring of gold,
 a ring of precyous stone,
 & bidd her come to the siluer wood ;
 let ffor no kind of man.”

He sends her
a ring.

32 one while this litle boy he yode,
 another while he ran ;
 vntill he came to Iohn Stewards hall,
 I-wis he neuer blan.

The footpage
goes to John
Steward's
hall,

36 & of nurture the child had good ;
 hee ran vp hall & bower ffree,
 & when he came to this Lady ffaire,
 sayes, “god you saue and see !

and gives
the lady

40 “I am come ffrom Ch[i]ld Maurice,
 a message vnto thee ;
 & Child Maurice, he greetes you well,
 & euer soe well ffrom mee.

Child
Maurice's
message :

44 “& as itt ffalls out oftentimes,
 as knotts beene knitt on a kell,
 or Marchant men gone to leeu London,
 either ffor to buy ware or sell,

he greets
her as many
times as
there are
knobs on
her cap,

48 “& as oftentimes he greetes you well
 as any hart can thinke,
 or schoolemasters in any schoole
 wryting with pen and inke ;

he sends her
a green
mantle

“ & heere he sends a Mantle of greene,
52 as greene as any grasse,
& he bidds you come to the siluer wood,
to hunt with Child Maurice.

and a gold
ring.

“ & heere he sends you a ring of gold,
56 a ring of the precyous stone,
he prayes you to come to the siluer wood,
let ffor no kind of man.”

and begs her
to come to
the wood to
him.

“ now peace, now peace, thou litle ffootpage,
60 ffor Christes sake, I pray thee !
ffor if my lord heare one of these words,
thou must be hanged hye ! ”

John
Steward
overhears
this,
orders his
steed

John steward stood vnder the Castle wall,
64 & he wrote the words euerye one,
& he called vnto his horskeeper,
“ make readye you my steede ! ”

and armour,

I, and soe hee did to his Chamberlaine,
68 “ make readye then my weede ! ”

rides to the
wood,

& he cast a lease¹ vpon his backe,
& he rode to the siluer wood ;
& there he sought all about,
72 about the siluer wood,

finds Child
Maurice,

& there he ffound him Child Maurice
sitting vpon a blocke,
with a siluer combe in his hand
76 kemming his yellow locke.

and asks
what he
means.

he sayes, “ how now, how now, Child Maurice ?
alacke ! how may this bee ? ”
but then stood vp him Child Maurice,
80 & sayd these words trulye :

¹ ? leash, thong, cord. See *lees*, *lese* in Halliwell.—F.

"I doe not know your Ladye," he said,
"if *that* I doe her see."

The Child
says he
doesn't know
John's wife.
"And yet
you've sent
her love-
tokens,

84 "for thou hast sent her loue tokens,
more now then 2 or 3;

"for thou hast sent her a Mantle of greene,
as greene as any grasse,
& bade her come to the siluer woode
88 to hunt with Child Maurice;

a green
mantle,

"& thou [hast] sent her a ring of gold,
a ring of precyous stone,
& bade her come to the siluer wood,
92 let for noe kind of man.

and a gold
ring,

and bade
her come to
the wood to
you!

"and by my faith, now, Child Maurice,
the tone of vs shall dye!"

One of us
shall die."

"Now be my troth," sayd Child Maurice, [page 348]
96 "& *that* shall not be I."

but hee pulled forth a bright browne¹ sword
& dryed itt on the grasse,
& soe fast he smote att Iohn Steward,
100 I-wisse he neuer rest.

then hee pulled forth his bright browne sword,
& dryed itt on his slecue;
& the first good stroke Iohn stewart stroke,
104 Child Maurice head he did cleene;

John draws
his sword,
splits the
Child's head,

& he pricked itt on his swords poynt,
went singing there beside,
& he rode till he came to *that* Ladye faire
108 wheras this ladye Lyed;

carries it on
his sword-
point to his
wife,

¹ Only half the s in the MS.— F.

and sayes, "dost thou know Child Maurice head
if *that* thou dost itt see ?

and with her
in her hand

& lapp itt soft, & kisse itt off,

112 ffor thou louedst him better then mee."

She says
to him
and he says
to her child

but when shee looked on Child Maurice head,
shee neuer spake words but 3,

"I neuer beare no Child but one,

116 & you haue slaine him trulye."

John
sawed
reynolds
the man for
the day long
time in his
wrath;

sayes, "wicked be my merrymen all,

I gaue Meate, drinke, & Clothe !

but cold they not haue holden me

120 when I was in all *that* wrath ?

He has slain
his wife and
his son

"ffor I haue slaine one of the curteouse[s]t Knigh
that euer bestrode a steed !

soe haue I done one [of] the fairest Ladyes

124 *that* euer ware womans weede ! "

ffins.

Phillis hoe:

HERE apparently one endeavours to reconcile an offended swain to his offending mistress. He had begged a kiss, it would seem, and been denied it; had concluded that his Phillis cared nothing for him. Deaf to all the pleas urged in her behalf, he rejoices that he has escaped from her. We do not know any other copy of the song.

SHEPARDES hoe! Shepards hoe!

harkes how Phillis¹ calles thee! La: La: La:

Phillis hoe: Phillis hoe!

4 "shall I lose my Phillis? noe, noe, noe!"

"what ailes thee Shepard [that thou] looke soe sadd?
where is thy louely lasse shold make thee gladd?"

Why are you
sad?

"ay me! my mistress proues vntrue,

8 & my louely lasse bidds me adew!"

"My love is
false."

"Shepards, ffye! Sheperds, ffye!

doe not wrong thy lasse, & noe cause whye."

No, she is
not.

"Phillis noe, Phillis noe!

12 but if shee proue light in loue, Ile let her goe."

thus wee poore mayds must beare the blame,

which² inconstant men deserue the same.

if ought be ill, tis our amisse,

16 but a womans word is noe iudge in this.

"Come away! Come away!

see! the louelye lasse tripps ore the lay."

Come and
look at her.

"lett her goe! lett her goe!

"Not I, let
her go.

20 neuer more shall my loue say mee noe."

¹ The first *l* is much like an *s* in the MS. The colons in lines 2 and 3 are those of the MS. Before the first *La* Percy inserts *hoe*.—F. ² while.—P.

“ ffye shepard ! thou thy loue dost wrong !
ffor maides, thé dare not doe amidst a throng.”

She
wouldn't
kiss me !”

24 “ O, beg I did but one pore kisse ;
but shee with coy disdaine said noe by Iys. ¹”

Don't be
jealous,

“ Ielous loue, Ielous loue,
herafter doth vnconstant proue.”

“ many ffind, ² many ffind
28 women & their words are like the winde.
men sweare thé loue, & do protest ;
but when a woman sweares, shee doth but Iest.
who Iestes with loue, playes with a bayte
32 *that* doth wound the hart with slye decepte.”

love your
love again ;

“ Shepards swaine, Shepards swaine,
let thy lasse inioy thy loue againe !
Iff maids pray, if maids pray,

women must
have their
way.

36 women in their wants will haue noe nay ;
thus women they must learne to wooe,
when men fforgetts what nature bidds them do.”
“ if women wooe, tis much abuse,
40 tho cuningly they coyne ³ a coy excuse.”

“ Haples shee, hapless shee
that doth loue ⁴ soc base a swaine as thee !”

“ No, I'm not
such a fool.

“ happye I, happye I :
44 *that* ffortune haue such folly for to fflye !
base minds to basenes still will flee,
but honor in an honored hart doth lye.

We shep-
herds are as
coy as
kings.”

tho base, my mind true honor brings ; ffins.
48 [w]ee shepards in our loues are as coy as Kings.”

¹ noe Iwis. — P.

² There is a tag to the *d*. — F.

³ MS. coyme. — F.

⁴ Three strokes for the *u*. — F.

Guy & Colebrande : ¹

[In 3 Parts.—P.]

“GUY & PHILLIS” is simply a *résumé*, with some slight additions from other sources, of the old romance of *Guy of Warwick*; “Guy & Amaranth” and “Guy & Colbrand” are versions, one modern, by Samuel Rowlands, the other much older, of scenes in that romance.

The presence in the MS. Folio of three pieces dealing with Sir Guy is a sign of the immense popularity he enjoyed, if any sign were needed. But indeed there is no lack of evidence of his warm acceptance with the Middle Ages as well in foreign countries as in England. Certainly among the heroes of romance he was one of the most popular. At home, Arthur, and Sir Bevis, and he, surpassed all others in the extent and endurance of the admiration they attracted. There is nothing more touching anywhere than the story of the last moments of Guy. Such was its intrinsic interest, that it won the ear of the world solely on the strength of it; for the story seems never to have been worthily told. Not one of the three poems treasured up in the Folio is of any considerable literary value. Nor can higher praise be bestowed on the old romance. “Guy of Warwick,” says Ellis, “is certainly one of the most ancient and popular, and no less certainly one of the dullest and most tedious of our early romances.” Dull and tedious it emphatically is. This jewel then has never yet been skilfully set. But its preciousness was appreciated in spite of the rude craftsmen into whose hands it

¹ A curious old Song, but very incorrect.—P.

had fallen. Its lustre glorified its clumsy encasements as the beauty of the beggar-maid her unworthy dress.

As shines the moon in cloudy skies
She in her poor attire was seen.

The oldest form in which we have the story is that of an Anglo-Norman romance, *Romanz de Gui de Warwyk*, extant, as Ritson informs us, in the library of Corpus Christi College, Cambridge (l. 6), and in the University Library (More 690), Harl. MSS. No. 3775, King's MSS. 8 F. ix. There are two fragments of it in the Bodleian (printed in the *British Bibliographer*, iii. 268; see Introduction to the Abbotsford Club edition of the copy of the English romance in the Auchinleck MS.). Other fragments were found in the cover of an old book by Sir Thomas Phillips. There is also a copy in the Bibl. Impériale (MSS. de Colbert, 4289), Paris. There was a copy at Bruges in 1467, at Brussels in 1487, as we learn from Barrois' account of the *Librairies du Fils du Roi Jean Charles V.*, &c. (See *Guy de Warwick*, Abbotsford Club, Introduction.) This French work was composed probably in the thirteenth century. Its composer may possibly have been Walter of Exeter, as is stated by Carew in his *Survey of Cornwall*. Whoever composed it, and wherever, it was done into English early in the fourteenth century, which English version is mentioned in the Prologue to Hampole's *Speculum Vitæ*, or *Mirroure of Life*, written about 1350, amongst the popularities of the day:

I warne you firste at the begynnyngo
That I will make no vayne carpyngo
Of dedes of armes, ne of amours,
As does mynstellis & gestours,
That maketh carpyngo in many a place
Of Octavione & Isenbrace,
And of many other gestes
And namely when they come to festes,
Ne of the lyf of Bevis of Hamptonne
That was a knyght of grete renoune,
Ne of Syr Gye of Warwyke. (*apud* Warton, H. Eng. P.)

and by Chaucer in the *Rime of Sir Topas* (about 1380) as one of the romances of price of his day. Of it the oldest copy extant is preserved in the Auchinleck MS. There are others in Caius College and the Public Libraries, Cambridge. It was still in demand in the sixteenth century, and was then printed by Copland, and by Cawood. The romance was then condensed, as was the custom, into a ballad. In 159½ Richard Jones has entered on the Register of the Stationers' Company "A pleasante songe of the valiant actes of Guy of Warwicke to the tune of *Was ever man so tost in love.*" This is the "Guy & Phillis" of the present volume. The common title, says Percy, is "A pleasant song of the valiant deeds of chivalry atchieved by that noble knight Sir Guy of Warwick, who for the love of fair Phelis became a hermit & dyed in a cave of craggy rocke, a mile distant from Warwick." Of this ballad there are copies in the Bagford, the Pepys, and the Roxburghe Collections. The legend was afterwards rendered into prose, and in that shape printed again and again down to very recent times. In the British Museum Library there is a copy of the 7th edition of a cheap printed prose version, 1733. Ellis speaks of this popular form as "to be found at almost every stall in the metropolis." The Anglo-Norman romance was converted into prose in 1525.

But the story was not given up wholly to the romance-writers and their followers. The oldest other recital of it now extant may possibly be that ascribed to Gerard of Cornwall, printed by Hearne in the Appendix to his edition of the *Annales de Dunstable*. This *Historia Guidonis de Werwyke* is preserved in MS. 147, Magd. Coll. Oxford. "There is not however anything else of Gerard's in the Magd. MS. (which the compiler has seen), and the short piece which has been printed is written at the end of Higden's Polychronicon, on the same page with it, and preceding its copious index." (See *Macray's Manual of British Historians.*) Of Gerard's date and life nothing whatever is

known. "He is said to have written a book *De Gestis Britonum*, and another *De Gestis Regum West-Saxonum*, which are referred to three times by Th. Rudburn in his History of Winchester. This also mentions him in his catalogue of historians in Holinshed, p. 1590." This piece, whenever written and by whomsoever, describes the famous fight with Colbrand much as the Folio MS. version narrates it. An entry in the Registry of the priory at Winchester, quoted by Warton in his *History of English Poetry*, tells us that when Adam de Orleten, bishop of Winchester, visited his cathedral priory of St. Swithin in that city, "Cantabat jocularior quidam, nomine Herebertus, *Canticum Colbrondi*, necnon gestum Emme regine, a judicio ignis liberate in aula prioris." The first certain historical mention of the great Saxon champion is to be found, as Ritson points out, in the Robert de Brunne's translation with additions, made *circ.* 1338, of Peter Langtoft's Chronicle, written *circ.* 1308.

That was Guy of Warwik, as the boke sais,
There he slouh Colbrant with hache Daneis.

The story of Guy's abnegation of his wife, and his lonely uncomforted end in the cell he had hewn for himself, is told in chapter clxxii. of the *Gesta Romanorum*, compiled in all probability about the same time with Langtoft's Chronicle. This compilation, made to serve mediæval preachers for purposes of illustration, naturally took that part of the story that exemplified their favourite teachings. Towards the end of the same, the fourteenth century, Henry Knighton, Canon of Leicester, in his *Chronicon de Ecentibus Angliæ ab anno 950 ad 1395*, recounted the old tale at full length. He introduces it with a sort of apology. "Set quia historia dicti Guidonis," he writes, "cunctis seculis laudabili memoria commendanda est, in presenti historia immiscere curavi." Then he relates, with circumstances, how "Olavus rex Daciæ," "Golanus rex Norwegiæ," and "dux Neustriæ," invaded England and besieged King Athelstan for a space of two years

in Winchester. They had enlisted in the service of their expedition a vast Saracen, “*de Africâ quendam gigantem, Colebrandum nomine, qui eo tempore fortissimus et elegantissimus reputabatur in orbe,*” described subsequently as “*diabolicæ staturæ,*” and by Guy when he stands face to face with him as “*non homo, immo potius spiritus diaboli in effigie hominis latens.*” Eventually a truce, “*treuga,*” was agreed to, and the determining of the war by a single combat. But there seemed scant hope of finding a match for Colebrand, who was of course put forward to maintain the Scandinavian cause. Then follows, as in “*Guy & Colbrand,*” an account of the vision that appeared to the perplexed King Athelstan, and how, obeying it, and posting himself “*ad altam primam*” at one of the city’s gates, he saw amongst the entering crowd “*virum elegantem cursantem, de una sclauma alba vestitum, et unum sertum de albis rosis in capite tectum, fustemque grandem in manu ferentem; set multum erat debilitatus et discoloratus anxietateque minoratus, eo quod nudipes laboravit, barbamque prolixam habuit.*” This wild woe-begone figure was Guy—Guy in deep distress for his sins, and caring only to escape from hospitalities to pray for indulgence and pardon. But he is moved at last to undertake the combat with the giant. “*Fecit se armari de melioribus armaturis regis, et cinxit se gladio Constantini* [the sword of Constantine the Great and the spear of Charlemagne were among the presents given to Athelstan by Hugh, Duke of the Franks] *lanceamque sancti Mauricii in manu tulit.*” Then the fight is described with extreme minuteness. Colbrand seems overpowering till Guy cuts off his sword-arm; “*Quod Dani videntes, multum ex hoc contabuerunt, et Deos suos in Colubrandi adjutorum cum ejulatu magno invocare cœperunt.*” And then comes the final scene in the hero’s life.

In 1410, as Dugdale (Baron. i. 243) relates on the authority of Rous, to whom we shall come presently, Guy’s fame was well spread abroad at Jerusalem; for the Soldan’s lieutenant hearing

of the Holy Land, then travelling in the Holy Land, "was
 slain by the hands of Guy of Warwick, whose story they
 translated into the English language, invited him to his palace:
 where he presented him with three precious stones
 for his wounds, his horses, his folk and gold given to his
 army." The last of the three, as Percy prints out *Reliques*,
 is the one mentioned in the old Spanish romance, "Tirante
 el Blanco," which, as I have said, was written not long after the
 publication of *Amadis de Gaulle*. Of the fifteenth century Rudburn,
 who has been mentioned above in a quotation, a Benedictine
 of Winton, called *Historia*, distinguish him from another
 of the same name who had Bishop of St. David's in
 the reign of Henry III. of the great conflict. Leland in his
Itinerary, folio 100, quotes the chronicler Thome Rudbourne
 thus of "Warwicens" this amongst other passages: "Tertio
 Henrico regis, bellum inter Oxonia Danum & Guidonem
 comitem Warwik, extra civitatem civitatis Wintoniensis pla-
 ceat, ubi bellum Hylme bellicum Denmarsch appellatus est,
 pugna memorabilis. Hylme Insignia vero victoriae servatur
 in capite gigantis, cuius truncatum erat: caput
 huiusmodi bellum in Warwick in eadem cathedrali Wintonie
 usque hodie locum tenet." Rudborne describes the fight more
 fully than *Historia* of Wintonensis, *apud* Warton's *Anglia*
Scripta. Thus the "Hex Dacum" is "Anlaf:" the scene of
 the conflict is Hylme Mole: the "gigas" is "mine longitudinis,
 huiusmodi bellum ut bellum meditationis ignarus." Lydgate,
 agreeing with Rudborne, versified the above-mentioned *Hil-*
marke of the battle of Hylme, just as Samuel Rowland, something
 more than a century after him, retold the conflict of Guy with
 Amantia in the form given in this volume. Lydgate's work,
 never yet printed, is preserved among the Bodleian MSS. and

This story is told in rude transcript of the cathedral till within
 painting against the walls of the north bay memory." Warton, H. E. P.

... was the worst Knight living in his day. ... that he had some his hart of ... and was welled to him. This ... what he had ... that part of his lyf ... as his ... and many grete ... of Colbrand at ... unknown ... as a pilgrime ... at Githel and his ... And two dayes after his ... of this world and of his ... at Githel were they bothe ... him till his sworn ... without lett. And ... for her ... And in remem- ... pleased som good ... men that cowde help ... wearinge ... and their habitation ...

... had evidently long before Rous's ... at Warwick and at Winchester. ... of Githelife or Guycliffe: "Ould ... that Guido Earl of ... lived in this place like a ... with Felice, untill at the Article of his ... Here is a Louse of Pleasure, a ... There is splendour, a praty Wood, *antra* ... the river flowing over the stones with a praty ... *fontes liquidi et gemmei,* ... *et per saxa discursus,* ... *amiciissima."* The heart of the ... is the lively spot.

... if the word may be used in this case,

for the legend. At any rate, they may serve to show how old it is, and how widely and generally popular it was. In the Elizabethan literature allusions to it abound, though, strangely enough, not one occurs in the plays of Shakespeare, familiar as he must have been with it and the locality to which the more touching part is attached. Puttenham, in his *Art of Poetry* (1589), speaks of "places of assembly where the company shall be desirous to hear of old adventures and valiances of noble knights in times past, as are those of King Arthur and the Knights of the round table—Sir Bevis of Southampton, Guy of Warwick, and others like." In Dr. King's *Dialogues of the Dead* (quoted by Mr. Chappell), "It is the negligence of our ballad singers," a Ghost remarks, "that makes us to be talked of less than others; for who almost besides St. George, King Arthur, Bevis, Guy and Hickathrift, are in the chronicles?" The Little French Lawyer in Fletcher's play of the name, and Old Master Merrythought in the *Knight of the Burning Pestle* sing snatches of the *Legend*. Corbet in his *Iter Boreale* wishes,

May all the ballads be call'd in & dye,
Which sing the warrs of Colebrand & Sir Guy.

Butler tells us of Talgol, one of Hudibras' supporters (who, according to L'Estrange, represented a certain Newgate Market butcher),

He many a boar & huge dun-cow
Did, like another Guy, o'erthrow;
But Guy with him in fight compar'd
Had like the boar or dun-cow far'd.

Such has been the popularity of this story. The oldest literary form of it preserved to us is, as we have seen, an Anglo-Norman romance, composed probably in the thirteenth century. This, no doubt, was founded on songs and traditions that were then commonly in vogue in the country, that had then already been so for many a generation. These were dressed and decorated by the romance-writer according to the fashion of his age;

the old Saxon hero transformed into a Norman knight, dispatched to the crusades, conducted from tournament to tournament throughout Europe, and carried through all the adventures proper for a hero of chivalry. One most prominent feature of the romance is its monastic feeling, which, indeed, is so strong that one may well believe it to be the work of a monk. A terrible remorse seizes Guy at last for all the blood he has shed, and his love for the woman who has incited him to his blood-shedding career passes away. Is this penitential element part of the original tale? Was this sung of by old pre-Norman gleemen? Or is it rather to be ascribed to the translator and editor of the thirteenth century? Probably so. In the old Saxon poetry, so far as is known, women occupy but an unimportant place. Neither there, nor indeed in the life which that poetry reflects, do they "rain influence and adjudge the prize." Moreover, one can well conceive such an addition being made to the story in the thirteenth century, a period of a great monastic revival—a period of much doubt as to matrimony, an uneasy suspicion prevailing that it was an indulgence which the truly pious man would scarcely allow himself. Such a suspicion enters the soul of Guy, when at last, after waiting and longing and serving so long, he is at last crowned with the happiness of his heart; he resolves to abandon the treasure gained. How noble and devout such an abandonment was held to be by the mediæval monks may be seen from endless instances, notably from the story of Saint Alexios, of whom Alban Butler thus writes¹:

Having, in compliance with the will of his parents, married a rich and virtuous lady, he on the very day of the nuptials, making use of the liberty which the laws of God and his church give a person before the marriage be consummated, of preferring a more perfect state, secretly withdrew, in order to break all the ties which held him in this world. In disguise he travelled into a different country, em-

¹ See Appendix at the end of this Introduction.

braced extreme poverty, and resided in a hut adjoining to a church dedicated to the Mother of God. Being after some time there discovered to be a stranger of distinction, he returned home, and being relieved as a poor pilgrim, lived some time unknown in his father's house, bearing the contumely and ill-treatment of the servants with invincible patience and silence. A little before he died he by a letter discovered himself to his parents.

Guy's wife-desertion then, and his severe asceticism, may be later additions to his original story. There can be little doubt that that original story belongs to a remote age,—possibly, as has been suggested, to an age anterior even to that assigned to it in the romance—the age of Athelstan. With this age of Athelstan it would seem to have been connected from a very early time. There is no kind of historical basis for it in what records we have of that age. There was certainly a great Northern invasion in the reign of Athelstan. Northumbria, lately annexed by him, allied itself with Scots, Danes, Welsh, and essayed to recover its independence. “They fought with Athelstan,” writes Milton, “at a place called Wenduse [which might easily have been confounded with Wynton]; others term it Brununbury, others [as William of Malmesbury] Bruneford; which Ingulph [who calls it Brunford] places beyond Humber; Camden in Glendale of Northumberland on the Scottish borders—the bloodiest fight, say authors, that ever this island saw.” Ellis suggests that Guy—he should say Egil—may be identical with one Egils, “who did in fact contribute very materially” to the victory. If this be so, then the legend must be rather Scandinavian than Saxon; for this Egil was a northern viking enlisted on the side of Athelstan. But, indeed, if the legend be an old Saxon one, there need be no difficulty in accounting for its later connection with the reign of Athelstan. That was the most glorious reign in the history of Saxon England. Athelstan reaped the rich fruits of his illustrious grandfather's wisdom and policy. He was enabled to consolidate the kingdom, and to maintain its unity unimpaired. At home

and abroad his name was known and feared. His crowning victory at Brunanburgh produced a profound impression. Even the Saxon imagination was stirred by such power and glory. "To describe his famous fight," says Milton, "the Saxon annalist, went to be sober and succinct, whether the same or another writer, now labouring under the weight of his argument and overcharged, runs on a sudden into such extravagant fancies and metaphors as bear him quite beyond the scope of being understood." Strangely enough, the great poet did not recognise in the passage he thus characterises the work of an older bard; for it is in fact one of the few Saxon poems that survive. There are many signs of a rich ballad literature, besides that spirited piece, appertaining to this great monarch's reign. There is the story of Analaf belonging to that same battle, which is evidently taken by Malmesbury from some old ballad. Then there are the stories of the King's mother's dream, and of his brother Edwin's punishment for taking part in a conspiracy against him, both which that chronicler confessedly found in old ballads. Naturally enough, the story too of the great combat with the giant was attached to his reign; for legends attract each other, so to speak. The name given in later times to the national combatant was Guy.

Other romances in course of time grew around that of Guy, treating of his son Ruiscard, of his tutor Heraud and his son.

Harl. MS. 7333, fol. 35 b.

þe ermyte with Inne litil spase
 By deþe is past þe Ende of his laboure
 Aftir whome Guy was þer successoure
 Space of two yere by grace of crist
 Ihesu
 Dauntynge his fleshe by penaunce and
 Rygour
 Ay more and more encressynge in vertue
 ¶ God made him knowe þe daye þe he
 shold dyce
 þorowe his gracious resitacioun

By an Aungel his spirit to conveye
 Aftir his bodyly Resolycioun
 For his meritis to þe hevenely mansyoun
 þan in alle haste he sent his weddyng
 Ryng
 Vn to his wyff of trewe Affeccion
 Prayd her to come | And beo at his condynge
 ¶ That she sholde doone þere hir besye
 cure
 As by A maner wyffly deligense
 In haste to ordeyne for his Cepulture

With noo pret coste ne with no grete
 dispence
 Sheo hasted hir til sheo cam in presence
 Wher þat Guy lay dedly pale of face
 Bespreynt with teeres knelyng with
 Reuerence
 þe dede body Felyce did ther inbrace
 ¶ This notable & Famouse worthi knyght
 Sent her to sayne bi his messagier
 In þilke place to burye hym anoone
 Right
 Wher that he lay to fore in A smal
 Awter
 And Afftir this doe trewly hir deveyre
 þer for her selfe dysposyn and provide
 Fyftene dayes Folowyng þe same ȝere
 She to be buried þere by Guyes syde
 ¶ His holy wyf of al this toke good hede
 Like as he badde and liste no longer
 tarye
 Tacquyte hir selfe of wyffly womanhede
 For she was loþe frome his desire to
 varye
 Sent in Al haste for þe ordenarye
 Wiche ocupied in þat dyosyse
 She was not founde in oone poynt
 contrarye
 Eche thyng tacomplyshe / as ye have
 herde devise
 ¶ And alle þis cronicle / For to conclude
 At hes Exequyes old & younge of age
 Of diuerse folke cam grete multitude
 With grete devocioune vn to þat her-
 mitage
 Lyche A prynse with al þe surplusage
 þei tooke hym vppe / and leyde him in his
 grave
 Ordeynid of god be marcyal curage
 Ageinst þe Danys þis Regioun to saue
 ¶ Whos sowle I truste restight nowe in
 glorie

With holy Spiretis Above þe Firmament
 Felice his wyf callyng to her memorye
 þe daye gane neghe of her enterrement
 To forne provided in her testament
 Reynborne þeire heyre/ioustely to succede
 By title of hir and lynealle discent
 þeorldame of warwike trewly to possede
 ¶ þe stok descendyng doune by þe pee
 dugree
 To Guy his fadir by title of mariage
 Afftir whos dethe/of lawe and equitye
 Reynborne to entre in to his Eritage
 Cleimeyng his Ryght/his moder of good
 age
 Hape yolde hir dette by dethe vnto
 nature
 By side her lorde in þat Ermitage
 Wiche eonded feyre was made hir
 Sepulture
 ¶ For to auctorise better þis matere
 Whos translacioun sheweþe þe sentence
 Oote of latyne made by þe Cronniculier
 Callid of olde Gyrard Cronubyence
 Wiche whilome wrot with gret diligence
 Dedis of hem in westesex crowned kynges
 Gretly comendyng for kneychtly ex-
 cellence
 Guy of werrewike in heos famousse
 wreytingis
 ¶ Of whos nobelesse ful gret hede he toke
 His kneychtly fame to putten in Re-
 memberavnse
 þe eleventþe chapitre/of his historialboke
 þe parfite lyf þe vertuouse gouernaunce
 His wilfulle pouertee/harde ligginge and
 penaunce
 Al sent to me in Englishe to translate
 If owght be wrong in metre or substance
 Put al þe wyte/for dulnesse oñ lydegate

Harleian MS. 5243, fol. 4.

To all heroical knightes, and illustrious
 Ladies, both in Court, and Countrie
 for virtewe, love, bewtie, chivalrie,
 prowes, bowntie: & of other com-
 plete departmentes most eminent
 and honorabl, John Lane in all
 dutie wisheth gracious perfection to
 felicitie eternal.
 After, nay before all your secular affaires,
 vouchsafe to accepte, to your recreations

the pleasant historie of this vertuous
 paire instanced in the most noble pair of
 frendes, and lovers, the Ladie Felis, and
 her exemplarie sparck of christian honor,
 Sir Gwy Earle of warwick, surnamed
 the heremite; reckoned for more then
 twoe hundred yeeres togeather, the last of
 the Nine worthies: albeit in that heroical
 ranck, hee standeth indignified, or ne-
 glected, but without anie known cause,

by some of our hereticks, for their
 I know not what sake, who doe expect
 to see some other art, best fashion in
 the world. His doings have bin
 so well received, and praised, that the
 truest, and best of the world, as it
 is, have bin so far from of the original
 history, as by all the ancient
 English poets, whose history I take to
 be the best, and not left without
 by some of our poets, as by Aristotle
 as King Arctus hath bin by the Italian
 Boissard, and by the French, and by some
 French, and Spanish, as it is reported.
 But I have bin so far from being in love with
 the English, and yet so, which our noble
 Guy, and our martial prowess, have in
 divers successive ages, as Poesie his-
 torie, hath bin the same, as well
 is it now, by our learned, and farthest
 traveled antiquarie Mr. Camden, whose
 well approved poetical judgment, of
 giving us not a penny to the Muses,
 call to him, our warlike, and de-
 cent, and our heroic. And I have
 they have bin so far from the fabricke of
 some of our poets, although in terms obso-
 lete, and which, posteritie make againe,
 and againe, as I doth Poesie, refine, in
 lines more polite, accordinge as our lan-
 guage is become refined, and more copious,
 and at the last, to make circumstant
 vnderstandings with reason, and learned
 doctours, straitly, and by our noble,
 and highly ingenious knight Sir Philip
 Sidney, but in subtiltie of concept,
 can passe them never, for they
 addunge in our own times, as poets histori-
 cals, have ever since, but on the same
 mode, either expressly, or transposedly,
 which also is poetical. It beinge by
 them in the day, after the English, &
 lawfull manner of poetical fiction, doe
 serve out Guions, to our real historie,
 vnder the signature of Mistorie; which
 hath to drawe with it Allusion, Circum-
 stance, Discourse, Speculation, Sentence.
 I have bin so far from all sound vpon in these twoe
 vnderstandings, Demonstration, as well
 knoweth the Classis of poets laureat, to
 whome I produce Chaucers tale by the
 Spenser, never yet told out by any in the
 same strain; the which formes, I also
 in this poem shall, and in my poetical
 visions, first and second partes, and in
 my Twelve moneths observe, and ex-
 emplifie, the name Poeta, beinge derived

of ποιέω, signifieth to make as a maker;
 howbeit to define the art it selfe is all as
 hard, as to doe it indeede, but not to doe
 it rightly I can never define yt soundly:
 No though her practise doe thus extend
 yt: vz Primo, into the Satyricall, which
 proveth so offensive to the meridian
 wheare yt confineth; as that her back
 can never beare half the enimmies shee be-
 getteth to her self. Secundo, it maie be
 laid in yt Lyrical which hath to praise
 or despraise; which satisfieth not the
 best wittes; sith flotinge topp of the
 wave for the gull to feed on particulars.
 Tercio, it may bee carried in the kind
 called heroical, or Allegorical: the which
 allegorical waie anglinge at the bottom)
 implieth those other twaine, and all
 notions eile, beinge exercised in such
 different descent, and varietie of verse
 in kind, as discrete art findeth most con-
 gruent to the muse: is therefore most
 delightfull to the most iudicious, as
 having in yt an heroical powr of callinge
 the highest vnderstandings of all others,
 as namely our master Aristotel, Alex-
 ander magnus, Scipio Affricanus, Oc-
 tavius Augustus Cesar, Jacobus Anglie
 rex, with manie moe, whoe are by so
 much the more often honorable remem-
 bered, as their bounteous favors to the
 ingenious in this faculty, have bin shewed,
 and their own iudicious dexterities in it
 abounded, but is no meate for paper-
 packinge In rimers — out poetasters,
 sith — muse-traduceinge, — witt abusinge.

Poesie-missysinge Pieridistes. In which
 list, sith heroical kind; Homer bestirred
 him selfe to lead the dawnee. Virgil
 blasoned the riches of his learninge in
 the same cloth of arras, the ancient Eng-
 lish Poesie (meaninge allwaies the sound
 ones) have delivered them of heroical
 birthes in this kind; which doe survive
 of their deceased parentes glorie, all of
 them adducinge a complete knight, in the
 personations of twoe in number; and
 maie as lawfullie bee instanced in one:
 and all as well in twoe, as pleaseth the
 ingenious. For so Mr. Edm: Spencer in
 his allegorical declaratorie, faerely de-
 clameth. Now, for my own part (vnder
 correction) I endeavour to call a general
 muster of all our noblest Guions whole
 historie, in the same kind also, as beinge
 most proper for it, and him; but without
 derogatinge from the desert of our ancient

English poets first plott: the *which* (representinge excellent) was written almost three hundred yeeres gonn, by Don Lidgate, and since him, by John Rowse & Pepulwick. But wheare all they had their first president! is now by the ancient historiens verie hard to prove; for that in our greate combustion of antiquitie, they suffred shippwrack: Notwithstandinge, some of them escaped y^e distroier, and are yet extant, & well preserved by the singular industries of osm, that waie both studious, and learned: amongst whome, M^r Thomas Allen, in the learnedst ranckes hath reputation; as Sir Robert Coton knight his industrie in this kind, hath singular commendation. All these ancient Cronoclers wrote of Guies person, & greate prowes; namely, Henricus Knighton, Thomas Radburn, Giraldus Cornubiensis, Johannes Strench, Johannes Hardinge, Johannes Gresley, Johannes Powtrel: all beinge manuscripts, never printed, with many moe, as saith John Rosse, whoe dilligentlie in K. Hen: the seavnth time collected them on the point of Gwy, while the recordes weare yet extant, every of them avouchinge his overcominge of Colbrand on the same conditions, *which* tradition hath ever since that time maintained. Cronica cronicorum affirmeth the same, though at the second hand, and with misnaminge of Giraldus Cambrensis, for Giraldus Cornubiensis. Yet all this notwithstandinge! our valient Guy is so vnfortunate amongst our late Croniclors, as that they are pleased to saie lesse of him, then Hanibals epitaph, amounted vnto. Amongst whome! som of oures, (but vnkindlie for th'innocent English penn, and that to this worthies dishonor) whose person they confesse; yet after holdinge his own for many ages in his grave ex concessio, woold faine decline the credite of all y^e ancientes, concerninge the conditions of Guyes fightinge the Duello for this kingdom, when hee slewe Colbrand the Affrican giant challengeinge for the Danes: as yf Sir Guy, beinge then a man retired to obscuritie, and besides overtaken of old age; shoold, or woold runn at a masterie so daungerous for glorie, *which* hee contemned: and not vppon the necessitie of that occasion. but this presumptuous kind of novitious writinge, maie rest assured, that onlie

one of yonder ancientes, livinge neerer the time of the famous Guy by some hundreds of yeeres, will carrie more credite! then one thowsand such newe, offringe so forwardly, *which* must needes bee ignorantlie, sith not havinge seene anie of the manuscripts before mentioned. Howbeeit, John Stowes note of Guy, is perfecter then all the rest of the newe. Against *which* manner of histori-fyenge, *which* intendeth but to vex the credite of antiquity, (speakinge this vnder correction, and without taxinge the good endevoure of anie man, or the person it selfe) Poetrie hath to bringe her action of encroachment, for vsurpinge on her licence of allusion in matter of fact, and it applienge to historie of longe before our new writers times: *which* manner, scarce is historicum dicendi genus, but is goodly to shewe with what eloquution such endewe them selves with all, and to enlarge tomes beyond movinge, without the helpe of a porter. In the meane time, the precise naked integritie of the ancientes, gave (with more brevity) accompt, rather of plaine fact, as it was indeede, then of affected eloquence poeticalie interlined (but vnlawfullie) in historie. *Which* new fluence, breeding affluence, will shortlie leave in evidence, that what Poetrie doth idealie deliver for fiction! is trewe; constant truth standing vp her perpetual ensigne: and what this novel kind of historifienge affirmeth for trewe! is false, sith mixed. For, marck if their affected insinuations doe not purposely wooe these three common concubines Partialitie! feare! flattery! and on them begetteth the bastard falsity! a chaungelin, the *which* mote these faeries overlive them selves! and the parties they have with their mowth glewe starched! they woold not faile so to stripp off their old skinn, cast all their loose haier, and rectifie their new sett countenance att another glasse; as that Proteus him selfe woold not bee able to knowe them. How then may such bee trusted to bee cited in other discentes de futuro? yf not as trewly reportinge! as doth positive divinitie in schooles: with whome, to growe to particulars, woold surelie provoke their passion, but their integritie never. On thother side, sownd Poetrie of the ancient manner, suffreth no alter-

like, doe make poetrie complete. Yet beinge of it! cann at the most amount. but to Sermocination, of prose turnd verse. Thus yf Poetes bee of my iury! I hope I have not provoked anie discrete manns choler, in thus showldringe (though weakely, to poetries behoof) for the same roome for her, which Porphirie in schooles collateth szt habet esse in genere demonstrantium; and thearfore without leave, is worthie of own ingenious reputation as well now, as then; to whome ancient learninge woold never give the lye, for doubt of pledginge the new in apium risus. Otherwise, even Cornelius Agrippa, ipse aries (for all his occult philosophick lookes) maie chaunce in this straine, to sitt beatinge his heeles without the muses gates, singinge to own vanity, Beati qui non intelligunt. more mote bee brought how lustie some historiens deport them on own glorious ostentation, as yf theare weare none to them! sith vncivillie tauntinge, discreditinge, degradinge, and controwlinge deieted poetrie (the ideal model of moral demonstratives) which ever was rara avis in terris, and knoweth what shee doth, without such as publish ann ignorance, never ingendred in schooles: for Poetrie hath waies by her selfe. Whearfore such angrie quillmen maie, (when they knowe more) blush of own shame, yf shee acquitt her self from beinge either ward! or tenent

at will to them! Howbeet love predominatinge with vs, concealeth names, that by this litle (gentlie ment,) they woold bee pleased to amend much; which more woold commend their own learninge, yf not indignlie baiting sound poetrie of virtuous institute; and thearfore so much the more esteemed by the most noble, most honorable, most valient, wise, and learned, as thinge (by som maintained) which none maie teach to other: Least elles shee complaine her to all her ingenious pupills, whoe cann byte home yf bytten. I never had the philosophers stone, whearewith to promise our Guyon, in suche daintie limned worck, as Ariostoes orlando hath fownd since hee came into England; nevertheless this meanethe historicalie with the ancientes, to present Sir Gwies youth, manwood, and old age: his love, warr, & mortification, all sommed vp in his liefe, and death, and that accordinge to our most ancient historiens, poetes, heraltes recordes, publick monumentes, and tradicion also, which sometime is a never dienge trewe cronicler. Thus not havinge whearewith ells to expresse my poore service vnto you then in this expense of times leasure with takinge humblest leave doe recommend it vnto you, and you all, to thalmightie.

this of

Your verie lovinge frend
Jo: La:

See Mrs. Jameson's *Sacred and Legendary Art*. Alexis' father wishes him to marry, and chooses him a bride. "On the appointed day the nuptials were celebrated with great pomp and festivity; but when the evening came the bride-groom had disappeared, and they sought him everywhere in vain; and when they questioned the bride, she answered, 'Behold, he came into my chamber and gave me this ring of gold, and this girdle of precious stones, and this veil of purple, and then he bade me farewell, and I know not whither he is gone.' And they were all astonished; and seeing he returned not, they gave themselves up to grief: his mother spread sackcloth on the earth and sprinkled it with ashes, and sat down upon it; and his

wife took off her jewels and bridal robes, and darkened her windows, and put on widow's attire, weeping continually; and Euphemian sent servants and messengers to all parts of the world to seek his son, but he was nowhere to be found. In the meantime, Alexis, after taking leave of his bride, disguised himself in the habit of a pilgrim, fled from his father's house, and throwing himself into a little boat, he reached the mouth of the Tiber; at Ostia he embarked in a vessel bound for Laodicea, and thence he repaired to Edessa, a city of Mesopotamia, and dwelt there in great poverty and humility, spending his days in ministering to the sick and poor, and in devotion to the Madonna, until the people who beheld his great

"Why hast thou espoused me
 only to forsake me?" And hearing her
 thus tenderly lamenting and upbraiding
 him, he was sorely tempted;
 nevertheless he remained steadfast.
 The many years passed away, until his
 mortal frame sunk under his suffer-
 ings, and it was revealed to him that he
 should live. Then he recovered from a ser-
 vant of the house pen and ink, and wrote
 out all that had happened to him in his life, and
 put it in a letter in his bosom, expecting
 to die. It happened about this time, on
 a certain feast day, that Pope Innocent
 was celebrating high mass before the
 Emperor Honorius and all his court, and
 a solemn voice was heard, which said,
 "Seek the servant of God who is about
 to depart from this life, and who shall
 prosper the city of Rome." So the people
 looked on all faces; and another voice said,
 "Where shall we seek him?" And the
 first voice answered, "In the house of
 Euphemian the patrician." And Euphe-
 mian was standing next to the emperor,
 who said to him, "What hast thou such
 a treasure in thy house, and hast not di-
 vided it?" Let us now repair thither
 immediately." So Euphemian went before
 the emperor the way, and as he approached
 his house a servant met him, saying,
 "The poor beggar whom thou hast
 sheltered has died within this hour, and
 we have laid him on the steps before the
 door." And Euphemian ran up the steps
 and uncovered the face of the beggar, and
 it seemed to him the face of an angel, such
 a glory of light proceeded from it; and
 his heart melted within him, and he fell
 on his knees; and as the emperor and his
 court came near, he said, "This is the
 servant of God of whom the voice spake
 just now." And when the pope saw the
 letter which was in the dead hand of
 Alexis, he humbly asked him to deliver
 it, and the hand relinquished it forth-
 with, and the chancellor read it aloud
 before all the assembly."

"Why hast thou espoused me
 only to forsake me?" And hearing her
 thus tenderly lamenting and upbraiding
 him, he was sorely tempted;
 nevertheless he remained steadfast.
 The many years passed away, until his
 mortal frame sunk under his suffer-
 ings, and it was revealed to him that he
 should live. Then he recovered from a ser-
 vant of the house pen and ink, and wrote
 out all that had happened to him in his life, and
 put it in a letter in his bosom, expecting
 to die. It happened about this time, on
 a certain feast day, that Pope Innocent
 was celebrating high mass before the
 Emperor Honorius and all his court, and
 a solemn voice was heard, which said,
 "Seek the servant of God who is about
 to depart from this life, and who shall
 prosper the city of Rome." So the people
 looked on all faces; and another voice said,
 "Where shall we seek him?" And the
 first voice answered, "In the house of
 Euphemian the patrician." And Euphe-
 mian was standing next to the emperor,
 who said to him, "What hast thou such
 a treasure in thy house, and hast not di-
 vided it?" Let us now repair thither
 immediately." So Euphemian went before
 the emperor the way, and as he approached
 his house a servant met him, saying,
 "The poor beggar whom thou hast
 sheltered has died within this hour, and
 we have laid him on the steps before the
 door." And Euphemian ran up the steps
 and uncovered the face of the beggar, and
 it seemed to him the face of an angel, such
 a glory of light proceeded from it; and
 his heart melted within him, and he fell
 on his knees; and as the emperor and his
 court came near, he said, "This is the
 servant of God of whom the voice spake
 just now." And when the pope saw the
 letter which was in the dead hand of
 Alexis, he humbly asked him to deliver
 it, and the hand relinquished it forth-
 with, and the chancellor read it aloud
 before all the assembly."

[The First Part.]

[How Guy undertakes to fight a Danish Giant.]

- WHEN: meate & drinke is great plentye, [page 349] At feasts
 then lords and Ladyes still wilbe,
 & sitt, & solace lythe¹ ;
- 4 then itt is time ffor mee to speake
 of keene knights & kempes² great,
 such carping ffor to kythe,³
- how they haue conquered, for Englands right:
 8 with helme vpon head, with halbert⁴ bright,
 ffull oft & many a sithe⁵
 they⁶ haue burnt by dale and downe,
 citye, castle, tower, & towne,
 12 & made bearnes vnblythe ;
- made Ladyes ffor to weepe with dreery mood,
 when theire ffreinds ought ayled but good,
 their hands⁷ to wring and writhe.⁸
- 16 of all cronicles ffarr and neere,
 were⁹ any deeds of armes weere,¹⁰
 the most I prayse Sir Guy
- of warwicke! *that* noble knight
 20 oft times ffor Englands right
 hath done ffull worthylye ;
 yett hee kept itt as priuilye
 as tho itt had neuer beene hee,
 24 without noyse or crye.
- & when he came ouer the salt ffome
 ffrom Sir Terrey of Gorwaine,¹¹

I tell of
knights and
warriors

who have

burnt towers
and towns,and made
women weep
for their
friends.Above all
heroesI put Guy of
Warwick,who kept
secret his
noble deeds
for England.When he
came back¹ soft, gentle.—P. listen to.—F.² *kempa*, a soldier, Champion; *kemp*,
to contend. Scot. vid. Gl. ad G.D.—P.³ A.-S. *cyðan*, to make known, relate.
—F.⁴ hauberk.—P.⁵ *sithe*, vices (time) Lye; Chaucer.
—P.⁶ The Danes.—P.⁷ MS. lands.—F. hands.—P.⁸ The author wrote “wry.”—Dyce.⁹ where.—P.¹⁰ There is a tag to the *e*.—F.¹¹ Sir Thierry of Gurmoise, in the Af-
fleck Romance as analysed by Ellis, first
Guy's opponent, then the friend rescued
by him. See Ellis, p. 204, 214, 218,
223 (ed. Bohn).—F.

from helping
Sir Terrey,

a knight of maine and moode,
28 ffor ffeare lest any one shold him know,
he kept him in silly beggars rowe
where euer hee went or stood ;

he dressed as
a leggar,

and only
enquired
about
Warwick.

& euer he sperred ¹ priuillike
32 how they ffared att warwicke,
& how they liued there.

Athelstan
was then
besieged in
Winchester

King Athels[t]one, the truth to say,
att the towne of winchester there he lay
36 with one soe royall a ffare.

by the
Danish king,
Auelocke,

the *King* of Denmarke, Auelocke,²
he into England brought a fflocke
of bearnes as breeme as beare ³ ;

whose
Giant

40 & with him a Gyant stiffe & starke,
a Lodlye devill out of Denmarke :
such another you neuer saw yore :

was all
armed in
plate,

hee was rayed richlye with royall plate
44 both legg & arme, you may well wott,⁴
in armor bright to be seene ;
he brought weapon,—who list ffor to read—
more then any cart could lead,⁵
48 to ding men downe by-deene ;

and had
sworn to
subdue all
England.

& swore othes great and grim,
that all England shold hold of him,
or he would kindle their care.

No English
knight dares
fight him.

52 then in England there was neuer a *knight*
that once with him durst ffight,—
ffull sore ⁶ he did them dread,⁷—

Athelstan
prays ;

neither with Auelocke nor Athelstone.
56 then our *King*, to Christ he made his moane,

¹ i.e. enquired.—P. There are two strokes for the second *i* in *priuillike*.—F.

² Anlaf, in the Affleck MS. The change here is due, no doubt, to the Romance of Havelok the Dane.—F.

³ boare, q.—P. *Bore* is the regular word.—F.

⁴ wate, weat, q.—P.
⁵ forté pro (lade, i.e.) load, A.-S. hladan, B. læden.—P.

⁶ soe sore.—P.

⁷ dare, q.—P.

& to his mother bright to be seene.
 then one Night as our King lay in a vision,
 there came an Angell downe ffrom heauen
 60 to lett him vnderstand ¹:

an angel
 comes to him
 in a vision,

he sayd, "rise vp in the morning by prime,²
 & goe to the gates in a good time;
 an old man shall you ffind there,
 64 both with his scripp and his pike,
 as *that* hee were palmer like,
 lowring ³ vnder his here.⁴

and tells him
 to go early
 to the gates,
 where he'll
 find an old
 man like a
 palmer.

vpon thy knees, Sir King, looke thou kneele him to,
 68 & pray him the battell to doe,
 ffor his loue *that* Marry bore.⁵"

Him he must
 pray to
 fight the
 giant.

with *that* the Angell vanished away.
 but more of this Gyant I haue to say.
 72 as I haue heard my Elders tell,
 he was soe fflowle & soe great course,⁶
 That neither might beare him steed nor horasse;
 men thought he came ffrom hell.

[page 240]

76 the[n] bespake a Squier priuilye:
 "where is the Knight men call Sir Guy,
 some time ⁷ in this land did dwell?
 or Sir Arrard ⁸ of arden alsoe?
 80 the one of these might thither goe
 the Gyant ffor to quell."

(A squire
 says Sir Guy

or Sir
 Arrard of
 Arden
 would fight
 him.

then bespake him an Erle in *that* while,
 & saia, "Sir Guy is now in Exile,
 84 no man knowes wh[i]ther or where;
 he had but one sonne, & he hight Rainborne;
 a merchant stold him ffrom wallingford towne,
 ouer the seas with him to ffare;

"Ah! but
 Guy is in
 exile.

His son
 Rainborne is
 stolen;

¹ him ken a right, q.—P.

² Prime, the first houre of the day (in Summer at foure a clocke, in Winter at eight) Cotgrave.—F.

³ Only half the s in the MS.—F.

⁴ hair, q.—P. here = hair.—F.

⁵ bare, q. P.

⁶ i. e. Courser. P.

⁷ time in the MS.—F.

⁸ Sir Heraud, Guy's trusty companion, then "in a dungeon on the coast of Africa." Ellis, p. 190, 234.—F

- and his wife,
Felix,
- 88 “ the Erle & the Countesse beene both dead,
Dame ffelix is sore adread
of ¹ her Lord, Sir Guye.
- thinks he,
Guy, is
dead.”)
- Next
morning,
Athelstan
goes to the
gates,
- 92 & soe shee thinkes Sir Guy is alsoe,
the flower of knighthood bold.”
then Earlye, as soone as itt was day,
our *King* to the gates tooke his way,
96 his fforward ² ffor to hold.
- finds an old
man in
palmer's
dress,
- right certaine truth to tell,
he ffound ³ a man in the same apparell
as the Angell before had him told.
- and prays
him to fight
the giant.
- 100 vpon his knees the *King* kneeled him to,
and prayd him the battell doe,
ffor his loue *that* Indas sold.
- The Palmer
says
- then answered the Palmer right,
104 & sayd, “ in England you haue many a *Knight*
the battell *that* may doe.
- he is too
weak.
- I am brused in my body, & am vnyeeld ⁴;
alas, I may no wepons welde!
- 108 behold, & take good heede ⁵! ”
- Athelstan
says
God wills
that he
should fight.
- our *King* sayd the palmer vntill,
“ well I wott itt is gods will
you shold helpe me in my need ⁶! ”
- “ Then I
will,”
answers he.
- 112 “ If *that* be soe,” the palmer did speake,
“ by the might of Christ I shall thee wreake,⁷
if I had armour & sheild.”
- Athelstan
- our *King* of this hee was ffull ffaine,
116 & soe were all his lords certaine.

¹ for, q.—P.² agreement: with the angel?—F.³ MS. faund.—F.⁴ unwielde or unweld, q. Chauc.—P.⁵ Then take good heed thereto, q.—P.⁶ in the field, q.—P.⁷ revenge.—P.

to a Chamber they cold him Lead ;
 they sought vp Armour bright and faire,
 inough ffor any King to haue in store,¹
 120 & they best they did him bidd.

offers him
 armour,

but meete for his body there was none,
 he was soe large of blood and bone,
 the fferssent² that euer was ffeild.
 124 the day of battell drew neere hand ;
 but 5 dayes before, as I vnderstand,
 our king was sore affrayd.

but none
 will fit him,
 he is so big.

The day of
 battle draws
 near.

then bespake the palmer priuilye,
 128 " where is the Knight men call Sir Guye ?
 sometimes in this land he dyd dwell³ ;
 once I see him beyond the sea ;
 his Armoure I thinke wold serue mee
 132 in battell stifflye to stand."

The Palmer
 suggests
 that Guy's
 armour will
 fit him.

the King did thereto assent ;
 the Kings messenger to warwicke went,
 the Countesse soone he ffound.⁴
 136 before her he kneeled him on his knee,
 prayed her of the armor belonged to Sir Guy
 when he was a-liue liuande.⁵

Athelstan
 sends to the
 Countess for
 it,

shee saught vp armoure faire to bee scene :
 140 Sir Guyes sword was sharpe & keene,
 himselfe was wonnt to weare.
 to the towne of winchester they did itt bring ;
 full gladd therof then was the King,
 144 & many that with him there were.

and she
 sende it
 back, with
 Guy's sword.

then the rayed the palmer anon-right
 with helme vpon head, with halbert⁶ bright ;

They arm
 him.

¹ to wear, q. — P.

² MS. fferssent. — F.

³ he dal dwell in this land, q. — P.

⁴ fand, q. — P.

⁵ alyve on ground, q. — P.

⁶ hauberk, q. — P.

- they raught him sheild and speare.
- he mounts,
and rides
forth. 148 Then he lope on horsbacke with good entent, [p. 231]
& fforth of the gates then hee went,
his ffoes ffor to ffeare.
- When he
gets to the
field 152 then al be-spread ¹ was the ffeild
with helme vpon head, with shining sheild,²
as breeme ³ as any beare.⁴
- Guy dia-
mounts,
and prays 156 & when the palmer all the armes sawe,
to Christ he lighted downe, & list not lauge,
but he mad his prayers arright⁵:
“Christ! *that* suffered wounds ⁵,
& raised Lazarus ffrom dath to liffe,⁶
to grant mee speech & sight,—
160 & saued danyell the Lyons ffree,
& borrowed ⁷ Susanna out of woe,—
to grant vs strenght & might,
- free England
from the
Danish yoke. 164 “*that* I may England out of thraldome bring
& not let vnder ⁸ the danish King
haue litle England att his will.”
- Then he
springs into
the saddle, 168 then without any stirropp verament
into the saddle he sprengt,
& sate there sadd and still.
- and Athel-
stan says our King said, “by gods grace
this riseth ffrom a light liernes,⁹
and of an Egar will.
- he never
saw any one
do that
except Sir
Guy. 172 I neuer kneww no man *that* soe cold haue done,
but old Sir Guy of warw[i]cke towne,
that curteous knight himselfe.¹⁰”

¹ MS. albe spread.—F. all bespread.
—P.

² With Hauberk glitterand bright,
query.—P.

³ MS. breeue.—F.

⁴ boar, *qu.* —P. *Bore* is the old word;
but the rhyme with *feare* makes the
change necessary. See too l. 39.—F.

⁵ prayers thore.—P.

⁶ from dead on live, *q.*—P.

⁷ borrow, *ab. A.-S. beorgan; servare.*
custodire.—P.

⁸ delend.—P.

⁹ nimbleness. See *liuer*, vol. i. p. 17,
l. 46. *Fr. delivre de sa personne, an*
active nimble wight. Cotgrave.—F.

¹⁰ himsel. Boreal. D.—P.

[The Second Part.]

[How Sir Guy fights and kills the Danish Giant.]

- 176 { The Gyant was the first *that* tooke the place ; The foul
 2^d parte { vglye he was, and ffoule of fface ; Giant comes,
 he wold neither runne nor leape,
 but layd all his weapons vpon a heape, stands still,
 & dryd ¹ himselfe for guile and tries his
that he might choose of the best, weapons.
that who-soeuer with them hee hitt,
 which warr *that* hard while.
- 184 Trumpetts made steeds to stampe & stare ;
 the King of denmarke, he was there, King
 the King of England alsoe. Avelucke
 then the King of Denmarke a booke out breade,²
 188 & sware thereon, as the story sayes,— swears
 behold & take good heed :—
 “ if the Gyant had the warre,³
 of England he wold neuer cleame more,
 192 neither nye nor ffurr.⁴ ” that if the
 the kinge of England was there alsoe ; Giant is
 the same othe he sware alsoe,— beaten,
 behold and take good heede,⁵— he'll never
 claim
 196 “ if the pore palmer had the wore, England
 of England he wold neuer claime more, again.
 while his liffe dayes last wold.” Athelstan
 & thus their trothes together they strake, swears that
 200 they said their poyntment shold not slake, if
 nor exile out off Arr.⁶ his Palmer
 is beaten
 he'll not
 claim
 England.

¹ *forte dress'd.* — P. — tried. — F.² *! rende, braide, arme, &c., also pulled out drew.* Gl. and Chauc. — P.³ *werre for werre.* — P.⁴ *i.e. nigh nor far* — P.⁵ *corrupt.* — P.⁶ *mold, q.* — P

The Giant
says that
he will

then the Gyant loud did crye :
to the *King* of Denmarke ¹ these words says hee,

204 " behold & take good heede !
yonder is an Iland in the sea :
ffrom me he can-not scape away,
nor passe my hands indeed ;

kill or drown
Guy,

208 " but I shall either slay him with my brand,
or drowne him in yonder salt strand ²;
ffro me he shall not scape away.

and crown
Avelocke
King of
England.

then I will with my owne hand
212 crowne thee king of litle England
ffor euer and ffor aye."

The Giant
and Guy
crose to an
island in
two barges.

that was true, as the *King* of denmarke thought ;
comanded 2 barges fforth to be brought,
216 & either into one was done.

Guy pushes
his barge off

the Gyant was ³ the first *that* ore did passe.
& as soone as hee ⁴ to the Iland come was,
his barge there he thrust him ffrom ;

220 with his ffoote & with his hand
he thrust his barge ffrom the Land,
with the watter he lett itt goe,
he let itt passe ffrom him downe the streame.
224 then att him the Gyant wold ffreane ⁵
why he wold doe soe.

into the
stream,

saying that

then bespake the Palmer anon-right,
" hither wee be come ffor to flight
228 till the tone of vs be slaine ;

one is
enough to
carry the
victor back.

2 botes brought vs hither,
& therfore came not both together,
but one will bring vs home. ⁶

¹ MS. Demmarke.—F.

² Cp. "then I was ware of a runing
strand." Eger & Grime, vol. i. p. 360.
l. 187.—F.

³ It should be 'Sir Guy was.'—P.

⁴ Guy.—F.

⁵ *frein, fraine*, interrogare, Jun.—P.

⁶ Percy adds (again) ? Home is for
hame.—F.

232 " for thy Bote thou hast yonder tyde, [page 352]
ouer in thy bote I trust to ryde ;
& therfore Gyant, beware ! "

trumpetts blew, & bade them goe toote,
236 the one [on] horsbacke, the other on ffoote ¹ ;
but Guy to god was darre.²

The
trumpets
sound,

Sir Guy weened well to doo,
he tooke a strong speare & rode h[i]m too,
240 he was in a good intent :
althoe he rode neuer soe ffast,
his strong speare on the Gyant hee brast,
that all to shiuers itt went.

and Sir Guy
charges.

244 & then Sir Guy anon-right
drew out his sword *that* was soe bright,
that many a man beheld,
& on the Gyant he smote ³ soe
249 that a quarter of his sheild fell him ffroe,
euen vntill the ffeild.

draws his
sword,

and cuts off
part of his
shield.

the Gyant against him made him bowne ⁴ ;
horsses & man & all came downe
252 vpon the ground ⁵ soe greene.
throughout Sir Guyes steede
the Gyants sword to the ground yeed ⁶ ;
such stroakes haue seldome ⁷ beene scene.

The Giant
knocks Guy
over,

and cuts his
horse right
through.

256 then Sir Guy started on his feete ffull tyte,⁸
& on the Gyant cold hee smite
as a man *that* had beene woode ;
& vpon the Gyant he smote soe ffast
260 that the Gyants strong armour all to-brast ;
there-out sprang the bloode.

Guy cuts

through the
Giant's
armour,
and draws
blood.

¹ There is a mark between the *f* and
in the MS. — F.

² darre, q. — P.

³ smote in the MS. — F.

⁴ ready — P.

⁵ One stroke too many in the MS. — F.

⁶ passed. — P.

⁷ sold or seeld, q. — P.

⁸ Light, q. — P.

The Giant
knocks off
the jewelled
crest of
Guy's helm,

then the Gyant hitt Sir Guy vpon the helme ;
aboue on his head the stroake itt fell ;
264 itt was with stones sett,
itt was with *precious* stones made ;
Sir Guys helmett neere assunder yode¹ ;
such stroakes of men beene drade.

and then

268 then the Gyant thirsted sore ;
some of his blood he had lost thore² ;

asks leave

& this he sayd on hye :

o drink ;

“ good Sir, & itt be thy will,
272 giue me leaue to drinke my ffill,
ffor sweete S^t Charytye ;

he'll let Guy
do the same.

“ and I will doe thee the same deede
another time, if thou haue neede,
276 I tell the certainlye.”

Guy gives
him leave,

“ why, vpon *that* couenant,” Sir Guy can sayine,
“ goo & drinke thy ffill, & come againe,
and heere Ile abyde thee.”

the Giant
drinks,

280 beside them there the riuer ran ;
the Gyant went & reffresht him then,
& came ffull soone againe.

and they
fight till
noon.

ffrom *that* itt was lowe prime
284 till itt was hye noone,
thé delten strokes with maine.³

but the sword *that* Sir Guy had lead,
therewith he kept his head,

288 stoode oft in poynt ffor to be slaine.

Then Guy
thirsts

then Sir Guy thirsted sore ;
he had rather haue had drunke there
then haue had England & almaine⁴ :

yade.—P.

² So Chaucer R R 1853, pro *tho*, vel
there, metri gratia.—P.

³ amaine, q.—P.

⁴ Germany.—P.

292 "good Sir, iff itt be thy will,
lett me goe now & drinke my fill,
beffore as I did thee."

and asks the
Giant to let
him drink.

"nay," then sayd the Gyant, "I were to blame
296 vnlesse *that* I knew thy name,
I tell thee certainlye."

"You may if
you'll tell me
your name."

"why then," quoth hee, "Ile neue[r] swicke¹;
my name is Guy of warwicke;

"Guy of
Warwick."

300 what shold I longer layne² to thee?"
the Gyant sayd, "soe might I swinke,³
doest thou thinke Ile let thee drinke?
no! not ffor all Cristentye!

"Then you
sha'n't
drink."

304 "Ah ha!" quoth the Gyant, "haue I Sir Guy here?
in all this world is not a⁴ peere.

ffor ought *that* thou can doe or deale,⁵
thy head [I] shall present my Lady the Queene,
308 I tell thee certainlye [bedeene.]⁶"

I'll give
your head
to my
queen."

then Sir Guy towards the riuer came.

However,
Guy goes
into the
river,

the Gyant was not light, but after him went;
the Gyant Layd after Guy with strokes strong,
312 but Guy was light, & lope againe to the Land⁷;
ffor ere he cold any stroke of Sir Guy woone,⁸
Guy had beene in the riuer⁹ to the chune,¹⁰
& dranke *that* did him gaine.

[page 333]

up to his
chin, and
drinks.

316 & vp he start, & sayd there:

"thou ffoule traitor! I will thee loue noe more¹¹!
ffor thy trechery, traytor, thou shalt aby¹²!"

Then he
reproaches
the Giant
for his
treachery.

¹ *swik*, fallere, decipere. Lye. G.D.
302, 28.—P.

² *layne* celare.—P.

³ *labur*, toil.—P.

⁴ *hise*.—P.

⁵ *delend*, q.—P.

⁶ Added by Percy.—P.

⁷ The Giant did not lag behind him
long.

But layd after Guy with strokes
strong.

Guy lope on the Land againe.—P.

⁸ *winne*, q. P.

⁹ Only half the *u* in the MS.—P.

¹⁰ *chinne*. P.

¹¹ *leave no mair*, q.—P.

¹² *reel*, q.—P. Perhaps "kneele":
compare l. 327.—Dyce.

- these words spake good Sir Guy,
 320 & liffted vp his swordd on hye,
 & saies, "good stroakes thou shalt feele."
 and hit him
 a stroke
 then Sir Guy att the Gyant smote
 a dint *that* wonderffull byterlye bote :
 that cuts
 324 he smote assunder Iron & steele ;
 Sir Guys sword through the basnett ¹ ran,
 down to his
 skull
 & glased ² vpon his braine pan,
 & the Gyant began to kneele.
- The Giant
 knocks Guy
 down.
 328 & then the Gyant att Sir Guy smote
 a dint *that* wonderffull ³bitterlye bote ;
 he smote Sir Guy downe to the ground.
 Sir Guy was neuer soe discomfitted before ;
 332 but through ⁴ the might of him *that* Marye bore,
 releened him againe in *that* stonde.
- Guy thinks
 on Christ,
 he thought on Christ *that* suffered wounds ⁵,
 & raised Lazarus ffrom d[e]ath to life,
 336 & vpon the crosse was wound,
 to giue him grace to quitt *that*.
 & then his sword in his hand he gatt,
 & narr ⁶ the Gyant did hee stand,⁶
- sticks the
 Giant
 through the
 breast-plate,
 340 & att the Gyant there he smote
 a dint *that* wonderffull bitterlye bote ;
 through his brest-plate his sword he stake.⁷
 & as Sir Guy wold haue wrested itt out,
 but breaks
 his sword.
 344 his good sword broke with-on[t] all ⁸ doubt,
 within the hiltes itt brake ;

¹ *Basnet*, Helmet, or Head-piece
 (Freuch) Gl. ad G. D.—P. A light helmet,
 shaped like a skull-cap. Fairholt.—F.

² glanced or grazed, q.—P.

³ *ou* with one dot for *bi* in the MS.—F.

⁴ delend.—P.

⁵ i. e. nearer.—P.

⁶ stond, q.—P.

⁷ strake, Qn.—P.

⁸ without all, q.—P.

& theratt lough the Danish King,
 & Athelstone made much mour[n]ing
 348 to heare how the Gyant spake :

“now thou hast broken thy sword & thy sheeld,
 here is no wepons ffor to weld ;
 therfore yeeld thee to mee swythe,¹
 352 & I will thy arrand soe doo,
 & to Avelocke our King Ile speake ffor thee,
 to grant thee land and liffe,
 that thou durst ffor thy Chinalrye
 356 be soe bold as fight with mee
 that am ² soe stiffe and stithe.³”

The Giant
tells him

he had
better yield
at once, and

Avelocke
will grant
him land
and life.

“nay !” sayd Sir Guy, “by heauen Queene,
 that sight by me shall neuer be seene,
 [forsooth I do thee tell.]
 360 ffor I shall kindle thy Kings cares ⁴ :
 through the Might of him that Marry bare,
 with stroakes I shall thee fell.”

Guy refuses.

the Gyant lought, & loud gan crye,
 364 “why speakest thou masterfullye ?
 hearke what I shall thee tell :
 thou hast broken thy sword & thy sheeld,
 & thou hast noe weapons thy selfe to weld,
 368 nor ⁵ here is none to sell.”

But, says the
Giant,

you've no
weapons to
fight with.

“no,” sayd Sir Guy, “I know better cheape ;
 yonder lyes a great cart-load on a heape,
 that thou thy-selfe hither did bring.”
 372 “then thé wold laugh me to scorne, my Lords manye,
 if of my wepons I shold let thee take anye,
 my selfe downe ffor to dinge.”

“I'll help
myself from
your heap.”

¹ anon, instantly.—P. There is a
stroke between *to* and *me*.—F.

² am in the MS.—F.

³ Stithe, *rigidus, validus, strenuus*.
Lyc.—P.

⁴ care, q.—P.

⁵ ? MS. now.—F.

Guy seizes a
Danish axe,

then Sir Guy to the weapons went :
376 a danish ¹ axe in his hand hee hent,
& lightlye about his head he can itt fling.

cuts off the
Giant's
sword-arm,

the Gyant vpon the sholder he smote ;
the sword and arme fell to hys ² ffoote,
380 this was noe leasinge.

and then, as
he stoops,

then as he wold haue stooped, as I vnde[r]stand,
to haue taken vp his sword in his other hand
to haue wreaked him of *that* wrathe,
384 Sir Guys axe was sharpe, & share,
his head. the Gyants head he smote of there,
bremelye ³ in that breath.

The Danes

& then the Danish men gan say
388 to our Englishmen, " well-away [page 354]
that euer wee came in your griste ⁴ ! "

fee,

they ran & they rode ouer hill & slade ⁵ ;
much haste home-ward they made
392 with sorrow & care enough.

and take
their king
home,

they hyed them ouer the salt ffome
to bring the King of denmarke hame
with sorrow and mickle care ;
396 ffor they haue left behind them slaine
a full ffoule Lodlye ⁶ swayne,
both of head and hayre.

as they
swore to
claim
England no
more.

ffor their trothes they had truly plight,
400 *that* ' as they were true King and Knight,
of England neuer to clayme more.'
& then to the body they sett his head ;
his sword in his hand was lead, ⁷
404 ⁸ the strongest *that* euer man bo[re].

¹ See note ² to l. 169, p. 68, vol. i.
—F.

² The *y* is dotted as in old MSS.—F.

³ breme, *ferox*, *atrox*. Lye.—P.

⁴ ? MS. grisle.—F.

⁵ A.-S. *slād*, a slade ; plain, open tract

of country. Bosworth.—F.

⁶ filthy.—P.

⁷ laid, q.—P.

⁸ *of stanke as did the tike* is crossed
out at the beginning of this line in the
MS.—F.

- the Gyants blood was blacke & red,
his body was like the beaten lead,
& stauke as did the tyke.¹
- 408 then the Layed the head to the corse,
& the arme againe to the bodye alsoe,
& buryed them both in a dicke.²
- great haucke our Englishmen made.
- 412 of³ the great cart-loade of weapons *that* were made,⁴
they loughe, & good game they made.⁵
that the axe out of Denmarke was brought,
the Gyants head of to smyte,⁶
- 416 the thanked christ *that* tyde.
- & then the King beffore the palmer did kneele,
sayes, "thou art blest, I wott itt weele,
of god and our Ladye "
- 420 the palmer, in his hart hee was full sore
when he saw our king kneele him before ;
"stand vp, my lord " sayd hee,
"for well I wott itt was his deede
- 424 *that* for vs vpon a crosse did bleede
vpon the mount of Caluarye."
- & then our king after *that*,
in the honor of this battell great,
- 428 thus deed hee caused to be done :
gard them to take vp the axe & the sword,
& keepe them well in royall ward,
& bring them to winchester towne,
- 432 & hang them vp on St. Swythens church on hye
that all men⁷ there may see,

The Giant's

corse

is buried.

The English
make fun
over his
weapons.Athelstan
thanks Guy.

Guy

given the
victory to
Christ.

Athelstan

has the
Giant's
sword and
axe hung
up inSt. Swithin's
Church in
Winchester.

¹ tyke, *thomas*. [tick.] a dog-house.
Shakespeare it is used for a little dog
house.

² Tyke q - P

³ at - P

⁴ laid, q - P

⁵ & did dreyde, q - P.

⁶ *that* smote q - P

⁷ men in the MS - P There is no
tradition in Winchester of Guy's axe
and sword ever having been in St
Swithin's church. - Bailey

thither if they wold ffare.¹

I tell you the weapons be there & thore
436 but of this matter Ile tell you more,
hastylye and soone.

[The Third Part.]

[How Sir Guy turns Hermit, and sends for his Wife as he dies.]

A procession
of monks,

440

singing
Te Deum,
meets
Athelstan,

3^d parte

who offers
Guy castles
and towers.

444

Then all religious of the towne,
they mett the King with ffaire procession;
& other psalmes amonge,²
te deum was their song,
& other praises there amonge,
that pleased³ the Lords to pray.
thé profferred the palmer att *that* tyde,
castles hye & towers wyde,
good horsse to assay.

Guy asks
only for his
staff and
pike.

448

“Nay,” saies he, “giue me *that* is mine,
my scripp & my pike & my slauen,⁴
& lett me wend my way.”

ffor all they profferred him there,
he fforsooke them : wold haue no more⁵
452 but *that* with him he brought.

The King
goes with
him and
asks his
name.

& then our King with him forth on his way went;
to know his name was his entent;

“but all,” he sayd, “is ffor nought,

Guy tells

456

without you wilbe sworne vnto me,
ffor 12 monthes in counsell itt shalbe,

¹ gone.—P.

² all their *Psalmes* ’gan say, q.—P.

³ It pleased, q.—P.

⁴ *Slaveine*, a pilgrim’s mantle. *Sarabarda*, Anglice a sclavene. Halliwell. Fr. *Esclavine* as *Esclauune* (a long and thicke riding cloake to beare off the raine;

a Pilgrims cloake or mantle; a cloake for a traoueller;) or a sea-gowne; or a course high-collared, and short-sleeued gowne, reaching downe to the mid-leg, and vsed most by seamen and Saylor. Cotgrave, A.D. 1611.—F.

⁵ mair, q.—P.

by him *that* all this world has wrought."
 & when our King had sworne him too,
 460 "why, my name," he sayes, "is Guy of warwicke, loe!"
 & this ffor thee I haue fought."

him under a
 view of
 secrecy.

"O," said our King, "Sir Guy, abyde with mee,
 & halfe of England I will gine thee,
 464 & assunder wee will neuer."

Achilles
 offers him
 half of
 England
 as pay.

"nay, I thanke you my lord courteous & kind,¹
 I haue a pilgramage great to wend,
 ffrom sinne my soule to couer.²

Guy refused,
 he must go a
 pilgramage

468 Sometimes I was one of your Erles wight,³ *page 257.*
 but now age & trauell hath me dight;
 farwell, my Lord, ffor euer!
 for to warwicke wend will I,
 472 to speake with fayre ffoelix⁴ my wiffe, before I dye,
 for nothing I had leauer."

to Warwick.
 to see his
 wife.

he had beene in battell stiffe & strong,
 & smitten with wepons *that* were long,
 476 & bidden many a drearye day:
 when the parted, they both did weepe.
 Sir Guy held downe the hye street,⁵
 in⁶ warwicke where he lay.

Guy
 journeys

480 & when he came to warwicke towne,
 his owne countesse to dinner was bowne
 & all masses were sayd.
 ffor feare lest any man shold him Ken,
 484 he sett him downe among the poore godsmen,
 & held him well pleased.¹

to Warwick,
 took his
 Countess at
 dinner,

and
 sat down
 among the
 poor
 godsmen.

¹ bend, q. --P.

² pronounced *liver*; perhaps *acrer*.

³ i.e. the High-way. Qu. the high
 Roman Road. —P.

⁴ to, q. —P.

⁵ well-apaid, q. (eudem fore sensu.)
 —P.

⁶ street, active. —P.

⁷ Felice, in Ellis. —F.

The
Countess
feeds daily
13 palmers.

his owne Ladye euerye day att her gate
13 palmers in cold shee take

488 to dine with her att noone.

Guy goes in
as one,

Sir Guy was leane of cheeke & chin,
& thereffore the porter lett him in,
& 12 after him did goe.¹

and his
Lady gives

492 the Ladye see hee was ill att ease ;
shee ffounded² ffast him to please,
[and did him make good cheere ;³]

him wine :
he gives it to
his mates.

shee ffett him a pott of her best wine :
496 he dealt⁴ itt about him at that time,
all to his ffellowes there.

He takes
leave of his
Lady.

then after dinner, as saith the booke,
leane of his owne Ladye he tooke

500 before them in the hall.

She bids her
steward

the Ladye called her steward vnto ;
shee sayd, " my bidding looke thou doe."
" Madam," hee sayd, " I shall."

tell him to
come to
dinner every
day.

504 " why then, goe to yonder⁵ pore palmer,
& bidd him come euerye day to dinner
before me in this hall ;

ffor an honest man⁶ he hath beene

508 when he was younge & kept cleane,
as may be well seene."⁷

The steward
gives Guy
the message.

the steward wold no longer abyde,
but went after the palmer *that* tyde,

¹ gone, q.—P.

² *fond*, *found*, to try, endeavour.
A.S. *fandian*, tentare. Urry, Jun.—P.

³ A Line wanting:
"And bade (or did) him make good
cheere." q.—P.

⁴ *him* follows, marked out.—F.

⁵ *yonder* in the MS.—F.

⁶ MS. *me*. A.-S. *mæg* is a relation,
friend, neighbour.—F.

⁷ as may be seene of all, q.—P.

812 & did as the Ladye him bede;¹
 says, "well greetes you my Ladye mild of cheere,
 prayes you euery day to come to dinner,²
 giffe that itt be your will."

816 the palmer made answer her steward vnto³;
 say, "I pray to christ grant her *that* meede
 that welds both welth and witt!

Guy says

a litle further I haue to ffare,

he must go
on to an

820 to speake with an hermitt here,
 gif I can with him hitt."

"an hermitt is dead, I vnderstand,
 & here a hermitage stands vacand,

empty
hermitage
near.

824 as [I] doe vnderstand."⁴

& there he liued, the truth to say,
 till itt was his ending day,
 & serued christ our King;

He goes,
lives on

828 he neuer ate other meate
 but herbes and rootes greate,
 & dranke the water of a springe.

herbs, roots,
and water,

then he hyred him a litle page

and his
page

832 that was but 13 yeeres of age,
 he was both flayre and ffeate⁵;
 & euery day when the noone bell rang,
 the litle ladd to the towne must gang,

daily at
noon
fetches the
Countess's
allowance to
him.

836 to fetch⁶ the Ladyes livery.⁷

¹ as y^e ladye del him tell.

As the Ladye bede him till or tell.
 P.

² dinner q. P.

³ to his steward answer made, q. — P.

⁴ Half a blance or more wanting.

These seem to be the Steward's words.

— P.

⁵ M^r may be *foyle* — F. *foote*, q. — P.

both flayre and ffeate was he." — Dyce.

⁶ to fetch, q. — P.

⁷ delivery, allowance of food. Fr. *Livree*. A deliverte of a thing thate given and that lease properly; the thing is given, hence, a *Livree*. Once cloth, colours, or device, or colours were by his servants, or others. *La Livree des Chambellans*. Their livery, or apparel, their stipend, exhibition, daily allowance in victuals or money. Colgrave. — P.

the Ladye was gladd, as I vnderstand ;
 shee gane itt with her owne handes,¹
 and gladd itt soe shold bee.

At last a
 death-sick-
 ness takes
 Guy ;

540 but there he liued, as sayth the booke,
 till a sicknesse there him tooke,
that needlye² he must dye.

an angel
 comes to
 him

to warn him
 he shall
 die—

one night as Sir Guy lay in vysion,
 544 there came an Angell downe ffrom heauen
 to lett him vnderstand.
 he was as light as any leame,³
 as bright as any sunn beames.
 548 with *that* wakened Sir Guy.⁴

[page 356]

St. Michael,
 from God.

He sayes, “ I coniure in the power of Iesus christ⁵
 to tell me wether thou be an euill angell or a good!”
 he sayd, “ I hett Michall.
 552 I came ffrom him *that* can both loose and bind
 both mee, and thee, and all mankind,
 both heauen, earth, and hell.”

Sir Guy
 sends his
 page

to tell his
 wife to
 come to him.

& then Sir Guy his ring out raught
 556 to the litle ladd, and him taught,
 & bidd he shold “ goe snell⁶
 to her *that* hath beene true to mee,
 & pray her to come, my end and see ;
 560 ffor nothing *that* shee dwell.⁷ ”

The page
 goes to the
 Countess,

the litle lad made him bowne
 till he came to warwicke towne.

¹ hand.—P.

² so Chaucer, for needs must.—P.

³ *Leame, leme*, a flame, a Light, a blaze.
 Chauc. Urry. Jun.—P. A.-S. *leoma*.
 —F.

⁴ Sir Guy wakende, q.—P.

⁵ Jesus' blood, q. I conjure thee
 by y^e Roode. Qu.—P.

⁶ snell, *celer, pernix, citus, agilis*. A.-S.
snel. Lye.—P.

⁷ dwelle, to stay, tarry. Chauc. *Isl*.
dwelia, est cessare, morari. Jun. Lye
 —P.

the Countesse soone hee ffound ;
 564 before her he kneeled on his knee ;
 saith, " well ¹ greeteth you my Lord, Sir Guy !
 but he is dead neere hand, ²

tells her
 that Guy is
 dying,

" & heere he hath sent to you his ringe,—
 568 full well you know this tokeninge,—
 & bidds you hye him till."
 a squier wold haue brought her a palfrey,
 but shee tooke a neerer stay ;

and bids her
 come to him.

572 for knight ne squier none wold shee haue,
 but follow shee did the litle knaue ³ ;
 the way was flayre and drye ;
 follow shee did the litle foot page
 576 till shee came to the hermitage
 wheras her lord did lye ;

She follows
 the page
 to the
 hermitage,

& then the lady curteous & snell,
 vpon his bed-side downe shee fell
 580 with many a greuous grone.
 hee looked vpon her with eyes ^{2,4}
 he neuer spake more words but these,
 saying, " Madam, lett be thy fare ⁵ ! "

and falls
 down by
 Guy,
 groaning
 grievously.

He tells her
 to be still.

584 a man *that* had scene the sorrow shee had,
 & alsoe the contrition *that* shee made
 for her Lord, Sir Guy,
 they wold haue shed many salt teares ⁶ :
 588 soe did all *that* with them were,
 both lords eke and Ladyes.

You'd have
 cried to see
 her sorrow.

¹ *greeteth* follows, marked out, in the
 M.S.—P.

² *houl.* q.—P.

³ *casas*, *par.*—P.

⁴ with his eyes, q.—P.

⁵ *more.*—P.

⁶ many a teare, q.—P.

She says
she and Guy
were
together
only 40
days;

then shee told them how they had louned long,
& were marryed together when they were younge,
592 & lired together but dayes 40 :
& afterward shee neuer him see,
by no knowledge *that* cold bee,
of 30 winters and three.

their child
was stolen,

596 then shee told them of much more woe :
theire younge child was stolen them froe ;
they had neuer none but one.

and Sir
Arrarde
went to
seek it.

Sir Arrarde of Arden after him went
600 to seeke the child with good intent,
that was true of borne blood.¹

& as shee can ² these tales tell,
in swooning downe shee fell
604 vpon the ground soe greene ;
& when shee was reuorted againe,

The
Countess
goes to King
Athelstan,

• shee wold neuer rest nor rowe ³
till shee came our king vnto,
608 her to wishe and read.
before our king when shee was brought,
the king told her how Sir Guy had fought
& smitten of the Gyants head :

who tells her
how Guy
slew the
giant.

612 “ffast his name I did ffreane,⁴
but he sware me *that* I must leane ⁵
ffor a 12 month and a day.”

Athelstan
vows he'll
bury Guy in
Winchester.

the king said, “soe christ me saue !
616 this Erle to winchester I will haue ;

¹ of true blood borne, q.—P.

² i. e. gan.—P. did.—F.

³ A.-S. *row*, sweet, quiet, repose.—F.

⁴ ask.—P.

⁵ conceal.—P.

his body there I will interre."
 but all *that* about him there cold stand,
 they cold not remoue him with their hands
 620 nor ffurther thence him beare.

But his
corpes
cannot be
moved,

a new purpose there the tooke ;
 they made a graue, as saith the booke,
 before the hye Altar,
 624 & buried him in warwicke, the truth to say.
 the ladye lined after him but dayes 40:
 And there was buried alsoe.¹

and is there-
fore buried
in Warwick,
with his
wife, who
soon died.

[page 287]

& then they ffounded a ffayre abbey,
 628 & monkes ffor them to singe.

.
 thus came the knight out of his care,²
 that had beene in land wyde where,
 that came to England safe againe.

632 now all you *that* haue heard this litle Iest,³
 I betake your soules to Iesus christ,
⁴ [to save from endless pain,]
 & *that* wee may on doomesday
 come to the blisse *that* shall ffor aye,
 636 with Angells to remaine. ffins.

Bless you,
all my
hearers !
May you go
to heaven !

¹ *alsoe*, Chauc. *idem.*—P.

² *care.*—P.

³ Properly Gest.—P.

⁴ a Line wanting.—P.

for penniless warriors, convivial and indulging his disposition in that respect. He is indeed a somewhat coarse-grained fellow apt to brag of his prosperity when he can do so secretly and without prejudice. Altogether, he is very much what the average Englishman of to-day is—a good-hearted Philistine. But one thing mars his felicity—his fear of the King and the King's purveyor. This constrains him to conceal his riches, to simulate poverty, to shrink from intercourse with wayfarers and strangers.

This picture of a villain's life may seem surprisingly bright and cheerful. No doubt it would be unwise to conclude that the members of his class were as sleek and affluent as the John de Reere. On the other hand, it is unwise to conclude from the laws that regulated it, that the position of that class was at least in the latter feudal days, for the most part beggarly and wretched. The wall of partition that separated the villain from the freeman was often very slight. The arbitrary services, the exaction of which characterized his condition, assumed in course of time a definite shape, so that his tenure was as little galling as those of his neighbours. He could prosecute his own interests as undisturbedly as they. His social state would be nominally inferior to theirs; but his opportunities of growing rich would be as good, with few drawbacks. Probably there would be often little to choose between the small yeoman and the villain.¹ Villains too had fought in the English ranks on the famous battle-fields of the fourteenth and fifteenth centuries. That fearful pestilence that ravaged the land in 1349 may be said to have dealt villenage a blow from which it never recovered. Free labourers, as Eden (in his *State of the Poor*) remarks, are first specifically recognised by the legislature in 1350. The First Act of Richard the Second (cap. 6) has reference to complaints urged by the Lords and Commons, that

¹ Cf. v. 307 of the Ballad.

The poem then was written after the death of Edward III., that is, after 1377 and before the accession of Edward IV., that is, before 1461. Its general character shows that it was written at a period when the position and prospects of the villain were brightening. It was evidently written in the decadence of feudalism, when the darkest ages of villenage were fast passing away. The bare notion of making a villain a knight could scarcely have occurred to any man's mind before the fifteenth century; nor yet the bare notion of a villain's delighting in his position. The lower classes had already felt their strength, and made their strength felt, when John de Reeve was described with so much respect and pride. The great rising of Richard II.'s reign, however abortive, however completely foiled as might have seemed at the time, had produced a lasting effect. In the course of events, kings were presently to assume in earnest that position of leadership which Richard had taken playfully in Smithfield in 1381. This is a poem of mirth and of hope, not a will angry satire, not a deep bitter moan. That mighty exodus which the fifteenth century witnessed is being accomplished. The house of bondage is being left. The land of freedom is coming into sight.

The knight had had poems sung and written in his honour for many a long year. A whole literature had celebrated him; he was the one star and glory of the old romances. The yeoman, too, had had his praises sung. His services at Crecy and Poitiers had given him an importance and a celebrity that could not be forgotten. He had become a name. And now, at last, the villain had raised himself so far out of the depths of his abasement, that he too was found worthy of poetic celebration.

John de Reeve, one of the King's bondmen, is represented here as extremely well-to-do and comfortable in his circumstances, of a highly independent spirit, with a supreme contempt

for penniless courtiers, convivial, and indulging his disposition in that respect. He is indeed a somewhat coarse-grained fellow, apt to brag of his prosperity when he can do so securely, illiterate, prejudiced. Altogether, he is very much what the average Englishman of to-day is—a good-hearted Philistine. But one thing mars his felicity—his fear of the King and the King's purveyor. This constrains him to conceal his riches, to simulate poverty, to shrink from intercourse with wayfarers and strangers.

This picture of a villain's life may seem surprisingly bright and cheerful. No doubt it would be unwise to conclude that all the members of his class were as sleek and affluent as this John de Reeve. On the other hand, it is unwise to conclude from the laws that regulated it, that the position of that class was, at least in the latter feudal days, for the most part beggarly and wretched. The wall of partition that separated the villain from the freeman was often very slight. The arbitrary services, the exaction of which characterized his condition, assumed in course of time a definite shape, so that his tenure was as little galling as those of his neighbours. He could prosecute his own interests as undisturbedly as they. His social state would be nominally inferior to theirs; but his opportunities of growing rich would be as good, with few drawbacks. Probably there would be often little to choose between the small yeoman and the villain.¹ Villains too had fought in the English ranks on the famous battle-fields of the fourteenth and fifteenth centuries. That fearful pestilence that ravaged the land in 1349 may be said to have dealt villenage a blow from which it never recovered. Free labourers, as Eden (in his *State of the Poor*) remarks, are first specifically recognised by the legislature in 1350. The First Act of Richard the Second (cap. 6) has reference to complaints urged by the Lords and Commons, that

¹ Cf. v. 307 of the ballad.

villains and land-tenants withdraw their services “under pretext of exemplifications from the Book of Domesday, and by their evil interpretation of the same they affirm themselves to be quit and utterly discharged of all manner of servage, due as well of their body as of their said tenures, and will not suffer any distress or other justice to be made upon them, but do menace the ministers of their lords, and gather themselves together in great routs, and agree by such confederacy that every one shall aid other to resist their lords with strong hand, to the great damage of these said lords, and evil example to other to begin such riots.” These combinations did much to advance the position of the working classes, as unions, with whatever admixture of evil, have done since. How tremendous was their power some four years after those complaints were submitted to the royal ear and measures taken to satisfy them, is illustrated by the eagerness of the King to grant the four points of the charter the assembled mob then demanded of him. The roar of that mob was remembered for many a day. (See Chaucer’s *Nonne Prest his Tale*.) Nor were there wanting at the same time those who advocated the claims of those insurgents on the most general grounds, who dealt with the question radically. Ideas fatal to the notion of thralldom were now growing into predominance in France, in Flanders, in England and elsewhere. The Church, however lax its practice, had again and again raised its voice against it. There is nowhere a nobler rebuke of it than that given by Chaucer’s *Parson* — “Thilke that thay clepe thralles,” he says, in that division of his discourse that treats of Avarice (“an adaptation of some chapters” of Frère Lorens’ *Somme des Vices et des Vertus*: see Mr. Morris’s *Apocalypse of Iniquity*, Pref. p. ii.), “ben Goddes people; for humble folk ben Cristes frendes; thay ben contubernially with the lord. Think rek as of such seed as cherles springen, of such seed springe lords; as wel may the cherl be saved as the lord. The same

deth that takith the cherl, such death takith the lord. Wherfor I rede do right so with thi cherl as thou woldist thi lord dide with the, if thou were in his plyt. Every sinful man is a cherl as to synne. I rede the certes, thou lord, that thou werke in such a wise with thy cherles that they rather love the than drede the." Such words as these said more perhaps than their utterer intended. Certainly, they enable us to understand how the position of the villain grew to be much more tolerable than its expressed conditions would have led us to expect.

Moreover, the villain's hardships must have been greatly alleviated by that resolute independence which forms so prominent a feature in the native English character. The Englishman would prove but a stiff-necked, obstinate, troublesome slave—his self-willedness would go far to protect him from the worst excesses of the hardest master—his surliness would often serve him for a shield.

This ballad gives us a view of both the private and public life of the churl. We see him as he goes abroad, and we see him in the security of his domestic comfort. He makes no secret of the cause of those fears which make him so chary of his hospitality, which induce him to cut such a sorry figure when out of doors. See v. 103 *et seq.*, v. 199 *et seq.* &c. His personal appearance is described with great care in vv. 52–57, and again in vv. 593–650. He offers his guests the poorest food and liquor at first. (Compare the account of the poor widow's "sc slender meel" in the *Nonne Prest his Tale*.) No doubt his fears were well grounded. "Thurgh his cursed synne of avarice," says the Parson whom we have already quoted, "comen these harde lordschipes, thurgh whiche men ben destreyned by talliages, custumes, and cariages more than here duete of resoun is; and elles take thay of here bondemen amercimentes, whiche mighte more resonably ben callid extorciouns than mercymenis. Of whiche mersymenis and raunsonyng of bondemen, some lordes stywardes seyn that it

is rightful, for as moche as a cherl hath no temporel thing that it nys his lordes, as thay sayn. But certes thise lordeshipes doon wrong that bireven here bondemen thinges that thay never gave hem." When the abolition of slavery was proposed in the first Parliament that met after Wat Tyler's insurrection, "with one accord," writes Knight (in his *Popular History of England*), "the interested lords of the soil replied that they never would consent to be deprived of the services of their bondmen. But they complained of grievances less inherent in the structure of society—of purveyance; of the rapacity of law officers; of maintainers of suits, who violated right and law as if they were kings in the country; of excessive and useless taxation." "I have no doubt," says Eden, "that the tax-gatherers were extremely partial to the rich and oppressive to the poor; for notwithstanding the above instance of their scrupulous attention to levy the utmost farthing on petty tradesmen [certain instances he has quoted from the valuation of movable property made at Colchester in 1296, see *Rot. Parl.* i. 228], we find that the master and brethren of an hospital, besides their cattle and corn, only accounted for one household utensil, a brass pot, and an Abbot and a Prior paid only for their corn and their live stock. The Rector of St. Peter's seems to have been equally fortunate."

But, on whatever account John de Reeve may make whatever pretence of direful penury, he is in fact a man of wealth. He may say with Horace's miser, "At mihi plaudo ipse domi." He says:

"I go girt in a russet gown,
My hood is of homemade browne,
I wear neither burnet nor green,
And yet I trow I have in store
A thousand pounds and some deal more,
For all ye are prouder and fine.

Therefore I say, as mote I thee,
A bondman it is good to be,
And come of carles kin,

For and I be in tavern set,
To drink as good wine I will not let
As London Edward or his Queen."

The Earl said: "By godes might,
John, thou art a comely knight
And sturdy in every fray."
"A knight!" quoth John, "do away for shame!
I am the King's bondman:
Such waste words do away.

"I know you not in your estate;
I am misnurtured, well I wot;
I will not thereto say nay.
But if any such do me wrong
I will fight with him hand to hand
When I am clad in mine array."

We must now commend this most interesting ballad to readers.¹

¹ The Editors have received the following letter from Archdeacon Hale, whom they here beg to thank:

Charterhouse, Dec. 18, 1867.

Dear Sir,—I am obliged to you for the opportunity of reading the interesting ballad of "John de Reeve." That he designates himself as the King's bondman, seems to me to imply that he was of villain rank. I think it probable that the king's bondmen, *nativi* and villains, were proud of their position, as being attached to royalty, and as having the privilege of tenants in ancient demesne, of not being impleaded or distrained except in the king's courts. It would seem from the Act of Richard the Second, of which mention is made in the preface, p. 552, that they made use of this privilege to withdraw their services from the lords of manors in which they were tenants, and that they were in reality leaders of that resistance to the rights of the lords which produced the disturbances of Tyler and Cade. Except *tailage ad voluntatem domini*, none of the services due from the various classes of villains appear to me cruel or unjust,

prædial service being the rent for the possession of land by the villain. I am inclined to think that as increased in the fourteenth and fifteenth centuries, the tradesmen became assessors of villain land, and that as lands were accumulated in fewer hands, the *prædial* service became more onerous to be rendered, as well as more important to the personal position of the tenant, who might himself be a freeholder, *liber tenens*, and yet hold villain land. John de Reeve had a high rank; his name implies that he came from a family who held office in a royal manor; the ballad in which he lived having a hall and indicating the superior character of the tenement. I may also remark that his abode was in the south-west of England, and that, to the best of my recollection, royal manors, and consequently ancient demesnes, abound in Devon and Somerset. The description of the house would lead to the idea that he dwelt in the hall of the demesne, and was of the same freeledge (p. 552) as his two neighbours; but it was not until the fifteenth century (p. 593), that they were

[The First Part.]

[How John at first avoids the King, and then takes him home.]

GOD: through thy might and thy mercy,
all *that* loneth game and glee,
their soules to heauen bringe!

God bless all
who love
merriment!

4 best is mirth of all solace;
therefore I hope itt betokens grace,
of mirth who hath likinge.

as I heard tell this other yeere,
8 a clarke came out of Lancashire:
a rolle¹ he had reading,
a bourde² written therein he ffound,³
that some time fell in England,⁴
12 in Edwards dayes our King.

A Lanca-
shire clerk
found

this story

of Edward

by East, west, north, and Southe,
all this realme well run⁵ hee cowthe,⁶
castle, tower, and towne.

men. I shall be very glad if what I
written should seem to throw light
on the condition of John de Reeve.

And I remain,

Yours very faithfully,
W. H. HALL.

r. Toulmin Smith, in a communica-
made to the Editors, is of opinion
the Reeve "was the King's collector
and dues—in other words the Farmer
be taxes. He was in bond to the
g (as all collectors still are) to remit
r, and hence, and not as a vassal,
bondman. The collector would only
fraud of the King because he did not

want it known what a capital bargain
he had made, lest the price paid by him
for his office should be raised." But
there is nothing whatever in the ballad
to justify this interpretation of the
Reeve's fear. Nor are we prepared to
acquiesce in the confusion of the terms
"bondman" and "bondsmen."—H.

¹ rolle. - P. Qu. MN. rolle. F.

² i. e. Jest. Junius. P.

³ fonde. P.

⁴ Englonde, qu.—P.

⁵ i. e. run over.—P.

⁶ couthe, could. R., 'he no couth,'
He could not. Gloss. ad G. Doug.—P.

Longshanks. 16 of *that* name were Kings 3 ;
but Edward with the long shankes was hee,
a Lord of great renowne.

One day, out
hawking, the
King loses
all his 20 as the King rode a hunting vpon a day,
3 ffawcons ¹ fflew away ;
he ffollowed wonderous ffast.
thé rode vpon their horsses *that* tyde,
they rode forth on enery side,
24 the country they out cast ;

followers from morning vntill eueninge late,
many menn abroad they gate
wandring all alone ;
28 the night came att the last ;
there was no man *that* wist
what way the King was gone,

except a
Bishop and
an Earl. 32 sane a Bishopp & an Erle ffree
that was allwayes the king ffull nye,
& thus then gan they say :
The three
lose their
way, " itt is a ffolly, by St. Iohn,
ffor vs thus to ryde alone
36 soe many a wilsome ² way ;

and the
weather is
very bad. 40 " a King and an Erle to ryde in hast,
a bishopp ffrom his coste ³ to be cast,
ffor hunting sikerlye.⁴
the whether happned ⁵ wonderous ill,
all night wee may ryde vnskill,⁶
nott wotting where wee bee."

¹ 3 [of his] fawc. Qu.—P.

² *wilsome, wilsum.* Desert, solitary, wandering. i. e. Wild: (Scotch) Gloss. to Ramsay's Evergreen, q. d. *wildsome*. Gloss. to G. D.—P.

³ province, district.—F.

⁴ surely, certainly: *sicker, sur, tain.* Johnsⁿ—P.

⁵ happneth, query.—P.

⁶ i. e. unskill'd.—P.

- then the King began to say,
 44 "good Sir Bishopp, I you pray
 some comfort, if you may."
 as they stoode talking ¹ all about,
 they were ware of a carle ² stout :
 48 "good deene, fellow !" can ³ they say.

They see
a man

- then the Erle was well apayd ⁴ :
 "you be welcome, good fellow !" hee sayd,
 "of fellowship we pray thee !"
 52 the carle full hye on horsse sate, ⁵
 his leggs were short and broad, ⁶
 his stirroppe were of tree ⁷ ;
 a payre of shooes were ⁸ stiffe & store, ⁹
 56 on his heele a rustye spurre,
 thus fforwards rydeth hee.
 the Bishopp rode after on his palfrey:
 "abyde, good fellow, I thee pray,
 60 and take vs home with thee !"

on horseback

riding away
from them.

The Bishop
asks him to
stop,

- The carle answered him *that* tyde, [page 358]
 "ffrom me thou gett oft noe other guide,
 I sweare by sweete St. Iohn ¹⁰ !"
 64 then said the Erle ware and wise,
 "thou canst litle of gentrise ¹¹ !
 say not soe ffor shame !"

but the man
won't,

¹ *carle* were stalking.—P.

² *carle* (*carl*.) Vir tenuioris atque
 vir fortis, stem ac *carl* &c. Jun.

The shape of the initial *c* in the
 begins to change here frequently.
 made like an *l* instead of a foreign-
 accented. It might be printed *C*,
 hat the old form of the *C* is retained,
Carle &c. l. 121.—F.

³ *can*, *deene*.—P. *can* is *did*.—F.
plod &c. Jun.—P.

The rhyme requires *rude*.—Dyce.

⁴ [some deal] *brade* or *brawl*—Lan-
 cashire Dialect.—P

⁵ *carle* would.—P. *treene*, *woolen*,
 p. 181, l. 1.—F.

⁶ *Forté* The shoes he ware were &c.
 —P.

⁷ *stour*, *sture*, great, thick, ingens
 crassus, Jun., stiff, strong, robust. Glouc.
 and G. D. —P.

⁸ *James*, see at 224 (l. 132) —P

⁹ *Gentrise* is still in use in Scotland,
 for gentility, honourable birth. See
 Glouc. to Ramsay's Evergreen.—P.

the carle answered the Erle vnto,
 68 “ with gentlenesse ¹ I haue nothing to doe,
 I tell thee by my ffay.”
 the weather was cold & euen roughe ²;
 the King and the Erle sate and longhe,
 72 the Bishopp did him soe pray.

The King
and Earl

the King said, “ soe mote I thee ³ !
 hee is a carle, whosoener hee be !
 I reade ⁴ wee ryde him neere.”
 76 the sayd ⁵ with words hend, ⁶
 “ ryd saftlye, gentle ffreind,
 & bring vs to some harbor.”

beg the man
to stop,

but he still
rides on.

The King
tells them

then to tarry the carle was lothe,
 80 but rode forth as he was wrothe,
 I tell you sickerlye.
 the king sayd, “ by mary bright,
 I troe ⁷ wee shall ryde all this night
 84 in wast vnskillfullye ⁸ ;

to pull the
man down.

“ I ffeare wee shall come to no towne ;
 ryde to the carle and pull him downe
 hastilye without delay.”

The Bishop
asks him to
stop.

88 the Bishopp said soone on hye,
 “ abyde, good ffellow, & take vs with thee !
 ffor my lone, I thee pray.”

¹ gentry, qu.—P.

² evening rough.—P. pronounced *row*.

þe Amyral bende ys browes *roue*,
 & clepede is consaile.

Kyng Sortybrant & opre ynowe
 ther come wyþ-oute fayle.

Sir Ferumbras, MS. Ashmole 33, fol. 26.

Thow a Sarsens hed ye bere,
Row, and full of lowsy here.

Skelton, Poems against Garnesche, l. 124.

Works, ed. Dyce, vol. i. p. 123.—F.

³ *thee*, i. e. thrive. Lye.—P.

⁴ i. e. counsel: *reade* is counsel, consilium. Junius.—P.

⁵ sayd [to him].—P.

⁶ i. e. kind, *hend*, *hende*, i. e. feat, fine, gentle, *forté*, q. d. handy or handsome. Skinner, ab Isl. henta, i. e. decere. Lye. MS.—P.

⁷ trow, confido, opinor. Lye.—P.

⁸ without reason. O. N. *skil*, reason.—F.

the Erle said, "by god in heauen !
 92 oft men meete att vnsett stenen ¹ ;
 to quite thee well wee may."

The Earl
 says he'll
 pay him out
 some day.

the carle sayd, "by St. Iohn
 I am ² affraye of you eche one,
 96 I tell you by my ffay !"

The man
 explains
 that he is
 afraid of
 them.

the carle sayd, "by Marye bright,
 I am afrayd of you this night !
 I see you rowne ³ and reason,⁴
 100 I know ⁵ you not & itt were day,
 I troe you thinke more then you say,
 I am affrayd of treason.

"the night is merke,⁶ I may not see
 104 what kind of men *that* you bee.

but & you will doe one thinge,
 swere to doe me not ⁷ dease,⁸
 then wold I ffaine you please,
 108 if I cold, with any thinge."

If they'll
 swear not to
 hurt him,

he'll help
 them.

then sayd the Erle with words ffrec,
 "I pray you, ffellow, come hither to mee,
 & to some towne vs bringe ;
 112 & after, if wee may thee kenn,
 amonge Lords and gentlemen
 wee shall requite ⁹ thy dealinge."

The Earl
 says, if he
 will, they'll

reward him
 among
 Lords.

"of lords," sayes hee, "speake no more ¹⁰ !
 116 with them I haue nothing to doe,
 nor neuer thinke to haue ;

The man
 says he'll

¹ i. e. unexpectedly : at a time un-
 expected. *Strenu, tempus statutum.*
 — P. See p. 386, note ², above. F.
 MS. and F.
² rowne, i. e. whisper. P.
³ to talk, as in Shakspeare, &c. — Dyce.
⁴ forte know. P.
⁵ i. e. dark. P.
⁶ no disease. — P.

⁷ prejudice, to make uneasy. see
 Johnson. — P.

⁸ *forte*, quite. P.

⁹ more. P. Compare
 Acquaintance of lordship will y night,
 For, firste or laste, dere hit will be
 bought. Proverbs from MS. B. 1. 11.
 back of last leaf. Camb. Univ. Lib., in
Reliq. Antiq., vol. 1. p. 205. — F.

never crouch
to Lords.

120

ffor I had rather be brought in bale,
my hood or *that* ¹ I wold vayle,²
on them to crouch or craue.³ ”

The King
asks him
who he is.

the King sayd Curteouslye,
“ what manner of man aree yee
att home in your dwellinge ? ”

The King's
bondman,

124

“ a husbandman, fforsooth I am,
& the Kings bondman ⁴;
thereof I haue good Likinge.”

tho' he never
spoke to him.

128

“ Sir, when spake you with our King ? ”
“ in ffaith, neuer, in all my lining !
he knoweth not my name ;
& I haue my Capull ⁵ & my crofft ⁶ ;
if I speake not with the King oft,
132 I care not, by St. Iame ! ”

¹ or that, i. e. before that.—P.

² vail, to let fall ; to suffer, to descend, in token of respect. Fr. *avaller le bonet*. Johnson.—P.

³ Was John, like Chaucer's Reeve, ‘ a sklendre colericke man ’ ? Among the marks of persons of ‘ Chollericke complexion ’ are : ‘ The sixth is, they be stout stomacked, that is, they can suffer no injuries, by reason of the heate in them. And therefore Avicen sayth, That to take every thing impatiently signifieth heate. The seauenth is, they be liberall to those that honour them,’—as John says in lines 169, 243, he'll give the wanderers all they want, so that they be thankful :—‘ The fourteenth is, he is wily,’—cp. the first bad supper, below ;—‘ The eleuenth is, he is soone angry, through his hote nature ’—as the King's porter experiences, l. 731 ;—‘ The thirteenth is, he is bold, for boldnesse commeth of great heat, specially about the heart,’—cp. l. 304 ;—John's cowardice at first, l. 97, was but prudence, the better part of valour. Also, he must have had a beard. ‘ The ninth is, a Cholericke person is hayry, by reason of

the heate that openeth the pores, and moueth the matter of hayres to the skinne. And therefore it is a common saying, *The Cholericke man is as hayry as a Goat.* On the other hand John must have had a cross of ‘ the sanguine person ’ in him, for ‘ Secondly, the Sanguine person is merry and jocond, that is to say, with merry words he moueth other to laugh, or else he is glad through benignity of the sanguine humour, pro-uoking a man to gladnesse and jocondity, through cleare and perfect spirits ingendred of bloud. Thirdly, he gladly heareth fables and merry sports, for the same cause. . Fifthly, he gladly drinketh good Wine. Sixthly, he delighteth to feede on good meate, by reason that the sanguine person desireth the most like to his complexion, that is, good Wines and good meates.’ *Regimen Sanitatis Salerni*, ed. 1634, p. 169–71.—F.

⁴ i. e. Vassall.—P.

⁵ capull, i. e. *keyfil*, Welch for a Horse. Lye.—P.

⁶ Croft est agellus prope domum rusticum. Lye.—P.

- “ what is thy name, fellow, by thy leane ? ”
 “ marry,” quoth hee, “ Iohn de Reeue ¹ ;
 I care not who itt heare ;
 136 flor if you come into my inne,²
 with beeffe & bread you shall beginn
 soone att your supper ³ ; [page 359]
- “ salt Bacon of a yeere old,
 140 ale that is both sower & cold,⁴—
 I vse neither braggatt ⁵ nor beere, —
 I lett you witt withouten lett,
 I dare cate noe other meate,
 144 I sell my wheate ech yeere.”
- “ why doe you, Iohn, sell your wheate ? ”
 “ flor [I] dare ⁶ not cate that I gett.
 therof I am ffull wrothe ;
 148 flor I loue a draught of good drinke as well
 as any man that doth itt sell,
 & alsoe a good wheat loffe.
- “ flor he that first ⁷ starueth Iohn de reeue,
 152 I pray to god hee may neuer well ⁸ cheene,⁹
 neither on water nor land,
 whether itt be ¹⁰ Sherriffe or King
 that makes such statuinge,¹¹
 156 I outcept ¹² neuer a one !

His name is
John de
Reeve ;

he can feed
them

with stale
bacon and
sour ale :

he brews no
beer, for

he sells his
wheat,

he dare not
keep it,

though he
likes
good drink
and bread.

May all who
starve him
come to
grief !

Query. John the Reeve, i.e. Bailiff.

See Sk. 7, P^o 3. - P.

inne, Sax. est cubiculum, caverna, reorium domus. Inne, a house, habitation. — P.

suppere — P.

Nos ut acetosa cervisia, sed bene . . . This text declareth five things, which one may know good Ale and . . . The first is, that it be not sower, hat hurteth the stomacke. A sower g . . . as Arden saith in many places) with the sinewes. And the stomacke member full of sinewes, especially

about the brim or mouth. *Regimen Sanitatis Salerni*, ed. 1634, p. 39. F.

² Chauc. *Brakyl*, Camb. Br. *bragyd*. A sweet drink made of honey & spices, used in Wales, &c. Urry's Gloss. P.

³ I dare, Qu. — P.

⁴ first, *delend*, Qu. — P.

⁵ well, *delend*, Qu. — P.

⁶ thrive, qu. P. Fr. *cherer*, to bring a business to a head, get well through it; from *ch.* F.

⁷ M^o her F. " statuing — P.

⁸ *forte* except — P. An old hybrid. *Outtake* is the older word. F

- “ffor and the Kings penny were Layd by mine,
I durst as well as hee drinke the ¹ wine
till all my good ² were gone.
- He asks
where they
live. 160 but sithence *that* wee are mett ³ soe meete,
tell mee where is your recreate,⁴
you seeme good laddes eche one.”
- The Earl
says,
In the
King's
house. 164 the Erle answered with words faire,
“in the kings house is our repayre,⁵
if ⁶ wee bee out of the way.”
- John pro-
mises to
lodge them if 168 “this night,” quoth Iohn, “you shall not spill;
such harbour I shall bring you till ;
I hett ⁷ itt you to-day.
- they are
thankful, “soe *that* yee take itt thankefullye
in gods name & St. Iollyinge,
I aske noe other pay ;
- but if they're
saucy he'll
keep 'em out, 172 & if you be sturdy & stout,
I shall garr ⁸ you to ⁹ stand without,
ffor ought *that* you can say.
- with the
help of his
two neigh-
bours, 176 “for I haue 2 neighbors won ¹⁰ by mee
of the same ffreedge ¹¹ *that* am I,
of old band-shipp ¹² are wee :
- owned by
the Bishop of
Durham
and the Earl
of Glo'ster, 180 the Bishopp of Durham this towne ¹³ oweth,
the Erle of Gloster—who-soe him knoweth—
Lord of the other is hee.

¹ the, delend.—P.² goods, qu.—P.³ One stroke too many in the MS.—F.⁴ ? MS. retreat, home.—F.⁵ *repair*, resort, abode, the act of be-
taking oneself any whither. Johnson.—P.⁶ ? but.—F.⁷ i. e. I promise, assure.—P.⁸ cause.—F.⁹ To, delend. Qu.—P.¹⁰ i. e. dwell.—P.¹¹ *frelege*, freedom, power, privilege: a
quo forté corrupt. It is yet used inSheffield. Ray. Gloss. ad G. Doug. v.
has render'd *Cui tanta Deo perm
potestas*, Quhat God has to him gra
sic *frelege*, St. 9, v. 97.—P. A.
freólac is A free offering, a sacrifice:
-lac and -ledge have the meaning of st
condition.—F.¹² a *band*, Vinculum, retinaculum, l
men, nexus; A.S. *banda*.—P.¹³ Perhaps Tone, viz. the one of
Companions was vassal to the Bish
vid. p. 66, V. 251 [of MS. ; vol. i. p.
l. 466 of text].—P.

"wist my neighbors *that* I were thratt,¹
 I vow to god thé wold not lett
 ffor to come soone to mee ;
 184 if any wrong were to mee done,
 wee 3 durst ffight a whole afternoone,
 I tell you sikerlye."

who'd fight
 all afternoon
 for him.

the King sayd, "Iohn, tell vs not this tale ;
 188 wee are not ordayned ffor battell,²
 our weeds are wett and cold ;
 heere is no man *that* yee shall greene.
 but helpe vs, Iohn, by your leane,
 192 with bright a ffeare³ and bold."

The King
 says their
 clothes are
 wet,

they want a
 great fire.

"Ifaith," sayd Iohn, "*that* you shall want,
 ffor ffuell heere is wonderous scant,
 as I heere haue yee told.
 196 thou getteth noe other of Iohn de Recue ;
 ffor the kings statutes,⁴ whilst I liue,
 I thinke to vse and hold.

John says he
 can't give
 them that,

as he is a
 bondman.

"If thou find in my house payment ffine,⁵
 200 or in my kitchin poultry slaine,
 peraduenture thou wold say
that Iohn Recue his bond hath broken :
 I wold not *that* such words weere spoken
 204 in the kings⁶ house another day,

If he were to
 feed them
 well,

A S. *breutun*, to threaten, disquiet,
 1880 F.

Vattayle — Clause — P.

with a bright fire &c. — P.

Referring to William the Conqueror's
 that fire and lights were to be put
 at the window-curtain, and people
 to bed. The evening must have been
 advanced when John spoke. — F.

I would read 'If thou find in my
 see *Pain de main*, fortasse corrupte
Pain de main, i.e. white bread.

So Chaucer, 'White was his face as *paine*
de main.' — *Rome of Sir Thomas* — Iye.

P. 'Payman, a kind of cheese-cake.'
 Halwell. 'Pymment or Piment was both
 a special boyce and speed wine, was a
 recipe in Halwell, and also the general
 name for sweet wines.' — *Handbook in*
Hist., p. 283. and *Booke of Art*, &c., p.
 202. If 'payment' is used here for
 bread, as in 1. 128, part n. below, then I
 suppose it means 'spiced bread'. — F.

⁶ To the King an — P.

it might get
to some
officials'
ears, and
injure him.

"ffor itt might turne me to great greeffe¹;
such proud ladds *that* beare office
wold danger a pore man aye;
208 & or I wold pray thee of mercy longe,
yett weere I better² to lett thee gange
in twentye twiine devills way.³"

thus thé rode to the towne:

John takes
the King,
Bishop, and
Earl to his
hall.

212 Iohn de Reeue lighted downe
beside a comlye hall.⁴
4 men beline⁵ came wight⁶;
they hasted them ffull swyft
216 when they heard Iohn call;
thé served him honestly and able,
And [led⁷] his horsse to the stable,
& lett noe terme misfall.

[page 1

His wife
welcomes
them.

220 some went to warne their dame
that Iohn had brought guests home.⁸
shee came to welcome them tyte⁹
in a side¹⁰ kirtle of greene,¹¹
224 her head was dight all by-deene,¹²
the wiffe was of noe pryde;

Her hair is
white.

her kerchers were all of silke,
her hayre as white as any milke,
228 loue-some of hue¹³ and hyde;

¹ Two letters are marked out after the *g*.—F.

² Yt were better.—P.

³ 'twenty devil way' is the ordinary phrase.—F.

⁴ Cp. Chaucer's description of the Reeve's 'wonyng fair upon an heth.' *Prol. Cant. T.* l. 609.—F.

⁵ *belive*, instantly. Lye.—P.

⁶ *wight*, swift, nimble. Johnson; also stout, valiant, clever, active. Gloss? ad G.D.—P.

⁷ And [led] his &c.—P.

⁸ I would read thus (St. 38)

To welcome *them* that tyde

Shee came in a side Kirtle &c.—P.

⁹ brôt [3] guests hame. Qu.—P

¹⁰ all. or, that tyde.—P. *tyte*, qui—F.

¹¹ i. e. long.—P. A.-S. *siel*, wide.

¹² *bedene*, Scotch, is, immedia Gloss? to Ramsays Evergreen; a G *bedienen* præstare officium. Gloss G.D.—P. Dutch *by dien*, by this.—

¹³ ? MS. *huid*.—F. hue, Qu.—See & Grime, pa.—P.

shoe was thicke, & some deal broad,
 of comlye flashyon was shee made,
 both belly, backe, and side.

She is
 comely.

232 then Iohn called his men all,
 sayes, "build me a fire in the hall,
 & gine their Capulls meate;
 lay before them corne and hay;
 236 for my lone rubb of the clay,
 for they beene weary and wett;

John orders
 a fire for his
 guests, and
 food for
 their horses.

"lay vnder them straw to the knee,
 for courtyes¹ comonly wold be lollye,
 240 and haue but litle to spend."

then hee said, "by St. Iohn,
 you are welcome euery one,
 if you take itt thankefullye!
 244 curtesye I learned neu[e]r none,
 but after mee, fellowses, I read you gone."
 till a chamber they went all 3;

John bids
 them
 welcome,

a charcole² fire was burning bright,
 248 candles on chandlours³ light,
 Eche fireake⁴ might other see.
 "where are your sords⁵?" quoth Iohn de
 Reeue.
 the Erle said, "Sir, by your leane,
 252 wee weare none, pardye."

and shows
 them into a
 room
 with a fire
 and candles.

¹ courtyers.- P.

² Charcoal fires were used to avoid
 the smoke from wood or coal getting
 into men's eyes, as there were no
 umbrellas. See *Ladye Brange*, vol. iii.,

and cp. *Kings and Miller*, p. 150, l. 40,
 above. F.

³ chandlours. Fr. *chandelier*, a Candle-
 stick. P.

⁴ fireake, man. Jun. P.

⁵ sords. P.

John asks
the Earl
who the
long-legged
fellow is.

then Iohn rowned ¹ with the Erle soe ffree:

"what long ffellow is yonder," quoth hee,

"that is ² soe long of lim and lyre ³?"

256 the Erle answered with words small,

"yonder is Peeres pay-ffor-all,

the Queenes Cheefe ffawconer.⁴"

"The
Queen's head
Falconer."

"ah, ah!" quoth Iohn, "ffor gods good,

"If I had
his gay hood,

260 where gott hee *that* gay hood,

glitering as gold itt were?

& I were as proud as hee is like,

there is no man in England ryke ⁵

I'd keep no
man's
hawk.

264 shold garr me keepe his gleads ⁶ one yeere.

•
But who's
that
next the
Falconer?"

"I pray you, sir, ffor gods werke,

who is yond in yonder serke ⁷

that rydeth ⁸ Peeres soe nye?"

268 the Erle answered him againe,

"yonder is a pore chaplaine,

long aduanced or hee bee;

"That's
a poor
Chaplain,

and I am a
Sumpter-
man."

"& I my selfe am a sumpter man,⁹

272 other craft keepe I none,

I say you withouten Misse."

"Gay
fellows, and
penniless
too, I
suppose!"

"you are ffresh ffellowes in your appay,¹⁰

Iolly Ietters ¹¹ in your array,

276 proud ladds, & I trow penyles."

¹ whispered.—F.

² that is, delend.—P.

³ lim, i.e. limb: lyre, i.e. flesh, quicquid carnosum & nervosum in homine. Lye. Also Lire, is complexion or air of the face. Gloss. ad G. D.—P. "Lyke the quhyte lyllie wes her lyre." Lyndesay's *Hist. of Squyer Meldrum*.—F.

⁴ fawconere.—P.

⁵ ryke, A.-Sax. *rice* regnum, imperium.—P.

⁶ gleads, i.e. Kites.—P.

⁷ serke, Indusium, a shirt or such garment. Jun.—P.

⁸ ? standeth.—F.

⁹ *fortè* mon.—P.

¹⁰ ? content, self-satisfaction.—F.

¹¹ To *jet*, inter alia, signifies to strut to agitate the body by a proud gait. So the Turkey-Cock is said to *jett*, when he bristles &c. See Johnson, from Shakesp. 12th Night. *Jettters* then are strutters &c. See pag. 237 [of MS. p. 155, l. 178 of text, above].—P.

- the King said, "soe mote I thee,
there is not a penny amongst ¹ vs 3
to buy vs bread and fflesh."
- 290 "ah, ha!" quoth Iohn, "there is ² small charge;
290^o ffor courtyes ³ comonlye are att large,
if they goe neuer soe ffresh.
- "I goe girt in a russett gowne,
my hood is of homemade browne,
294 I weare neither burnett ⁴ nor greene,
& yett I troe I haue in store
a 1000^o; and some deale more,
ffor all yee are prouder and ffine;
- 296 "therfore I say, as mote I thee,⁵
a bondman itt is good ⁶ [to] bee,⁷
& come of carles kinne;
ffor and I bee in tauerne ⁸ sett,
298 to drinke as good wine I will not Lett,
as London ⁹ Edward or his Queene."
- the Erle sayd, "by gods might,
Iohn, thou art a comly knight,
296 and sturdy in euerye ffray."
"a knight!" quoth Iohn, "doo away, ffor shame!
I am the King's bondman.
Such wast words doo away!
- [page 261]
- 300 "I know you not in your estate;
I am misnurtured, well I wott ¹⁰;
I will not therto say nay.
- "We haven't
a penny to
pay for our
food," says
the King.

"Ah,
courtiers
generally
live on other
people;

but though
I wear
russet,

I've 1000*l.* in
store.

It's well to
be a bond-
man,

for I drink
as good wine
as the King."

"You're a
comely
knight,
John."

"Knight!
nonsense!

¹ amongst in the MS.—P.² forte that is.—P.³ courtiers.—P.⁴ burnet, a kind of colour, whether that of the Pimpernel, which is called Burnet, or a dark brown (French brunette) stuff worn by Persons of quality. Glossed ad G. Doug.—P.

VOL. II.

⁵ St. 49, as mote I thee. Thee,—to thrive. Vid. Jun. & Lye.—P.⁶ forte "as good"—P.⁷ bee, or to bee. Qu.—P.⁸ Only half the *n* in the MS.—P.⁹ forte defend.—P.¹⁰ forte wote; G. Doug. wote, wost. Chauc.—P.

But if any
one
wronge me
I'll fight
him.

but if any such doe me wrong,¹
304 I will fight with him hand to hand,²
when I am cladd in mine³ array."

"Have you
travelled
beyond sea,
John?"
"Not I!

the Bishopp sayd, "you seeme sturdye:
trauelled you neuer beyond the sea?"

308 Thon sayd sharplye "nay!
I know none such strange guise,
but att home on my⁴ owne wise
I dare hold the hye way;

But I can
hold my own
on the road
at home,

and have got
into trouble
by it."

312 "& that hath done Iohn Reeue scath,
ffor I haue made such as you wrath
with choppes and chances⁵ yare."

"Have you
any armour
or weapons,
John?"

"Iohn de Reeue,⁶" sayd our King,
316 "hast thou any armouringe,
or any weapon to weare?"

"None but
a two-
pronged
pitchfork,

"I vow, Sir, to god," sayd Iohn thoe,⁷
"but a pikefforke with graines 2—

a rusty
sword,
and a broad
knife,

320 my ffather vsed neuer other⁸ speare:—
a rusty sword that well will byte,
& a handfull, a thyttille⁹ syde
that¹⁰ sharplye will stare,¹¹

tho' perhapse
I can fight
as well as
you.

324 "an acton¹² & a habargyon a ffoote side;
& yett peraduenture I durst abyde¹³
as well as thou, Peeres, ffor all thy painted ge

¹ fortè urang. Dialect. boreal.—P.

² fortè hond to hond.—P.

³ ? mime in the MS.—F.

⁴ fortè in my.—P.

⁵ Changes, Qu. yare, ready. dextrous,
ready.—P.

⁶ John the Reeve.—P.

⁷ thoe, i.e. then.—P.

⁸ had no other. Qu.—P.

⁹ thuitel, a knife. Halliwell. A.-Sax.
þwitan, to cut off.—F. thytill, some
weapon. perhaps a Dagger, so named
from its being worn upon the thigh,
thigh-till. syde is long; perhaps the verse
should be read "And a thytill a handful

syde," i.e. a handful long: so a foot
is a foot long. Vid. Stan. 26, P^r 3.
Syde is also broad, wide.—F.

¹⁰ will full sharplye share.—P.

¹¹ share.—P.

¹² Acton, Fr[ench] Hocqueton, a
militare: a kind of armour ma
Taffity or leather, quilted thick
stuck full of thread, fringe, &c. rea
from the neck to the knee, worn
the Habergeon, to save the body
Bruises &c. Skene's exposition of
words contain'd in the 4 buiks of R
Magestatem, 1641 Q^{uo}—ubi plura.

¹³ stand a charge, fight; last out

quoth Iohn, "I reede wee goe to the hall,
 328 wee 3 ffellowes ; & peeres pay=for=all
 the proudest before shall fare."

But let's go
 to supper."

thither they raked ¹ anon-wright ² :
 a charcole ffyer burning bright
 332 with manye a strang ³ brand.
 the hall was large & some deale wyde,
 there bords were ⁴ couered on euerye syde,
 there mirth was comanded.⁵

They go to
 the Hall,
 which has a
 fire in it,

and tables
 laid.

336 then the good wiffe sayd with a seemlye cheere,
 "your supper is readye there."
 "yett watter,⁶" quoth Iohn, "letts see."
 by then came Iohn's neighbors 2,
 340 hobkin ⁷ long and hob alsoe :
 the ffirst ffitt here ffind wee.

John's
 neighbours,
 Hobkin and
 Hodgkin,
 come in.

¹ went.—F.

² right.—P.

³ strong.—P.

⁴ *werer* in the MS.—F.

⁵ *forté*, at command.—P.

⁶ This was for washing hands. See

Babees Book, p. 5, l. 129, &c.

Whenne that ye se youre lorde to mete
 shalle goo,

Be redy to fecche him *water* sone.—F.

⁷ Hodgkin, *vid. infra*.—P.

[The Second Part.]

[How John feasts the King, and dances with him.]

John
arranges his
guests :the King at
top, the

344

Bishop next
his wife,2^d parte.the Earl
near the
King,

348

John sayd, "for want of a marshall, I will take
the wand : ¹
Peeres ffauconer before shall gange ;
begin the dish ² shall hee.
goe to the bench, thou proud chaplaine,
my wiffe shall sitt thee againe ;
thy meate-fellow ³ shall shee bee."
he sett the Erle against the King ;
they were ffaine att his bidding.
thus Iohn marshalled his meanye.⁴

his prettiest
daughter
next the
King,
the other by
the Earl ;

352

Then Iohn sperred ⁵ where his daughters were :

"the ffairer shall sitt by the ffawconere ;

he is the best ffarrand ⁶ man :

the other shall the Sompter man haue."

the Erle sayd, "soe god me saue !

356

of curtesye, Iohn, thou can.⁷and says
that if"If my selfe," quoth Iohn, "be bound,⁸

yett my daughters beene well ffarrand,

I tell you sickerlye.

the King
married one,

360

Peeres, & thou had wedded Iohn daughter reeue,

there were no man *that* durst thee greeue

neither ffor gold nor ffee.

¹ John said as marshal I'll take the wand &c.—P. Compare *The Boke of Curtasye*, Sloane MS. 1486, ed. Halliwell, Percy Soc., ed. Furnivall in *Babees Book* &c. E. E. Text Soc. 1868, Fowre men þer ben þat ʒerdis schalle bere, Porter, marshall, stuarde, vsshare; The porter schalle haue þe lengest wande, The marshall a schorter schalle haue in hande.

l. 352-6; *Babees Book*, &c. p. 309. In halle, marshalle alle men schalle sett

After here degre, with-uten lett.

l. 403-4.—F.

² deese, dais.—F.

³ i.e. Mess-mate.—P.

⁴ familia, multitudo. Lye.—P.

⁵ i.e. enquired.—P.

⁶ *farrand*, perhaps the same as *farrantly*, a word in Staffordshire signifying sufficient, handsome, proper &c. T.P. *farand*, *farrant*, beseeching, becoming, courteous, handsome. Gloss. to G. Doug.—P.

⁷ knowest.—F.

⁸ bnde, or bande.—P.

“Sompter man, & thou the other had,¹
 364 in good ffaith then thou were made
 ffor euer in this cuntrye;
 then, Peeres,² thou might³ beare the prize.
 yett I wold this chaplaine had a benefize,
 368 as mote I⁴ thariue⁵ or three⁶!

and the Earl
 the other,
 they'd be
 made men.

And as for
 the Bishop,

“in this towne a kirke there is;
 & I were king, itt shold be his,
 he shold haue itt of mee;
 372 yett will I helpe as well as I may.”
 the King, the Erle, the Bishopp, can say,
 “Iohn, & wee liue wee shall quitte thee.”

If he, John,
 were king,
 he'd give
 him their
 parish
 church.

They all 3
 promises to
 reward him.

when his daughters were come to dease,⁷
 376 “sitt ffarther,” quoth Iohn withouten Leaze,⁸
 “ffor there shalbe no more.”
 [page 363]
 these strange fellows I doe not ken;
 peraduenture they may be some¹⁰ gentlemen;
 380 therfore I and my neighbors towe,

“att side end bord wee¹¹ will bee,
 out of the gentles companye¹²;
 thinke yee not best soe?
 384 ffor itt was neuer the Law of England¹³
 to sett gentles blood with bound¹⁴;
 therfore to supper will wee goe.¹⁵”

John and his
 two neigh-
 bours sit at
 a side table.

¹ yee—had, Qu.—P.

² Tho' Peeres, &c. P.

³ mought, mote. P.

⁴ so mote I. P.

⁵ Qu. MS. There is one stroke too few for *thariue*. “Thrive or thee” is the phrase intended.—F.

⁶ all three, Qu.—P.

⁷ *Idem*, erat altior & eminentior mensa in aula. The high table. See Jun. *Idem*, desk, bench, seat, table. Per metonym. adj., a feast, banquet, or entertainment. Et per al. meton. to set at desks with one

(Lat. *hospitium*) is taken for friendship, alliance, or [covenant]. . . . —P.

⁸ *Idem*, Lying, falsehood, treachery. Urry, Gloss. to Chaucer.—P.

⁹ more.—P.

¹⁰ some defend P.

¹¹ At side hand end wee &c. Vid. St. 13. At side hand we &c. No withouten for without. Shenstone P.

¹² Only half the s in the MS. F.

¹³ Englonde. P.

¹⁴ bound. P.

¹⁵ wee'll go.—P.

The supper
is bean
bread,
salt bacon,
broth,
lean beef,
sour ale.

by then came in beane bread,¹
388 salt Bacon rusted and redd,
 & brewice² in a blacke dish,
leane salt beefe of a yeere old,
ale *that* was both sower & cold:
392 this was the ffirst service:

The King
didn't like
it.

John says

eche one had of that ylke³ a messe.
the king sayd, "soe haue I blisse,
such service nerest⁴ I see."
396 quoth Iohn, "thou gettest noe other of mee
att this time but this."⁵

"yes, good fellow," the King gan say,
"take this service here⁶ away,
400 & better bread vs bringe;
& gett vs some better drinke;
we shall thee requite, as wee thinke,
without any letting."

he'll give
him no
better,
unless they
all swear

404 quoth Iohn, "beshrew the morsell of bread
this night *that* shall come in your head
but thou sweare me one thinge!
swere to me by booke and bell

not to tell
the King.

408 *that* thou shalt neuer Iohn Reeue bettell
vnto Edward our kinge."

The King
vows he'll
never tell
him,

quoth the king, "to thee my truth I plight,
he shall nott witt our service⁷
412 no more then he doth nowe,
neuer while wee 3 liue in land."
"therto," quoth Iohn, "hold vp thy hand,
& then I will thee troe."

¹ Compare the loaves of beans and bran baked for his children by the Ploughman. *Vision*, p. 89, l. 270 ed. Skeat.—F.

² Brewice, i.e. Broth, Pottage. Jun.—P. The *ice* stands over *ish* marked out.—F.

³ ilk, *ipse* that ilk, *idem* the Lye.—P.

⁴ never, or no
⁵ Forté other [Meate or other Qth John, at this Time, but this Thou gettest none of me.—P.

⁶ MS. herer.—F.

⁷ our service witt. Qu.—P.

- 416 "loe," quoth the king, "my hand is heere!"
 "soe is mine!" quoth the Erle with a merry cheere, and so say the Earl
 "thereto I giue god a vowe."
 "haue heere my hand!" the Bishopp sayd. and Bishop.
- 420 "marry," quoth Iohn, "thou may hold thee well
 apayd,
 ffor itt is ffor thy power.¹
- "take this away, thou hobkin² long,
 & let vs sitt out of the throng John orders the bad supper off,
- 424 att a side bords end;
 these strange ffellowes thinke vncouthlye
 this night att our³ Cookerye,
 such as god hath vs sent.⁴"
- 428 by them⁵ came in the payment bread,
 wine *that* was both white and redd and then has in the good: spiced bread, and good wine.
 in siluer cupp[e]s cleare.
 "a ha!" quoth Iohn,⁶ "our supper begins with
 drinke!
- 432 taste itt, ladds! & looke how⁷ yee thinke,⁸
 ffor my loue, and make good cheere!
- "of meate & drinke you shall haue good ffare;
 & as ffor good wine, wee will not spare, There is plenty of it,
- 436 I goe⁹ you to vnderstand.¹⁰
 ffor euerye yeere, I tell thee thoe,¹¹
 I will haue a tunn or tow
 of the best *that* may be ffound.¹² and the best that can be got.
- 440 "ye shall see 3 Churles heere
 drinke the wine with a merry cheere;
 I pray you doe you soe;

¹ Forté.

Quoth John yee may be well ap!

For it is in my power now.—P.

Power is for Power, profit, advantage;

Fr. power. P.

² Hodgkin, vid. Infra.—P.³ of our &c.—P.⁴ God doth us send.—P.⁵ ? MS. then.—P.⁶ Quoth John, &c. (*a ha delend*).—P.⁷ Forté tell how &c.—P.⁸ Qu. sink, perhaps thinke.—P.⁹ Qu. give.—P.¹⁰ understonde.—P.¹¹ thee now or true.—P.¹² fonde.—P.

They'll all
sup, and
then dance.

444 & when our supper is all doone,
you and wee will dance soone;
letts see who best can doe."

The Earl
says the
King
can drink no
better wine.

448 the Erle sayd, "by Marry bright,
wheresoeuer the King lyeth this night,
he drinketh no better wine
then thou selfe¹ does att this tyde."
"infaith," quoth Iohn, "soe had leeuier² I did
then lue ay in woe & payne.³

452 "If I be come of Carles kinne,
part of the good *that* I may winne, [page 3^{cs}]
some therof shall be mine.
he *that* neuer spendeth but alway spareth,
456 comonlye oft⁴ the worsse he ffareth;
others will broake⁵ itt ffine.⁶"

Next come
the boar's
head,

460 by then came in red wine & ale,
the bores head⁷ into the hall,
then sheild⁸ with sauces seere⁹;
Capons both baked & rosted,¹⁰
woodcockes, venison, without bost,
& dish meeate¹¹ dight ffull deere.

capons,
venison,

464 swannes they had piping hott,
Conceys, curleys,¹² well I wott,
herons, &c. the crane, the hearne¹³ in ffere,¹⁴

¹ thyself.—P.

² i.e. rather: I leever, *legend*.—P.

³ pine or pyne. Chauc. *idem*.—P.

⁴ oft, *delend*.—P.

⁵ to brouke, broke, to brook, bear;
To use, enjoy. Urry in Chauc.—P.

⁶ fine for finely.—P.

⁷ See the Carol, *The boris hede furst*,
in Mrs. Ormsby Gore's Porkington MS.
No. 10. The carol is printed in *Reliq.*
Antiq. vol. ii., *Babees Book* &c. p. 397.—F.

⁸ The swerd of Bacon is call'd the
Shield: and the horny Part of brawn in
some places.—P.

⁹ *seere, sere, several*; many; contract.

from *seuer*, or *several*. Gloss. ac
—P.

¹⁰ roste.—P.

¹¹ sweet dishes, &c. Russell
his *Boke of Nurture*, l. 513–14,
Some maner cury of Cookes craff
y haue espied,

how beire dischmetes ar dress
hony not claryfied.—F.

¹² curlews.—P.

¹³ heron. See Russell, in *Babes*
p. 143–4. Compare this feast wi
sell's *Fest for a Franklen*, B.B. p.
—F.

¹⁴ i.e. together, along.—P.

pigeons, partrid[g]es, with spicerye,
 468 Elkca,¹ flomea,² with froterye.³
 Iohn bade them make good cheere.

partridges,
 tarts &c.

the Erle sayd, "soe mote I thee,
 Iohn, you serue vs royallye !
 472 if yee had dwelled att London,⁴
 if king Edward where here,⁵
 he might be a-payd⁶ with this supper,⁷
 such freindshipp wee haue ffound."

The Earl
 says it's
 a royal
 feast ;

the King
 might be
 pleased with
 it.

476 "Nay," sayd Iohn, "by gods grace,
 & Edward wher in⁸ this place,
 hee shold not touch this tonne.
 hee wold be wrath with Iohn, I hope ;
 480 thereffore I beshrew⁹ the soupe¹⁰
 that shall come in his mouth¹¹ !"

"If he were
 here, he
 shouldn't
 have a
 scrap," says
 John.

theratt the King laughed & made good cheere.
 the Bishopp sayd, "wee fare well heere !"
 484 the Erle sayd as him thought.
 they spake lattine amongst them there¹² :
 "infayth," quoth Iohn, "and yee greeue mee,
 full deere itt shalbe bought.

They talk
 Latin
 together.
 John tells
 them to

488 "speake English euerye-eche one,¹³
 or else sitt still, in the devills name !
 such talke loue I naught.¹⁴
 Lattine spoken amongst Lewd¹⁵ men,
 492 therin noe reason ffind I can ;
 for flalahood itt is wrought.

talk English,

¹ 'Elk, a wild swan. Northern.' Hal-
 well. ? yolk, some dish of eggs.— F.

² ? flomea, a kind of cheese-cake.— F.

³ fruterye, fruit collectively taken,
 fruterie Fr. Johnson. P. Fritters,
 have no doubt. See them in Russell's
Boke of Nurture (p. 165-70 *Babes Book*)
 and many other Bills of Fare.— F.

⁴ *Forté* As ye at London wou'd.— P.

⁵ Edward's self were heere.— P.

⁶ to appay, to satisfy, to content, hence

'well appaid' is pleased. 'ill appayd'
 is uneasy (Fr. *appayer*). Johns. P.

⁷ suppre.— P.

⁸ M.S. wherin.— F. were in.— P.

⁹ *beshrew*, verbum male precantis. Jun.
 —P. ¹⁰ sup. soupe.— P.

¹¹ That in his Mouth shoulde come.— P.

¹² perhaps "three"— P.

¹³ overtake one. P.

¹⁴ not, or hold I naught.— P.

¹⁵ Lewd, i.e. Laymen. Johnson.— P.

he doesn't
like whisper-
ing,

“row[n]ing,¹ I loue itt² neither young nor old;
therefore yee ought not to bee to bold,

496 neither att Meate nor meale.

it's traitors'
work

hee was ffalse *that* rowning began;
theerfore I say to you certaine
I loue itt neuer a deale:

and not to
be tolerated
by any
courteous
host.

500 “that man can [nought] of curtesye
that lets att his meate rowning bee,³
I say, soe haue I seile.⁴”

The Earl
promises to
leave off.

the Erle sayd right againe,
504 “att your bidding wee will be baine,⁵
wee thinke you say right weele.”

Then sweets
come in,

by this came vp ffrom the kitchin
sirrupps⁶ on plates⁷ good and ffine,
508 wrought in a ffayre array.

and John
proposes
that they
shall be
merry

“Sirrah,⁸” sayth Iohn, “sithe wee are mett,
& as good ffellowes together sett,
lett vs be blythe to-day.

and he and
his mates
shall

512 “Hodgkin long, & hob of the Lath,⁹
you are counted good ffellowes both,¹⁰
now is no time to thrine¹¹;

¹ rowning, they are used promiscuously in Chaucer.—P.

² in, qu.; or loved neither.—P.

³ John is right here. Whispering is strictly forbidden by the old Books of Courtesy, &c.

“Loke þou *rownde* not in no mannys ere.”
Babes Book, p. 20, l. 54.

Looke that ye be in rihte stable sylence,
Withe-oute lowde lauhtere or langelynge,
Rovnynge, Iapyng or other Insolence.
ib. p. 253, l. 93-5.

Bekenyng, fynguryng, non þou vse,
And pryue *rownyng* loke thou refuse.
Boke of Curtasye, l. 250, *Bab. Book*, p. 306.

⁴ *seil*, Scotch, i.e. prosperity, happiness. Gloss to Ramsay's Ever-green.
& Teut. *selig*. &c., beatus, felix. Gloss.

ad G. D.—P.

⁵ so *bane* in G. Doug. is ready v. 96, *Antiquam exquirite matr seik zour auld moder make z perhaps for bowne, metri gratia.*
ad G. Doug.—P.

⁶ Compare Russell, l. 509, (*i. Book &c.*) speaking of cooks: Some with Sireppis (*Sawces*), Se soppes.—F.

⁷ *fortè* platters.—P.

⁸ *Fortè* Sirs.—P. Sirrahs.—]

⁹ Lathe.—P. ¹⁰ ba

¹¹ The German *thränen*, to weep, is the only word I can for this, though it could hardly *thrine*. A.-S. *þringan* is to throng press. *Trinc*, to hang. Halliwell

- this wine is new come out of ff Franco ;
 516 be god ! me list well to dance, dance.
 therefore take my hand in thine ;
- “ ffor wee will ffor our guests sake
 hop and dance, & Reuell make.”
- 520 the truth ffor to know,
 vp he rose, & dranke the wine : John stands
up
 “ wee must haue powder of ginger therein,”
 Iohn sayd, as I troe.
- 524 Iohn bade them stand vp all about,
 “ & yee shall see the carles stout
 dance about the bowle.
 Hob of the lathe ¹ & Hodgkin long,
 528 in ffayth you dance your mesures wrong ! with Hob
and
Hodgkin,
and they
dance
 methinkes *that* I shold know.
- “ yee dance neither Gallyard ² nor hawe,³
 Trace ⁴ nor true mesure, as I trowe,⁵ [page 364]
 532 but hopp as yee were woode.”
 when they began of ffote to ffayle,
 the tumbled top ouer taylor,
 & Master and Master they yode. till they
tumble
down.
- 536 fforth they stepped on stones store ⁶ ;
 Hob of the lathe lay on the fflore,
 his brow brast out of blood.
 “ ah, ha ! ” Quoth Iohn, “ thou makes good game ! John laughs
at Hob,
 540 had thou not ffalled, wee had not laught ;
 thou gladdes vs all, by the rood.”

¹ *lathe* est horreum ; a Corn-house, a Grange. Jun.—P.

² A quick and lively dance introduced into this country about 1541. Halliwell.—P.

³ *Hay*. Qu. Dance the Hay.—P. A round country dance. Halliwell.—P.

⁴ *Trasiage*, ap^d G. Douglas, is explained in y^e Gloss., ‘stepping, walking softly,’ from the Fr. *tracé*, a step ; but it

is join’d with dancing in y^e following Passage :

The harpis & gythornis playis attanis,
 Upstert Troyanis, & syne Italianis
 And gan do doubl brangillis & gambettis
 Dansis & roundis *trasing* many gatis.
 —P.

⁵ *P. rto*, as I say. — P.

⁶ *store*, *stour*, *sture*, *ingens*, *crassus*. Lye.—P.

and pulls
him up.

Iohn hent¹ vp hobb² by the hand,³
sayes, "methinkes wee dance our measures wth

544 by him *that* sitteth in throne."

They begin
to play at
kicks,

then they began to kicke & wince,⁴
Iohn hitt the king ouer the shinnes
with a payre of new clowted shoone.

and the
King has a
merry night.

548 sith King Edward was mad a knight,
had he neuer soe merry a night
as he had with Iohn de Reeue.⁵
to bed the busked them anon,
552 their liueryes⁶ were serued them vp soone
with a merry cheere;

Next
morning

& thus⁷ they slept till morning att prime⁸
in ffull good sheetes of Line.

they hear
Mass,
breakfast,

556 a masse⁹ he garred them to haue,
& after they dight them to dine
with boyled capons good & ffine.
the Duke sayd,¹⁰ "soe god me saue,

promise
John a
reward,

560 if euer wee come to our abone,¹¹
we shall thee quitt our Barrison¹²;
thou shalt not need itt¹³ to craue."

¹ i.e. held. Lye.—P.

² The first *b* is made over a *p* in the MS.—F.

³ hond or wrang.—P.

⁴ *Winche*, to kick. Halliwell.—F.

⁵ the Reeve, or John Reeve there.—P.

⁶ Allowances of meat and drink &c. 'Lyueray he hase of mete and drynko.' *Boke of Curtasye*, l. 371, *Babees Book*, p. 310. Bouge of Court it is called in *Household Ordinances*, t. Edw. IV.—F.

⁷ there.—P.

⁸ prime sic legerit. Lye. morn^g prime, or morn at prime.—

⁹ perhaps *Mess*.—P. Mass w by all in the morning.—F.

¹⁰ The Erle said.—P.

¹¹ *Fortasse Wone*.—P. *Abofe* i dwelling (Halliwell); *abone*, abo

¹² Warrison [gift, reward] see St. 40.—P.

¹³ *it* delend.—P.

[The Third Part.]

[How the King invites John to court, and rewards him.]

the king tooke leane att man & mayde ¹;
 564 Iohn sett him in the rode way;
 to windsor can hee ² ryde.

and take
their leave.

568 { Then all the court was ffull faine
 that the king was comen againe,
 & thanked chr[i]st that tyde.

King
Edward is
welcomed at
Windsor.

3^d parte { the Ierfawcons were taken againe
 in the fforrest of windsor without laine,³
 the Lords did soe provyde,
 572 they thanked god & S^t Iollye.
 to tell the Queene of their harbor ⁴
 the lords had ffull great pryde.

They tell the
Queen about
John de
Reece,

The Queene sayd, " Sir, by your leane,
 576 I pray you send ffor that Noble Reece,
 that I may see him with sight."

and she asks
the King to
send for him.

the Messenger was made to wend,
 & bidd Iohn Reece goe to the King
 580 hastilye with all his might.

A messenger
tells John to
come to the
King.

Iohn waxed vnfaine ⁵ in bone & blood,
 saith, " dame, to me this is noe good,
 my truth to you I plight."

He is put
out at first.

584 "you must come in your best array."
 "what too," sayd Iohn, "Sir, I thee pray?"
 "thou must be made a Knight."

¹ may.—Dyce.² gas he &c.—P. Can means did.—F.³ MS. laine.—P. Vid. Stanz. 45.—P.⁴ *forte* harborre, or harterre. P.
lodging.—F.⁵ displeased, literally 'unglad'.—P.

thinks his
late guests

“a knight,” sayd Iohn, “by Marry myld,
588 I know right well I am beguiled
with the guests I harbord late.

have got him
into a
scrape;
“but never
mind,

to debate they will me bring;
yett cast ¹ I mee ffor nothings
592 noe sorrow ffor to take;

wife, fetch
my armour,

“Alice, ffeitch mee downe my side Acton,
my round pallett ² to my crowne,
is made of Millayne ³ plate,

pitchfork,
and sword.”

596 a pitch-fforke and a sword. ⁴ ”
shee sayd shee was affrayd ⁵
this deede wold make debate.

Alice ffeitched downe his Acton syde;
600 hee tooke itt ffor no litle pryde,
yett must hee itt weare.

The
scabbard
is torn.

the Scaberd was rent withouten doubt,
a large handfull the bleade ⁶ hanged out:

604 Iohn the REEUE sayd there,

John calls
for leather
and a nail to
mend it,

“gett lether & a nayle,” Iohn can say,
“lett me sow itt ⁷ a chape to-day,
Lest men scorne my geere.

[page 36]

608 Now,” sayd Iohn, “will I see
[w]hether ⁸ itt will out lightlye
or ⁹ I meane itt to weare.”

and tries to
pull the
blade out.

Iohn pulled ffast att the blade :
612 (I wold hee had kist my arse *that* itt made!)
he cold not gett itt out.

¹ to cast, to calculate, to reckon, compute. Item, to contrive, to turn the thoughts. Johnson.—P.

² Pallat, in G. Doug^e is used for *caput*. Scot. bor. *pallet* or *pallat* is the crown of the Head or Skull. Gloss. ad G. Doug^e. Hence it shou^d signify here an Helmet or Skull-cap.—P.

³ See note ², vol. i. p. 68.—F.

⁴ *forte* sward.—P.

⁵ affear’d.—P.

⁶ blade.—P.

⁷ *Fortè* sow in. in, qy.—P.
the hook of a scabbard; the me
at the top. Halliwell.—F.

⁸ whether.—P.

⁹ or, i. e. before.—P.

- Allice held, & Iohn draughe,¹
 either att other ffast lough,²
 616 I doe yee out of doubt.
- Iohn pulled att the scaberd soe hard,
 againe a post he ran backward
 & gaue his head a rowte.³
 620 his wiffe did laughe when he did ffall,
 & soe did his ⁴ meanye all
that were there neere about.
- Iohn sent after his neighbors both,⁵
 624 Hodgkine long & hobb of the lath.⁶
 they were beene⁷ att his biddinge.
 3 pottles of wine ⁸ in a dishe
 they supped itt ⁹ all off, as I wis,
 628 all there att their partinge.
- Iohn sayd, " & I had my buckler,¹⁰
 theres nothing *that* shold me dare,
 I tell you all in ffere.¹¹
 632 ffeitch me downe," quoth he, " my gloues ;
 they came but ¹² on my ¹³ hands but once
 this 22 ¹⁴ yeere.
- " ffeitch mee my Capull," sayd hee there.
 636 his saddle was of a new manner,¹⁵
 his stirropps were of a tree.¹⁶
 " dame," he sayd, " ffeitch me wine ;
 I will drinke to thee ¹⁷ once againe,
 640 I troe I shall neuer thee see.
- His wife holds, he pulls,
 and he falls back against a post.
 His wife and men laugh at him.
 He sends for Hodgkin and Hob,
 to drink and take leave of him.
 Then he calls for his
 gloves,
 his horse,
 and more wine.

drowghe, Chaucer, i. e. drew.—P.
 lough, or lowghe, i. e. laughed.
 icf.—P.
 Great or violent stir. Devon.
 !—F.
 his in the MS.—F.
 baith.—P.
 Lath.—P.
 Qu. bowne, bane, hayne, Vid. Pt. 2.
 19 [t. i. 28 of MS., l. 504 above].—P.
 MS. wime.—F.

⁹ itt, delend, censeo.—P.
¹⁰ bucklere.—P.
¹¹ in fere, together, intire, wholly.
 Gloss. ad G.D.—P.
¹² delend. Qu.—P.
¹³ came upon my.—P.
¹⁴ two & twenty.—P.
¹⁵ mannere.—P.
¹⁶ of tree.—P. wood.—F.
¹⁷ An upright stroke, which may be for
 1, stands between *thee* and *once*.—F.

He,
Hodgkin,
and Hob

"Hodgkin long, & hob of the lathe,
tarry & drinke with me bothe,¹
ffor my cares are ffast commannde.²"

drink five
gallons;

644 they dranke 5 gallons verament :
"ffarwell ffellowes all present,
ffor I am readye to gange!"

and
Hodgkin
heaves him
on to his
mare.

648 Iohn was soe combred in his geere
hee cold not gett vpon his mare
till hodgekinn heaue vp³ behind.

When he
gets to
Windsor
Castle, the
porter won't
let him in,

"Now ffarwell, Sir, by the roode!"
to neither *Knight* nor Barron good
652 his hatt he wold not vayle
till⁴ he came to the *Kings* gate:
the Porter wold not lett him in theratt,
nor come within the walle,

656 till a *Knight* came walking out.
they sayd, "yonder standeth a carle stout
in a rusticall arraye."
on him they all wondred wright,⁵
660 & said he was an vnseemelye wight,
& thus to him they⁶ gan say:

and the
servants
chaff him.

"hayle, ffellow! where wast thou borne?
thee beseemeth ffull well to weare a horne!
664 where had thou *that* ffaire geere?
I troe a man might seeke ffull long,
one like to thee ar *that* hee ffound,⁷
tho he sought all this yeere."

¹ bathe or baith.—P.

² i. e. are coming fast. *comand*, idem
ac coming.—P.

³ hove up.—P.

⁴ when. *Qu.*—P.

⁵ right.—P.

⁶ they *delend*.—P.

⁷ fonde.—P. ? ffong, got hold
Dyce.

668 Iohn bade them kisse the devills arse¹:
 "ffor you my geare is much the worsse²!
 you will itt not amend,
 by my ffaith, *that* can I lead!

John says

672 vpon³ the head I shall you shread
 but if you hence wende!

he'll crack
their crowns
if they don't
go.

"the devill him speede vpon his crowne
that causeth⁴ me to come to this towne,
 676 whether he weare lacke or Iill!
 what shold such men as I doo heere
 att the kings Manner⁵?
 I might haue beene att home still."

The devil
take the
fellow who
brought him
there!

680 as Iohn stoode fflyting⁶ ffast,
 he saw one of his guests come at the last;
 to him he spake ffull bold,
 to him he ffast ffull rode,⁷

Then John
saw his
guest,
the Earl.

684 he vayled neither hatt nor hood;
 sayth, "thou hast me betold!"

[page 286]

and
reproaches
him with
having
told of him.

"full well I wott by this light
that thou hast disdaine me right;
 688 ffor wrat[h] I waxe neere wood!"
 The Erle sayd, "by Marry bright,
 Iohn, thou made vs a merry night;
 thou shalt haue nothing but good."

The Earl
says he won't
be hurt.

692 the Erle tooke leaue att Iohn Reue,
 sayd, "thou shalt come in without greefe;
 I pray thee tarry a while."

Erre, Chauc. - P.

worse, Chauc. - P.

M⁴. vpon or vpon. - F.For⁴ caused. - P.

Manners. - P. Dwelling, mansion.

¹ To flyte, i.e. to chide, is still in use
in Scotland. (Gloss. to Ramsay's Ever-
green. *flyt*, to wruhl, chide. A. S. *flitan*,
contendere, rixari. (Gloss. ad G. Doug.
- P.⁷ full faste rode. - P.

and goes to
tell the King
that John is
at the gate.

the Erle into the hall went,
696 & told the King verament
that ¹ Iohn Reeue was att the gate;
"to no man list hee lout.
a rusty sword gird ² him about,
700 & a long ffawchyon, I wott.³"

King
Edward
orders John
to be brought
in to table.

the King said, "goe wee to meate,
& bringe him when ⁴ wee are sett;
our dame shall haue a play."
704 "he hath 10 arrowes in a thonge,
some are short & some are long,
the sooth as I shold say;

The Earl
describes
John's

armour,

"a rusty sallett ⁵ vpon his crowne,
708 his hood were made home browne ⁶;
there may nothing him dare;
his knife,
a thytill hee hath ffast in his hand
that hangeth in a peake band,⁷
712 & sharplye itt will share.

gloves,

"he hath a pouch hanging ffull wyde,
a rusty Buckeler on the other syde,
his mittons ⁸ are of blacke clothe.
716 who-soe to him sayth ought but good,
⁹ [I swear it to you by the rood,]
and temper.
ffull soone hee wilbe wrothe."

John tells
the porter to
let him in.

then Iohn sayd, "Porter, lett mee in!
720 some of my goods thou shalt win;
I loue not ffor to pray."

¹ That *delend*.—P.

² girdeth.—P.

³ weet. Item. wate, wat, i.e. know, knew, wot. Gloss. ad G. D.—P.

⁴ him in, when.—P.

⁵ Aliter *salad*, a Gallic. *Salade*, a Head-piece. *Celada*, or *Zelada*, Spanish. Lye. vid. St. 6, Pt. 3^d [l. 594 above].—P.

⁶ of homespun browne: or rather of homemade brow[n]. See Pt. 1 [l. 284 above].—P.

⁷ See the Picture of Chaucer.

⁸ Cp. Twey mitteynes as metel. *Plowman's Crede*.—F.

⁹ A line wanting.—P.

the Porter sayd, "stand abacke !
 & thou come neere I shall thee rappe,
 724 thou carle, by my flay ! "

The porter
 says he'll
 give him
 a rap.

Iohn tookē his fforke¹ in his hand,
 he bare his fforke on an End,
 he thought to make a ffray ;
 728 his Capull was wight,² & corne ffedd ;
 vpon the Porter hee him spedd,
 and him had welnye slaine.³

On which
 John
 charges him
 with his
 pitchfork,

nearly
 kills him,

he hitt the Porter vpon the crowne,
 732 with *that* stroke hee fell downe,
 fforsooth as I you tell ;
 & then hee rode into the hall,
 & all the doggs both great & small⁴
 736 on Iohn fast can thó yell.⁵

and then
 rides into the
 King's hall,

Iohn layd about as hee were wood,
 & 4 hee killed as hee stood ;
 the rest will now be ware.
 740 then came fforth a squier hend,
 & sayd, " Iohn, I am thy ffreind,
 I pray you light downe heere."

killing four
 of his dogs
 on the way.

One squire
 asks him to
 dismount ;

another sayd, " giue me thy fforke,"
 744 & Iohn sayd, " nay, by S^t William of Yorke,⁶
 ffirst I will cracke thy crowne ! "

another, to
 give up his
 fork ;

¹ *furke*. Perhaps *stocke*, which is used
 Gawain Douglas for a dagger, rapier,
 A. 7, 669, "veruque sabello" being
 shew'd "with stokkis sabellyne." ab
 l. *stocor*, ensis longior. Gloss. ad
 D. *Stork*, caudex, Truncus. Jun. It
 signifies also the handle of anything.
 Bacon. A staff or long Pole. P.
 m's tool is of course his two-grained
stork that he describes in line 319,
 I ask for in line 596 above.—P.

² Vi. l. Pt. 1, St. 36.—P.

³ did well-nye alay. — P.

⁴ Dogs had possession of the whole of
 the houses in Early English days. See
 the directions for turning them out of the
 lord's bedroom in Russell, the Shene MS.
 Boke of Curtasye, &c. in *Notes and*
 p. 182, l. 969, p. 283, l. 93, p. 69.—P.

⁵ gan to yell — P.

⁶ ? what saint.—P.

a third, his
sword

another sayd, "lay downe thy sword¹;
sett vp thy horsse; be not affeard;
748 thy bow, good Iohn, lay downe;

and helmet.

"I shall hold your stirroppe;
doe of your pallett & your hoode
ere thé ffall, as I troe.

He must be
very stupid
not to see in
whose pre-
sence he is.

752 yee see not who sitteth att the meate;
yee are a wonderous silly ffreake,
& alsoe passing sloe²!"

"What the
devil's that
to you?"
says Iohn.
"I shall
wear my
sword."

756 "what devill," sayd Iohn, "is *that* ffor the
itt is my owne, soe mote I thee!
therefore I will itt weare."

The Queen
asks who he
can be.

the Queene beheld him in hast:
"my lord,⁴" shee sayd, "ffor gods ffast,
760 who is yonder *that* doth ryde?
such a ffellow saw I neuer yore⁵!
shee saith, "hee hath the quaintest geere,
he is but simple of pryde."

John rides
on,

764 right soe came Iohn as hee were wood;
he vayled neither hatt nor hood,
he was a ffaley⁶ ffreake;

with his
pitchfork
at the
charge,

he tooke his ffork as hee wold Iust;
768 vp to the dease⁷ ffast he itt thrust.
the Queene ffor ffear did speake,

and
frightens the
Queen.

& sayd, "lords, beware, ffor gods grace!
ffor hee⁸ will ffrowte⁹ some in the fface
772 if yee take not good heede!"

¹ swerde.—P.

² slow.—P.

³ y^e deuill . . is that to thee.—P.

⁴ my Lords. Qu.—P.

⁵ yore, jamdudum, jam olim. Jun.
perhaps here.—P.

⁶ perhaps *stately*.—P. ? *Ferley*, won-
derful.—F.

⁷ Dease, or Deis. See
—P.

⁸ MS. thee.—F.

⁹ Perhaps from Fr. *frotte*
of to bang or beat (*battre*),
its original sense to rub.
use in this sense in Shrope

thé laughed without doubt,
 & soe did all *that* were about,
 to see Iohn on his steede.

The rest
 laugh.

- 776 then sayd Iohn to our Queene,
 "thou mayst be proud, dame, as I weene,
 to haue such a ffawconer¹!
 ffor he is a well ffarrand man,
 780 & much good manner² hee can,
 I tell you sooth in ffere.
³ [.]
 "but, lord," hee sayd, "my good, its thine;
 my body alsoe, ffor to pine,
 784 ffor thou art king with crowne.
 but, lord, thy word is honorable,
 both stedffast, sure, and stable,
 & alsoe⁴ great of renowne!

John tells
 the Queen
 she may be
 proud of her
 falconer.

He's a fine-
 looking
 man.

(Then
 finding that
 it's King
 Edward I.,)
 to whom his
 goods and
 body belong.

- 788 "therefore haue mind⁵ what thou me hight
 when thou with me [harbord⁶] a night,
 a warryson⁷ that I shold haue."
 Iohn spoke to him with sturdye mood,
 792 hee vayled neither hatt nor hood,
 but stood with him checkmate.⁸

he reminds
 him of the
 pledge he
 made the
 night he
 lodged with
 him.

- the King sayd, "fellow mine,
 ffor thy capons hott, & good red wine,
 796 much thankes I doe giue thee."
 the Queene sayd, "by Mary bright,
 award him as his⁹ right;
 well aduanced lett him bee!"

Edward
 thanks him
 for his
 capons and
 wine,

¹ *lawconere*.—P.

² *manners*.—P.

³ Some lines wanting here, containing
 a discovery of the King's rank. Some
 are seem wanting here.—P.

⁴ *also defend*.—P.

⁵ *mind* in the MS.—P.

⁶ *mr* [paradot] a.—P.

⁷ *warrioun*, reward. Scottish. See

Gloss to Ramsay's Ever-green.—P.

⁸ Qu. Check-mate: *mate* is companion,
Socius, *adulter*, q d. check by Jolo
 This passage may also be explained from
 the Term in chess, checkmate being when
 the king is hem'd in by some inferior
 Piece, so that he cannot stir.—T. P.

⁹ *forté* as is, or as it is.—P.

the King,

808 "I thanke you, my l
therof I am well p
thee King tooke a co
& sayd, "Iohn, heer
with worshippe."

who then
puts a collar
on him, and
knights him.

John fears
that

812 then was Iohn euill a
& amongst them all
"full oft I haue h

a rope will
follow the
collar,
and doesn't
like it.

816 that after a collar coi
I shall be hanged by
methinkes itt doth

But they
tell him
he must sit
in the chief
place.

820 "sith thou hast tak
that euery man may i
thou must begin th
then Iohn therof was
I tell you truth with
he spake neuer a w

He does so,
wishing
himself
at home.

824 but att the bords end
ffor hee had leeuier be
then att all⁹ their

ffor there was wine, well I wott;
 royall meates of the best sortes
 were sett before him there.

a gallon of wine was put in a dishe;
 Iohn supped itt of, both more & lesse.

He drinks
 off a gallon
 of wine,

"feitch," Quoth the King, "such more.¹"
 "by my Lady,²" Quoth Iohn, "this is good wine!
 lett vs make merry, ffor now itt is time;
 Christa curse on him *that* doth itt spare³!"

and wants to
 make merry.

with *that* came in the Porter⁴ hend
 & kneeled downe before the King,
 was all⁵ berunnen⁶ with blood.

The porter
 comes in

then the King in hart was woe,

all over
 blood.

sayen, "Porter, who hath dight thee soe?
 tell on; I wax neere wood."

"Who did
 this?" says
 the King.

"Now infaith," sayd Iohn, "*that* same was I,
 for to teach him some curtesye,

"I," says
 John, "to
 teach him
 manners.

⁷ ffor thou hast taught him noe good.
 for when thou came to my pore place,
 with mee thou found soe great a grace,
⁸ noe man did bidd thee stand without;

[page 368]

When you
 came to me,
 if anyone
 had told you
 to

"ffor if any man had against thee spoken,
 his head ffull soone I shold haue broken,"

stop outside,
 I'd have
 broken his
 head.

Iohn sayd, "with-uten doubt.
 therefore I warne thy porters ffree,

Your porters
 mustn't be
 so saucy
 next time."

when any man [comes] out of my⁹ C'ountrye,
 another¹⁰ [time] lett them not be soe stout.

name of maid. — P.
 Lett our lady. — P.
 on them that spare. — P.
 MS. Porters. — F.
 One was all &c. — P.
 MS. berumen. — P.

¹ For none thou hast him taught. Qu.
 — P.

² None had thee stand without — P.

³ Any come out, or comes from my
 &c. — P.

¹⁰ defend another. — P.

“ if both thy porters goe walling ¹ wood,
 begod I shall reane ² their hood,
 856 or goe on ffoote boote.
 but thou, Lord, hast after me sent,
 & I am come att thy commandement
 hastilye withouten doubt.”

The King
 acknow-
 ledges
 that his
 porter was
 in fault,

860 the King sayd, “ by St. Iame !
 Iohn, my porters were to blame ;
 yee did nothing but right.”
 he tooke the case into his hand ;

but makes
 Iohn kiss
 him

864 then to kisse ³ hee made them gange ;
 then laughed both King and Knight.

and be
 friends.

“ I pray you,” quoth the King, “ good ffellows bee.”
 “ yes,” quoth Iohn, “ soe mote I thee,
 868 we were not wrathe ⁴ ore night.”

The Bishop
 promises
 to put
 Iohn's two
 sons to
 school,

then they ⁵ Bishopp sayd to him thoe,
 “ Iohn, send hither thy sonnes 2 ;
 to the schoole ⁶ I shall them ffind,
 872 & soe god may for them werke,
 that either of them haue a kirke
 if ffortune be their ffreind.

and says the
 King will
 find his
 daughters
 good
 husbands.

“ also send hither thye daughters both ⁷ ;
 876 2 marryages the King will garr them to haue, ⁸
 & wedd them with a ringe.

¹ walling, i.e. boiling, fervent ; S. *wellan*. Lye.—P.

² reave, i.e. bereave (like as reft is for bereft) to take away by stealth or violence. Johnson. (used rather for *rive*, i.e. cleave.)—P.

³ Cp. Chaucer's making the Host and Pardoner kiss. *Cant. Tales*, end of The Pardoneres Tale :

‘ And ye, sir host, that ben to me so deere,
 I pray yow that ye kisse the pardoner ;

And pardoner, I pray you draweth yow
 ner,

And as we dede, let us laugh and playe.
 Anon thay kisse, and riden forth her
 waye.

v. iii., p. 105, l. 502-6, ed. Morris.—F.

⁴ wrothe.—P.

⁵ the.—P.

⁶ *Fortè* At schoole.—P.

⁷ baith.—P.

⁸ gar them have.—P.

went¹ forth, Iohn, on thy way,
 looke thou be kind & curteous aye,
 880 of meate & drinke be neu[e]r nithing.²”

then Iohn tooke leaue of King & Queene,³
 & after att all the court by-deene,
 & went forth on his way.

John takes
 leave of the
 Court.

884 he sent his daughters to the King,
 & they were weded with a ringe
 vnto 2 squiers gay.

The King
 marries his
 daughters
 to two
 squires ;

his sonnes both hardye & wight,
 888 the one of them was made a Knight,
 & fresh in euery ffray ;
 the other a parson of a kirke,
 gods seruice ffor to worke,
 892 to god serue⁴ night & day.

knights
 one of his
 sons,

gives the
 other a
 living,

thus Iohn Reeue and his wiffe
 with mirth & Iolty⁵ ledde their liffe ;
 to god they made Landinge.
 896 Hodgikin long & hobb⁶ of the lathe,
 they were made ffreemen bothe⁷
 through the grace of the King hend.⁸

and makes
 Houghkin
 and Hob
 freemen.

then thought [John]⁹ on the Bishoppes word,
 900 & euer after kept open bord
 ffor guests *that* god him send ;
 till death ffeicht him away
 to the blisse *that* lasteth aye :
 904 & thus Iohn Reeue made an end.

John de
 Reeve
 keeps open
 house

till he dies.

¹ wend.—P.

² Nithing. *nequam*, naught, It. a dastard poltroon: here it seems to mean diggardly.—P. A.-S. *nithing*, a wicked man, an outlaw,—Bosworth,—later, a diggard.—F.

³ Only half the *n* in the M.S.—P.

⁴ to serve God.—P.

⁵ Jollity.—P.

⁶ A stroke like a *l* follows in the M.S.—F.

⁷ baith. P.

⁸ Perhaps hend King.—P.

⁹ thought [he].—P.

God save all
who

have heard
this story!

908

thus endeth the tale of Reeue soe wight.¹
god *that* is soe ffull of might,
to heauen their soules bring
that haue heard this litle story,
that lined² sometimes in the south-west cuntrye
in long³ Edwards dayes our King.

fins.

¹ See Page 210 [of MS.] top of y^e
Page (fell some time, &c.).—P.

² Forte *happned*.—P.

³ long-[shanks] or without *long*.—P.

Appendix.

I.

Agincourt Ballads.

(See p. 159, Nos. 3 and 4.)

1. Agincourt, or the English Bowman's Glory.

A spirited black-letter ballad, of early date, the only existing copy of which was, however, "printed for Henry Harper in Smithfield," not long anterior to the Civil Wars; it bears for title "Agincourt, or the English Bowman's Glory," purporting to have been sung "to a pleasant new tune." *Collier's Shakespeare*, ed. 1858, vol. iii. p. 538.

Agincourt, Agincourt!
 Know ye not Agincourt?
 Where English slue and hurt
 All their French foemen?
 With our pikes and bills brown,
 How the French were beat downe,
 Shot by our bowmen.

Agincourt, Agincourt!
 Know ye not Agincourt,
 Never to be forgot
 Or known to no men?
 Where English cloth-yard arrows
 Kill'd the French like tame sparrows,
 Slaine by our bowmen.

Agincourt, Agincourt!
 Know ye not Agincourt,
 Where we won field and fort?
 French fled like wo-men
 By land, and eke by water;
 Never was scene such slaughte,
 Made by our bowmen.

Agincourt, Agincourt !
Know ye not Agincourt ?
English of every sort,
 High men and low men,
Fought that day wondrous well, as
All our old stories tell us,
 Thanks to our bowmen.

Agincourt, Agincourt !
Know ye not Agincourt ?
Either tale, or report,
 Quickly will show men
What can be done by courage,
Men without food or forage,
 Still lusty bowmen.

Agincourt, Agincourt !
Know ye not Agincourt ?
Where such a fight was fought,
 As, when they grow men,
Our boys shall imitate ;
Nor need we long to waite ;
 They'll be good bowmen.

Agincourt, Agincourt !
Know ye not Agincourt ?
Where our fifth Harry taught
 Frenchmen to know men :
And when the day was done,
Thousands there fell to one
 Good English bowman.

Agincourt, Agincourt !
Huzza for Agincourt !
When that day is forgot
 There will be no men.
It was a day of glory,
And till our heads are hoary
 Praise we our bowmen.

Agincourt, Agincourt !
Know ye not Agincourt ?
When our best hopes were nought,

Tenfold our foemen.
Harry led his men to battle,
Slue the French like sheep and cattle :
Huzza ! our bowmen.

Agincourt, Agincourt !
Know ye not Agincourt ?
O, it was noble sport !
Then did we owe men ;
Men, who a victory won us
'Gainst any odds among us :
Such were our bowmen.

Agincourt, Agincourt !
Know ye not Agincourt ?
Dear was the victory bought
By fifty yeomen.
Ask any English wench,
They were worth all the French :
Rare English bowmen !¹

2. King Henry V. his Conquest of France
In Revenge for the Affront offered by the French King ;
In sending him (instead of the Tribute) a Ton
of Tennis Balls.

(From the copy in Chetham's Library, Manchester, obligingly transcribed by Mr. Jones, the Librarian. Dr. Rimbault has a copy of this ballad "Printed and sold in Aldermary Church Yard." He says that traditional versions of it also appeared in the Rev. J. C. Tyler's *History of Monmouth*, 8vo. vol. ii. p. 197, and in Mr. Dixon's *Ancient Poems, Ballads, and Songs of the Pastime of England*, printed by the Percy Society in 1846. *Notes and Queries*, No. 23, Jan. 25, 1851, vol. iii. p. 51, col. 1.)

As our King lay musing on his bed,
He bethought himself upon a time,
Of a tribute that was due from France,
Had not been paid for so long a time,
Lal, lal, &c.

¹ In the original it is "Rare English bowmen," but probably a mistake for "bowmen," the printer having been misled by the words "wench" above. All the other stanzas end with "bowmen." J. P. Collier

He called for his lovely page,
His lovely page then called he ;
Saying, you must go to the King of France,
To the King of France, sir, ride speedily.
O then went away this lovely page,
This lovely page then away went he ;
Low he came to the King of France,
And when fell down on his bended knee.
My master greets you, worthy sir,
Ten ton of gold that is due to he,
That you will send him his tribute home,
Or in French land you soon will him see.
Fal, lal, &c.

Your master's young and of tender years,
Not fit to come into my degree :
And I will send him three Tennis-Balls,
That with them he may learn to play.

O then returned this lovely page,
This lovely page then returned he,
And when he came to our gracious King,
Low he fell down on his bended knee.
What news? what news? my trusty page,
What is the news you have brought to me?
I have brought such news from the King of France,
That he and you will ne'er agree.
He says, you're young and of tender years,
Not fit to come into his degree ;
And he will send you three Tennis-Balls,
That with them you may learn to play.
Recruit me Cheshire and Lancashire
And Derby Hills that are so free :
No marry'd man or widow's son,
For no widow's curse shall go with me.
They recruited Cheshire and Lancashire,
And Derby Hills that are so free :
No marry'd man, nor no widow's son,
Yet there was a jovial bold company.

O then we march'd into the French land,
With drums and trumpets so merrily ;
And then bespoke the King of France,
Lo yonder comes proud King Henry.

The first shot that the Frenchmen gave,
 They kill'd our Englishmen so free.
 We kill'd ten thousand of the French,
 And the rest of them they run away.
 And then we marched to Paris gates,
 With drums and trumpets so merrily ;
 O then bespoke the King of France,
 The Lord have mercy on my men and me,
 O I will send him his tribute home,
 Ten ton of gold that is due to he,
 And the finest flower that is in all France
 To the Rose of England I will give free.

II.

King Estmere.

(See p. 200, note 1.)

WE give here reprints of this ballad as it appeared in the 1st and 4th editions of the *Reliques*, putting in italics all the words changed in spelling or position, or for other words, in the two editions, so as to make Percy's acknowledged changes apparent. His unacknowledged ones we must leave to the critical power of our readers to ascertain.

FIRST EDITION, 1765.

HEARKEN to me, gentlemen,
Come and you shall heare;
He tell you of two of the boldest breth-
ren,
That ever *born* y-were.

The tone of them was Adler *yonge*, 5
The tother was kyng Estmere;
The were as bolde men in their *deedes*,
As any were farr and neare.

As they were drinking ale and wine
Within kyng Estmeres halle: 10
Whan will ye marry a wyfe, brother,
A wyfe to *gladd* us all?

Then bespake him kyng Estmere,
And answered him hastilee:
I knowe not that ladye in any *lande*, 15
That is able ⁴ to *marry* with mee.

Kyng Adland hath a daughter, brother,
Men call her bright and sheene;
If I were kyng here in your stead,
That ladye *sholde* be queene. 20

FOURTH EDITION, 1794.

HEARKEN to me, gentlemen,
Come and you shall heare;
He tell you of two of the boldest breth-
ren ¹
That ever *borne* y-were.

The tone of them was Adler *younge*,
The tother was kyng Estmere;
The were as bolde men in their *deeds*,
As any were farr and neare.

As they were drinking ale and wine
Within kyng Estmeres halle ²:
When will ye marry a wyfe, brother,
A wyfe to *glad* us all?

Then bespake him kyng Estmere,
And answered him hastilee ³:
I know not that ladye in any *land*
That's able ⁴ to *marrye* with mee.

Kyng Adland hath a daughter, brother,
Men call her bright and sheene;
If I were kyng here in your stead,
That ladye *shold* be my queene.

Ver. 3. brether. fol. MS.
Ver. 10. his brother's hall. fol. MS.

² Ver. 14. hartilye. fol. MS.
⁴ He means fit, suitable.

FIRST EDITION, 1765.

Sayes, Reade me, reade me, deare brother,
Throughout *merrye* England,
Where we might find a messenger
Betweene us *two* to sende.

Sayes, You shal ryde yourselfe, brother, 25
Ile beare you *companee* ;
Many throughe fals messengers are *de-*
ceivde,
And I feare lest soe shold wee.

Thus the renisht them to ryde
Of twoe good renisht *steedes*, 30
And when *they* came to *kyng* Adlands
halle,
Of *red golde* shone their *weedes*.

And *whan* the came to kyng Adlands
halle
Before the goodlye *gate*,
Ther they found good kyng Adland 35
Rearing himselfe theratt.

Nowe Christ thee save, good kyng Ad-
land ;
Nowe Christ *thee* save and see.
Sayd, you be welcome, *kyng* Estmere,
Right hartilye *unto* mee. 40

You have a daughter, *sayd* Adler *yonge*,
Men call her bright and sheene,
My brother wold marrye her to his wiffe,
Of Englande to *bee* queene.

Yesterdaye was at my deare daughtèr 45
Syr Bremor the kyng of Spayne ;
And then *shee* nicked him of naye,
I *feare* sheele doe *youe* the same.

The kyng of Spayne is a foule paynim,
And 'leeveth on Mahound ; 50
And pitye it were that fayre ladyè
Shold marrye a heathen hound.

But grant to me, sayes kyng Estmere,
For my love I you praye,
That I may see your daughter *deare* 55
Before I goe hence awaye.

FOURTH EDITION, 1794.

Saies, Reade me, reade me, deare brother,
Throughout *merry* England,
Where we might find a messenger
Betwixt us *towe* to sende.

Saies, You shal ryde yourselfe, brother,
Ile beare you *companye* ;
Many throughe fals messengers are ¹ *de-*
ceived,
And I feare lest soe shold wee.

Thus the renisht them to ryde
Of twoe good renisht *steeds*,
And when *the* came to *king* Adlands
halle,
Of *redd gold* shone their *weeds*.

And *when* the came to kyng Adlands
hall
Before the goodlye *gate*,
There they found good kyng Adland
Rearing himselfe theratt.

Now Christ thee save, good kyng Ad-
land ;
Now Christ *you* save and see.
Sayd, You be welcome, *king* Estmere,
Right hartilye *to* mee.

You have a daughter, *said* Adler *younge*,
Men call her bright and sheene,
My brother wold marrye her to his wiffe,
Of Englande to *be* queene.

Yesterday was att my *deere* daughtèr
Syr Bremor the kyng of Spayne ; ²
And then *she* nicked him of naye,
And I *doubt* sheele *do you* the same.

The kyng of ~~Spayne~~ Spayne is a foule paynim,
And 'leeveth ³ on Mahound ;
And pitye it were that fayre ladyè
Shold marrye a heathen hound.

But grant to me, sayes kyng Estmere,
For my love I you praye ;
That I may see your daughter *decre*
Before I goe hence awaye.

¹ Ver. 27. Many a man . . . is. fol. MS.² Ver. 46. The king his sonne of Spayn. fol. MS.³ Misprinted 'leeve thou.

FIRST EDITION, 1765.

Althoughe itt is seven yeare and more
Syt my daughter was in halle,
Shce shall come *downe once* for your sake
 To glad my guestès *all*. 60

Downe then came that mayden fayre,
 With ladyes *laced* in pall,
 And halfe a *hondred* of *bolde* knightes,
 To bring her from bowre to hall;
 And *eke* as *mauye* gentle *squieres*, 65
 To waite upon them all.

The talents of golde, were on her head
 sette,
Hunge lowe downe to her knee;
 And everye *rynge* on her *smalle* finger,
 Shone of the chrystall free. 70

Sayes, Christ you save, my *deare madame*;
Sayes, Christ you save and see.
Sayes, You be welcome, kyng Estmere,
 Right welcome unto mee.

And *iff* you love me, as you saye, 75
 So well and hartilée,
 All that ever you are comen about
 Soone sped now itt *may* bee.

Then bespake her father deare:
 My daughter, I saye naye; 80
 Remember well the kyng of Spayne,
 What he sayd yesterdaye.

He wold pull downe my halles and
 castles,
 And reave me of my lyfe:
And ever I feare that paynim kyng, 85
Iff I reave him of his wyfe.

Your castles and your towres, father,
 Are stronglye built aboute;
 And therefore of *that foule paynim*
 Wee neede not stande in *doubte*. 90

Plight me your troth, nowe, kyng Est-
 mère,
 By heaven and your righte hand,
 That you will marrye me to your wyfe,
 And make me queene of your land.

Then kyng Estmere he *plyght* his troth 95
 By heaven and his righte hand,
 That he wold marrye her to his wyfe,
 And make her queene of his land.

FOURTH EDITION, 1794.

Although itt is seven yeers and more
 Since my daughter was in halle,
She shall come *once downe* for your sake
 To glad my guestès *alle*.

Downe then came that mayden fayre,
 With ladyes *laced* in pall,
 And halfe a *hundred* of *bold* knightes,
 To bring her [from] bowre to hall;
 And as *many* gentle *squiers*,
 To *tend* upon them all.

The talents of gulde were on her head
 sette,
Hanged low downe to her knee;
 And everye *ring* on her *small* finger,
 Shone of the chrystall free.

Saies, God you save, my *deere madam*;
Saies, God you save and see."
Said, You be welcome, kyng Estmere,
 Right welcome unto mee.

And, *if* you love me, as you saye,
 Soe well and hartilée,
 All that ever you are comen about
 Soone sped now itt *shal* bee.

Then bespake her father deare:
 My daughter, I saye naye;
 Remember well the kyng of Spayne,
 What he sayd yesterdaye.

He wold pull downe my halles and
 castles,
 And reave me of my lyfe:
I cannot blame him if he doe,
If I reave him of his wyfe.

Your castles and your towres, father,
 Are stronglye built aboute;
 And therefore of *the king of Spaine*¹
 Wee neede not stande in *doubt*.

Plight me your troth, nowe, kyng Est-
 mère,
 By heaven and your righte hand,
 That you will marrye me to your wyfe,
 And make me queene of your land.

Then kyng Estmere he *plight* his troth
 By heaven and his righte hand,
 hat he wolde marrye her to his wyfe,
 And make her queene of his land.

¹ Ver. 89. of the King his sonne of Spaine. fol. MS.

FIRST EDITION, 1765.

And he tooke leave of that ladye fayre,
 To goe to his owne countree, 100
 To fetch him dukes and lordes and
 knightes,
 That marryed the might bee.

They had not ridden scant a myle,
 A myle forth of the towne,
 But in did come the kyng of Spayne, 103
 With kempes many a one.

But in did come the kyng of Spayne,
 With manye a *grimme* barone,
 Tene day to marrye kyng Adlands daugh-
 ter
 Tother daye to carrye her home. 110

Then shee sent after kyng Estmere
 In all the speede might bee,
 That he must either *returne* and fighte,
 Or goe home and *lose* his ladye.

One whyle then the page he went, 113
 Another *why'e* he ranne;
 Till he had oretaken *kyng* Estmere
Iris, he never blanne.

Tydings, *tydings*, kyng Estmere!
 What tydings nowe, my boye? 120
 O tydings I can tell to you,
 That will you sore annoye.

You had not ridden scant a *myle*,
 A *myle* out of the towne,
 But in did come the kyng of Spayne 123
 With kempes many a one:

But in did come the kyng of Spayne
 With manye a *grimme* barone,
 Tene daye to marrye king Adlands
 daughter,
 Tother daye to carrye her home. 130

That ladye fayre she greetes you well,
 And ever-more well by mee:
 You must either turne againe and fighte,
 Or goe home and *lose* your ladye.

Says, *Read* me, *read* me, *deare* brother, 133
 My *read* shall ryde 't at thee,
Whiche waye we *best* may turne and
 fighte,
 To see this *fayre* ladye.

FOURTH EDITION, 1794.

And he tooke leave of that ladye fayre,
 To goe to his owne countree,
 To fetch him dukes and lordes and
 knightes,
 That marryed the might bee.

They had not ridden scant a myle,
 A myle forth of the towne,
 But in did come the kyng of Spayne,
 With kempes many one.

But in did come the kyng of Spayne,
 With manye a *bold* barone,
 Tene day to marrye kyng Adlands daugh-
 ter,
 Tother daye to carrye her home.

Shee sent *one* after kyng Estmere
 In all the speede might bee,
 That he must either *turne* againe and
 fighte,
 Or goe home and *lose* his ladye.

One whyle then the page he went,
 Another *while* he ranne;
 Till he had oretaken *king* Estmere,
Iris, he never blanne.

Tydings, *tydings*, kyng Estmere!
 What tydings nowe, my boye?
 O, tydings I can tell to you,
 That will you sore annoye.

You had not ridden scant a *mile*,
 A *mile* out of the towne,
 But in did come the kyng of Spayne
 With kempes many a one:

But in did come the kyng of Spayne
 With manye a *bold* barone,
 Tene daye to marrye king Adlands
 daughter,
 Tother daye to carry her home.

My ladye fayre she greetes you well,
 And ever-more well by mee:
 You must either turne againe and fighte,
 Or goe home and *lose* your ladye.

Says, *Read* me, *read* me, *deare* brother,
 My *read* shall ryde 't at thee,
Whiche waye we *best* may turne and fighte,
 Or goe home and *lose* my ladye.

Sec. * *Sec* M.B. It should probably be "ryde," i.e. my counsel shall arise from thee. See ver. 140.

FIRST EDITION, 1765.

Now hearken to me, sayes Adler yonge,
 And your reade must rise ¹ at me, 140
 I quicklve will devise a waye
 To sette thy ladye free.

My mother was a westerne woman,
 And learned in gramarye,²
 And when I learned at the schole, 145
 Something shee taught itt mee.

There *groweth* an hearbe within this
 felde,
 And iff it were but knowne,
 His color, which is whyte and redd,
 Itt will make blacke and browne: 150

His color, which is browne and blacke,
 Itt will make redd and whyte;
 That sworde is not in all Englande,
 Upon his coate will byte.

And you shal be a harper, brother, 155
 Out of the north *countrée*;
 And Ile be your *boye*, so faine of fighte,
 To beare your harpe by your knee.

And you *shall* be the best harper,
 That ever tooke harpe in hand; 160
 And I *will* be the best singer,
 That ever sung in this *land*.

Itt shal be written in our foreheads
 All and in *gramarye*,
 That we towe are the boldest men, 165
 That are in all Christentye.

And thus they renisht them to ryde,
 On *ture* good renish steedes;
 And *whan* they came to king Adlands
 hall,
 Of redd gold shone their weedes. 170

And whan the came to kyng Adlands
 hall
 Untill the fayre hall yate,
 There they found a proud portèr
 Rearing himselfe *theratt*.

Sayes, Christ thee save, thou proud
 portèr: 175
 Sayes, Christ thee save and see.
 Nowe you be welcome, sayd the portèr,
 Of what land soever ye bee.

FOURTH EDITION, 1794.

Now hearken to me, sayes Adler yonge,
 And your reade must rise ² at me,
 I quicklve will devise a waye .
 To sette thy ladye free.

My mother was a westerne woman,
 And learned in gramarye,³
 And when I learned at the schole,
 Something shee taught itt mee.

There *grows* an hearbe within this
 field,
 And iff it were but knowne,
 His color, which is whyte and redd,
 It will make blacke and browne:

His color, which is browne and blacke,
 Itt will make redd and whyte;
 That sworde is not in all Englande,
 Upon his coate will byte.

And you shal be a harper, brother,
 Out of the north *countrye*;
 And Ile be your *boy*, soe faine of fighte,
 And beare your harpe by your knee.

And you *shal* be the best harper,
 That ever tooke harpe in hand;
 And I *wil* be the best singer,
 That ever sung in this *lande*.

Itt shal be written in our foreheads
 All and in *grammarie*,
 That we towe are the boldest men,
 That are in all Christentye.

And thus they renisht them to ryde,
 On *tow* good renish steedes;
 And *wh-n* they came to king Adlands
 hall,
 Of redd gold shone their weedes.

And whan the came to kyng Adlands
 hall,
 Untill the fayre hall yate,
 There they found a proud portèr
 Rearing himselfe *th-reant*.

Sayes, Christ thee save, thou proud
 portèr;
 Sayes, Christ thee save and see.
 Nowe you be welcome, sayd the portèr,
 Of what land soever ye bee.

¹ *Sic*.² *Sic MS.*³ See at the end of this ballad, Note *.* [not reprinted here.—F.]

FIRST EDITION, 1765.

We been harpers, sayd Adler yonge,
Come out of the northe countrie; 180
We beene come hither untill this place,
This proud weddinge for to see.

Sayd, And your color were white and
redd,
As it is blacke and browne,
Ild saye king Estmere and his brother 185
Were comen untill this towne.

Then they pulled out a ryng of gold,
Layd itt on the porters arme:
And ever we will thee, proud porter,
Thow wilt saye us no harme. 190

Sore he looked on kyng Estmere,
And sore he handled the ryng,
Then opened to them the sayre hall yates,
He lett for no kind of thyng.

Kyng Estmere he *light off* his steede 195
Up att the sayre hall board;
The *froth*, that came from his brydle
bitte,
Light on kyng Bremors beard.

Sayes, Stable *thou* steede, thou proud
harper,
Goe stable him in the stalle; 200
It doth not beecome a proud harper
To stable him in a kyngs halle.

My *ladd* he is so lither, he *sayd*,
He will do nought that's meete;
And *eye* that I *cold* but find the man, 205
Were able him to beate.

Thou speakst proud *wordes*, *sayd* the *Puy-*
son kyng,
Thou harper here to mee;
There is a man within this halle,
That will beate thy *lad* and thee. 210

O *lett* that man come downe, he *sayd*,
A sight of him *wolde* I see;
And *when* hee hath beaten well my ladd,
Then he shall beate of mee.

Downe then came the kemperye man, 215
And looked him in the care;
For all the golde, that was under heaven,
He durst not neygh him neare.

FOURTH EDITION, 1794.

We beene harpers, sayd Adler yonge,
Come out of the northe countrie;
We beene come hither untill this place,
This proud weddinge for to see.

Sayd, And your color were white and
redd,
As it is blacke and browne,
I wold saye king Estmere and his brother
Were comen untill this towne.

Then they pulled out a ryng of gold,
Layd itt on the porters arme:
And ever we will thee, proud porter,
Thow wilt saye us no harme.

Sore he looked on kyng Estmere,
And sore he handled the ryng,
Then opened to them the sayre hall yates,
He lett for no kind of thyng.

Kyng Estmere he *stabl'd* his steede
See sayre att the hall bord;
The *froth*, that came from his brydle
bitte,
Light in kyng Bremors beard.

Saies, Stable *thy* steed, thou proud
harper,
Saies, Stable him in the stalle;
It doth not beecome a proud harper
To stable 'him' in a kyngs halle.

My *ladde* he is so lither, he *said*,
He will *doe* nought that's meete;
And *is there any man in this hall*
Were able him to beate.

Thou speakst proud *words*, *sayes* the *king*
of Spaine,
Thou harper here to mee:
There is a man within this halle,
Will beate thy *ladd* and thee.

O *let* that man come downe, he *said*,
A sight of him *wold* I see;
And *when* hee hath beaten well my ladd,
Then he shall beate of mee.

Downe then came the kemperye man,
And looked him in the care.
For all the gold, that was under heaven,
He durst not neygh him neare.

FIRST EDITION, 1765.

And how nowe, kemppe, *sayd* the kyng of
Spayne,
 And how what aileth thee? 220
 He *sayes*, *Itt* is *written* in his forehead
 All and in gramarye,
 That for all the gold that is under
 heaven,
 I dare not neigh him nye.

Kyng Estmere *then pulled* forth his harpe, 225
 And *playd* *theron* so sweete:
Upstarte the ladye from the *kyng*,
As hee sate at the meate.

Nowe stay thy harpe, thou proud harper,
Now stay thy harpe, I say; 230
 For *an* thou *playest* as thou *beginnest*,
 Thou'lt till my bride awaye.

He *strucke* upon his harpe *agayne*,
 And *playd* both *fayre* and *free*;
 The ladye *was* so *pleasde* *theratt*, 235
She laught loud *laughters* three.

Nowe sell me thy harpe, *sayd* the *kyng* of
Spayne,
Thy harpe and *stryngs* *eche* one,
 And as many gold nobles thou shalt
 have,
 As *there* be *stryngs* *thercon*. 240

And what wold ye doe with my harpe,
 he *sayd*,
Iff I did sell it *ye*?
 To playe my wiffe and me a *FITT*,
 When *abed* together *we* bee.

Now sell me, *syr kyng*, thy bryde soe
 gay, 245
 As shee sits *laced* in *pall*,
 And as many gold nobles I will give,
 As *there* be *rings* in the hall.

And what wold ye doe with my bryde
 soe gay,
 Iff I did sell her *ye*? 250
 More seemelye it is for her *fayre* bodye
 To lye by mee *than* thee.

Hee played *agayne* both loud and shrille,
 And Adler he did syng,
 "O ladye, this is thy owne true love; 255
 "Noe harper but a kyng.

FOURTH EDITION, 1794.

And how nowe, kemppe, *said* the kyng of
Spaine,
 And how what aileth thee?
 He *sai*es, *It* is *writt* in his forehead
 All and in gramarye,
 That for all the gold that is under
 heaven,
 I dare not neigh him nye.

Then kyng Estmere *pulld* forth his harpe,
 And *plaid* a *pretty thinge*:
The ladye upstart from the *borde*,
And wold have gone from the king.

Stay thy harpe, thou proud harper,
For Gods love I pray thee
 For *and* thou *playes* as thou *beginst*,
 Thou'lt till¹ my bryde from mee.

He *stroake* upon his harpe *again*e,
 And *playd* a *pretty thinge*;
 The ladye *lough* a loud laughter,
 As shee sate by the king.

*Sai*es, sell me thy harpe, *thou proud*
harper,
And thy string's all,
 For as many gold nobles, 'thou shalt
 have'
 As *heere* bee *ringes* in the hall.

What wold ye doe with my harpe, 'he
sayd,
If I did sell it *ye*?
 "To playe my wiffe and me a *FITT*,²
 When *abed* together *wee* bee."

Now sell me, *quoth hee*, thy bryde soe
 gay,
 As shee sits *by thy knee*,
 And as many gold nobles I will give,
 As *leaves* been on a tree.

And what wold ye doe with my bryde
 soe gay,
 Iff I did sell her *thee*?
 More seemelye it is for her *fayre* bodye
 To lye by mee *then* thee.

Hee played *agayne* both loud and shrille,³
 And Adler he did syng,
 "O ladye, this is thy owne true love;
 "Noe harper, but a kyng.

¹ i.e. Entice. Vid. Gloss.

² i.e. a tune, or strain of music. See Gloss.

³ Ver. 253. Some liberties have been taken in the following stanzas; but wherever this edition differs from the preceding, it hath been brought nearer to the folio MS.

FIRST EDITION, 1765.

" O ladye, this is thy owne true love,
 " As playnlye thou mayest see;
 " And Ile rid thee of that foule paynim,
 " Who partes thy love and thee." 260

The ladye *looked*, the ladye blushte,
 And blushte and lookt agayne,
 While Adler he hath drawne his brande,
 And hath *sir Bremor* slayne.

Up then rose the kemperrye men, 265
 And loud they gan to crye:
 Ah! traytors, yee have slayne our kyng,
 And therefore yee shall dye.

Kyng Estmere throwe the harpe asyde,
 And swith he drew his brand; 270
 And Estmere he, and Adler yonge
 Right stiffe in stour can stand.

And aye their swordes soe sore can *hyle*,
 Throughe help of gramarye,
 That soone they have slayne the kemperry
 men, 275
 Or forst them forth to flee.

Kyng Estmere tooke that fayre ladye,
 And marryed her to his *wyfe*,
 And brought her home to *merrye* England
 With her to leade his *lyfe*. 280

FOURTH EDITION, 1794.

" O ladye, this is thy owne true love,
 " As playnlye thou mayest see;
 " And Ile rid thee of that foule paynim,
 " Who partes thy love and thee."

The ladye *looked*, the ladye blushte,
 And blushte and lookt agayne,
 While Adler he hath drawne his brande,
 And hath *the Sordan* slayne.

Up then rose the kemperrye men,
 And loud they gan to crye:
 Ah! traytors, yee have slayne our kyng,
 And therefore yee shall dye.

Kyng Estmere throwe the harpe asyde,
 And swith he drew his brand;
 And Estmere he, and Adler yonge
 Right stiffe in stour can stand.

And aye their swordes soe sore can *fyte*,
 Throughe help of Gramarye,
 That soone they have slayne the kemperry
 men,
 Or forst them forth to flee.

Kyng Estmere tooke that fayre ladye,
 And marryed her to his *wyfe*,
 And brought her home to *merry* England
 With her to leade his *lyfe*.

These lines must be Percy's own.—P.

III.

Beginning of Guy and Phillis, p. 201.

PERCY says in his *Reliques*, iii. 105, 1st ed., that his text of "The Legend of Sir Guy" is "Printed from an ancient MS. copy in the Editor's old folio volume, collated with two printed ones, one of which is in black letter in the Pepys collection." As he tore the beginning of it out of his Folio, I applied to the Librarian of Magdalene to correct by the Pepys copy a transcript of the first twenty-two stanzas of Percy's text; but as I could not give a reference to the volume and page where the ballad is, and the Librarian's catalogue is not yet complete, he has not sent me the collation. I am therefore obliged to print the beginning of the "inferior copy in Ritson's *Ancient Songs and Ballads*, ii. 193" (Child).

SIR GUY OF WARWICK.

WAS ever knight, for ladys sake,
 So toss'd in love, as I, Sir Guy,
 For Phillis fair, that lady bright
 As ever man beheld with eye?
 She gave me leave myself to try
 The valiant knight with shield and
 spear,
 Ere that her love she would grant me;
 Which made me venture far and near.

The proud Sir Guy, a baron bold,
 In deeds of arms the doughty knight,
 That every day in England was,
 With sword and spear in field to
 fight;

An English man I was by birth,
 In faith of Christ a Christian true;
 The wicked laws of infidels
 I sought by power to subdue.

Two hundred twenty years, and odd
 After our saviour Christ his birth,
 When king Athelstan wore the crown,
 I lived here upon the earth.

Sometime I was of Warwick earl,
 And, as I said, on very truth,
 A ladys love did me constrain
 To seek strange ventures in my youth:

To try my fame by feats of arms,
 In strange and sundry heathen lands;
 Where I atchieved, for her sake,
 Right dangerous conquests with my
 hands.

For first I sail'd to Normandy,
 And there I stoutly won in fight,
 The emperours daughter of Almain,
 From many a valiant worthy knight.

Then passed I the seas of Greece,
 To help the emperour to his right,
 Against the mighty soldans host
 Of puissant Persians for to fight:
 Where I did slay of Saracens
 And heathen pagans, many a man,
 And slew the soldans cousin dear,
 Who had to name, doughty Colbrøn.

Ezkeldered, that famous knight,
 To death likewise I did pursue,
 And Almain, king of Tyre, also,
 Most terrible too in fight to view :
 I went into the soldans host,
 Being thither on ambassage sent,
 And brought away his head with me,
 I having slain him in his tent.

There was a dragon in the land,
 Which I also myself did slay,
 As he a lion did pursue,
 Most fiercely met me by the way.
 From thence I pass'd the seas of Greece,
 And came to Pavy land aright,
 Where I the duke of Pavy kill'd,
 His heinous treason to requite.

And after came into this land,
 Towards fair Phillis, lady bright ;
 For love of whom I travel'd far,
 To try my manhood and my might.
 But when I had espoused her,
 I stay'd with her but forty days,
 But there I left this lady fair,
 And then I went beyond the seas.

All clad in gray, in pilgrim sort,
 My voyage from her I did take,
 Unto that blessed holy land,
 For Jesus Christ my saviours sake :
 Where I earl Jonas did redeem,
 And all his sons, which were fifteen,
 Who with the cruel Saracen,
 In prison for long time had been.

I slew the giant Amarant,
 In battle fiercely hand to hand :
 And doughty Barknard killed I,
 The mighty duke of that same land.
 Then I to England came again,
 And here with Colbron fell I fought,
 An ugly giant, which the Danes
 Had for their champion hither brought.

I overcame him in the field,
 And slew him dead right valiantly ;
 Where I the land did then redeem
 From Danish tribute utterly ;
 And afterwards I offered up
 The use of weapons solemnly,
 At Winchester, whereas I fought,
 In sight of many far and nigh.

In Windsor-forest, &c.

Ritson. *A Select Collection of English Songs*, vol. ii. p. 296-299.
 Part IV., *Ancient Ballads*.

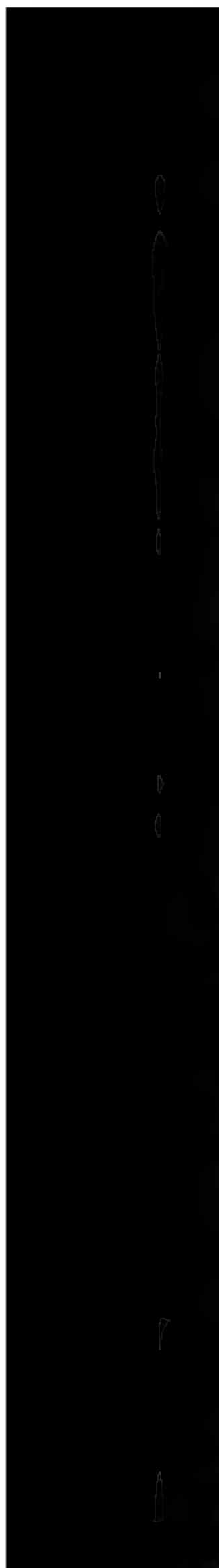
INDEX.

	PAGE		PAGE
A Jigge	334	Hugh Spencer	290
Agincourte Battell	158, 595	I live where I loue	325
Amongst the Mirtles	35	John a Side	203
Ay me, Ay me! Pore Sisley and undone	43	John de Reene	559
Bell my Wyffe (photolithograph in vol. i.)	320	King Estmere, <i>Percy's versions.</i> (See note, p. 200)	600
Bessie off Bednall	279	Kinge Adler	296
Bishoppe & Browne	265	Kinge & Miller	147
Boy and Mantle	301	Ladyes Fall	246
Buckingham betrayd by Banister	253	Libius Disconius	404
Cales Voyage	136	Newarke	33
Chevy Chase	1	Northumberland betrayd by Dowglas	217
Childe Maurice	500	Risinge in the Northe	210
Childe Waters	269	Sir Triamore	78
Cloris, farewell, I needs must go .	21	Sittinge late	400
Come, come, come, shall wee masque or mum?	52	The Ægyptian Queene	26
Conscience	174	The Emperour & the Childe	390
Durham Feilde	190	The Grene Knight	56
Earle Bodwell	260	The Kinge enjoyes his Rights againe	24
Eglamore	338	The Tribe of Banburye	39
Faine wolde I change my maiden Life	46	The Worlde is changed, & wee have Choyces	37
Guy & Colebrande	509	When first I sawe her Face	48
Guy & Phillis	608, 201	When Love with unconfin'd Wings	17
Guye & Amarant	136	White Rose & Red	312
Guye of Gisborne	227	Younge Andrewe	327
Herefford & Norfolke	238		
Hollowe, me Fancye	30		
How fayre shee be	50		

END OF THE SECOND VOLUME.

15

SPOTTISWOODE AND CO., PRINTERS, NEW-STREET SQUARE AND PARLIAMENT STREET.







3 2044 009 696 600

A FINE IS INCURRED IF THIS BOOK IS
NOT RETURNED TO THE LIBRARY ON
OR BEFORE THE LAST DATE STAMPED
BELOW.

STALL STUDY

CHARGE

OCT 4

75

49

RECEIVED

59

100

067

35

